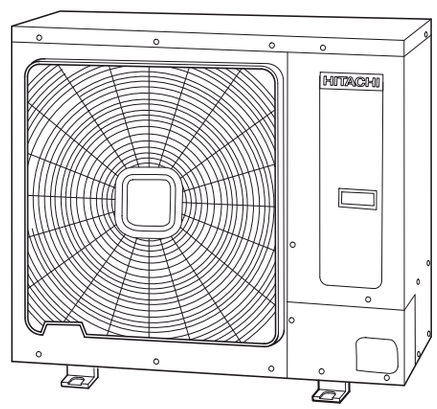
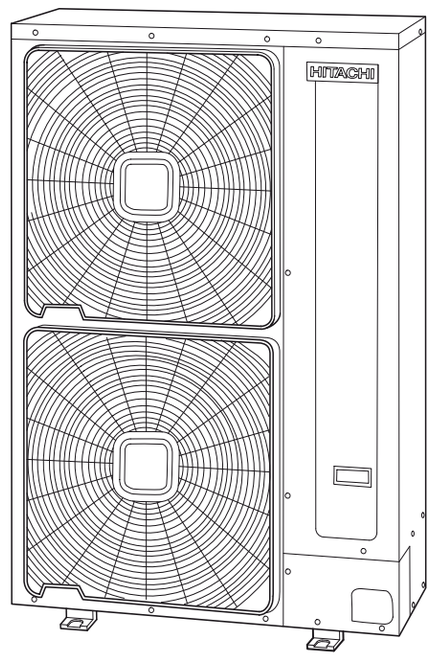
HITACHI
Inspire the Next

UTOPIA DC-INVERTER ES SERIES
H(V)RNS(2/3)(E)
HRNSE





Service Manual

RAS-3HVRNS3
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E
RAS-5H(V)RNS2E
RAS-6H(V)RNS2E
RAS-8HRNSE
RAS-10HRNSE

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 2 04/06/2013 18:13:02

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

Contents

General information 1
Unit installation 2
Piping work and refrigerant charge 3
Electrical wiring 4
Control system 5
Optional functions 6
Test run 7
Electrical checks of main parts 8
Spare Parts 9
Servicing 10
Troubleshooting 11
Maintenance notes 12

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 3 04/06/2013 18:13:03

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 4 04/06/2013 18:13:03

Index

1. General information 1

1.1 General information 2
1.1.1 General notes 2
1.1.2 Introduction 2
1.1.3 Environment-friendly units 2
1.2 Applied symbols 3
1.3 Product guide 4
1.3.1 Classification of outdoor unit models 4
1.3.2 Classification of indoor unit models 4
1.3.3 Product guide: Outdoor units 5
1.3.4 Product guide: Indoor units 6
1.3.5 Product guide: complementary systems 9
1.3.6 Outdoor unit accessory code list 10

2. Unit installation 11

2.1 Safety summary 12
2.2 Transportation of outdoor unit 13
2.2.1 Hanging method 13
2.2.2 Handling unit (center of gravity) 14
2.3 Installation space (Initial check) 15
2.3.1 RAS-3HVRNS3 15
2.3.2 RAS-4H(V)RNS3E / RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E 16
2.3.3 RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 20
2.4 Place provision 24
2.4.1 Place provision for RAS-3HVRNS3 24
2.4.2 Place provision for RAS-4H(V)RNS3E / RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E / RAS-(8-10)HRNSE 26
2.5 Optional parts and installation 29
2.5.1 Optional parts and installation for RAS-3HVRNS3 29
2.5.2 Optional parts and installation RAS-4H(V)RNS3E / RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E 34
2.5.3 Optional parts and installation RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 38

3. Piping work and refrigerant charge 45

3.1 General notes 46
3.2 General notes before performing pipe work 48
3.2.1 Piping materials 48
3.2.2 Three principles on refrigerant piping work 50
3.2.3 Suspension of refrigerant piping 50
3.2.4 Brazing work 51
3.3 Piping connection for outdoor unit 52
3.3.1 RAS-3HVRNS3 52
3.3.2 RAS-4H(V)RNS3E and RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E 53
3.3.3 RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 56
3.3.4 Outdoor unit stop valve for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 59
3.3.5 Outdoor unit stop valve for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 61

3.4 Refrigerant piping range 62
3.4.1 Refrigerant piping length 62
3.5 Refrigerant piping size and multikit/distributor selection 65
3.5.1 Refrigerant piping sizes and multi-kit selection 65
3.5.2 System installation 66
3.6 Refrigerant charge 68
3.6.1 Caution of the pressure by check joint 69
3.6.2 Refrigerant charge amount 70
3.6.3 Setting of pipe length DSW. 72
3.6.4 Pump down refrigerant 72
3.7 Caution in case of refrigerant leakage 73
3.7.1 Maximum permitted concentration of hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) 73
3.7.2 Calculation of refrigerant concentration 73
3.7.3 Countermeasure for refrigerant leakage 73
3.8 Drain piping 74

4. Electrical wiring 75

4.1 General information 76
4.1.1 General notes 76
4.1.2 General verifications 76
4.2 Electrical wiring for the outdoor unit 78
4.3 Setting of DIP switches and RSW switches 80
4.3.1 Quantity and Position of DIP Switches 80
4.3.2 Jumpers 84
4.3.3 LED's indication for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 85
4.4 Common wiring 86
4.4.1 Electrical wiring between outdoor and indoor unit 86
4.4.2 Wiring size 87
4.4.3 Main switch protection 87
4.5 H-LINK II system 88
4.5.1 Features 88
4.5.2 Specifications 88
4.5.3 DIP Switch setting for multiple H-LINK systems 89
4.5.4 Examples of the system of connection between H-LINK and H-LINK II units 90
4.5.5 Examples of H-LINK II system 91
4.6 Electrical wiring diagrams 93
4.6.1 RAS-3HVRNS3 93
4.6.2 RAS-4HVRNS3E 94
4.6.3 RAS-4HRNS3E 95
4.6.4 RAS-(5/6)H(V)VRNS2E 96
4.6.5 RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 97

5. Control system 99

5.1 Device control system 100
5.1.1 Device control system 100
5.2 Outdoor units PCB 102
5.2.1 Outdoor units PCB for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 102
5.2.2 Outdoor units PCB for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 104

5.3 Protection and safety control 105
5.3.1 Protection and safety control 105
5.4 Standard operation sequence 107
5.4.1 Standard operation sequence for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 107
5.4.2 Standard operation sequence for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 117
5.5 Standard control functions 124
5.5.1 Standard control functions for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 124
5.5.2 Standard control functions for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 129

6. Optional functions 137

6.1 Optional input and output signals (by 7-segment display) 138
6.1.1 Available ports 138
6.1.2 Available optional signals 140
6.1.3 Setting of the optional signals 143
6.1.4 Description of optional signals 144
6.2 Optional functions (By 7-segment display) for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 146
6.2.1 Setting of the optional functions 146
6.2.2 Description of the optional functions 148
6.3 Optional functions (by 7 segment display) for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 152
6.3.1 Setting of the optional functions 152
6.3.2 Description of the optional functions 154
6.4 Optional functions (By remote control switch) 156

7. Test run 157

7.1 Checking procedure before the test run 158
7.2 Test run procedure using the remote control switch (PC-ART) 160
7.3 Test run procedure using the remote control switch (PC-ARF) 162
7.4 Test run procedure using the wireless remote control switch (PC-LH3A/B) 165
7.5 Test run procedure from the outdoor unit side 167
7.6 Check list 169
7.6.1 Check list on test run 169

8. Electrical checks of main parts 173

8.1 Inverter 174
8.1.1 Specifications of inverter 174
8.2 Thermistor 179
8.3 Electronic expansion valve 182
8.4 High pressure protection device 183
8.4.1 Location of the high pressure protection devices 183
8.4.2 High pressure switch (PSH) 184
8.4.3 Pressure switch for control (PSC) 184
8.5 Noise filter (NF) 185

8.5.1 Noise filter for 3N~ 400V 50Hz 185
8.5.2 Noise filter for 1~ 230V 50Hz 186
8.6 Capacitor (CB1 CB2) - 8/10 HP only 187
8.7 Reactor (DCL) 188
8.7.1 Reactor (DCL) for 3N~ 400V 50Hz 188
8.7.2 Reactor (DCL) for 1~ 230V 50Hz 188
8.8 Scroll compressor 189
8.8.1 Reliable mechanism for low vibrating and low sound 189
8.8.2 Principle of compression 189

9. Spare Parts 191

9.1 RAS-3HVRNS3 192
9.1.1 Cycle, structural and electrical parts 192
9.2 RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 194
9.2.1 Cycle and structural parts 194
9.2.2 Electrical parts of RAS-4HVRNS3E 196
9.2.3 Electrical parts of RAS-4HRNS3E 197
9.3 RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E 198
9.3.1 Cycle and structural parts 198
9.3.2 Electrical parts RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E 200
9.3.3 Electrical parts RAS-(5/6)HRNS2E 201
9.4 RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 202
9.4.1 Cycle and structural 202
9.4.2 Electrical parts 204

10. Servicing 207

10.1 Introduction 208
10.2 Servicing for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 209
10.2.1 Outdoor unit RAS-3HVRNS3 209
10.2.2 Outdoor Units RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 217
10.3 Servicing for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 224
10.3.1 Outdoor Units RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E 224
10.3.2 Outdoor Units RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 236

11. Troubleshooting 255

11.1 Initial troubleshooting 256
11.1.1 Checking by means of the 7-segment display 256
11.1.2 Failure of the power supply to the indoor unit and the remote control switch 257
11.1.3 Abnormal transmission between the remote control switch and the indoor unit 258
11.1.4 Abnormal operation of the devices 258
11.2 Troubleshooting procedure 264
11.2.1 On-screen displays during abnormal operation 264
11.2.2 Alarm codes 265
11.2.3 Troubleshooting by alarm code 267
11.2.4 Alarm codes for the KPI (E/H/X)3E Series and DX Interface 332
11.3 Troubleshooting in check mode 333

11.3.1 Troubleshooting using the remote controller PC-ART 333
11.3.2 Troubleshooting using the remote controller PC-ARF 343
11.3.4 Troubleshooting using the 7-segment display for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 348
11.3.5 Troubleshooting using the 7-segment display for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 356
11.3.6 Troubleshooting by means of the flashing alarm LEDs for RPK-FSN2M (only for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 360
11.3.7 Cause of inverter stoppage for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 361
11.4 Checking procedure for main parts for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 365
11.4.1 Procedure for checking the DIP-IPM inverter for indoor and outdoor units 365
11.4.2 Checking capacitors CB1 & CB2. 368
11.4.3 Fault diagnosis of DC fan motor. 370
11.4.4 Checking procedure for the electronic expansion valve for indoor and outdoor units 371
11.4.5 Checking procedure for other parts 371
11.5 Checking procedure for main parts for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 374
11.5.1 Self-checking procedure of PCB by means of the Remote Control Switch 374
11.5.2 Self-checking of the remote control switch 376
11.5.3 Self-Checking procedure of the Indoor Unit PCB (only for RPK) 378

12. Maintenance notes 389

12.1 General notes 390
12.1.1 Checking the power source and the wiring connection 390
12.1.2 Burnt-out compressor due to an insufficient refrigerant charge 390
12.1.3 Abnormally high operation sound (in the ceiling type indoor unit). 391
12.1.4 Alarm code “31” 391
12.1.5 Not cooling well due to insufficient installation space for the outdoor unit 392
12.2 Maintenance work 393
12.3 Service and maintenance record 394
12.4 Service and maintenance record using the 7-segment display 396
12.5 Service and maintenance record by remote control switch 398
12.6 Check list on compressor 399
12.6.1 Additional information for “Check list on compressor” 400
12.7 Pump-down method for replacing the compressor 401

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 10 04/06/2013 18:13:03

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

1. General information

1

Index

1.1. General information 2
1.1.1. General notes 2
1.1.2. Introduction 2
1.1.3. Environment-friendly units 2
1.2. Applied symbols 3
1.3. Product guide 4
1.3.1. Classification of outdoor unit models 4
1.3.2. Classification of indoor unit models 4
1.3.3. Product guide: Outdoor units 5
1.3.4. Product guide: Indoor units 6
1.3.5. Product guide: complementary systems 9
1.3.6. Outdoor unit accessory code list 10

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 1 04/06/2013 18:13:03

1.1 General information

1.1.1 General notes

No part of this publication may be reproduced, copied, filed or transmitted in any shape or form without the permission of HITACHI Air Conditioning Products Europe, S.A.U.

Within the policy of continuous improvement of its products, HITACHI Air Conditioning Products Europe, S.A.U. reserves the right to make changes at any time without prior notification and without being compelled to introducing them into products subsequently sold. This document may therefore have been subject to amendments during the life of the product.

HITACHI makes every effort to offer correct, up-to-date documentation. Despite this, printing errors cannot be controlled by HITACHI and are not its responsibility.

As a result, some of the images or data used to illustrate this document may not refer to specific models. No claims will be accepted based on the data, illustrations and descriptions included in this manual.

No type of modification must be made to the equipment without prior, written authorisation from the manufacturer.

NOTE

This air conditioner has been designed for standard air conditioning for human beings. For use in other applications, please contact your HITACHI dealer or service contractor.

CAUTION

This unit is designed for commercial and light industrial application. If installed in house hold appliance, it could cause electromagnetic interference.

1.1.2 Introduction

Hitachi UTOPIA series is an outdoor unit series designed with the goal to cover the requirements of the split and multisplit systems, for installations where from one indoor unit (single system) to up to four indoor units (quad system) are connected to the same outdoor unit (depending on the models).

UTOPIA ES series incorporate the Hitachi inverter technology, which makes possible to adapt automatically and without the user operation the capacity of the unit, so the power input, to the real demand of the installation, increasing the system efficiency to unattainable levels with other technologies. All UTOPIA units are equipped with a heat pump, resulting in an air conditioning system valid for the whole year, in which the installation of additional and specific systems a not necessary.

ES (Eco&Small) series stands out because of its efficiency with outdoor units of small dimensions. The series is composed by units with nominal capacities from 7.1 kW to 25.0 kW (cooling mode), allowing also the installation of up to four different indoor units.

Indoor Units

One of the main merits of Hitachi units range is the combinability and flexibility of its indoor units SYSTEM FREE. This outstanding technology makes possible to use the same indoor units with both UTOPIA and SET FREE outdoor units, making easier the design, installation and control of the air conditioning installations.

1.1.3 Environment-friendly units

This range of HITACHI outdoor units uses environmentally-friendly R410A gas refrigerant, and the RoHS and Green Dot regulations are applied throughout the manufacturing and installation process to reflect HITACHI's awareness of environmental respect and commitment.



R410A is totally environmentally-friendly since it does not contain any substances that damage the ozone layer:
ODP (ozone depleting product) =0.
HITACHI's UTOPIA series are very efficient and allow significant energy savings compared with conventional systems.
This energy efficiency means less production of CO2, which causes the greenhouse effect.

1.2 Applied symbols

During normal air conditioning system design work or unit installation, greater attention must be paid in certain situations requiring particular care in order to avoid damage to the unit, the installation or the building or property.

Situations that jeopardise the safety of those in the surrounding area or that put the unit itself at risk will be clearly indicated in this manual.

To indicate these situations, a series of special symbols will be used to clearly identify these situations.

Pay close attention to these symbols and to the messages following them, as your safety and that of others depends on it.

DANGER

- ***The text following this symbol contains information and instructions relating directly to your safety and physical wellbeing.***
- ***Not taking these instructions into account could lead to serious, very serious or even fatal injuries to you and others in the proximities of the unit.***

In the texts following the danger symbol you can also find information on safe procedures during unit installation.

CAUTION

- *The text following this symbol contains information and instructions relating directly to your safety and physical wellbeing.*
- *Not taking these instructions into account could lead to minor injuries to you and others in the proximities of the unit.*
- *Not taking these instructions into account could lead to unit damage.*

In the texts following the caution symbol you can also find information on safe procedures during unit installation.

NOTE

- *The text following this symbol contains information or instructions that may be of use or that require a more thorough explanation.*
- *Instructions regarding inspections to be made on unit parts or systems may also be included.*

1.3 Product guide

1.3.1 Classification of outdoor unit models

Unit type (outdoor unit): RAS									
	Position-separating hyphen (fixed)								
		Compressor power (HP): 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10							
			H = Heat pump						
				V = Single phase unit (1~ 230V 50Hz)					
				- = Three phase unit (3N~ 400V 50Hz)					
					R = Inverter system				
						N = R410A refrigerant			
							S = ES series		
								Series	
									E = Made in Europe
									– = Made in Japan
XXX	–	XX	H	X	R	N	S	X	X

1.3.2 Classification of indoor unit models

Unit type (indoor unit): RCI, RCIM, RCD, RPC, RPI, RPIM, RPK, RPF, RPFI										
	Position-separating hyphen (fixed)									
		Compressor power (HP): 0.8, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 8.0, 10.0								
			FS = SYSTEM FREE							
				N = R410A refrigerant						
					H = Hotel (RPK-(0.8 - 1.5) only)					
						2/3/4 = series				
							E = Made in Europe			
							M = Made in Malaysia			
							– = Made in Japan			
								i = Version up		
									DU = Drain Up (RPIM only)	
XXX	–	X.X	FS	N	(H)	(X)	(X)	i	(-DU)	

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 4 04/06/2013 18:13:04

1.3.3 Product guide: Outdoor units

Outdoor Units ES							
1~ 230V 50Hz				3N~ 400V 50Hz			
							
Unit	Code	Unit	Code	Unit	Code	Unit	Code
RAS-3HVRNS3	60288605						
		RAS-4HVRNS3E	7E305033	RAS-4HRNS3E	7E305133		
		RAS-5HVRNS2E	7E306021	RAS-5HRNS2E	7E306108		
		RAS-6HVRNS2E	7E306022	RAS-6HRNS2E	7E306109		
						RAS-8HRNSE	7E314110
						RAS-10HRNSE	7E314111

NOTE

Check the exact classification for each unit (model, type, power and series) in Classification of outdoor unit models, see on page 4 .

1.3.4 Product guide: Indoor units

NOTE

- *The indoor unit models and codes are the last updated at time of publication; other previous models and coming developments could be available for combination with ES series.*
- *Check the exact classification for each unit (model, type, power and series) in Classification of indoor unit models.*

◆ **RCI and RCIM indoor units**

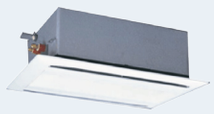
RCI				RCIM	
❄ ☀					
					
4-way cassette				4-way cassette (compact)	
Unit	Code	Unit	Code	Unit	Code
RCI-1.5FSN3Ei	7E403015	RCI-1.5FSN3	60278120	RCIM-1.5FSN2	60278013
RCI-2.0FSN3Ei	7E403016	RCI-2.0FSN3	60278121	RCIM-2.0FSN2	60278014
RCI-2.5FSN3Ei	7E403017	RCI-2.5FSN3	60278122		
RCI-3.0FSN3Ei	7E403018	RCI-3.0FSN3	60278123		
RCI-4.0FSN3Ei	7E403020	RCI-4.0FSN3	60278124		
RCI-5.0FSN3Ei	7E403021	RCI-5.0FSN3	60278125		
RCI-6.0FSN3Ei	7E403022	RCI-6.0FSN3	60278126		

Panels (Optional)					
					
P-N23NA	70531000	P-AP160NA1	60297215	P-N23WAM	60197160
		P-AP160NAE (With motion sensor)	60297217		

NOTE

The RCI and RCIM models must be used in combination with the panels indicated above.

◆ RCD and RPC indoor units

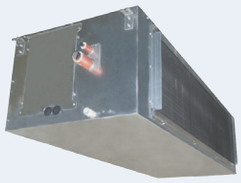
RCD				RPC	
❄ ☀					
					
2-way cassette				Ceiling type	
Unit	Code			Unit	Code
RCD-1.5FSN2	60278030				
RCD-2.0FSN2	60278031			RPC-2.0FSN2E	7E440003
RCD-2.5FSN2	60278032			RPC-2.5FSN2E	7E440004
RCD-3.0FSN2	60278033			RPC-3.0FSN2E	7E440005
		RCD-4.0FSN2	60278034	RPC-4.0FSN2E	7E440007
		RCD-5.0FSN2	60278035	RPC-5.0FSN2E	7E440008
				RPC-6.0FSN2E	7E440009

Panels (Optional)			
			
P-N23DNA	60297211	P-N46DNA	60297212

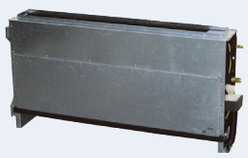
NOTE

The RCD models must be used in combination with the panels indicated above.

◆ RPI and RPIM indoor units

RPI						RPIM	
							
Indoor ducted unit							
Unit	Code	Unit	Code	Unit	Code	Unit	Code
RPI-1.5FSN4E	7E424015					RPIM-1.5FSN4E	7E430015
						RPIM-1.5FSN4E-DU	7E431015
		RPI-2.0FSN4E	7E424016				
		RPI-2.5FSN4E	7E424017				
		RPI-3.0FSN4E	7E424018				
		RPI-4.0FSN4E	7E424020				
		RPI-5.0FSN4E	7E424021				
		RPI-6.0FSN4E	7E424022				
				RPI-8.0FSN3E	7E424010		
				RPI-10.0FSN3E	7E424011		

◆ RPK, RPF and RPFI indoor units

RPK		RPF		RPFI	
					
Wall type		Floor type		Floor concealed type	
Unit	Code	Unit	Code	Unit	Code
RPK-1.5FSN3M	60278148	RPF-1.5FSN2E	7E450002	RPFI-1.5FSN2E	7E460002
RPK-1.5FSNH3M	60278156				
RPK-2.0FSN3M	60278149	RPF-2.0FSN2E	7E450003	RPFI-2.0FSN2E	7E460003
RPK-2.5FSN3M	60278150	RPF-2.5FSN2E	7E450004	RPFI-2.5FSN2E	7E460004
RPK-3.0FSN3M	60278151				
RPK-4.0FSN3M	60278152				
EV-1.5N (*)	60921791				

NOTE

(1) For RPK-1.5FSNH3M models only.

1.3.5 Product guide: complementary systems

◆ KPI energy / heat recovery unit

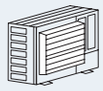
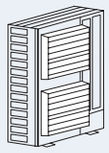
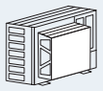
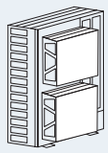
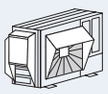
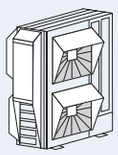
Complementary systems			
KPI			
			
Energy recovery		Heat recovery	
Unit	Code	Unit	Code
KPI-252E3E	70602000		
KPI-502E3E	70602001	KPI-502H3E	70602101
KPI-802E3E	70602002	KPI-802H3E	70602102
KPI-1002E3E	70602003	KPI-1002H3E	70602103
KPI-1502E3E	70602004	KPI-1502H3E	70602104
KPI-2002E3E	70602005	KPI-2002H3E	70602105

◆ DX-Interface

Control box	Expansion valve box
	

DX-Interface	
Model	Code
EXV-2.0E1	7E610900
EXV-2.5E1	7E610901
EXV-3.0E1	7E610902
EXV-4.0E1	7E610903
EXV-5.0E1	7E610904
EXV-6.0E1	7E610905
EXV-8.0E1	7E610906
EXV-10.0E1	7E610907

1.3.6 Outdoor unit accessory code list

Name	Description	Code	Figure
DBS-26	Drain discharge connection	60299192	
AG-264	Air flow guide (For 3HP)	-	
AG-335A	Air flow guide (For 4-10HP)	60291431	
WSP-264	Wind guard (For 3HP)	60291831	
WSP-335A	Wind guard (For 4-10HP)	60291432	
ASG-NP80F	Snow protection hood; air outlet (Zinc plate) (For 3HP)	-	
ASG-NP80FS2	Snow protection hood; air outlet (Stainless plate) (For 3HP)	-	
ASG-NP335F	Snow protection hood; air outlet (Zinc plate) (For 4-10HP)	60291433	
ASG-NP335FS2	Snow protection hood; air outlet (Stainless plate) (For 4-10HP)	-	
ASG-NP56B	Snow protection hood; air inlet of rear side (Zinc plate) (For 3HP)	-	
ASG-NP63BS2	Snow protection hood; air inlet of rear side (Stainless plate) (For 3HP)	-	
ASG-NP80B	Snow protection hood; air inlet of rear side (Zinc plate) (For 4-6HP)	60291773	
ASG-NP160BS2	Snow protection hood; air inlet of rear side (Stainless plate) (For 4-6HP)	60291774	
ASG-NP280B	Snow protection hood; air inlet of rear side (Zinc plate) (For 8/10HP)	-	
ASG-NP280BS2	Snow protection hood; air inlet of rear side (Stainless plate) (For 8/10HP)	60291778	
ASG-NP56L	Snow protection hood; air inlet of left side (Zinc plate) (For 3HP)	-	
ASG-NP63LS2	Snow protection hood; air inlet of left side (Stainless plate) (For 3HP)	-	
ASG-NP80L	Snow protection hood; air inlet of left side (Zinc plate) (For 4-6HP)	60291775	
ASG-NP160LS2	Snow protection hood; air inlet of left side (Stainless plate) (For 4-6HP)	60291776	
ASG-NP280L	Snow protection hood; air inlet of left side (Zinc plate) (For 8/10HP)	-	
ASG-NP280LS2	Snow protection hood; air inlet of left side (Stainless plate) (For 8/10HP)	60291780	

NOTE

HITACHI has a range of accessories and remote control systems that can be used with the UTOPIA outdoor units. Please, refer to the Controls Technical Catalogue.

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

2. Unit installation

Index

2.1. Safety summary 12

2.2. Transportation of outdoor unit 13

2.2.1. Hanging method 13

2.2.2. Handling unit (center of gravity) 14

2.3. Installation space (Initial check) 15

2.3.1. RAS-3HVRNS3 15

2.3.2. RAS-4H(V)RNS3E / RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E 16

2.3.3. RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 20

2.4. Place provision 24

2.4.1. Place provision for RAS-3HVRNS3 24

2.4.2. Place provision for RAS-4H(V)RNS3E / RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E / RAS-(8-10)HRNSE 26

2.5. Optional parts and installation 29

2.5.1. Optional parts and installation for RAS-3HVRNS3 29

2.5.2. Optional parts and installation RAS-4H(V)RNS3E / RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E 34

2.5.3. Optional parts and installation RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 38

2.1 Safety summary

DANGER

- ***Install the outdoor unit with sufficient clearance around it for operation and maintenance as shown in the next pages.***
- ***Install the outdoor unit where good ventilation is available.***
- ***Do not install the outdoor unit where exists a high level of oil mist salty air or sulphurous atmosphere.***
- ***Install the outdoor unit as far as practical (being at least 3 meters) from electromagnetic wave radiator such as medical equipment.***
- ***Keep clearance between units of more than 50 mm and avoid obstacles that could hamper air intake when installing more than one unit together.***
- ***Install the outdoor unit in the shade or not exposed to direct sunshine or direct radiation from high temperature heat source.***
- ***Do not install the outdoor unit in a place where a seasonal wind directly blows into the outdoor fan.***
- ***For cleaning use non-inflammable and nontoxic cleaning liquid. Use of inflammable agent may cause explosion or fire.***
- ***Work with sufficient ventilation for working in an enclosed space could cause oxygen deficiency. Toxic gas may be produced when cleaning agent is heated to high temperature by e.g. being exposed to fire.***
- ***Cleaning liquid shall be collected after cleaning.***
- ***Pay attention not to clamp cables when attaching the service cover to avoid electric shock or fire.***
- ***Avoid obstacles which may hamper the air intake or the air discharge flow.***
- ***Children must be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the electrical appliances.***
- ***Before obtaining access to terminals all supply circuits bust be disconnected.***

CAUTION

- *Check the foundation to be flat leveled and strongly enough.*
- *Install the unit in a restricted area not accessible by the general public.*
- *Aluminium fins have very sharp edges. Pay attention to the fins in order to avoid injury.*
- *Do not install the indoor units in a flammable environment to avoid a fire or an explosion.*
- *Check to ensure that the ceiling slab is strong enough. If not strong enough the indoor unit may fall down on you.*
- *Do not install the indoor units outdoor unit remote control switch and cable within approximately 3 meters from strong electromagnetic wave radiators such as medical equipment.*
- *Do not install the indoor units in a machinery shop or kitchen where vapour from oil or mist flows to the indoor units. The oil will deposit on the heat exchanger thereby reducing the indoor unit performance and may deform. In the worst case the oil damages the plastic parts of the indoor unit.*
- *To avoid any corrosive action to the heat exchangers do not install the indoor units in an acid or alkaline environment.*
- *When lifting or moving the indoor unit use appropriate slings to avoid damage and be careful not to damage the insulation material on units surface.*
- *This appliance must be used only by adult and capable people having received the technical information or instructions to handle properly and safely this appliance.*
- *Turn OFF all power switches before maintenance is performed.*
- *Do not start the cleaning procedures before 5 minutes of the stop of the unit.*

2.2 Transportation of outdoor unit

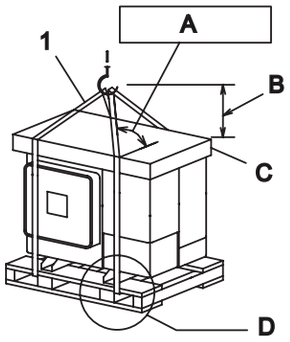
DANGER

Do not put any foreign material into the outdoor unit and check to ensure that none exists in the outdoor unit before the installation and test run. Otherwise a fire or failure will occur.

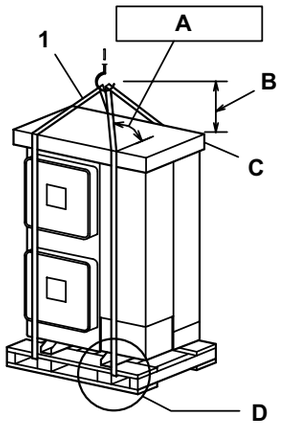
2.2.1 Hanging method

When hanging the unit ensure the balance of the unit check safety and lift it up smoothly. Do not remove any packing materials and hang the unit under packing condition with two ropes as shown below.

RAS-3HVRNS3
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E
RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E



RAS-(8/10)HRNSE



1. Wire rope.

A. Over 60º.

B. 0.7 to 1.0 m.

C. Do not remove the plastic band or the corrugate paper frame.

D. Pass the wire ropes through each lifting hole in the wooden base as shown.

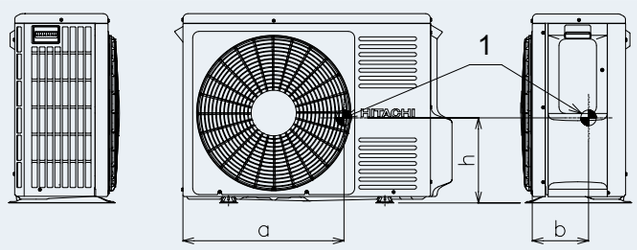
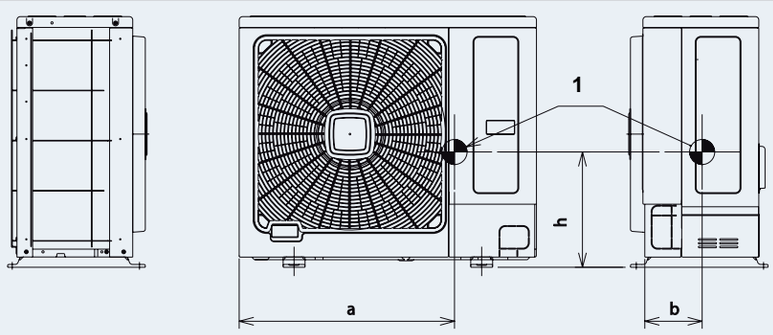
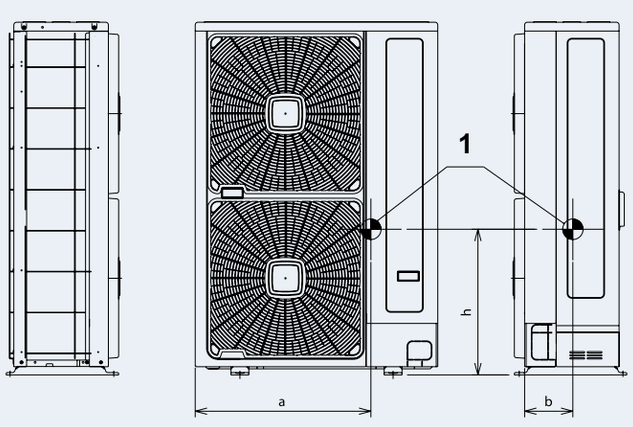
CAUTION

- *Lift the outdoor unit in its factory packaging with 2 wire ropes.*
- *For safety reasons ensure that the outdoor unit is lifted smoothly and does not lean.*
- *Do not attach lifting equipment to the plastic band or the corrugated paper frame because of the ropes will slip or break the materials.*
- *Ensure that the exterior of the unit is adequately protected with cloth or paper.*
- *Do not hold the unit with the handles or the air outlet parts. Steel plates may be deformed.*
- *Transport the products as close to the installation location as practical before unpacking.*

2.2.2 Handling unit (center of gravity)

When the unit is lifted pay attention to the following points:

1 Do not remove the wooden base until its final position.
2 To prevent the unit from overturning, pay attention to the center of gravity as shown in the following figure:

RAS-3HVRNS3	a. 515 mm b. 180 mm h. 275 mm	
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E	a. 590 mm b. 180 mm h. 360 mm	
RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E	a. 630 mm b. 190 mm h. 360 mm	
RAS-(8/10)HRNSE	For 8 HP: a. 325 mm b. 206 mm h. 565 mm For 10HP: a. 325 mm b. 213 mm h. 585 mm	

1. Center of gravity

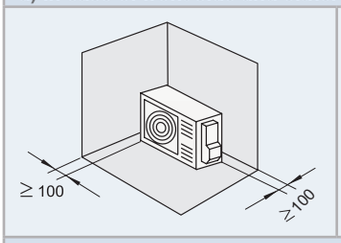
3 Due to the weight of these units, at least two persons are needed to move it.

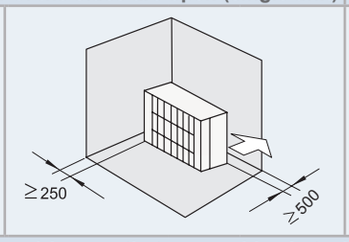
2.3 Installation space (Initial check)

2.3.1 RAS-3HVRNS3

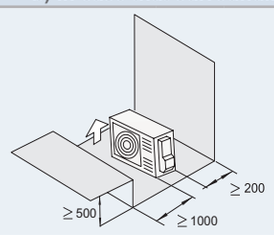
(mm)

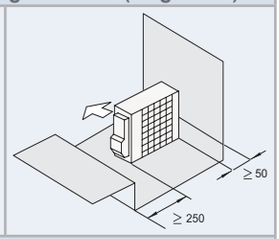
a) In case of front side and either of the sides are open (single unit)



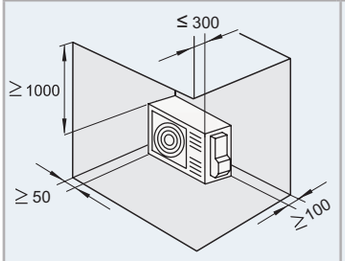


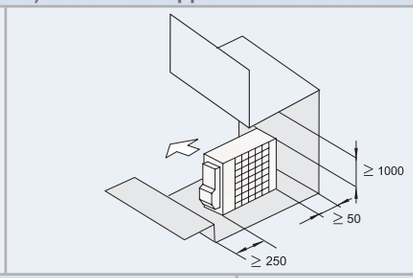
b) In case that surrounding wall exist (single unit)

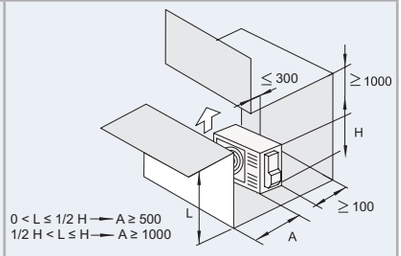




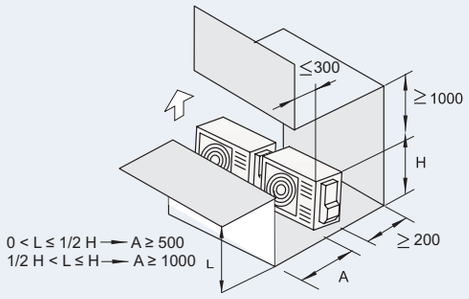
c) In case that upper side obstacles exist (single unit)



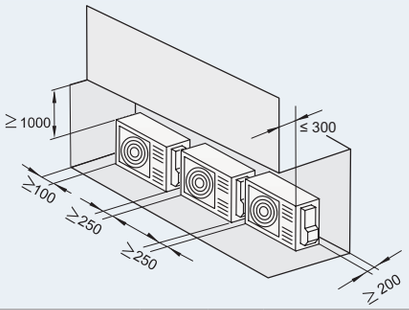




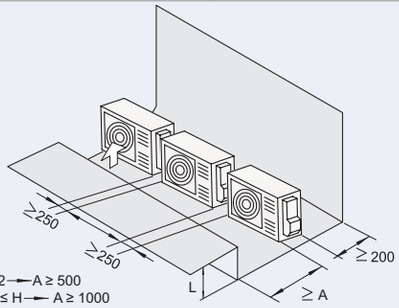
d) In case that upper side obstacles exist (serial units)

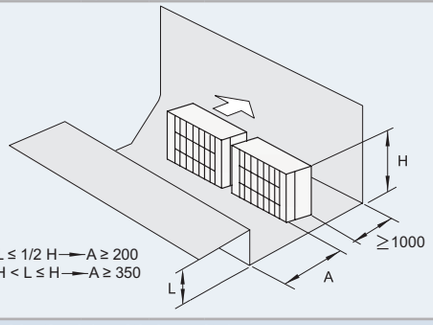


e) In case of front side and either of the sides are open (serial units)

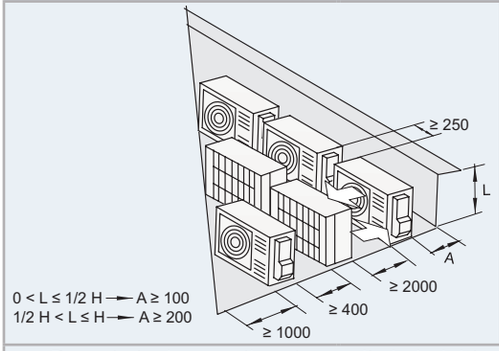


f) In case that surrounding wall exist (serial units)

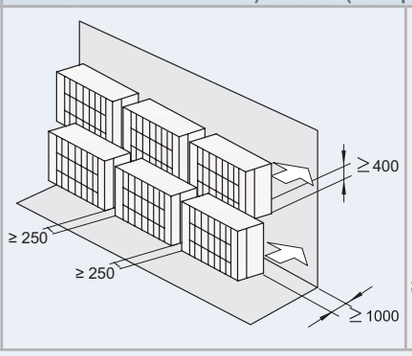


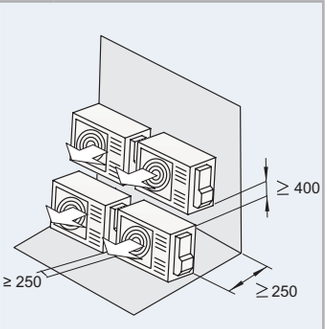


g) Horizontal (multiple units)



h) Vertical (multiple units)

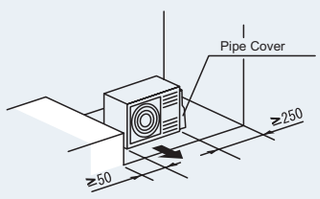
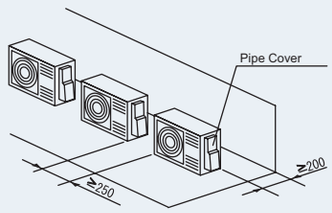
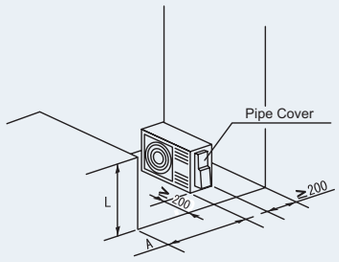
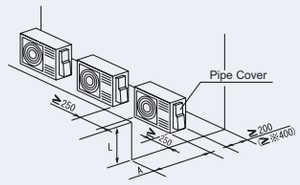
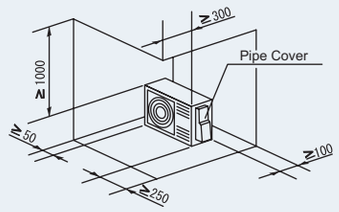
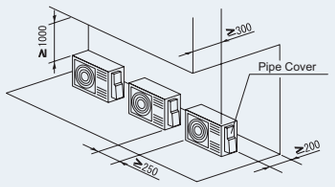
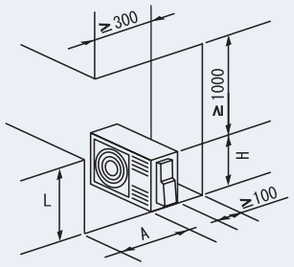
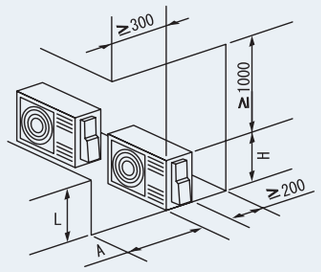




- Do not stack more than two units in height.
- Close gap (*) to avoid recirculating discharge air flow.

2.3.2 RAS-4H(V)RNS3E / RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E

(mm)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Blocked in Inlet Side</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Upper Side Open</td></tr>
<tr><td>Single Installation</td><td>Multiple Installation (Two units or more)</td></tr>
<tr><td> 
</td><td> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side.</td><td>Allow 250 mm of space between units. Leave open both right and left sides.</td></tr>
<tr><td> 
</td><td> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Leave open both right and left sides.
Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side.</td><td>Be sure to use the fan direction guide.
Allow 250 mm of service space between units. Leave open both right and left sides. When subject to direct sunlight on the back wall ensure the length marked with ※ be 400 or greater.
Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Upper Side Blocked</td></tr>
<tr><td>Single Installation</td><td>Multiple Installation (Two units or more)</td></tr>
<tr><td> 
</td><td> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fifteen mm of space is acceptable for one of the lateral sides.
Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side.</td><td>Allow 250 mm of service space between units. Leave open both right and left sides.
Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side.</td></tr>
<tr><td> 
</td><td> 
</td></tr>
</table>

(mm)

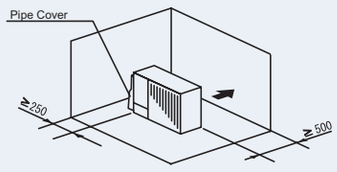
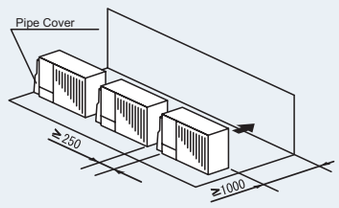
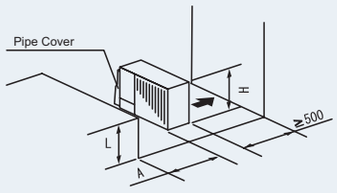
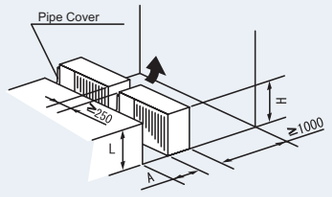
Blocked in Inlet Side	
Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Leave open both right and left sides. Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side.	Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Allow 250 mm of service space between units. Leave open both right and left sides. Serial installation allowed up to two units. Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side.

The length A is as show in the following table:

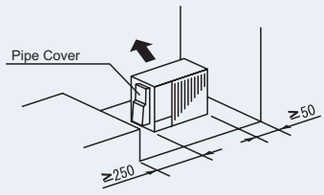
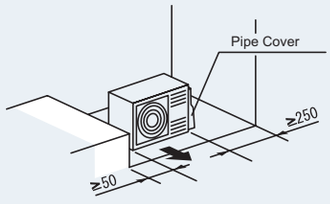
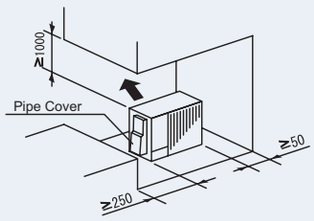
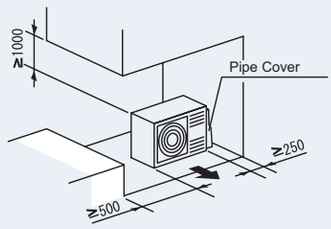
L	A
0<L=1/2H	500 or greater
1/2H<L≤H	1000 or greater

When L > H use a base for outdoor unit to make L ≤ H.

Close the base not to allow the outlet air bypassed.

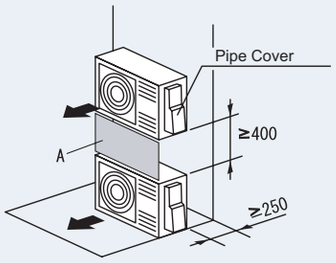
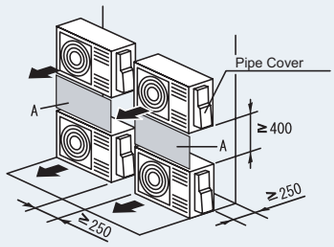
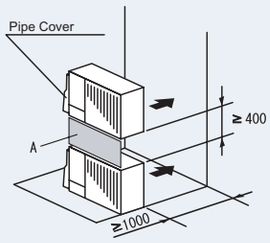
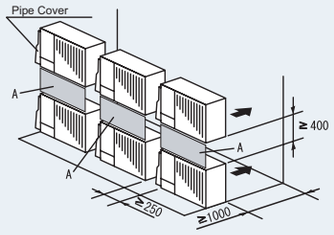
Outlet Side Blocked	
Upper Side Open	
Single Installation	Multiple Installation (Two units or more)
	
Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side.	Allow 250 mm of service space between units. Both right and left sides shall be open.
	
Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Leave open both right and left sides.	Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Allow 250 mm of service space between units. Serial installation allowed up to two units. Leave open both right and left sides.
The length A is as show in the following table: L: 0<L=1/2H → A: 100 or greater L: 1/2H<L≤H → A: 200 or greater When L > H use a base for outdoor unit to make L ≤ H. Close the base not to allow the outlet air bypassed.	The length A is as show in the following table: L: 0<L=1/2H → A: 150 or greater L: 1/2H<L≤H → A: 250 or greater When L > H use a base for outdoor unit to make L ≤ H. Close the base not to allow the outlet air bypassed.

(mm)

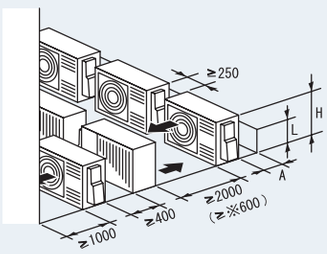
Lateral Side Blocked	
Upper Side Open	
Single Installation	
	
Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side.	Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side.
Upper Side Blocked	
	
Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side.	Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 18 04/06/2013 18:13:14

(mm)

Single Installation	Multiple Installation
Blocked in Inlet Side	
	
Close the part A not to allow the outlet air bypassed. Install to avoid the drain water from upper unit falling on the lower unit. Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side. Allow 400 mm of service space above the top board.	Allow 250 mm of service space between units. Serial sideways installation allowed up to two units. Leave open both right and left sides. Close the part A not to allow the outlet air bypassed. Install to avoid the drain water from upper unit falling on the lower unit. Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side. Allow 400 mm of service space above the top board.
Outlet Side Blocked	
	
Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Close the part A not to allow the outlet air bypassed. Install to avoid the drain water from upper unit falling on the lower unit. Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side. Allow 400 mm of service space above the top board.	Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Allow 250 mm of service space between units. Serial side way installation allowed but leave open both right and left sides. Close the part A not to allow the outlet air bypassed. Install to avoid the drain water from upper unit falling on the lower unit. Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side. Allow 400 mm of service space above the top board.

Multiple Installation in Multiple Rows



Ensure 250 mm or more of the side space on the pipe cover side. Allow 400 mm of service space above the top board.

The length A is as show in the following table:

L	A
0<L=1/2H	150 or greater
1/2H<L≤H	250 or greater

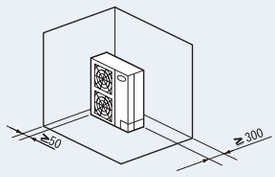
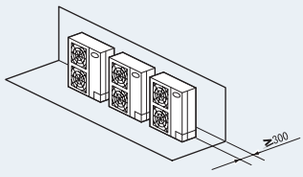
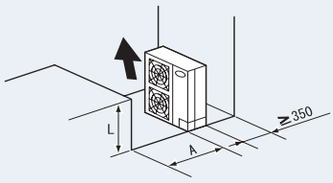
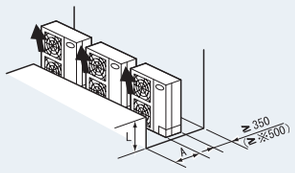
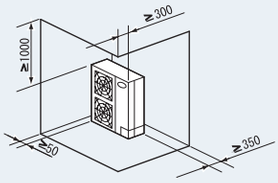
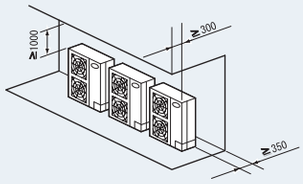
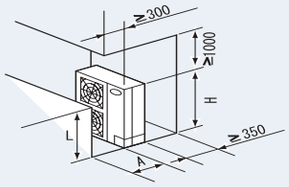
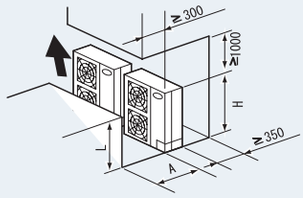
When L > H use a base for outdoor unit to make L ≤ H. Close the base not to allow the outlet air bypassed. Be sure to use the fan direction guide in order to ensure the length marked with ※.

NOTE

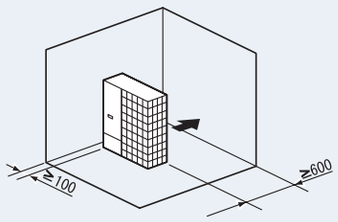
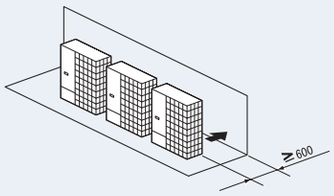
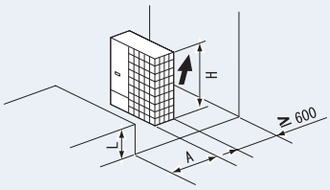
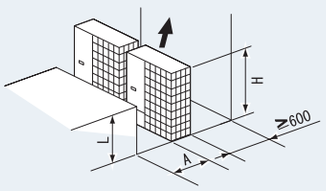
- *Do not stack more than two units in height.*
- *Close gap (*) to avoid recirculating discharge air flow.*

2.3.3 RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

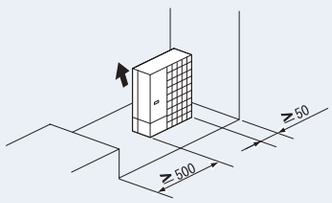
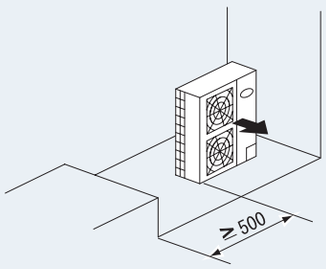
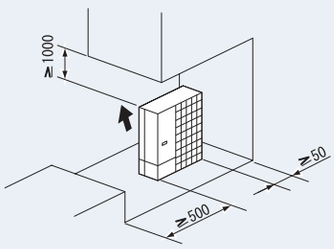
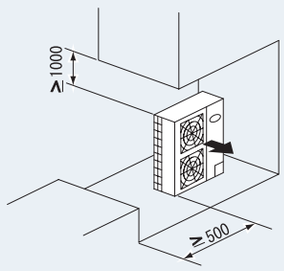
(mm)

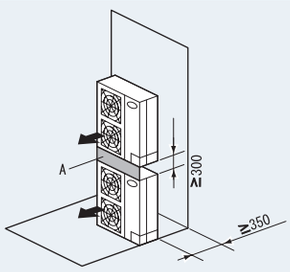
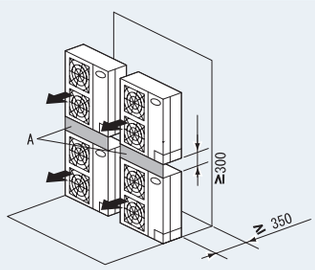
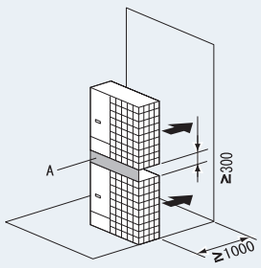
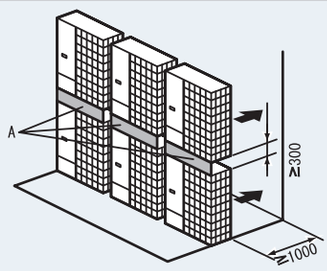
<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Blocked in Inlet Side</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Upper Side Open</td></tr>
<tr><td>Single Installation</td><td>Multiple Installation (Two units or more)</td></tr>
<tr><td> 
</td><td> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>100 mm or more of the side space is acceptable on the service cover side. 200 or more of the back space is acceptable when the right and left sides are open.</td><td>Allow 100 mm of space between units. Leave open both right and left sides.</td></tr>
<tr><td> 
</td><td> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Leave open both right and left sides.</td><td>Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Allow 100 mm of space between units. Leave open both right and left sides.
When subject to direct sunlight on the back wall ensure the length marked with ※ be 500 or greater.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Upper Side Blocked</td></tr>
<tr><td>Single Installation</td><td>Multiple Installation (Two units or more)</td></tr>
<tr><td> 
</td><td> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>100 mm or more of the side space is acceptable on the service cover side.</td><td>Allow 100 mm of space between units. Leave open both right and left sides.</td></tr>
<tr><td> 
</td><td> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Be sure to use the fan direction guide.
Leave open both right and left sides.</td><td>Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Allow 100 mm of space between units. Leave open both right and left sides.
Serial installation allowed up to two units.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">The length A is as shown in the following table:
<table>
<tr><th>L</th><th>A</th></tr>
<tr><td>0 < L ≤ 1/2H</td><td>600 or greater</td></tr>
<tr><td>1/2H < L≤ H</td><td>1200 or greater</td></tr>
</table>
Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Allow 100 mm of space between units. Leave open both right and left sides. Serial installation allowed up to two units.</td></tr>
</table>

(mm)

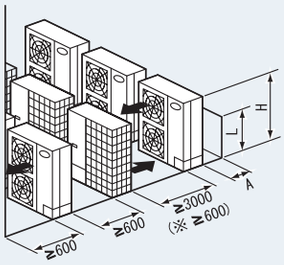
<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Outlet Side Blocked</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">Upper Side Open</th></tr>
<tr><th>Single Installation</th><th>Multiple Installation (Two units or more)</th></tr>
<tr><td> 
</td><td> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Allow 100 mm of space between units. Both right and left sides shall be open.</td></tr>
<tr><td> 
</td><td> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Leave open both right and left sides.</td><td>Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Allow 100 mm of space between units. Serial installation allowed up to two units. Leave open both right and left sides.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The length A is as shown in the following table:
<table>
<tr><th>L</th><th>A</th></tr>
<tr><td>0 < L ≤ 1/2H</td><td>≤ 200</td></tr>
<tr><td>1/2H < L≤ H</td><td>≤ 300</td></tr>
</table>
When L > H use a base for outdoor unit to make L ≤ H.
Close the base not to allow the outlet air bypassed.</td><td>The length A is as shown in the following table:
<table>
<tr><th>L</th><th>A</th></tr>
<tr><td>0 < L ≤ 1/2H</td><td>≤ 250</td></tr>
<tr><td>1/2H < L≤ H</td><td>≤ 350</td></tr>
</table>
When L > H use a base for outdoor unit to make L ≤ H.
Close the base not to allow the outlet air bypassed.</td></tr>
</table>

(mm)

Lateral Side Blocked	
Upper Side Open	
Single Installation	
	
Upper Side Blocked	
	

Stack installation (allowed up to 2 Units)	
Upper Side Open	
Single Installation	Multiple Installation
	
Close the part A not to allow the outlet air bypassed. Install to avoid the drain water from upper unit falling on the lower unit.	Allow 100 mm of space between units. Serial sideways installation allowed up to two units. Leave open both right and left sides. Close the part A not to allow the outlet air bypassed. Install to avoid the drain water from upper unit falling on the lower unit.
Upper Side Blocked	
Single Installation	Multiple Installation
	
Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Close the part A not to allow the outlet air bypassed. Install to avoid the drain water from upper unit falling on the lower unit.	Be sure to use the fan direction guide. Allow 100 mm of space between units. Serial side way installation allowed. but leave open both right and left sides. Close the part A not to allow the outlet air bypassed. Install to avoid the drain water from upper unit falling on the lower unit.

(mm)

Multiple Installation in Multiple Rows	
Serial Installation in Multiple Rows (E.g. Rooftop)	
	Allow approx. 100 mm of space from the side unit. Leave open both right and left sides. The length A is as shown in the following table:

L	A
0 < L ≤ 1/2H	≤ 200
1/2H < L≤ H	≤ 300

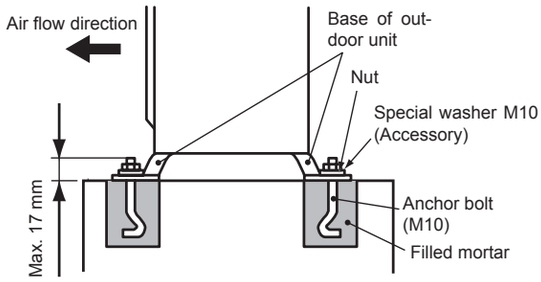
NOTE

When L > H use a base for outdoor unit to make L = H. Close the base not to allow the outlet air bypassed. Be sure to use the fan direction guide in order to ensure the length marked with.

2.4 Place provision

2.4.1 Place provision for RAS-3HVRNS3

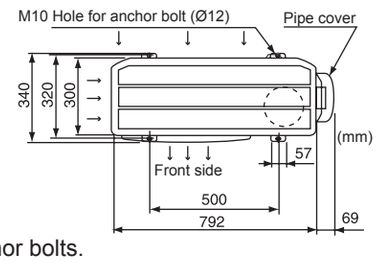
1 Secure the outdoor unit with the anchor.



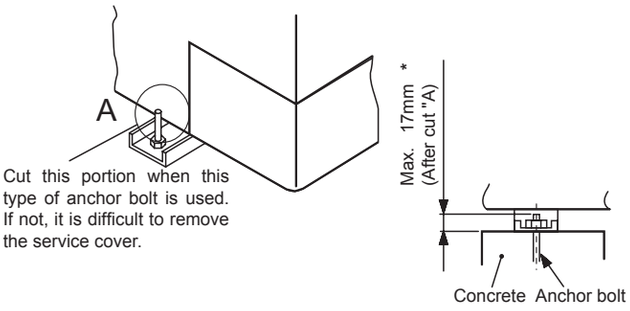
Fix the outdoor unit to the anchor bolts by special washer of factory-supplied accessory.

2 When installing the outdoor unit fix the unit by anchor bolts.Regarding the location of fixing holes.

(mm)

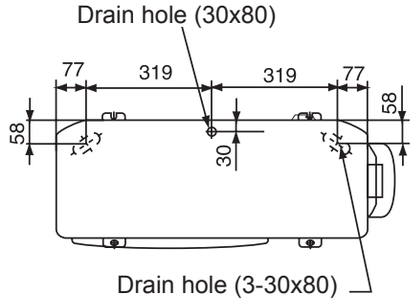


Example of fixing outdoor unit by anchor bolts.



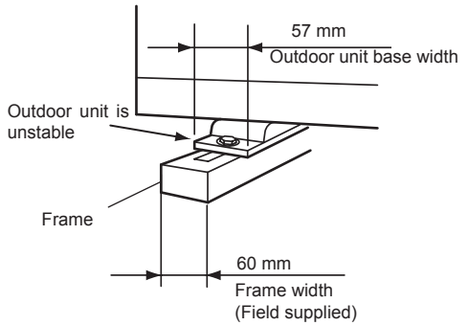
3 Provide an adequate drainage around the foundation. When installing the unit on a roof or a veranda drain water may turn to ice in a cold morning. Therefore avoid draining in an area where people often use because it is slippery. In case of installing such a place provide the additional drainage around the foundation.

(mm)

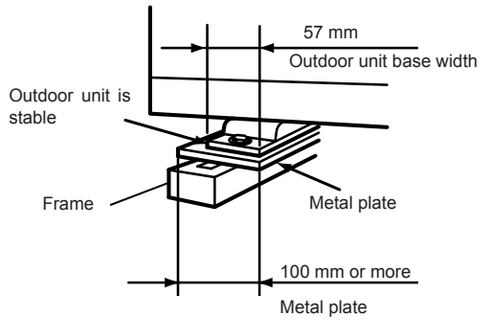


The whole of the base of the outdoor unit should be installed on a foundation. When using vibration-proof mat it should also be positioned the same way. When installing the outdoor unit on a field-supplied frame use metal plates to adjust the frame width for stable installation as shown in Figure.

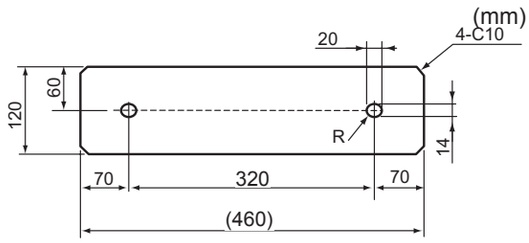
INCORRECT



CORRECT



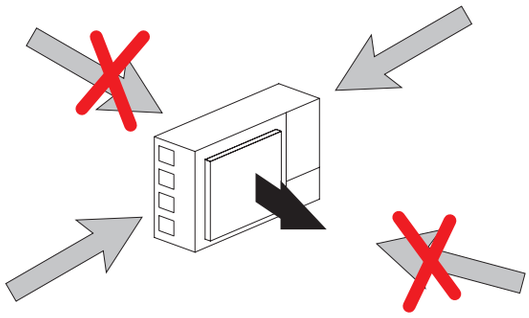
- Recommended Metal Plate Size:
  - (Field-Supplied) Material: Hot-Rolled Mild Steel.
  - Plate (SPHC) Plate Thickness: 4.5 T.



Installing location where the unit will be exposed to strong wind

Follow the instructions below to install on the rooftop or a location without surrounding buildings where strong wind is expected against the product.

1 Choose a location where the outlet or inlet side of the product will not be exposed to strong wind.
2 When the outlet is exposed to strong wind: Direct strong wind may cause lack of air flow and adversely affect to normal function.



CAUTION

Excessive strong wind against the outdoor unit outlet may cause inverse rotation and damage the fan and motor.

2.4.2 Place provision for RAS-4H(V)RNS3E / RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E / RAS-(8-10)HRNSE

◆ Concrete foundation

- Foundation could be on flat and it is recommended to be 100-300 mm higher than ground level.
- Install a drainage around foundation for smooth drain.
- When installing the outdoor unit fix it by M10 anchor bolts.
- When installing the unit on a roof or a veranda drain water sometimes turns into ice on a cold morning. Therefore avoid draining in an area that people often use because it may become slippery.

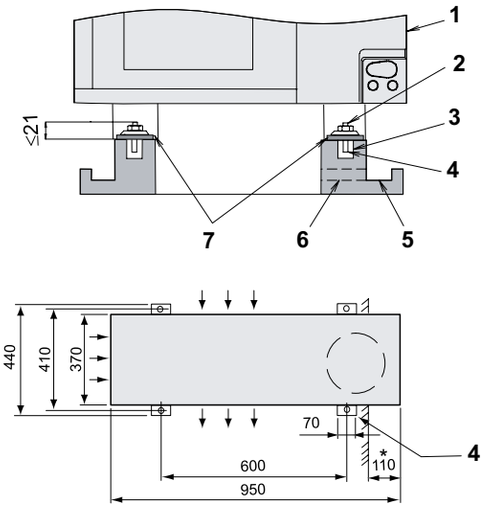
Metal plate

1 Outdoor unit.
2 Cut this portion of bolt If not it's difficult to remove Service cover.
3 Mortar hole (Ø100 x Depth 150).
4 Anchor bolt M10 (Ø12.5 Hole).
5 Drainage (Wide 100 x Depth 150).
6 Drainage.
7 Vibration-proof rubber.

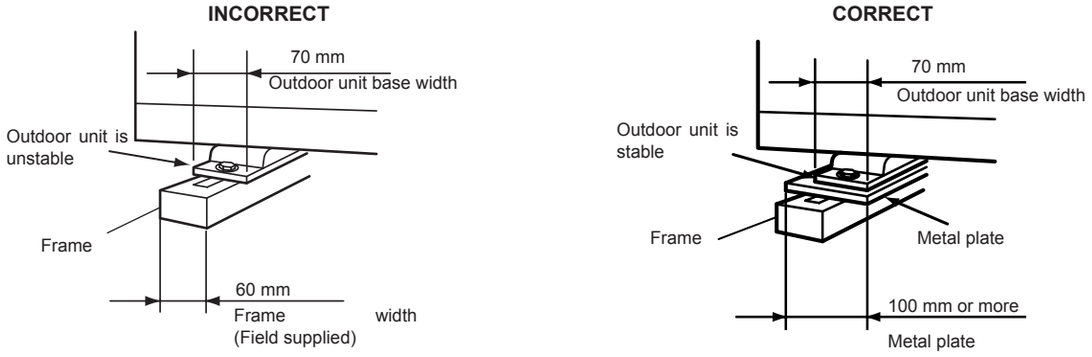
NOTE

(*): Space for downward piping space.

(mm)



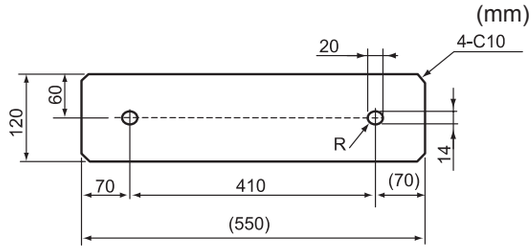
The whole base of the outdoor unit should be installed on a foundation. When using vibration-proof material it should also be positioned in the same place. When installing the outdoor unit on a fieldsupplied frame use metal plates to adjust the frame width for stable installation as shown in the figure below.



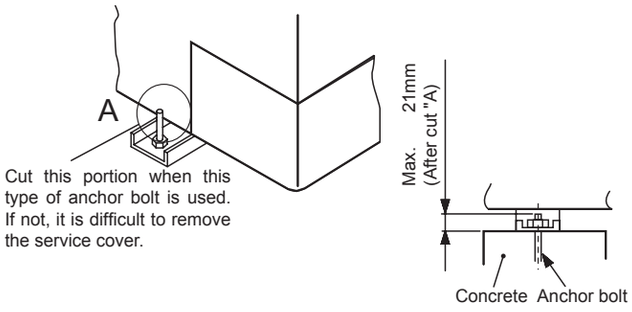
Recommended Metal Plate Size

- (Field-Supplied) Material: Hot-Rolled Mild Steel.
- Plate (SPHC) Plate Thickness: 4.5 T.

(mm)



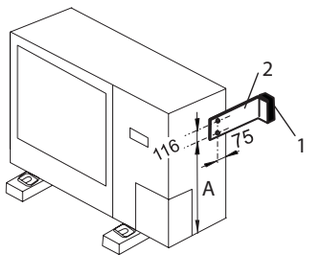
◆ Example of fixing outdoor unit by anchor bolts



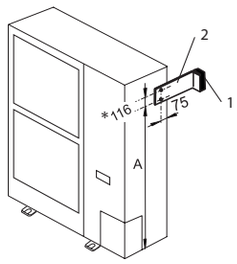
◆ Fix unit to the wall

1 Fix the unit onto the wall as shown in the figures (Field supplied bracket).
2 Secure the foundation to avoid noise and warping.
3 To avoid vibrations transferring to the building use a rubber mat.

RAS-4H(V)RNS3E
RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E



RAS-(8/10)HRNSE



(mm)

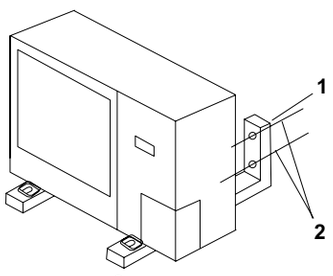
1. Rubber material.
2. Fixing plate.

Model	RAS-4H(V)RNS3E and RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E	RAS-(8/10)HRNSE
A (mm)	796	1109

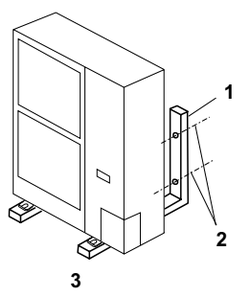
◆ Suspended unit

1 Suspend the unit as shown in the figures.
2 Ensure that wall can withstand the weight of the outdoor unit indicated on the specifications plate.
3 It is advisable that each foot support should bear the full weight of the unit (in order take account of applied stress fatigue when unit is operating).

RAS-4H(V)RNS3E
RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E



RAS-(8/10)HRNSE



1. Wall support.
2. Anchor bolts.
3. Supplied by the installer.

⚠ CAUTION

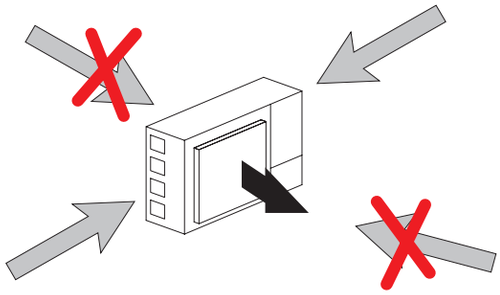
- *Follow these installation procedures carefully*
  - *The installation must be done so as to ensure that the outdoor unit does not lean vibrate make a noise or fall in the event of strong gusts of wind or earthquakes. Calculate the resistance to vibration (caused by earthquakes) to guarantee that the installation is sturdy enough to prevent falls. Secure the unit with cables (field-supplied) when installing the unit in a place without walls or wind protection and where it is likely to be exposed to gusts of wind.*
  - *When using the vibration-proof rubber mat secure it at four points on the front and back.*

◆ Installing location where the unit will be exposed to strong wind

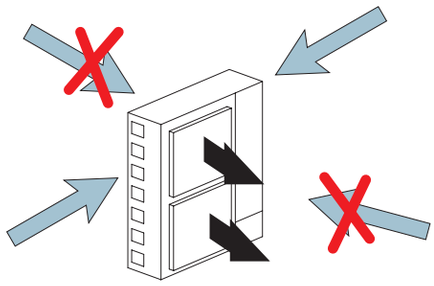
Follow the instructions below to install on the roof or in a place which is not surrounded by buildings and where the product may be buffeted by strong winds.

1 Select a place where neither the inlet or outlet side of the outdoor unit are exposed to strong winds.
2 When the outlet is exposed to strong winds: Strong direct winds may cause a lack of air flow and negative effects on the unit operation.

RAS-4H(V)RNS3E
RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E



RAS-(8/10)HRNSE



⚠ CAUTION

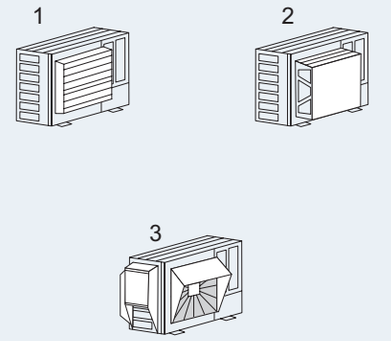
An excessively strong wind blowing against the outlet of the outdoor unit may cause reverse rotation and damage to the fan motor.

2.5 Optional parts and installation

2.5.1 Optional parts and installation for RAS-3HVRNS3

◆ Air flow guide wind guard and snow protection hood

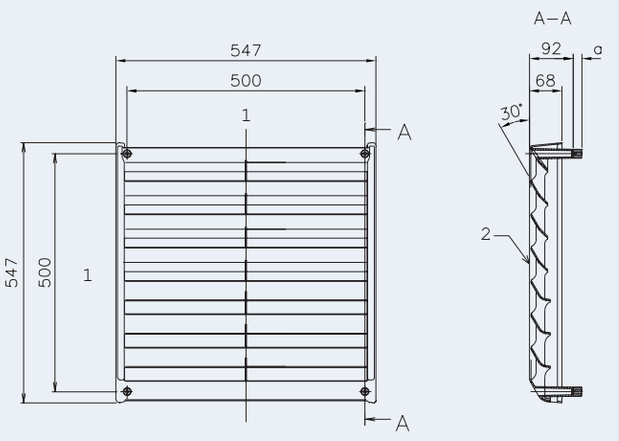
Optional parts			Model
Air flow guide			AG-264
Wind guard			WSP-264
Snow protection hood	Zinc Plate	Air outlet	ASG-NP80F
		Air inlet of rear side	ASG-NP56B
		Air inlet of side face	ASG-NP56L
	Stainless plate (NSSC180)	Air outlet	ASG-NP80FS2
		Air inlet of rear side	ASG-NP63B52
		Air inlet of side face	ASG-NP63LS2



1. Air flow guide
2. Wind Guard
3. Snow protection hood

◆ Air flow guide

Model	AG-264	(mm)
Quantity	1 per unit	
Air discharge direction	Upward (downward) left & right	
Material	Weather proof polypropylene resin	
Color	Gray	
Weight	1.4 kg	
Accessories	Fixing screw 4x [M5 (SUS) x 12]+4x [M5 (SUS) x 30] Installation manual Self-screw 2x [M4 x 13]	
Installation restriction	"Wind Guard" or "Snow protection hood" is not available to install with air flow guide. ("Guard net" is available to be installed together.)	



1. Mounting dimension
2. Air flow guide

Attaching example of air flow guide

- Attach the air flow guide to the air discharge grille with four (4) screws (supplied).
- The fixing holes are located at 4 positions on the grille. (Screw tightening torque 2.4 3.1 N.m).
- Do not remove the air discharge grille for air flow guide installation.

CAUTION

If the air guide is installed without discharge grille it may cause injury due to rotating fan.

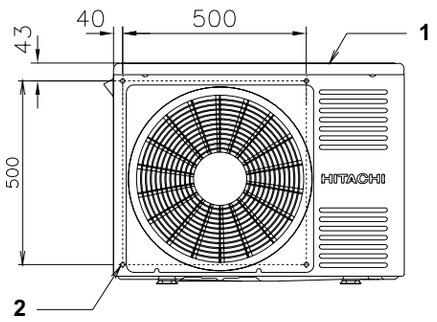
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 29 04/06/2013 18:13:18

Locations of fixing holes

(mm)

The holes Location shall be made by using self-screws (M4x13) and later shall be used SUS screw (M5x12) for fixing air flow guide.

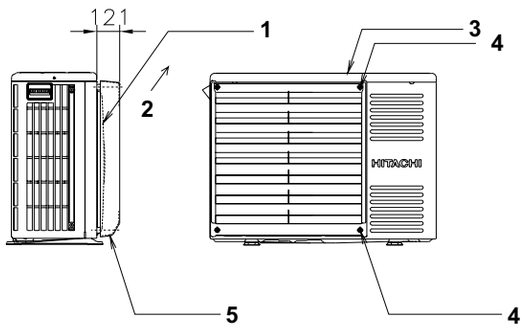
1 Outdoor Unit.
2 Hole (4 locations).



One flow guide installation

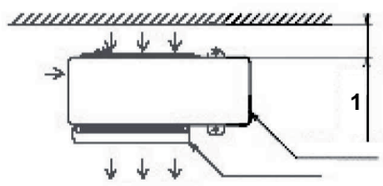
(mm)

1 Air discharge grille.
2 Air flow.
3 Outdoor unit.
4 M5 fixing screw x4 (Accessories).
5 Air flow guide.



Service space (In case of upward air discharge)

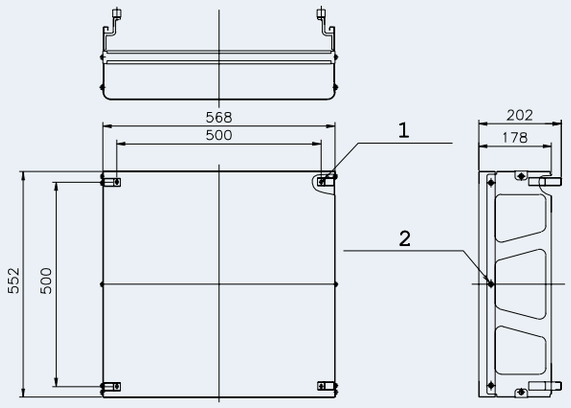
- In case of right and left sides air discharge enough space for air discharge is required.
- The downward air discharge is also available. In such case install the base under the unit to secure enough space for air discharge.
- In case of serial units installation air discharge should be upward.



1 Min.150 mm.
2 Outdoor unit.
3 Air flow guide.
4 Passage side.

◆ Wind guard

Specifications

Model	WSP-264	(mm)
Quantity	1 per unit	
Material	Galvanized sheet metal + baked painting	
Color	UTOPIA Beige	
Weight	4.0 kg	
Accessories	Fixing screw x 4 [M5 (SUS) x 30]- Unit Fixing Screw x 10 [M5 (SUS) x 12]- Wind Ward Installation manual	
Installation restriction	"Guard net" "Air flow guide" or "Snow protection hood" is not available to install with Wind guard	1. 4-6x10 Long hole. 2. 5 (both sides) - M5 screw (attachement).

2

Attaching example of air wind guard

- Attach the air flow guide to the air discharge grille with four (4) screws (supplied).
- The fixing holes are located at 4 positions on the grille. (Screw tightening torque 2.4~3.1 N.m).
- Do not remove the air discharge grille for air flow guide installation.

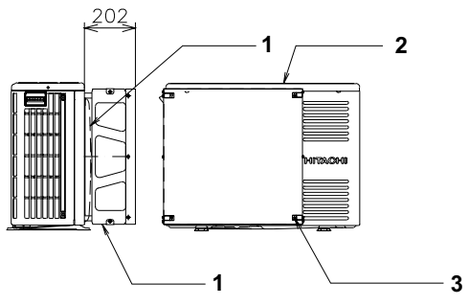
⚠ CAUTION

If the air guide is installed without discharge grille it may cause injury due to rotating fan.

Two windguard covers installation

(mm)

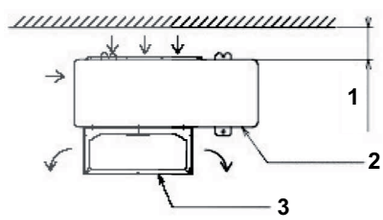
1 Air discharge grille.
2 Outdoor unit.
3 M5 fixing screw x4 (Accessories).



Service space

- Both sides of the outdoor unit should be open.
- No obstacles should be placed in the air discharge side.

1 Min.150 mm.
2 Outdoor unit.
3 Wind guard.

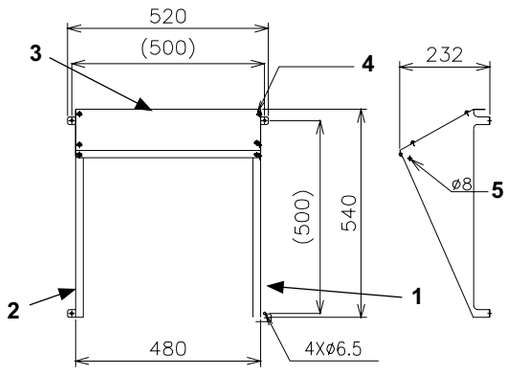


◆ Snow protection hood

Air discharge hood

(mm)

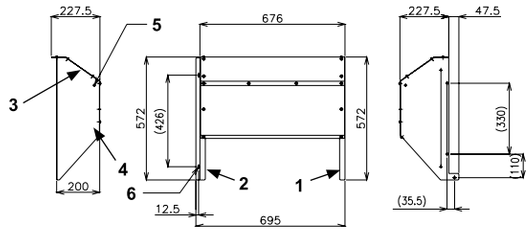
Nº	Part name	Quantity
1	Right side plate	1
2	Left side plate	1
3	Front panel	1
4	Fixing screw (Accessories)	
5	Hole for safety wire rope to prevent overturning	



Rear suction hood

(mm)

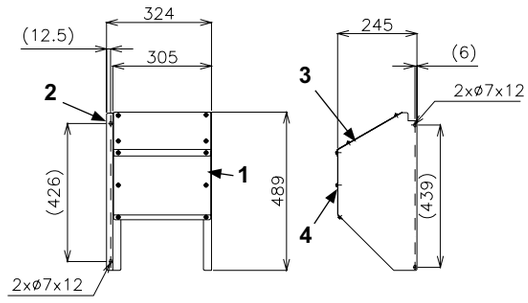
Nº	Part name	Quantity
1	Right side plate	1
2	Left side plate	1
3	Upper front panel (Upside)	1
4	Upper front panel (Downside)	1
5	Hole for safety wire rope to prevent overturning	
6	Fixing screw (Accessories)	



Left suction hood

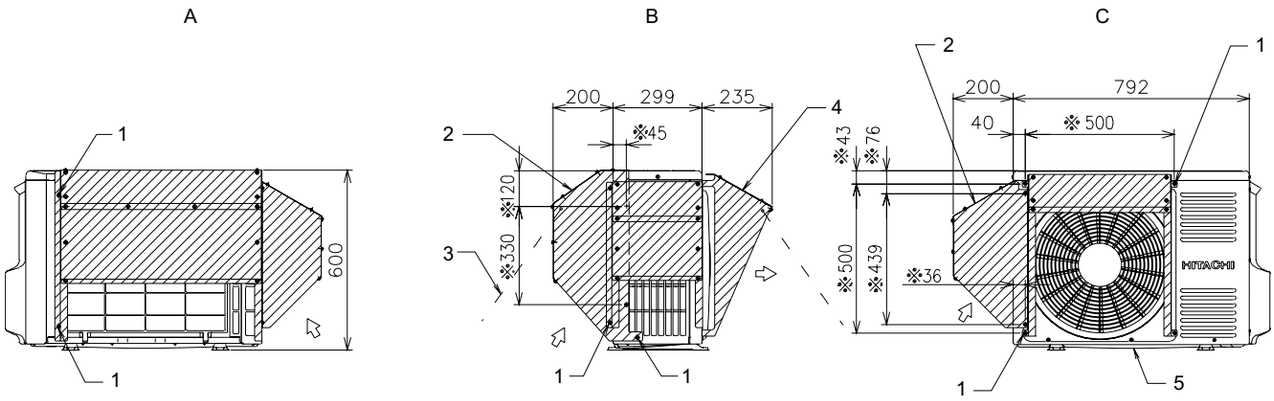
(mm)

Nº	Part name	Quantity
1	Right side plate	1
2	Left side plate	1
3	Upper front panel (Upside)	1
4	Upper front panel (Downside).	1



Attaching example of snow protection hood

(mm)



1. Fixing screw (accessories).
2. Air inlet hood.
3. Wire rope (optional for over turning protection).
4. Air discharge hood.
5. Outdoor unit.

A. Rear side.

B. Left side.

C Front side.

NOTE

The holes locations marked with a mark shall be made by using sel screw (M4X13) and later shall be used SUS Screw for fixing protection hood.

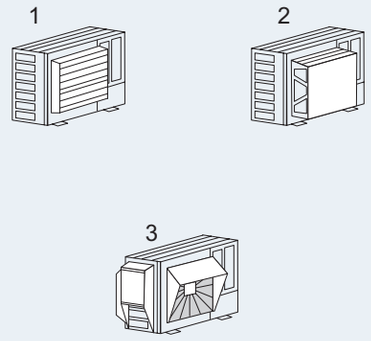
Specifications of snow protection hood

Product name		Air discharge hood		Rear suction hood		Left suction hood	
Model		ASG-NP80F	ASG-NP80FS2	ASG-NP56B	ASG-NP63BS2	ASG-NP56L	ASG-NP63LS2
Quantity		1 per unit					
Material		Bonderized steel sheet Iron	Stainless (NSSC180)	Bonderized steel sheet Iron	Stainless (NSSC180)	Bonderized steel sheet Iron	Stainless (NSSC180)
Color		Gray (1.0Y8.5/0.5 or approximation)	—	Gray (1.0Y8.5/0.5 or approximation)	—	Gray (1.0Y8.5/0.5 or approximation)	—
Weight		3 kg		6 kg		3 kg	
Assembling		Knockingdown parts (assembled at field)					
Components	Hood	For air discharge part x 1		For rear side air intake x 1		For left side air intake x 1	
	Unit Fixing screw	4 (M5x12 tapping screw)		5 (M5x12 tapping screw)		4 (M5x12 tapping screw)	
	Hood Fixing screw (SUS)	6 (M5x12 tapping screw)	6 (M5x14)	14 (M5x12 tapping screw)	14 (M5x14)	10 (M5x12 tapping screw)	10 (M5x14)
	Self-screw	2 (M4x13)		2 (M4x13)		2 (M4x13)	
		Installation manual					
Installation restriction		Installation with “Guard net” “Wind guard” or is not available		Installation with “Guard net” is not available			
Safety wire rope for overturning prevention (optional parts)		ASG-SW20A					

2.5.2 Optional parts and installation RAS-4H(V)RNS3E / RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E

◆ Air flow guide wind guard and snow protection hood

Optional parts			Model
Air flow guide			AG-335A
Wind guard			WSP-335A
Snow protection hood	Zinc plate	Air outlet	ASG-NP335F
		Air inlet of rear side	ASG-NP80B
		Air inlet of side face	ASG-NP80L
	Stainless plate (SUS304)	Air outlet	ASG-NP335F52
		Air inlet of rear side	ASG-NP160BS2
		Air inlet of side face	ASG-NP160LS2



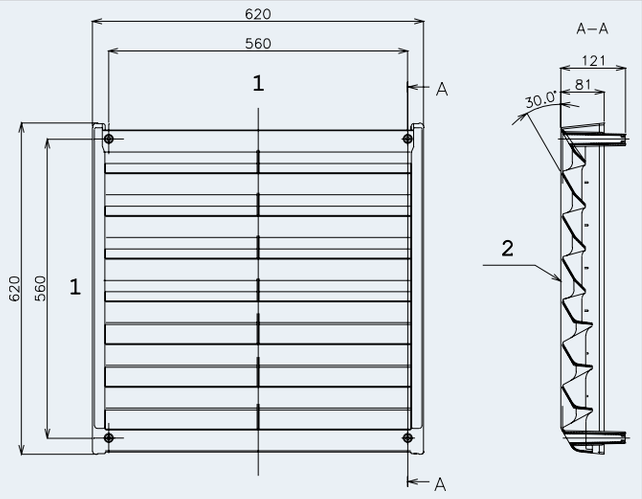
1. Air flow guide
2. Wind Guard
3. Snow protection hood

◆ Air flow guide

Specifications

Model	AG-335A
Quantity	1 per unit
Air discharge direction	Upward (downward) left & right
Material	Weather proof polypropylene resin
Color	Gray
Weight	1.9 kg
Accessories	Fixing screw x 4 [M5 (SUS) x 20] Installation manual
Installation restriction	"Wind Guard" or "Snow protection hood" is not available to install with air flow guide. ("Guard net" is available to be installed together.)

(mm)



1. Mounting dimension
2. Air flow guide

Attaching example of air flow guide

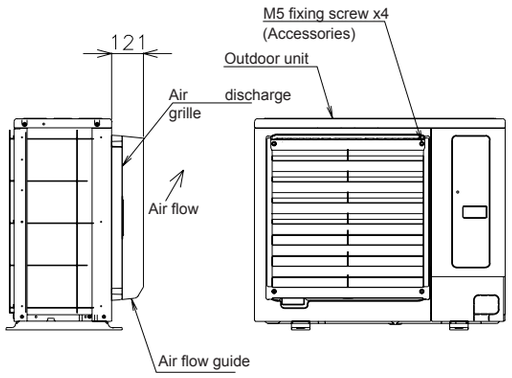
- Attach the air flow guide to the air discharge grille with four (4) screws (supplied).
- The fixing holes are located at 4 positions on the grille. (Screw tightening torque 2.4~3.1 N.m).
- Do not remove the air discharge grille for air flow guide installation.

⚠CAUTION

If the air guide is installed without discharge grille it may cause injury due to rotating fan.

One flow guide installation

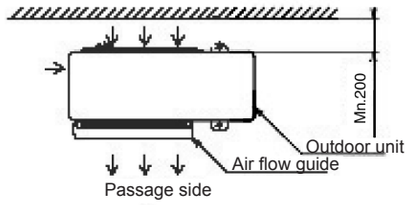
(mm)



Service space (In case of upward air discharge)

(mm)

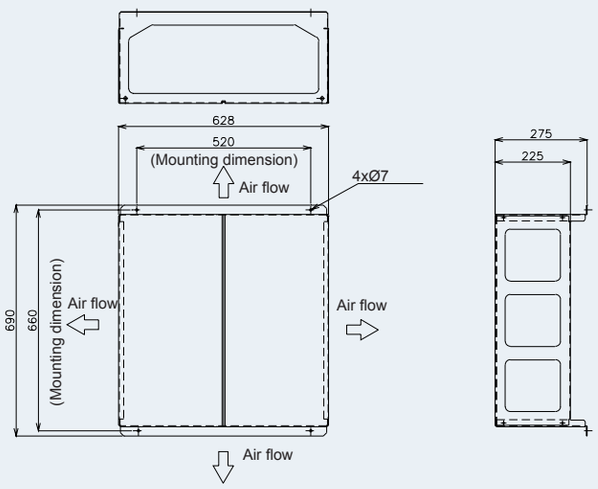
- In case of right and left sides air discharge enough space for air discharge is required.
- The downward air discharge is also available. In such case install the base under the unit to secure enough space for air discharge.
- In case of serial units installation air discharge should be upward.



◆ Wind guard

Specifications

Model	WSP-335A	(mm)
Quantity	1 per unit	
Material	Galvanized sheet metal + baked painting	
Color	Gray (1.0Y8.5/0.5)	
Weight	5.5 kg	
Accessories	Fixing screw x 4 [M5 (SUS) x 12] Installation manual	
Installation restriction	“Guard net” “Air flow guide” or “Snow protection hood” is not available to install with Wind guard	



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 35 04/06/2013 18:13:20

Attaching example of air wind guard

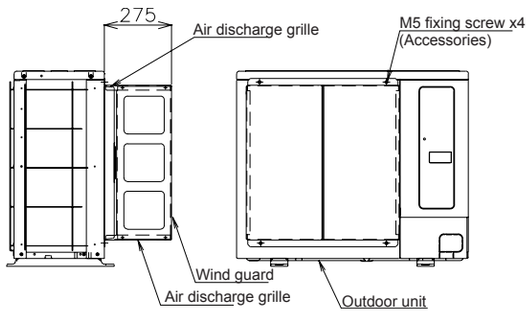
- Attach the air flow guide to the air discharge grille with four (4) screws (supplied).
- The fixing holes are located at 4 positions on the grille. (Screw tightening torque 2.4~3.1 N.m).
- Do not remove the air discharge grille for air flow guide installation.

CAUTION

If the air guide is installed without discharge grille it may cause injury due to rotating fan.

One windguard cover installation

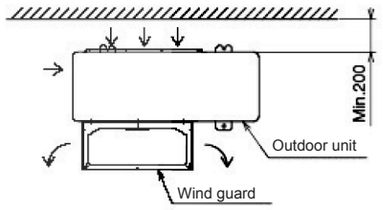
(mm)



Service space

(mm)

- Both sides of the outdoor unit should be open.
- No obstacles should be placed in the air discharge side.

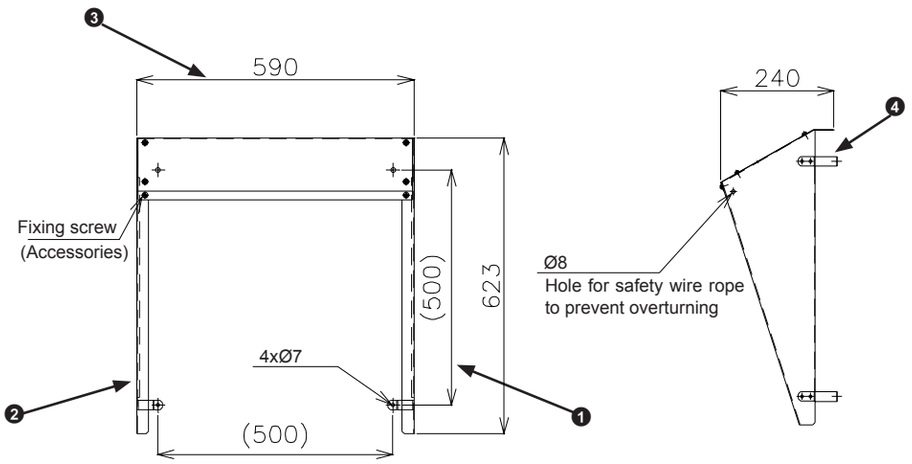


◆ Snow protection hood

Air discharge hood

(mm)

No.	Part name	Qty.
❶	Right side plate	1
❷	Left side plate	1
❸	Front panel	1
❹	Stay	4

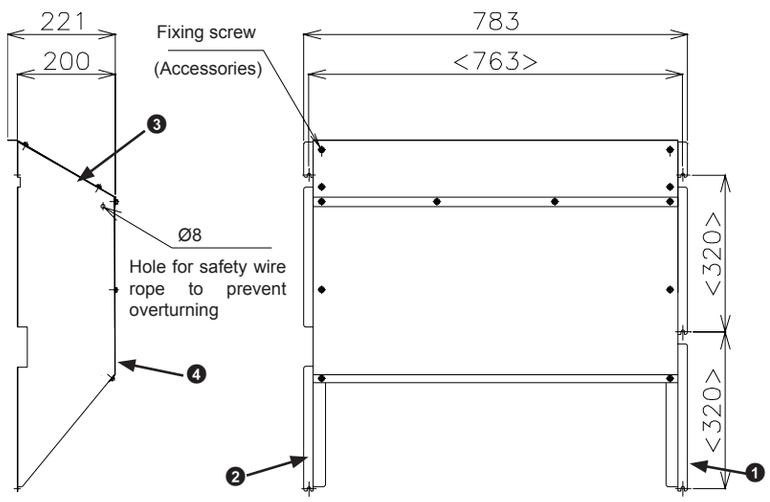


HITACHI
Inspire the Next

Rear suction hood

(mm)

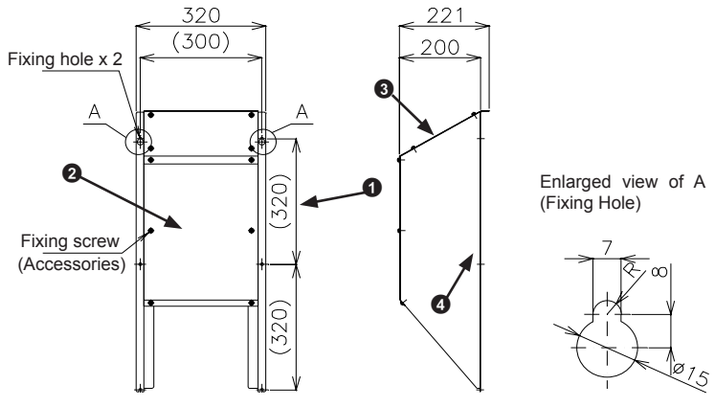
No.	Part name	Qty.
❶	Right side plate	1
❷	Left side plate	1
❸	Upper front panel (Upside)	1
❹	Upper front panel (Downside)	1



Left suction hood

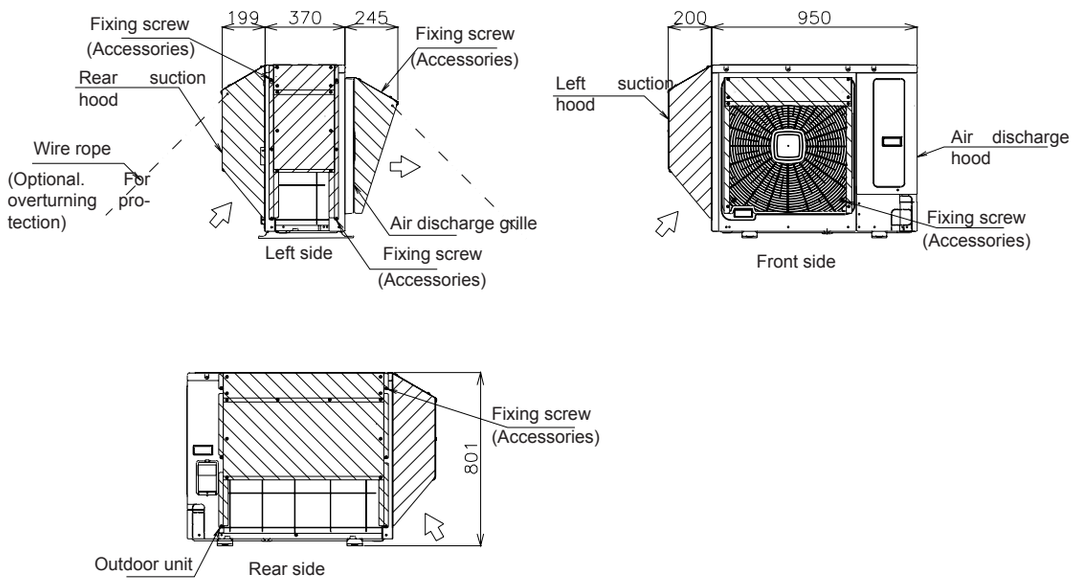
(mm)

No.	Part name	Qty.
❶	Right side plate	1
❷	Left side plate	1
❸	Front panel (Upside)	1
❹	Front panel (Downside)	1



Attaching example of snow protection hood

(mm)



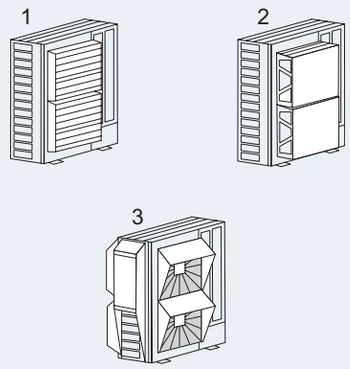
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 37 04/06/2013 18:13:21

Specifications of snow protection hood

Product name		Air discharge hood		Rear suction hood		Left suction hood	
Model		ASG-NP335F	ASG-NP335FS2	ASG-NP80B	ASG-NP160BS2	ASG-NP80L	ASG-NP160LS2
Quantity		2 per unit		1 per unit			
Material		Bonderized steel sheet Iron	Stainless (NSSC 180)	Bonderized steel sheet Iron	Stainless (NSSC 180)	Bonderized steel sheet Iron	Stainless (NSSC 180)
Color		Gray (1.0Y8.5/0.5 or approximation)	—	Gray (1.0Y8.5/0.5 or approximation)	—	Gray (1.0Y8.5/0.5 or approximation)	—
Weight		3 kg		14 kg		8 kg	
Assembling		Knockingdown parts (assembled at field)					
Components	Hood	For air discharge part x 1		For rear side air intake x 1 (Upper side x 1 lowe side x 1)		For left side air intake x 1	
	Unit Fixing screw	4 (M5x12 tapping screw)		5 (M5x14 tapping screw)		6 (M5x12 tapping screw)	
	Unit Fixing screw (SUS)	6 (M5x12 tapping screw)	6 (M5x14)	12 (M5x12 tapping screw)	12 (M5x14)	10 (M5x12 tapping screw)	10 (M5x14)
		Installation manual					
Installation restriction		Installation with “Guard net” or “Wind guard” is not available		Installation with “Guard net” is not available			
Safety wire rope for overturning prevention (optional parts)		ASG-SW20A					

2.5.3 Optional parts and installation RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

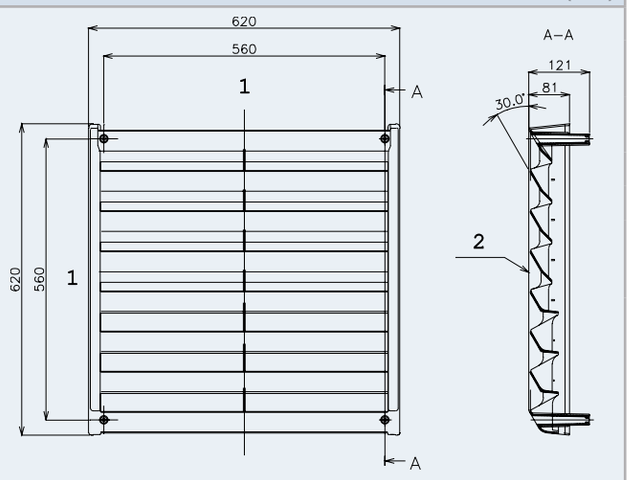
◆ Air flow guide wind guard and snow protection hood

Optional parts			Model	
Air flow guide			AG-335A X 2	
Wind guard			WSP-335A X 2	
Snow protection hood	Zinc plate	Air outlet	ASG-NP335F X 2	
		Air inlet of rear side	ASG-NP280B	
		Air inlet of side face	ASG-NP280L	
	Stainless plate (NSSC 180)	Air outlet	ASG-NP335FS2 X 2	
		Air inlet of rear side	ASG-280BS2	
		Air inlet of side face	ASG-NP280LS2	

1. Air flow guide
2. Wind Guard
3. Snow protection hood

◆ Air flow guide

Specifications

Model	AG-335A	(mm)
Quantity	2 per unit	
Air discharge direction	Upward (downward) left & right	
Material	Weather proof polypropylene resin	
Color	Gray	
Weight	1.9 kg	
Accessories	Fixing screw x 4 [M5 (SUS) x 20] Installation manual	
Installation restriction	"Wind Guard" or "Snow protection hood" is not available to install with air flow guide. ("Guard net" is available to be installed together.)	

1. Mounting dimension
2. Air flow guide

Attaching example of air flow guide

- Attach the air flow guide to the air discharge grille with four (4) screws (supplied).
- The fixing holes are located at 4 positions on the grille. (Screw tightening torque 2.4~3.1 N.m).
- Do not remove the air discharge grille for air flow guide installation.

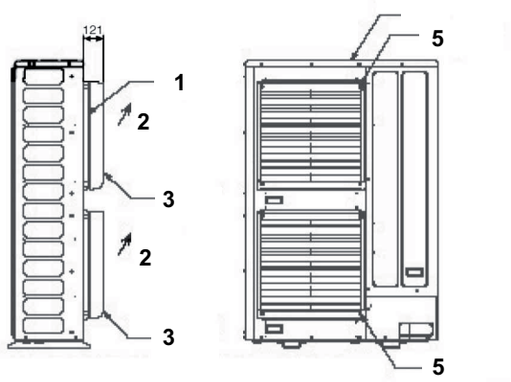
CAUTION

If the air guide is installed without discharge grille it may cause injury due to rotating fan.

Two flow guides installation

(mm)

1 Air discharge grille.
2 Air flow.
3 Air flow guide (see the note).
4 Outdoor Unit.
5 M5 fixing screw x4 (Accessories).

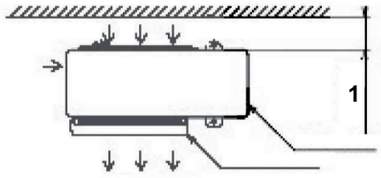


NOTE

Air flow direction of both air flow guides should be the same.

Service space (In case of upward air discharge)

- In case of right and left sides air discharge enough space for air discharge is required.
- The downward air discharge is also available. In such case install the base under the unit to secure enough space for air discharge.
- In case of serial units installation air discharge should be upward.

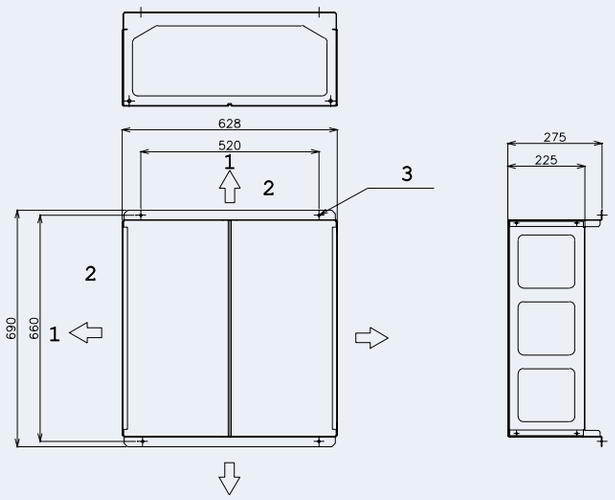


1 Min. 200 mm.
2 Outdoor unit.
3 Air flow guide.
4 Passage side.

◆ Wind guard

Specifications

Model	WSP-335A	(mm)
Quantity	2 per unit	
Material	Galvanized sheet metal + baked painting	
Color	Gray (1.0Y8.5/0.5)	
Weight	5.5 kg	
Accessories	Fixing screw x 4 [M5 (SUS) x 12] Installation manual	
Installation restriction	"Guard net" "Air flow guide" or "Snow protection hood" is not available to install with Wind guard	



1. Mounting dimension
2. Air flow
3. 4 x Ø7

Attaching example of air wind guard

- Attach the air flow guide to the air discharge grille with four (4) screws (supplied).
- The fixing holes are located at 4 positions on the grille. (Screw tightening torque 2.4~3.1 N.m).
- Do not remove the air discharge grille for air flow guide installation.

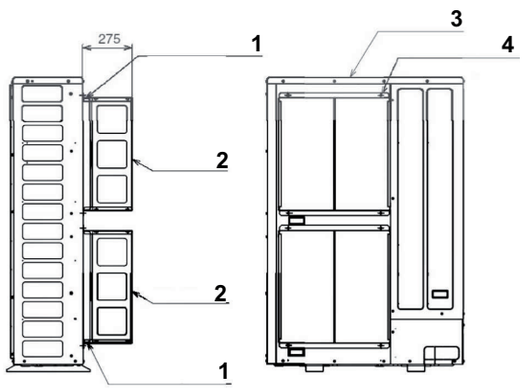
⚠ CAUTION

If the air guide is installed without discharge grille it may cause injury due to rotating fan.

Two windguard covers installation

1 Air discharge grille.
2 Wind guard.
3 Outdoor unit.
4 M5 fixing screw x4 (Accessories).

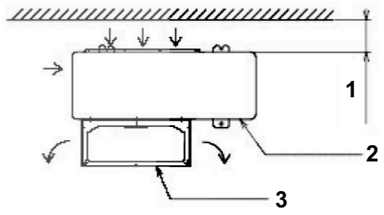
(mm)



Service space

- Both sides of the outdoor unit should be open.
- No obstacles should be placed in the air discharge side.

1 Min. 200 mm.
2 Outdoor unit.
3 Wind guard.

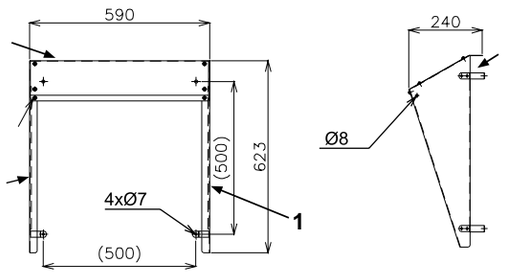


◆ Snow protection hood

Air discharge hood

(mm)

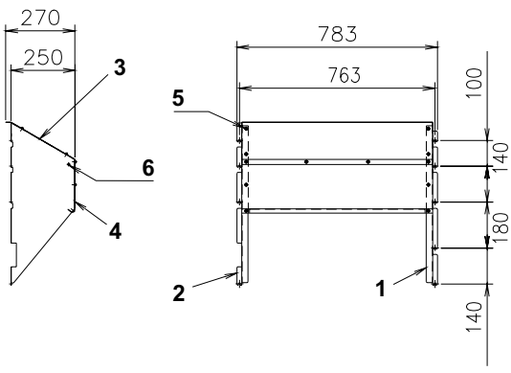
Nº	Part name	Quantity
1	Right side plate	1
2	Left side plate	1
3	Front panel	1
4	Stay	4
5	Fixing screw (Accessories)	
6	Hole for safety wire rope to prevent overturning	



Rear suction hood

(mm)

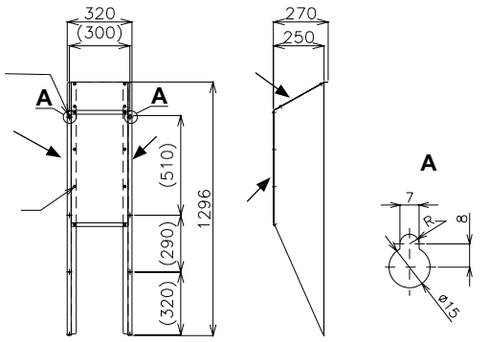
Nº	Part name	Quantity
1	Right side plate	1
2	Left side plate	1
3	Upper front panel (Upside)	1
4	Upper front panel (Downside)	1
5	Fixing screw (Accessories)	
6	Hole for safety wire rope to prevent overturning	



Left suction hood

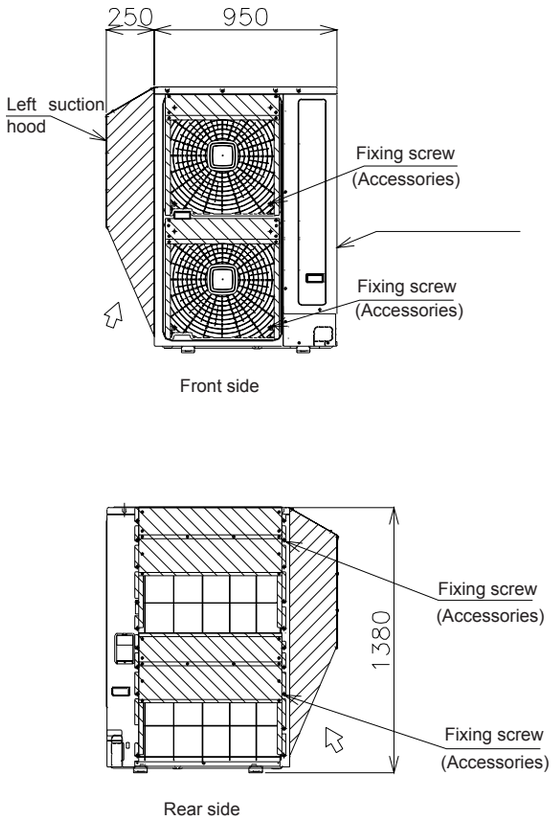
(mm)

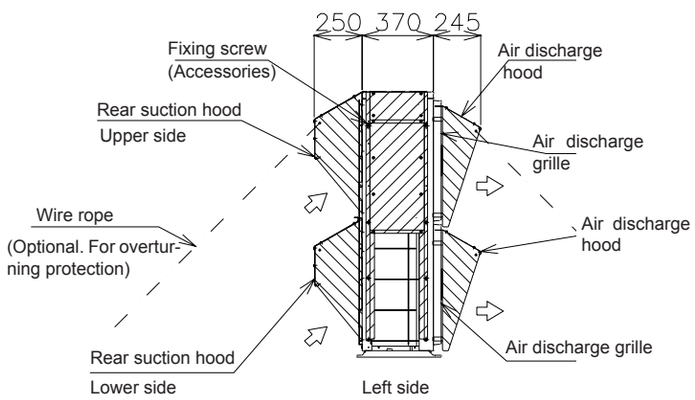
Nº	Part name	Quantity
1	Right side plate	1
2	Left side plate	1
3	Front panel (Upside)	1
4	Front panel (Downside)	1
5	Fixing hole x 2	
6	Fixing screw (Accessories)	
A	Enlarged view of A (Fixing Hole)	



Attaching example of snow protection hood

(mm)





Specifications of snow protection hood

Product name		Air discharge hood		Rear suction hood		Left suction hood	
Model		ASG-NP335F	ASG-NP335FS2	ASG-NP280B	ASG-NP280BS2	ASG-NP280L	ASG-NP280LS2
Quantity		2 per unit		1 per unit			
Material		Bonderized steel sheet Iron	Stainless (NSSC 180)	Bonderized steel sheet Iron	Stainless (NSSC 180)	Bonderized steel sheet Iron	Stainless (NSSC 180)
Color		Gray (1.0Y8.5/0.5 or approximation)	—	Gray (1.0Y8.5/0.5 or approximation)	—	Gray (1.0Y8.5/0.5 or approximation)	—
Weight		3 kg		14 kg		8 kg	
Assembling		Knockingdown parts (assembled at field)					
Components	Hood	For air discharge part x 1		For rear side air intake x 1 (Upper side x 1 lowe side x 1)		For left side air intake x 1	
	Fixing screw	4 (M5x12 tapping screw)		11 (M5x14 tapping screw)		8 (M5x12 tapping screw)	
	Fixing screw (SUS)	6 (M5x14 tapping screw)	6 (M5x14)	24 (M5x14 tapping screw)	24 (M5x14)	12 (M5x12 tapping screw)	12 (M5x14)
		Installation manual					
Installation restriction		Installation with “Guard net” “Wind guard” or “Air flow guide” is not available		Installation with “Guard net” is not available			
Safety wire rope for overturning prevention (optional parts)		ASG-SW20A					

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 43 04/06/2013 18:13:23

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 44 04/06/2013 18:13:23

3. Piping work and refrigerant charge

Index

3.1. General notes 46

3.2. General notes before performing pipe work 48

3.2.1. Piping materials 48

3.2.2. Three principles on refrigerant piping work 50

3.2.3. Suspension of refrigerant piping 50

3.2.4. Brazing work 51

3.3. Piping connection for outdoor unit 52

3.3.1. RAS-3HVRNS3 52

3.3.2. RAS-4H(V)RNS3E and RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E 53

3.3.3. RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 56

3.3.4. Outdoor unit stop valve for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 59

3.3.5. Outdoor unit stop valve for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 61

3.4. Refrigerant piping range 62

3.4.1. Refrigerant piping length 62

3.5. Refrigerant piping size and multikit/distributor selection 65

3.5.1. Refrigerant piping sizes and multi-kit selection 65

3.5.2. System installation 66

3.6. Refrigerant charge 68

3.6.1. Caution of the pressure by check joint 69

3.6.2. Refrigerant charge amount 70

3.6.3. Setting of pipe length DSW. 72

3.6.4. Pump down refrigerant 72

3.7. Caution in case of refrigerant leakage 73

3.7.1. Maximum permitted concentration of hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) 73

3.7.2. Calculation of refrigerant concentration 73

3.7.3. Countermeasure for refrigerant leakage 73

3.8. Drain piping 74

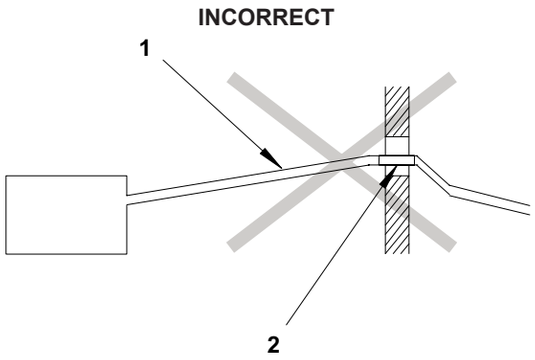
3.1 General notes

CAUTION

Do not install the drain-pipe in an up-slope position. Installing it like this, the drain water cannot be evacuated and will flow back to the unit, causing a possible leakage when the operation is stopped. Always install the unit higher than the exit of the pipe. Making this so, the water will flow easily to the outside.

1. Common drain piping.

2. Up slope.

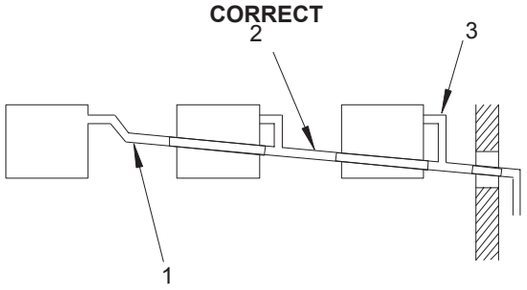


- *Do not connect the drain pipe with the sanitary piping, the sewage piping or any other drainage piping.*
- *When the common drain piping is connected with other indoor units, the connected position of each indoor unit must be higher than the position of the common drain piping. The pipe section of the common drain pipe must be wide enough according to the unit size and the unit number.*

1. Common drain piping.

2. Pitch of 4% (1/25) to 1% (1/100).

3. Drain piping connection.



- *The drain pipe will require insulation if it is installed in a location where the ambient humidity may condensate on the drain pipe outer surface. This condensation could drop and cause damage. The insulation for the drain pipe must be selected in order to ensure that the vapour is sealed and in order to prevent the condensation forming.*
- *The drain trap should be installed next to the indoor unit, designed according to good practice and must be checked with charged water in order to test the correct flow. Do not tie or clamp the drain pipe and the refrigerant pipe together.*

NOTE

- *The installation of a drain tap is mandatory for the RPI-10HP.*
- *Install the drainage in accordance with national and local codes.*

After installing the drain piping and the electrical wiring, make sure that the water flows smoothly as the following procedure explains:

Checking the unit without the drain-up mechanism

1 Pour water into the drain pan.

2 Make sure that the water flows smoothly and that no water leakage occurs. If you cannot find water at the end of the drain pipe, once again pour more water into the drain pan.

Checking the unit with the drain-up mechanism and the float switch

1. Turn the power supply on.
2. Pour water into the drain pan.
3. Make sure that the water flows smoothly and that no water leakage occurs. If you cannot find water at the end of the drain pipe, pour again more water into the drain pan.
4. Turn the power supply off.

NOTE

Pay attention to the insulation material thickness when the left-side piping is installed. If the insulation material is too thick, you will not be able to install the piping in the unit.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 47 04/06/2013 18:13:23

3.2 General notes before performing pipe work

3.2.1 Piping materials

1 In order to avoid supply problems in terms of local regulations and quality, prepare locally-supplied copper pipes.

NOTE

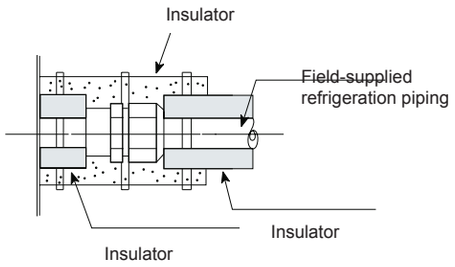
In case of using copper pipes for piping sections bigger than Ø19.05 mm (3/4 inches), flaring work cannot be performed. If necessary, use a joint adapter.

2 Select clean copper pipes. Make sure there is no dust and moisture inside. Blow the inside of the pipes through with oxygen-free nitrogen to remove any dust and foreign materials before connecting pipes.

3 After connecting the refrigerant piping, seal the open space between the knockout hole and refrigerant pipes by using insulation material as shown below:

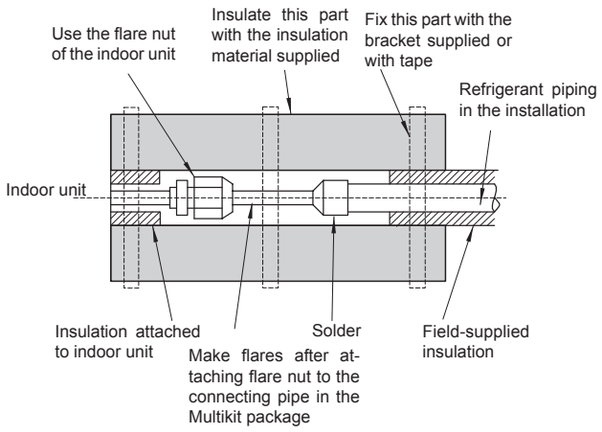
CAUTION

- *Do not use saws, grindstones or other tools which cause copper powder.*
- *When cutting pipes, secure the part for brazing in accordance with both national and local regulations.*
- *Use security glasses and gloves for cutting or welding works.*



Piping Connection

When connecting liquid piping for units with piping longer than 15 meters, apply a piping size of Ø9.52 mm (3/8 inches). Fix the connecting pipe as shown in the following figure using the insulation attached to the Indoor Unit.

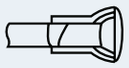


NOTE

- *A system with no moisture or oil contamination will give maximum performance and lifecycle compared to a poorly prepared system. Take particular care to ensure that all copper piping is clean and dry internally.*
- *To ensure this, blow oxygen-free nitrogen through the pipes.*

CAUTION

- *When inserting a pipe through any hole protect the end with a cap.*
- *Do not put pipes on the ground directly without a cap or vinyl tape at the end of the pipe*

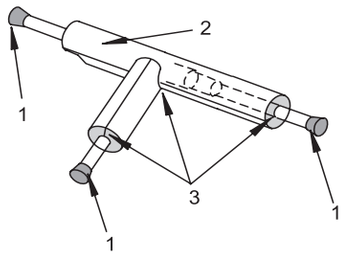
Right	Wrong
	

- If the piping installation is not completed until the next day or even over a longer period of time, braze off the ends of the piping and charge the pipe with oxygen-free nitrogen through a Schrader-valve-type access-fitting, to prevent moisture and particle contamination entering.
- Do not use insulation material that contents NH3. NH3 can damage the cooper pipe material and can be a source of future leakages.

Insulation

Attach the pipe insulation to each branch using vinyl tape. Attach also insulation to field supplied pipes in order to prevent the capacity decrease according to the ambient air conditions and dewing on the low pressure pipe surface.

1. Cap.
2. Field supplied insulation.
3. Do not make a gap.



NOTE

When polyethylene foam is applied, it is recommended the usage of a wall thickness of 10 mm for the liquid piping and 15 mm to 20 m for the gas piping.

CAUTION

- *Perform the insulation work after the pipe surface temperature decreases to the room temperature, if not the insulation material may melt.*
- *If the ends of the piping system are open after ending the piping work, attach caps or vinyl bags securely to the ends of the piping, avoiding moisture and dust entering.*

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 49 04/06/2013 18:13:24

3.2.2 Three principles on refrigerant piping work

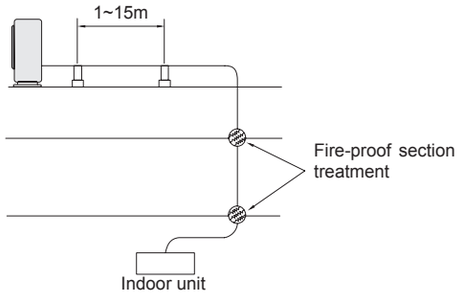
In case of using refrigerant R410A in the refrigeration cycle, the refrigeration oil should be of a synthetic type one.

In order to avoid oxidation, pay much careful attention to basic piping work control to avoid infiltration of moisture or dust during the refrigerant piping work.

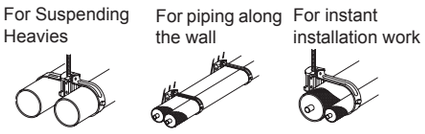
Three principles	Cause of failure	Presumable failure	Preventive action
1. Dry Keep good dryness	• Water infiltration due to insufficient protection at pipe ends • Dewing inside of pipes • Insufficient vacuum pumping time	Icing inside tube at ex. valve (Water choking) + Generation of hydration and oxidation of oil ↓ Clogged strainer, etc., insulation failure and compressor failure	Pipe protection 1 Pinching 2 Taping ↓ Flushing ↓ Vacuum Drying • One gram of water turns into gas (approx. 1000 lrs) at 1 Torn • Therefore, it takes long time to vacuum-pump by a small vacuum pump
2. Clean No dust inside of pipes	• Infiltration of dust or other through the pipe ends. • Oxidation film during brazing without blowing nitrogen. • Insufficient flushing by nitrogen after brazing	Clogging of expansion valve, capillary tube and filter →Oxidation of oil →Compressor failure ↓ Insufficient cooling or heating compressor failure	Pipe Protection 1 Mounting Caps 2 Taping 3 Pinching ↓ Flushing
3. No leakage No leakage shall exist	• Brazing failure • Failed flaring work and insufficient torque of squeezing flare • Insufficient torque of squeezing flanges	Refrigerant shortage →Performance decrease →Oxidation of oil →Overheating of compressor ↓ Insufficient cooling or heating compressor failure	Careful Basic Brazing Work ↓ Basic Flaring Work ↓ Basic Flange Connecting Work ↓ Air Tight Test ↓ Holding of Vacuum

3.2.3 Suspension of refrigerant piping

Suspend the refrigerant piping at certain points and prevent the refrigerant piping from touching weak parts of the building such as walls, ceiling, etc. (If touched, abnormal noises may occur due to the vibration of the piping. Pay special attention in case of short piping length).



In order to fix the piping to wall or ceilings use suspension and clamping systems as shown in the following figure.

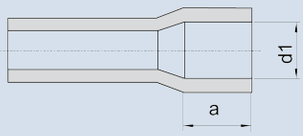


3.2.4 Brazing work

The most important work in the refrigerant piping installation work is the brazing of the pipes. If it accidentally occurs a leakage due to a careless brazing process, it will cause clogged capillary pipes or serious compressor failure.

In order to guarantee a proper brazing neck between different pipes surfaces, accurate pipe dimensions after the expansion process (see the table below):

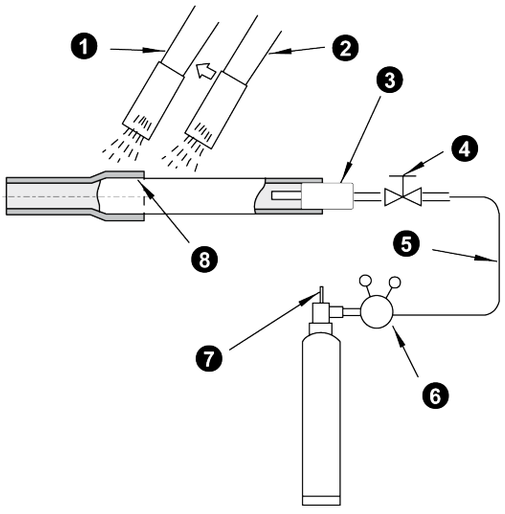
It is important to control the clearance of the pipe fitting portion as shown below. In the case that a cooper tube expansion jig is used, following dimensions should be secured.



Copper pipe size		Ød1		Gap	a	Copper pipe size		Ød1		Gap	a
Ø6.35	+0.08	Ø6.5	+0.1	0.33	6	Ø22.22	+0.09	Ø22.42	+0.1	0.39	10
	-0.08		0	0.07			-0.09		0	0.11	
Ø9.52	+0.08	Ø9.7	+0.1	0.35	8	Ø25.4	+0.12	Ø25.6	+0.1	0.42	12
	-0.08		0	0.09			-0.12		0	0.08	
Ø12.7	+0.08	Ø12.9	+0.1	0.38	8	Ø28.58	+0.12	Ø28.78	+0.1	0.42	12
	-0.08		0	0.19			-0.12		0	0.08	
Ø15.88	+0.09	Ø16.1	+0.1	0.41	8	Ø31.75	+0.12	Ø32.0	+0.1	0.47	12
	-0.09		0	0.13			-0.12		0	0.13	
Ø19.05	+0.09	Ø19.3	+0.1	0.44	10	Ø38.1	+0.12	Ø38.3	+0.1	0.52	14
	-0.09		0	0.16			-0.12		0	0.18	

A basic brazing method is shown below.

1. Pre-heat the outer tube for better flowing of the filler metal.
2. Heat inner side tube evenly.
3. Rubber plug.
4. Packless valve.
5. High pressure hose.
6. 0.03 to 0.05 MPa (0.3 to 0.5 Kg/cm^2 G).
7. Reducer valve: open this valve only when the gas is needed.
8. Nitrogen gas flow 0.05 m^3/h or smaller.



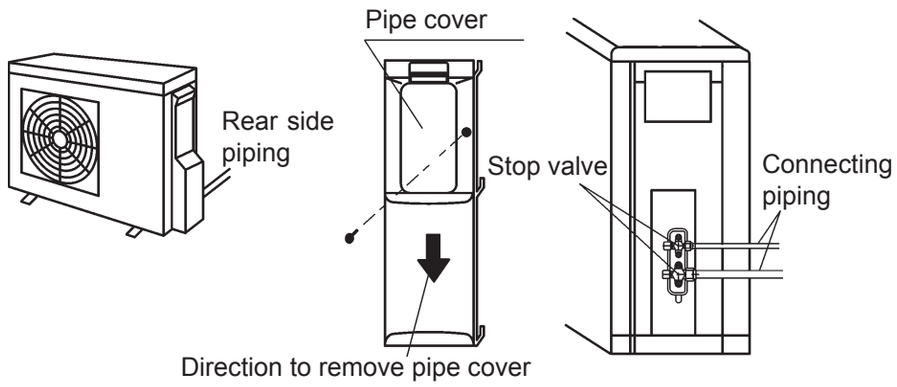
CAUTION

- *Use nitrogen gas for blowing during pipe brazing. If oxygen, acetylene or fluorocarbon gas is used, it will cause an explosion or poisonous gas.*
- *During the brazing work, a lot of oxidation film will be generated inside of the pipes if no oxygen-free nitrogen gas is blown through the pipes. This film will be flecked off after operation and will circulate in the refrigeration cycle, resulting in clogged expansion valves, etc. This could origin problems in the compressor.*
- *Use a reducer valve when nitrogen gas blowing is performed during brazing. The gas pressure should be maintained within 0.03 to 0.05 MPa. If an excessively high pressure is applied to a pipe, it could origin an explosion.*

3.3 Piping connection for outdoor unit

3.3.1 RAS-3HVRNS3

1 Take the piping cover away from the unit. Then fetch the pipes through the rear side and route piping according to the installation place as shown in the figure. Make holes by cutting along the guideline at the rear of the cover or punching with a driver. Remove the burr with a cutter, and place a insulation (field supplied) to protect cables and pipes.



2 Attach the pipe cover in order to prevent rainwater from entering inside the cabinet.

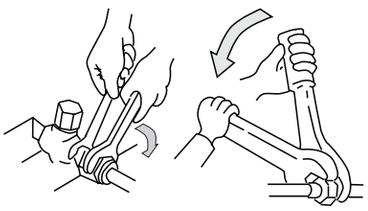
3 Use a pipe bender for pipe bending work when connecting pipes.

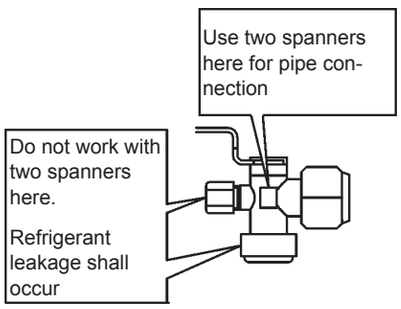
4 Check to ensure that the stop valves are completely closed before connecting pipes.

5 Connect the field supplied refrigerant pipes to the indoor unit and outdoor unit. Apply the oil thinly at the seat flare nut and pipe before tightening.

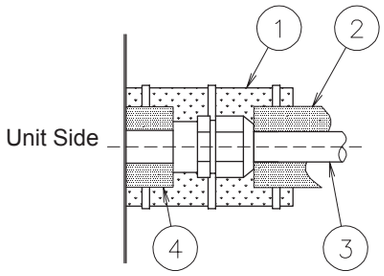
The required tightening torque is as follows:

Pipe Size	Tightening Torque (Nm)
Ø 6.35 mm (1/4)	20
Ø 9.52 mm (3/8)	40
Ø 12.70 mm (1/2)	60
Ø 15.88 mm (5/8)	80
Ø 19.05 mm (3/4)	100





6 After connecting the refrigerant piping, seal the open space between knockout hole and refrigerant pipes by using insulation material.

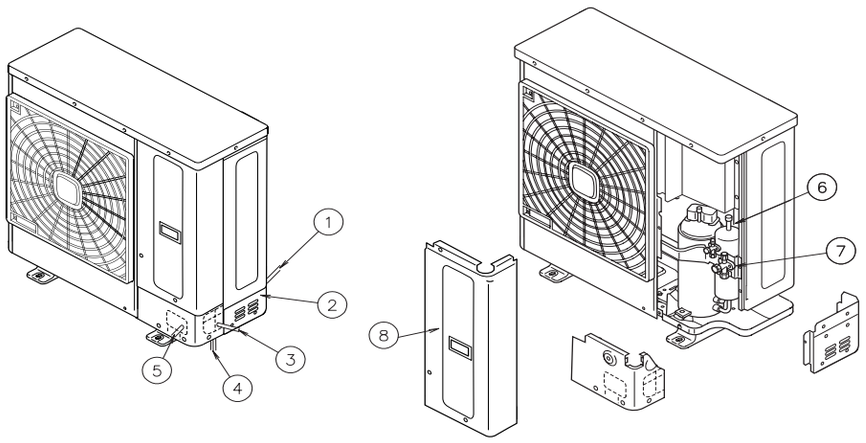


Nº	Description
①	Insulation Material
②	Insulation Material
③	Field Supplied
④	Insulation Material

7 Operation of stop valve should be performed according to the *Outdoor unit stop valve* explanation.

3.3.2 RAS-4H(V)RNS3E and RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E

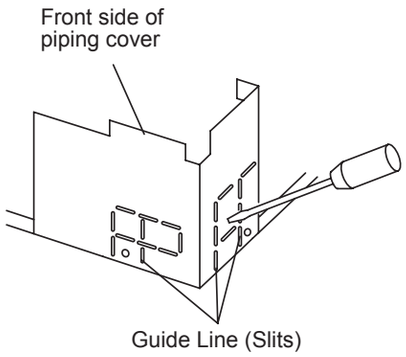
1 The pipes can be connected from 4 directions. Make holes in the piping cover or cabinet for taking out pipes.



Nº	Description
①	Rear side piping work
②	Pipe Cover
③	Right side piping work
④	Bottom side piping work (Knock out hole)
⑤	Front side piping work
⑥	Piping work
⑦	Stop Valve
⑧	Removing Direction for Service Cover

(picture as example)

Take the piping cover away from the unit and make holes by cutting along the guideline at the rear of the cover or punching with a driver. Remove the burr with a cutter and place a insulation (field supplied) to protect cables and pipes.



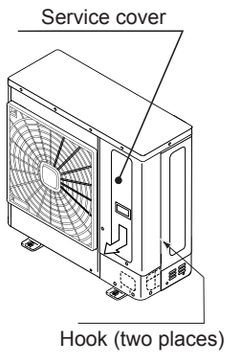
CAUTION

Notes to open/close the service cover:

- *Remove the screws following the instructions to the above figure.*
- *Slowly press down the cover.*

NOTE

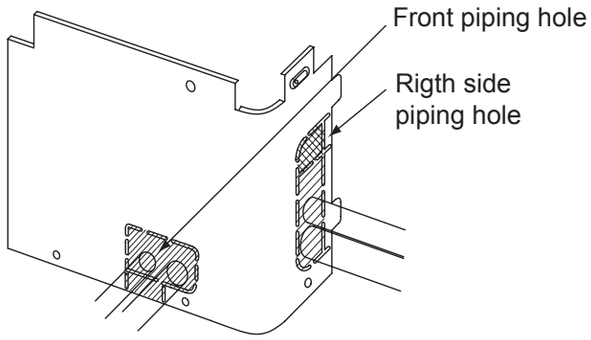
Hold the cover with a hand to remove screws as the cover may fall down.



(picture as example)

◆ For the front and side piping

Select the correct knock-out size depending on whether it is for power wiring or transition wiring



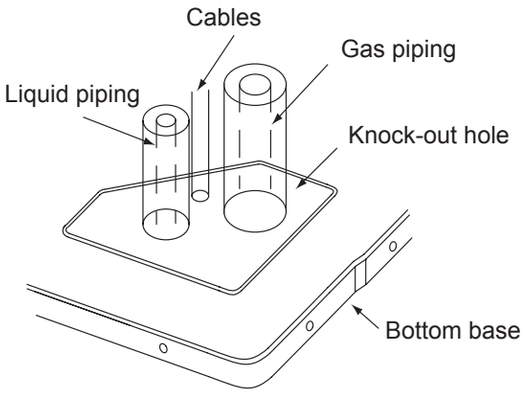
To use racking or conduit tubes, check the size and remove ▨ part following the slit.

NOTE

Place insulation (field supplied) to protect cables and pipes from being damaged by plate edges.

◆ For the downward piping

After removing the bottom of the piping cover, perform piping and wiring works.

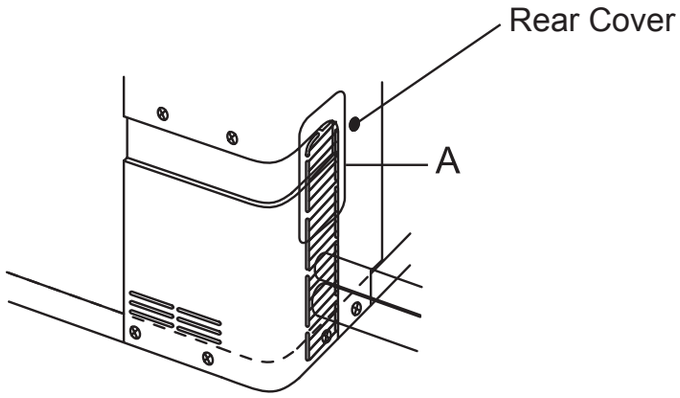


NOTE

Cables shall not contact directly to the pipes.

◆ For the rear side piping

After removing the rear-side piping cover, punch out the “A” holes along the guide line.



NOTE

Remove the rear pipe cover under the rear cover and remove ▨ part following the slit.

2 Mount the piping cover in order to avoid water entering into the unit. Seal the holes where pipes and wires are inserted, by using insulation (field-supplied).

3 If the field-supplied piping is connected with stop valves directly, it is recommended to use a tube bender.

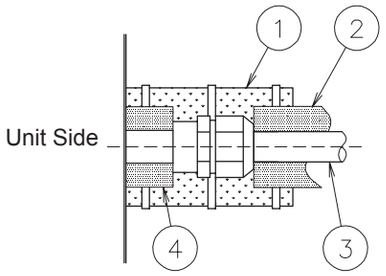
4 Check to ensure that the stop valves are completely closed before connecting pipes.

5 Connect the field supplied refrigerant pipes to the indoor unit and outdoor unit. Apply the oil thinly at the seat flare nut and pipe before tightening.

The required tightening torque is as follows:

Pipe Size	Tightening Torque (Nm)
Ø 6.35 mm (1/4)	20
Ø 9.52 mm (3/8)	40
Ø 12.70 mm (1/2)	60
Ø 15.88 mm (5/8)	80
Ø 19.05 mm (3/4)	100

6 After connecting the refrigerant piping, seal the open space between knockout hole and refrigerant pipes by using insulation material.



Nº	Description
①	Insulation Material
②	Insulation Material
③	Field Supplied
④	Insulation Material

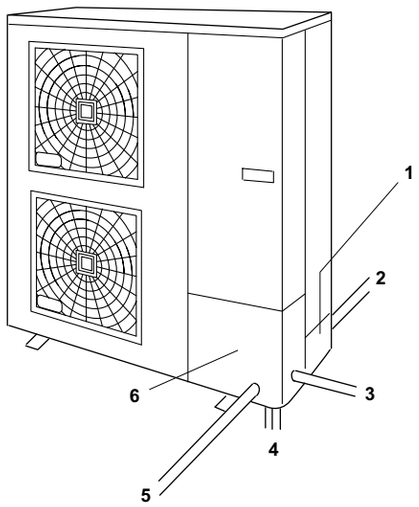
7 Operation of stop valve should be performed according to the *Outdoor unit stop valve* explanation.

3.3.3 RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

For a list of factory-supplied accessories, please refer to *Accessory code list*.

1 The pipes can be connected from any of the following four directions: front, rear, bottom or right side, when facing the outdoor unit.

1. Rear side piping cover.
2. Rear side piping work (Knock-out hole).
3. Right side piping work (Knock-out hole).
4. Bottom side piping work (Piping cover).
5. Front side piping work (Knock-out hole).
6. Front side piping cover.



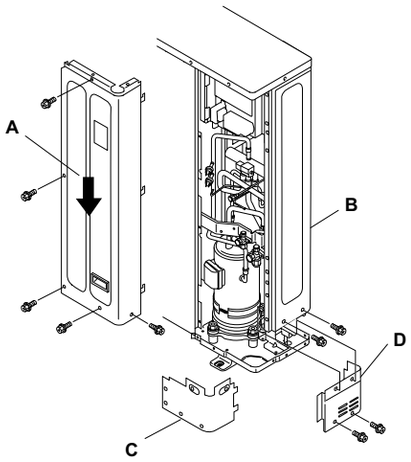
(pictures as example)

A. Push down the cover slowly.

B. Rear cover.

C. Front side piping cover.

D. Rear side piping cover.

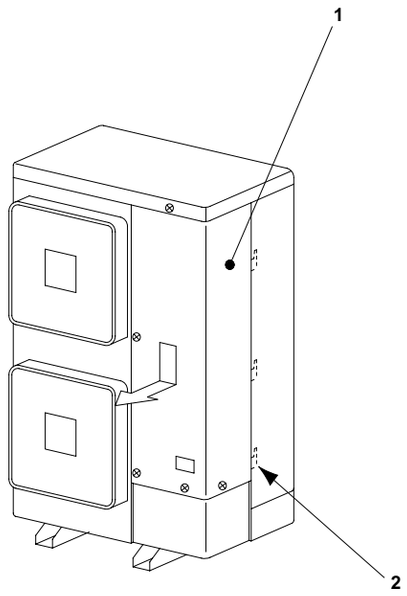


Make holes in the piping cover or cabinet for taking the pipes out. Take the piping cover away from the unit, and make holes by cutting along the guideline at the rear of the cover or punching it with a driver. Remove the burr with a cutter.

NOTE

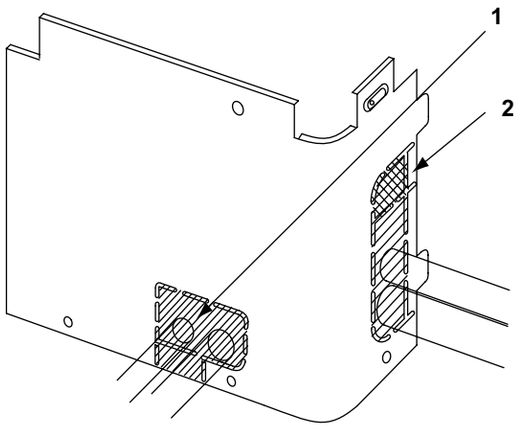
Hold the cover with a hand at the same time while removing the screws as the cover may fall down.

1. Service cover.
2. Hook (three places).



- **For the front and side piping**

1. Front piping hole.
2. Side piping hole.



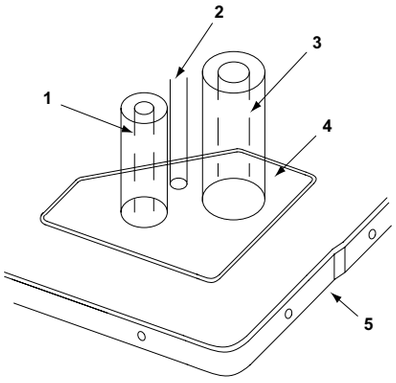
To use racking or conduit tubes, check the size and remove the stiped parts, following the slit.

NOTE

Place insulation (field supplied) to protect cables and pipes from being damaged by plate edges.

- **For the downward piping**

  1. Liquid piping.
  2. Wiring.
  3. Gas piping.
  4. Knock-out hole.
  5. Bottom base.

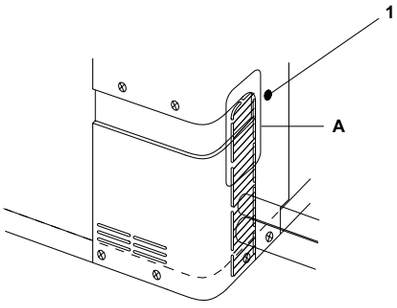


NOTE

The wiring must not be in contact directly with the pipes.

- **For the rear side piping**

  1. Rear cover.



NOTE

Remove the rear pipe cover under the rear cover and remove the stipped part following the slit.

2 Mount the piping cover in order to avoid water entering into the unit. Seal the holes where pipes and wires are inserted, by using an insulation (field-supplied).

3 If the field-supplied piping is connected with stop valves directly, it is recommended to use a tube bender.

4 Check that the stop valves are closed completely before connecting pipes.

5 Connect the field supplied refrigerant pipes to the indoor unit and outdoor unit. Apply the oil thinly at the seat flare nut and pipe before tightening.

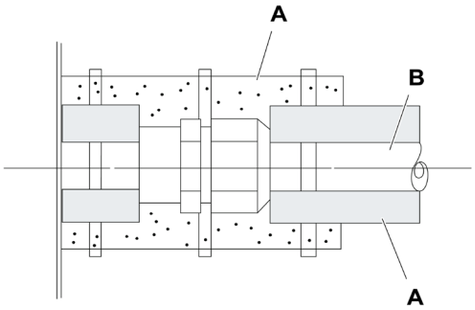
The required tightening torque is as follows:

Pipe Size	Tightening Torque (Nm)
Ø 6.35 mm	20
Ø 9.52 mm	40
Ø 12.70 mm	60
Ø 15.88 mm	80

6 After connecting the refrigerant piping, seal the open space between knockout hole and refrigerant pipes by using the insulation material.

A. Insulation material.

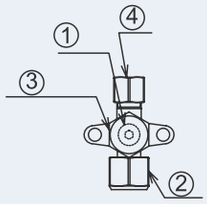
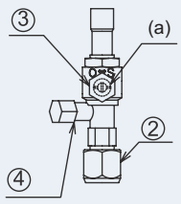
B. Field supplied.



7 Operation of stop valve should be performed according to the *Outdoor unit stop valve* explanation.

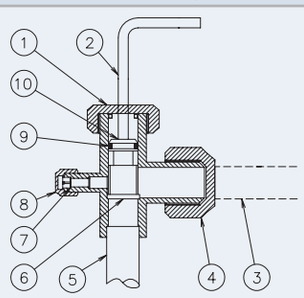
3.3.4 Outdoor unit stop valve for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

1 Remove the stop valve cap before performing the air tight test after connecting the flare nut. Tighten the spindle valve in clockwise according to the following table “Tightening Torque of Stop Valves.”
2 Tighten the flare nut according the specified torque. If the tightening torque is excessive, it may cause refrigerant leakage from the spindle part.
3 Perform the air tight test after the tightening work. It is more effective to perform this work after fix the flare nuts for the piping connection to the stop valves.
4 Use the charging hose for the check joint connection. When removing the charging hose from the check joint, a sound may be heard by a small quantity of refrigerant leak.However it is not abnormality. Do not apply excessive force to the end of opening the spindle. (Tightening Torque: < 5.0N-m)

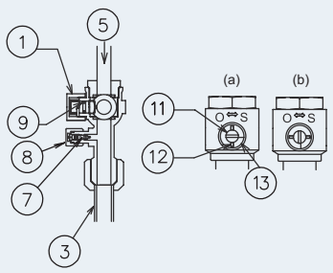
Spindle Type	Ball Type
	
①	Spindle valve
②	Flare nut
③	Cap
④	Check joint for service port

Outdoor unit	Tightening Torque (Nm)							
	①		②		③		④	
	Gas valve	Liquid valve	Gas valve	Liquid valve	Gas valve	Liquid valve	Gas valve	Liquid valve
RAS-3HVRNS3	9-11	7-9	68-82	33-42	33-42	33-42	14-18	14-18
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E								

Spindle Type



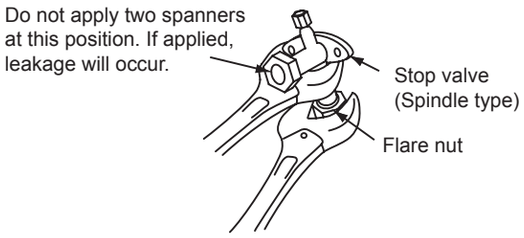
Ball Type

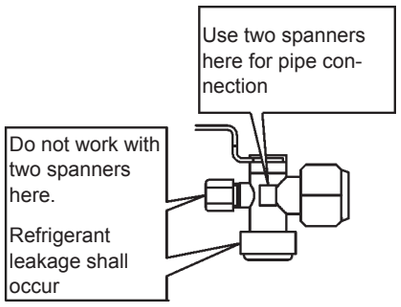


Nº	Description	Remarks
①	Cap	
②	Allen wrench	Hex 4 mm *
③	Refrigerant Piping	Field Supplied
④	Flare nut	
⑤	Refrigerant Pressure	To Outdoor Unit
⑥	Seat Surface	Fully closed position
⑦	Check Joint	Only the charging those can be connected
⑧	Charge port cap	
⑨	O-Ring	Rubber
⑩	Spindle valve	Open – Counterclockwise Close – Clockwise
⑪	Shaft	
⑫	Pin	
⑬	Stopper	
(a)	Closed	This valve is opened or closed with rotating 90 degrees at the ball valve part. Rotate the shaft until the pin touches the stopper. Do not apply the extra force. Use a slotted screwdriver to control the shaft. Do not leave the ball valve partly open
(b)	Opened	

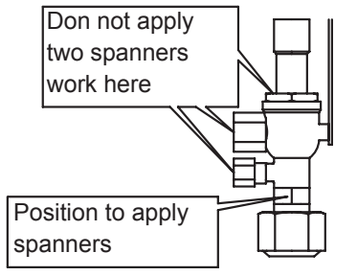
Hexagonal wrench size used for spindle valve:

(*) Size	RAS-3HVRNS3 RAS-4H(V)RNS3E
Gas valve	5 mm
Liquid valve	4 mm





Spindle type

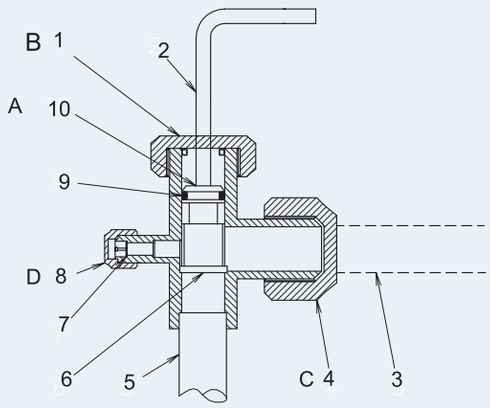
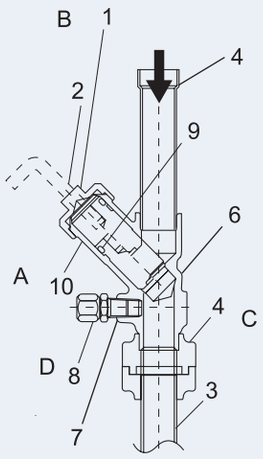


Ball type

CAUTION

- *At the test run, fully open the spindle and ball stop valve.*
- *If not fully opened, the devices will be damaged.*
- *Do not attempt to turn service valve rod beyond its stop.*
- *Do not loosen the stop ring. If the stop ring is loosened, it is dangerous since the spindle will hop out.*
- *An excess or a shortage of refrigerant is the main cause of trouble to the units. Charge the correct refrigerant quantity according to the description of label at the inside of service cover.*
- *Check for refrigerant leakage in detail. If a large refrigerant leakage occurs, it will cause difficulty with breathing or harmful gases would occur if a fire was being used in the room.*

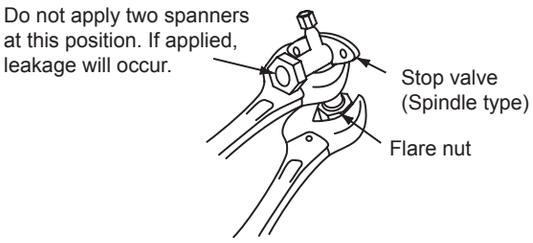
3.3.5 Outdoor unit stop valve for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

Closed before shipment	Gas valve (RAS-(8/10)HRNSE) only
	

1	Cap	—
2	Allen wrench	Hex 5 mm / 4 mm / 10 mm
3	Refrigerant Piping	Field supplied
4	Cap	—
5	Refrigerant Pressure	To outdoor unit
6	Seat Surface	Fully closed position
7	Check Joint	Only the charging those can be connected
8	Cap	—
9	O-Ring	Rubber
10	Spindle valve	Open – Counterclockwise
		Close – Clockwise

Tighten torque (Nm)					
Valve type / Model		A	B	C	D
Liquid valve	5/6HP	7-9	34-42	34-42	14-18
Gas valve	5/6HP	9-11	34-42	68-82	14-18
Liquid valve	8/10HP	8	40	40	16
Gas valve	8/10HP	13	45	100	9

- **Outdoor unit stop valve**



CAUTION

- *At the test run, fully open the spindle. If not fully opened, the devices will be damaged.*
- *Do not attempt to turn service valve rod beyond its stop.*
- *Do not loosen the stop ring. If the stop ring is loosened, it is dangerous since the spindle will hop out.*
- *Do not apply force to the spindle valve at the end of opening (5 Nm. or smaller). The back seat construction.*

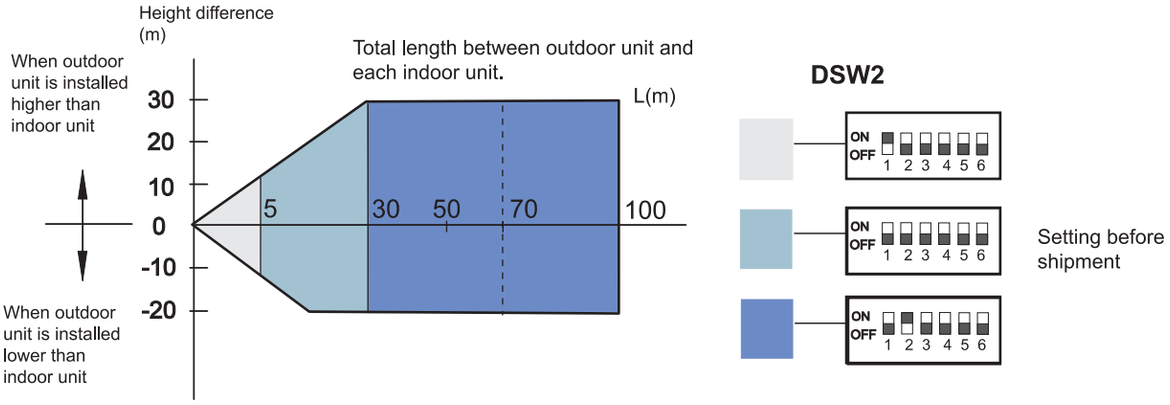
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 61 04/06/2013 18:13:28

3.4 Refrigerant piping range

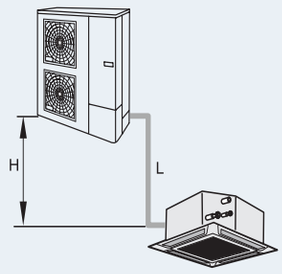
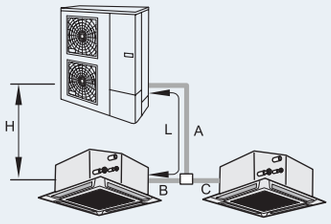
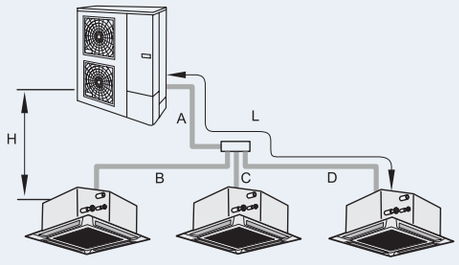
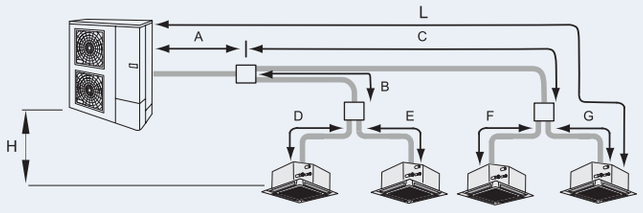
3.4.1 Refrigerant piping length

The refrigerant piping between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit should be designed using the following chart.

Keep the design point within the area of the chart, which is showing the applicable height difference according to piping length.



Piping system (illustration as examples)

Single system (O.U. from 3 to 10 HP)	Twin system (O.U. from 3 to 10 HP)
	
	L= A + the longest of B & C
Triple system (O.U. 6 and 8 HP)	**Quad system (O.U. 8 and 10 HP)**
	
L= A + the longest of B, C & D	L= A + the longest of (B + the longest of D & E) & (C + the longest of F & G)

NOTE

L and H are the length and height indicated in the above chart. For twin, triple and quad systems, the length is the distance between the outdoor unit and the farthest indoor unit.

NOTE

- *The liquid piping and the gas piping must be of the same length and run along the same route.*
- *Multikits for multiple connections (optional accessory as system parts) must be used to install the branch pipe to the indoor unit.*
- *Install Multikits at the same horizontal level.*

◆ Maximum refrigerant piping length

(m)

Item		3HP	4 HP	(5/6) HP	(8/10) HP
Maximum piping length between the outdoor unit and the farthest indoor unit	Actual piping length (L)	50	50	50	50
	Equivalent piping length	70	70	70	70 (*)
Maximum height difference between indoor and outdoor units (H)	Outdoor unit higher than the indoor unit	30	30	30	30
	Indoor unit higher than outdoor unit	20	20	20	20
	Height difference between indoor units	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
Maximum total piping length	Twin (A + B + C)	60	60	60	60
	Triple (A + B + C + D)	–	–	70	70
	Quad (A + B + C + D + E + F + G)	–	–	–	80

3

NOTE

- *(*) Quad: 75 m.*
- *The refrigerant piping length from the outdoor unit to the first branch must be higher than the piping length from the first branch to the farthest indoor unit.*

◆ Piping length after branches

Piping length after branch pipe (B, C, D, E, F or G):

1 After branch pipe, the pipe length should be shorter than the values shown in the following table:

(m)

		3, 4 and 5 HP	6 HP	(8/10) HP
Twin	B, C	10	10	10
Triple	B, C, D	–	10	10
Quad	B + D, B + E, C + F, C + G	–	–	10

2 All branch piping should be balanced, and the difference between these sections cannot be greater than indicated in the tables below:

(m)

		3, 4 and 5 HP	6 HP	(8/10) HP
Twin	Difference between B and C	8	8	8
Triple	Difference between B, C and D	–	6	6
Quad	Difference between B + (D/E) and C + (F/G); Between D and E; Between F and G	–	–	8

◆ Piping length specifications

Performance capacity	Liquid	Ø6.35				Ø9.52				
	Gas	Ø9.52	Ø12.7	Ø15.88	Ø19.05	Ø12.7	Ø15.88	Ø19.05	Ø22.2	Ø25.4
RAS-3HVRNS3		—	30[1*2*]	30[2*]	—	30[1*]	**50**	—	—	—
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E		—	—	5[2*]	5[2*]	40[1*]	**50**	50[4*]	—	—
RAS-5H(V)RNS2E		—	—	5[2*]	5[2*]	40[1*]	**50**	50[4*]	—	—
RAS-6H(V)RNS2E		—	—	5[2*]	5[2*]	40[1*]	**50**	50[4*]	—	—
RAS-8HRNSE		—	—	—	—	—	—	30[1*4*]	30[1*]	**50**
RAS-10HRNSE		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	**30[5*]**

Performance Capacity	Liquid	Ø12.7					Ø15.88[5*]	
	Gas	Ø15.88	Ø19.05	Ø22.2	Ø25.4	Ø28.6	Ø25.4	Ø28.6
RAS-3HVRNS3		—	—	—	—	—	—	—
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E		30[3*]	30[3*4*]	—	—	—	—	—
RAS-5H(V)RNS2E		30[3*]	30[3*4*]	—	—	—	—	—
RAS-6H(V)RNS2E		30[3*]	30[3*4*]	—	—	—	—	—
RAS-8HRNSE		—	30[1*3*4*]	30[1*3*]	30[3*]	—	—	—
RAS-10HRNSE		—	—	30[1*3*]	**50[3*5*]**	50[3*]	20[3*]	20[3*]

NOTE

- *(1*) If the gas pipe is smaller, the cooling performance drops, and the operating range is reduced because the pressure loss in the gas pipe increases.*
- *(2*) If the liquid pipe is smaller the expansion valve capacity of the indoor unit is reduced.*
- *(3*) If the liquid pipe is larger refrigerant has to be added.*
- *(4*) If the gas line is Ø19,05:*
  Switch ON DSW2-4# in the outdoor unit PCB (for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E).
  Cut the JP6 jumper of the outdoor unit PCB (For RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE).
- *(5*) If the liquid pipe is larger (Ø12,70), 120 g/m of refrigerant should be added.*

Standard specification.

3.5 Refrigerant piping size and multikit/distributor selection

CAUTION

- ***Do not use refrigerant pipe sizes other than those indicated in this Technical Catalogue. The diameter of the refrigerant pipes depends directly on the outdoor unit capacity.***
- ***If larger diameter gas refrigerant pipes are used, the circuit lubrication oil tends to separate from the gas carrying it. The compressor will be seriously damaged due to a lack of lubrication.***
- ***If smaller diameter gas refrigerant pipes are used, the gas or liquid refrigerant will have serious difficulties in circulating. System performance will be affected. The compressor will run under more severe conditions than foreseen and will be damaged in a short space of time.***

Select the piping connection sizes according to the following procedures

- Between outdoor unit and branch pipe: Select the same pipe connection size as the pipe size of the outdoor unit.
- Between branch pipe and indoor unit: Select the same pipe connection size as the pipe size of the indoor unit.

3.5.1 Refrigerant piping sizes and multi-kit selection

Piping connection size of outdoor unit and multi-kit

Outdoor Unit	Pipe Size (mm)		Multikit & Distributor		
	Liquid Piping	Gas Piping	Twin	Triple	Quad
RAS-3HVRNS3	Ø9.52	Ø15.88	TE-03N1	—	—
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E	Ø9.52	Ø15.88	TE-04N1	—	—
RAS-5H(V)RNS2E	Ø9.52	Ø15.88	TE-56N1	—	—
RAS-6H(V)RNS2E	Ø9.52	Ø15.88	TE-56N1	TRE-46N1	—
RAS-8HRNSE	Ø9.52	Ø25.4	TE-08N	TRE-810N	TE-08N + TE-04N1 + TE-04N1
RAS-10HRNSE	Ø9.52 (*2)	Ø25.4	TE-08N	—	TE-08N + TE-56N1 + TE-56N1

NOTE

The sizes of the indoor and outdoor units are different. Adjust the flare adapter (accessories) to the joint part of the indoor piping.

Piping connection size of indoor units

Indoor Unit	Gas piping size (mm)	Liquid piping size (mm)
1.5HP	12.7	6.35
2HP	15.88	6.35
2.5–6HP	15.88	9.52
8HP*	19.05→25.4 (1*)	9.52
10HP*	22.2→ 25.4 (1*)	9.52 (2*)

NOTE

If using different piping from the standard values, piping reducers will be supplied by the installer.

- *(*1) Ø19.05→ Ø25.4 and Ø22.2→ Ø25.4 indoor gas pipe adapters are factory supplied with the indoor unit.*
- *(*2) Change the liquid piping size to Ø12.7 when the piping length is more than 30 m. Indoor unit pipe adapter is factory supplied with the indoor unit.*

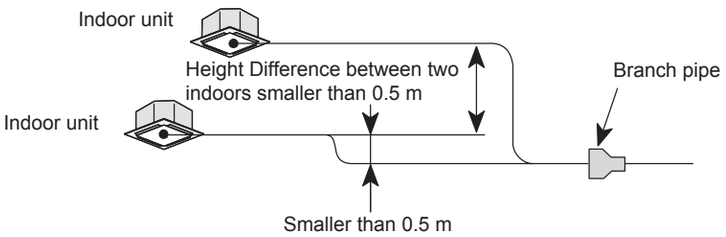
3.5.2 System installation

NOTE

- ***Pipe connection size on outdoor units, indoor units and the multikit or distributor vary according to the system.***
- ***The sizes of the indoor and outdoor units could be different. Adjust the flare adapter (accessory) to the indoor pipe connection in these cases.***

◆ Height Difference Between Indoor Units and Distributor

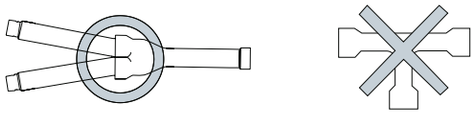
It is recommended to install all indoor units at the same height. When the height difference between the indoor units due to building construction is necessary, this should be less than the value indicated in the table. Install the branch pipe at the same height of indoor units or lower, but never higher.



◆ Installing Distributor

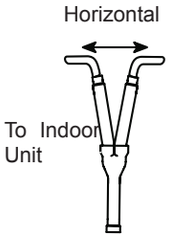
1 Install the Distributor supplied by HITACHI on request.

A tee can not be installed instead of a branch pipe.

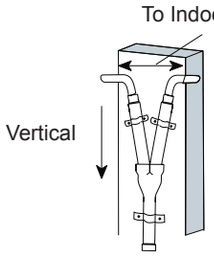


2 Installing the distributor

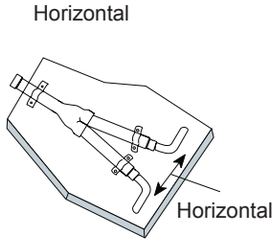
Fix the branch pipe horizontally to the pillar, wall or ceiling. Piping must not be fixed rigidly to the wall as thermal expansion and contraction can cause pipe fracture.



To Outdoor unit



Fixing the branch pipe to the surface of pillar or wall



Fixing the branch pipe to ceiling or beam

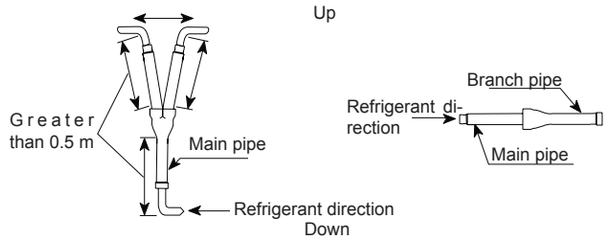
NOTE

Fix the piping from outside of insulation or inserting absorber between the pipe and a fixing metal.

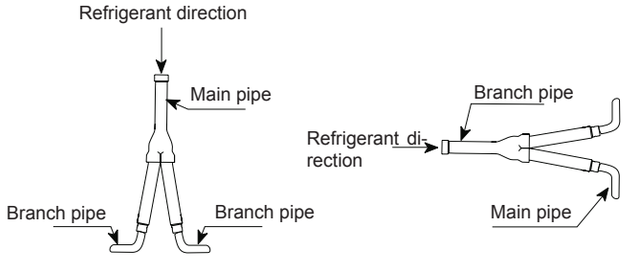
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 66 04/06/2013 18:13:30

3 Correct position of distributor (available also for quad installation)

- This is the correct position:



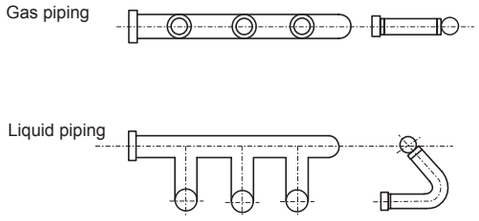
- This is wrong position.



4 Correct position of triple branch pipe

- Install the header horizontally

Sample: Triple branch pipe



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 67 04/06/2013 18:13:30

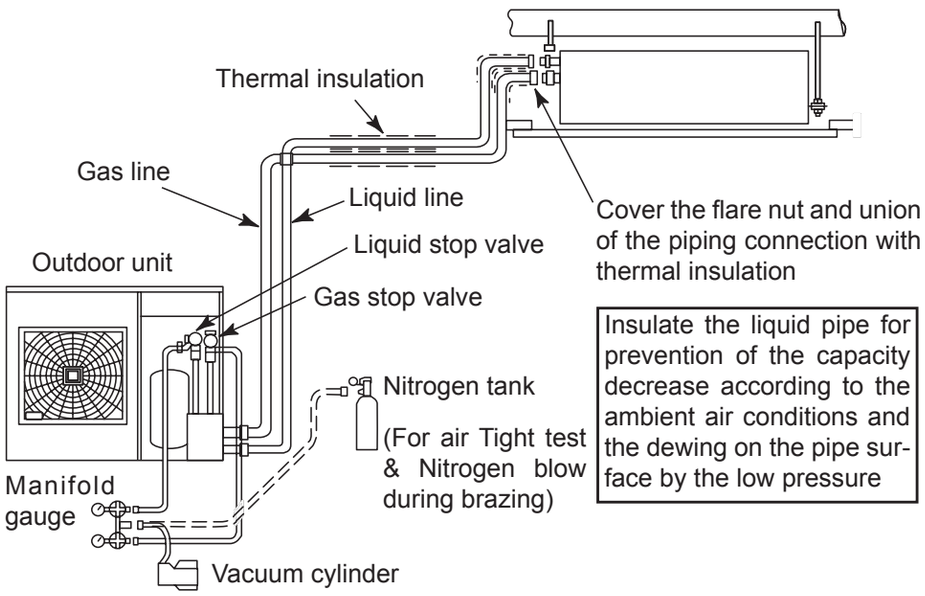
3.6 Refrigerant charge

CAUTION

- ***Do not charge OXYGEN, ACETYLENE, or other flammable and poisonous gases into the refrigerant, as an explosion could occur. It is recommended that oxygen free nitrogen be charged for these types of test cycles when performing a leakage test or an airtight test. These types of gases are extremely dangerous.***
- ***Insulate the unions and flare-nuts at the piping connection part completely.***
- ***Insulate the liquid piping completely to avoid a decreased performance; if not, it will cause sweating on the surface of the pipe.***
- ***Charge refrigerant correctly following the procedures of the manuals. Overcharging or insufficient charging could cause a compressor failure.Insulate the unions and flare-nuts at the piping connection part completely.***
- ***Check for refrigerant leakage in detail. If a large refrigerant leakage occurred, it would cause difficult breathing.***
- ***If the flare nut is tightened too hard, the flare nut may crack after a long time and cause refrigerant leakage.***

Follow the next procedure to charge the R410A refrigerant inside the indoor unit:

1. Connect the gauge manifold using charging hoses with a nitrogen cylinder to the outdoor unit check joints of the liquid line and the gas line stop valves.
2. Supply power to the indoor unit and switch the DSW1-2 ON of its PCB1. Thereby the indoor unit SV1 and SV2 open to allow the vacuum and refrigerant charge operation inside the indoor unit. Very important to remind to switch the DSW1-2 OFF when finishing the whole procedure.
3. Check for any gas leakage at the flare nut connection by using nitrogen gas inside of the field-supplied piping to increase the pressure at 4.15 MPa.
4. Connect the vacuum pump to the gauge manifold and operate it for 1 to 2 hours until the pressure decreases lower than a pressure of 756 mmHg in vacuum.
5. Fully open the outdoor unit gas and liquid stop valves.
6. Operate the outdoor unit in cooling operation for more than 10 minutes to circulate the refrigerant through the whole circuit.

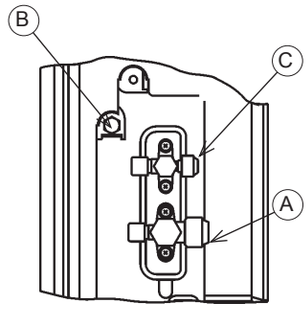
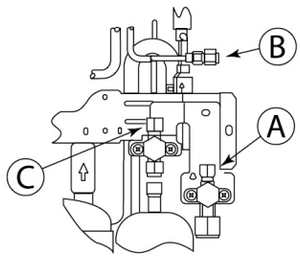
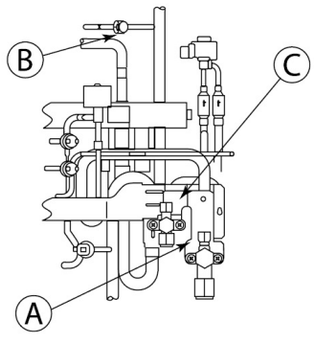


3.6.1 Caution of the pressure by check joint

When the pressure is measured, use the check joint of gas stop valve (A), and use the check joint of liquid piping (B) in the figure below.

At that time, connect the pressure gauge according to the following table because of high pressure side and low pressure side changes by operation mode.

The below figures show examples of 3, 4 and 5 HP:

RAS-3HVRNS3	RAS-4H(V)RNS3E	RAS-5H(V)RNS2E
		

	Cooling operation	Heating operation
Check joint for gas stop valve -A-	Low pressure	High pressure
Check joint for piping -B-	High pressure	Low pressure
Check joint for liquid stop valve -C-	Exclusive for vacuum pump and refrigerant charge	

NOTE

Be careful that refrigerant and oil do not splash to the electrical parts at removing the charge hoses.

3.6.2 Refrigerant charge amount

Although refrigerant has been charged into this unit, additional refrigerant charge is required according to piping length.

- The additional refrigerant quantity should be determined and charged into the system according to the following procedure.
- Record the additional refrigerant quantity in order to facilitate maintenance and servicing activities.

◆ Refrigerant charge before shipment (W_0 (kg))

W_0 is the outdoor unit refrigerant charge before shipment explained before, and it's shown in the following table:

Outdoor unit	Refrigerant charge before shipment (W_0 (kg))
RAS-3HVRNS3	1.9
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E	2.9
RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E	2.9
RAS-8HRNSE	6.0
RAS-10HRNSE	6.2

CAUTION

- *When charging refrigerant, measure the amount precisely.*
- *Overloading or underloading of refrigerant may cause compressor problems.*
- *If the actual piping length is less than 5 m consult your dealer.*

◆ Additional refrigerant charge calculation method

Calculate the additional refrigerant charge amount according to the following steps:

Step 1: Additional refrigerant charge calculation for liquid piping (W_1 (kg))

Outdoor units has been charged with refrigerant for 30 m (*) of actual piping length. An additional refrigerant charge is required in systems with actual piping length longer than 30 m(*).

Use the following formula:

$$W_1 = (L-30) \times P \ (*)$$

L: Total piping length (m)

P: Additional refrigerant charge (g/m) (Refer to the following table)

Model	Additional refrigerant charge (P) (g/m)
RAS-3HVRNS3	30
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E	40
RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E	60
RAS-8HRNSE	65
RAS-10HRNSE	120

Step 2: Additional refrigerant charge calculation for indoor unit (W_2 (kg))

When the outdoor unit is combined with indoor units RPI-(8/10)HP, it´s necessary an additional refrigerant charge (W_2) = 1 kg/unit. For indoor units lower than 8 HP, an additional refrigerant charge it's not needed.

Indoor unit capacity	Additional refrigerant charge (W_2 (kg))
≥ 8 HP	1
< 8 HP	0

Step 3: Calculation of total additional refrigerant charge (W (kg))

Put weight W_1 and W_2 calculated in step 1 and step 2 into the following formula:

$$W = W_1 + W_2$$

System example (W) = [ ] + [ ] = [ ] kg

Step 4: Charging work

Charge refrigerant (R410A) into the system according to the instructions.

Step 5: Total refrigerant charge of the system (W_{TOT} (kg))

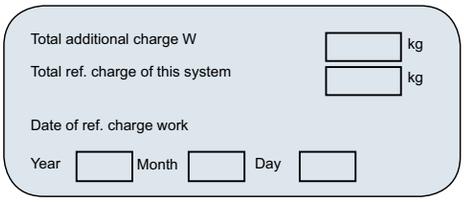
The total refrigerant charge of this system is calculated by the following formula:

$$W_{TOT} = W + W_0$$

System example (W_{TOT}) = [ ] + [ ] = [ ] kg

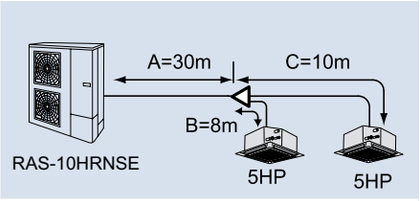
W_0 is the outdoor unit refrigerant charge before shipment explained before, and it's shown in its specific table.

Finally, record the refrigerant charge quantity in order to facilitate maintenance and servicing activities.



◆ Additional refrigerant charge calculation example

Example of twin system for RAS-10HRNSE



Step 1: Additional refrigerant charge calculation for liquid piping (W_1 (kg))

Use the following formula:

$$W_1 = (L-30) \times P$$

Total piping length (L) = A+B+C = 30+8+10 = 48 m

Additional refrigerant charge (P) = 12 m (Refer to its specific table)

$$W_1 = (48-30) \times 0.12 = 2.16 \text{ kg}$$

Step 2: Additional refrigerant charge calculation for indoor unit (W_2 (kg))

The additional refrigerant charge needed for indoor units it's only for (8-10)HP, so in this case it's not needed (W_2 = 0 kg).

Step 3: Calculation of total additional refrigerant charge (W (kg))

Use the formula shown below:

$$W = W_1 + W_2 = 2.16 + 0 = 2.16 \text{ kg}$$

Step 4: Total refrigerant charge of the system (W_{TOT} (kg))

The total refrigerant charge of this system is calculated by the following formula:

$$W_{TOT} = W + W_0$$

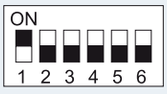
Refrigerant charge before shipment (W_0) = 6.2 kg (Refer to its specific table)

$$W_{TOT} = 6.2 + 2.16 = 8.16 \text{ kg}$$

3.6.3 Setting of pipe length DSW.

DSW2 setting will be required only when the refrigerant pipe length is shorter than 5 m or longer than 30 m. Pipe length setting shall be performed as shown below.

(The ■ side in the DIP switch show the position.)

DSW2 on outdoor PCB1		
Factory setting Piping length between 5 m and ℓ(m)	Pipe Length 5 m or shorter	Pipe Length 30 m or longer
		

3.6.4 Pump down refrigerant

When the refrigerant should be collected into the outdoor unit due to indoor/outdoor unit relocation, collect the refrigerant as follows:

1. Attach the manifold gauge to the gas stop valve and the liquid stop valve.
2. Turn ON the power source.
3. Set the DSW1-1 pin of the outdoor unit PCB at the “ON” side for cooling operation. Close the liquid stop valve and collect the refrigerant.
4. When the pressure at lower pressure side (gas stop valve) indicates -0.01 MPa (-100 mmHg), perform the following procedures immediately.
   - Close the gas stop valve.
   - Set the DSW1-1 pin at the “OFF” side (To stop the unit operation).
5. Turn OFF the power source.

⚠ CAUTION

Measure the low pressure by the pressure gauge and keep it in a measurement higher than -0.01 MPa. If the pressure is lower than -0.01 MPa, the compressor may be faulty.

3.7 Caution in case of refrigerant leakage

The installers and those responsible for drafting the specifications are obliged to comply with local safety codes and regulations in the case of refrigerant leakage.

3.7.1 Maximum permitted concentration of hydrofluorocarbon (HFC)

The refrigerant R410A, charged in the UTOPIA series system, is an incombustible and non-toxic gas. However, if leakage occurs and gas fills a room, it may cause suffocation.The maximum permissible concentration of HFC gas, R410A in air is 0.44 kg/m^3, according to EN378-1.

Therefore, some effective measure must be taken to lower the R410A concentration in air below 0.44 kg/m^3 to prevent suffocation in case of leakage.

3.7.2 Calculation of refrigerant concentration

1 Calculate the total quantity of refrigerant **R (kg)** charged in the system by connecting all the indoor units in the rooms to be air-conditioned.
2 Calculate the room volume **V (m^3)** of each room.
3 Calculate the refrigerant concentration **C (kg/m^3)** of the room according to the following equation:

C = R / V
R: Total quantity of refrigerant charged (kg).
V: Room volume (m^3).
C: Refrigerant concentration (≤ 0.44 kg/m^3 for R410A).

3.7.3 Countermeasure for refrigerant leakage

The room must have the following features to prevent suffocation in case a refrigerant leakage occurs:

1 Provide a shutterless opening which will allow fresh air to circulate into the room.
2 Provide a doorless opening of 0.15% or more size to the floor area.
3 There must be a ventilator fan connected to a gas leak detector, with a ventilator capacity of 0.4 m³/min or higher per Japanese refrigeration ton (= compressor displacement volume / 5.7 m³/h) of the air conditioning system using the refrigerant.

Model	Tonnes
RAS-3HVRNS3	1.35
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E	1.64
RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E	2.27
RAS-(8/10)HRNSE	4.11

4 Pay a special attention to the place, such as a basement, etc., where refrigerant can stay, since refrigerant is heavier than air.

3.8 Drain piping

◆ Drain discharging boss

When the base of the outdoor unit is temporarily utilized as a drain receiver and the drain water in it is discharged, this drain boss is utilized to connect the drain piping.

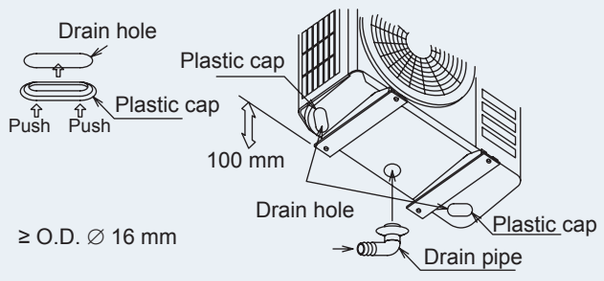
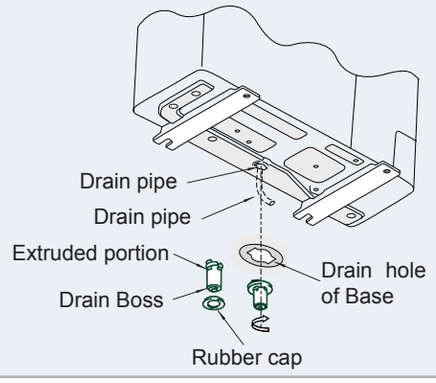
Model	Applicable Model
DBS-12L	RAS-3HVRNS3
DBS-26	RAS-4H(V)RNS3 RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

Connecting procedure

1 Insert the plastic cap into the drain boss up to the extruded portions.
2 Insert the boss into the unit base up to the extruded portions.
3 Size of the drain boss is:
   - For DBS-12L: 15 mm (O.D.)
   - For DBS-26: 32 mm (O.D.)
4 A drain pipe should be field-supplied.

NOTE

- *Do not use this drain boss set in a cold area, because the drain water may freeze.*
- *This drain boss is not sufficient to collect all the drain water. If collecting drain water is completely required, provide a drain-pan that is bigger than the unit base and install it under the unit with drainage.*

RAS-3HVRNS3	RAS-4H(V)RNS3E RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E RAS-(8/10)HRNSE
	

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

4. Electrical wiring

Index

4.1. General information 76
4.1.1. General notes 76
4.1.2. General verifications 76
4.2. Electrical wiring for the outdoor unit 78
4.3. Setting of DIP switches and RSW switches 80
4.3.1. Quantity and Position of DIP Switches 80
4.3.2. Jumpers 84
4.3.3. LED's indication for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 85
4.4. Common wiring 86
4.4.1. Electrical wiring between outdoor and indoor unit 86
4.4.2. Wiring size 87
4.4.3. Main switch protection 87
4.5. H-LINK II system 88
4.5.1. Features 88
4.5.2. Specifications 88
4.5.3. DIP Switch setting for multiple H-LINK systems 89
4.5.4. Examples of the system of connection between H-LINK and H-LINK II units 90
4.5.5. Examples of H-LINK II system 91
4.6. Electrical wiring diagrams 93
4.6.1. RAS-3HVRNS3 93
4.6.2. RAS-4HVRNS3E 94
4.6.3. RAS-4HRNS3E 95
4.6.4. RAS-(5/6)H(V)VRNS2E 96
4.6.5. RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 97

4

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 75 04/06/2013 18:13:32

4.1 General information

4.1.1 General notes

CAUTION

- *Before any electrical wiring work or regular inspections, switch off the main power supply switches of the indoor and outdoor units. Wait three minutes before starting installation or maintenance work.*
- *Make sure that the indoor and outdoor are completely stopped before starting work on the electrical wiring or regular inspections.*
- *Protect cables, drain hose, electric parts, etc. from rodents and insects; otherwise these might damage unprotected components and, in the worst case, cause a fire.*
- *Do not allow cables to come into contact with the refrigerant pipes, metal edges, printed circuit boards (PCB) or the electric parts inside the unit; the cables may be damaged and, in the worst case, cause a fire.*
- *Firmly secure the cables inside the indoor unit with plastic flanges.*

DANGER

- ***Use an earth leakage breaker with medium sensitivity, and an activation speed of 0.1 sec or less. If this is not fitted, there is a risk of electric shock and/or fire.***
- ***Install an earth leakage breaker, fuse and circuit breaker for each outdoor unit power line. Not fitting it may cause an electric shock or fire.***

NOTE

Fix the rubber bushes with adhesive when the outdoor unit ducts are not used.

4.1.2 General verifications

1 Make sure the electric components supplied by the installer (main power switches, circuit breakers, wires, connectors and connection terminals) have been selected correctly in line with the electrical data given.

   a. The electricity supply to the unit should be via an exclusive power control switch and protective circuit breaker, certified and installed in accordance with local or national safety regulations.

   b. The electricity supply for the outdoor and indoor units should be separate. Connect the voltage supply wiring for each group of indoor units to the same outdoor unit.

2 Check that the supply voltage is between 90 and 110% of the rated voltage. Where the voltage capacity is too low, it will not be possible to start the system due to the drop in voltage.

3 During the preliminary preparation work of the electricity supply line for the unit, the provisions in local and national legislation must never be violated.

4 Check that the earth cable is correctly connected.

Electromagnetic compatibility

Following Council Directive 89/336/EEC and amendments 92/31/EEC and 93/68/EEC, relating to electromagnetic compatibility, the following table indicates maximum permissible system impedance Z_{max} at the interface point of the user's power supply, in accordance with EN61000-3-11.

MODEL	Z_{max} (Ω)	MODEL	Z_{max} (Ω)
RAS-3HVRNS3	—	RAS-6HVRNS2E	0.29
RAS-4HVRNS3E	0.27	RAS-6HRNS2E	—
RAS-4HRNS3E	—	RAS-8HRNSE	—
RAS-5HVRNS2E	0.29	RAS-10HRNSE	—
RAS-5HRNS2E	—		

Harmonics

Harmonics situation of each model regarding IEC 61000-3-2 and IEC 61000-3-12 is as follows:

MODELS SITUATION REGARDING IEC 61000-3-2 and IEC 61000-3-12	MODEL	Ssc "xx" (KVA)
Equipment complying with IEC 61000-3-2 (professional use(*))	RAS-3HVRNS3	—
	RAS-4HRNS3E (*)	—
	RAS-5HRNS2E (*)	—
	RAS-6HRNS2E (*)	—
Equipment complying with IEC 61000-3-12	RAS-4HVRNS3E	—
	RAS-5HVRNS2E	—
	RAS-6HVRNS2E	—
	RAS-8HRNSE	—
Installation restrictions may be applied by supply authorities in relation to harmonics	RAS-10HRNSE	—

DANGER

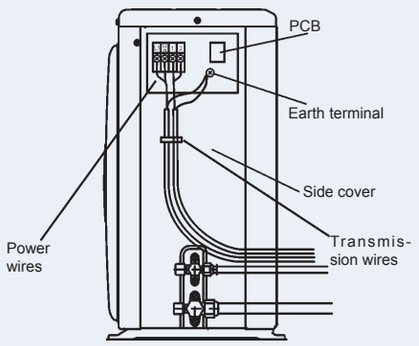
- ***Never connect the earth cable to the refrigerant pipes. The gas in the pipes could cause a fire.***
- ***Do not connect the earth cable to the lighting arrest system. The electrical potential of earth would increase abnormally.***

4.2 Electrical wiring for the outdoor unit

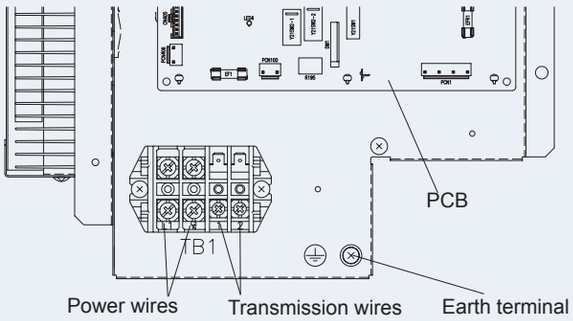
The correct electrical wiring connection for the outdoor unit is shown below.

1 Using the appropriate cable, connect the power circuit to the appropiate terminals as shown on the wiring label and the illustration below. Connect the power supply cables L1 and N (for 230V 50Hz) or L1, L2, L3 and N (for 400V 50Hz) to the terminal board, and the earth conductor to the earthing screw in the electrical box base plate.

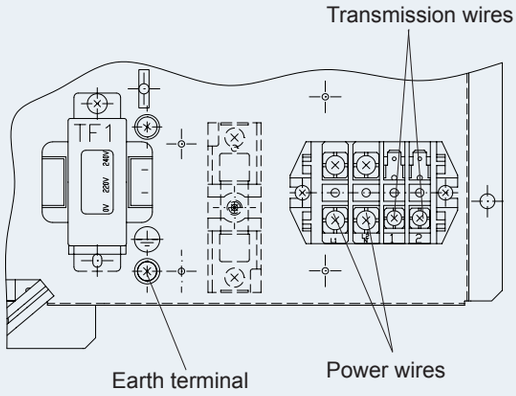
RAS-3HVRNS3



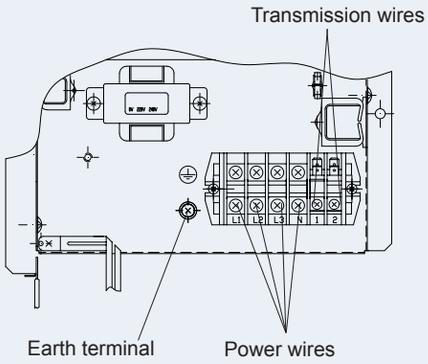
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E



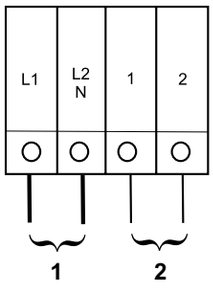
RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E



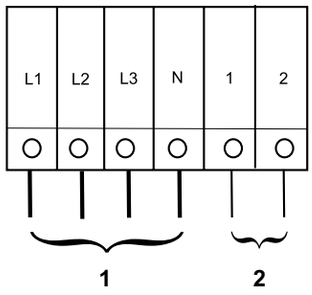
RAS-(8/10)HRNSE



2 Connect the wires between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit to the terminals 1 and 2 on the terminal board.



1. Power supply 1~ 230V.
2. Control cable (5V).

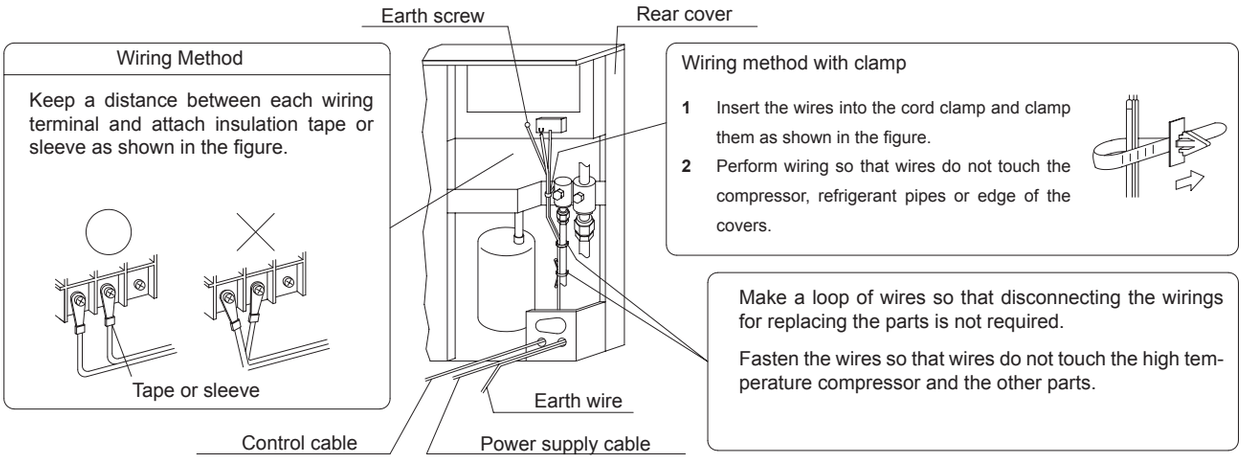


1. Power supply 3N~ 400V.
2. Control cable (5V).

3 Fix the cable with the clamp supplied in the Electrical Box to ensure strain relief.

4 Running of the wires

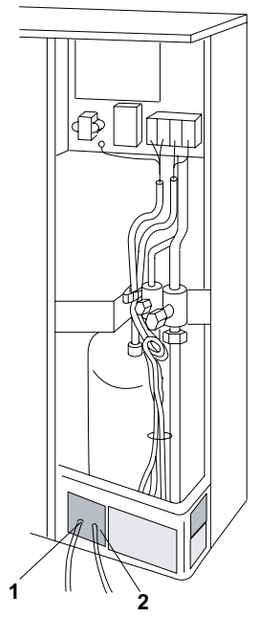
a. When routing out cable, make sure that it does not obstruct mounting of the outdoor service cover (for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E).



b. Do not run the wires in front of the fixing screw of the service access panel. If you do so, you will not be able to remove the fixing screw. (for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE)

1: Power wires

2: Signal wires



4.3 Setting of DIP switches and RSW switches

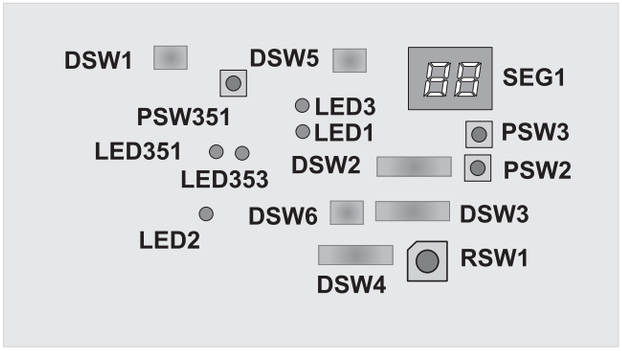
NOTE

- *The mark "■" indicates the position of dips switches.*
- *No mark "■" indicates pin position is not affecting.*
- *The figures show the settings before shipment or after selection.*

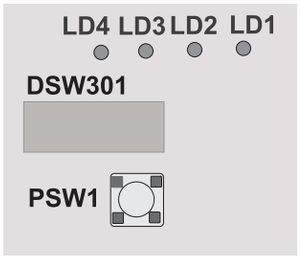
4.3.1 Quantity and Position of DIP Switches

◆ **RAS-3HVRNS3**

PCB1

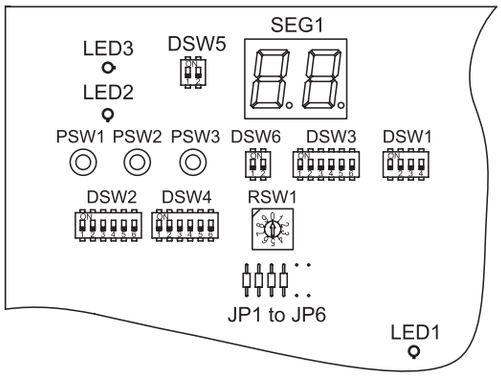


PCB2

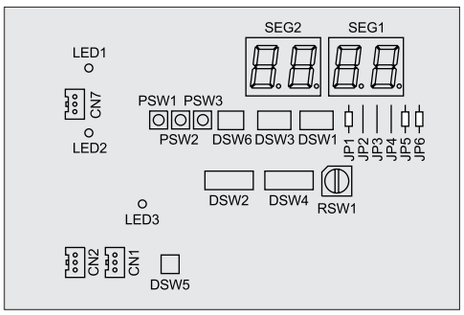


◆ **RAS-4H(V)RNS3E**

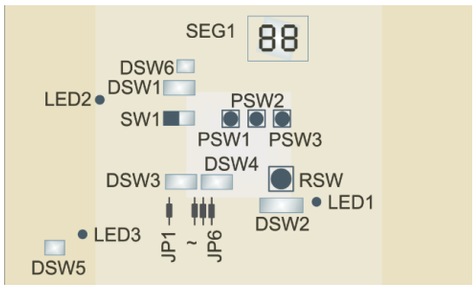
PCB



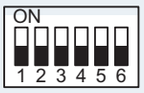
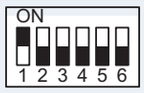
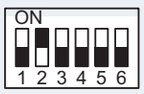
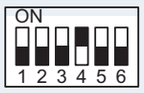
◆ **RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E**



◆ **RAS-(8/10)HRNSE**



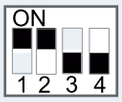
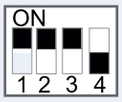
◆ DSW301: Test run mode (only RAS-3HVRNS3)

Setting before shipment	
Cooling	
Heating	
Forced stop of compressor	

◆ DSW1: No setting is required (only RAS-3HVRNS3)

• When set pin number 1 to ON, the electric current detection is cancelled. Pin number 1 should be set back to OFF after electrical work.	

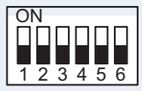
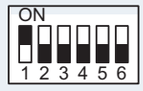
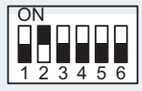
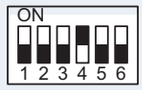
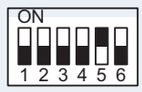
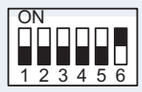
◆ DSW1: Test run mode (only RAS-4H(V)RNS3E, RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE)

• Factory setting	
• Cooling test run	
• Heating test run	
• Cooling test run for intermediate season	
• Heating test run for intermediate season	
• Forced stop of compressor	

4

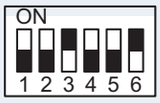
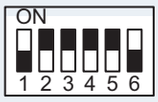
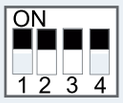
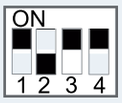
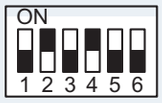
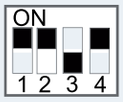
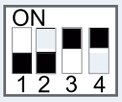
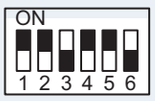
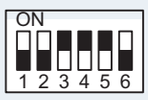
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 81 04/06/2013 18:13:34

◆ DSW2: Optional function setting and piping lenght

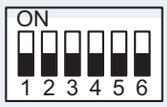
• Pipe length setting should be performed as follows according to the on-site pipe length.	**Setting before shipment**  **Pipe length (≤5m)**  **Pipe length (≥30m)** 
• Optional piping setting	
• Optional function setting	
• External input/output setting mode	

◆ DSW3: Capacity setting (No setting is required)

Factory setting

RAS-3HVRNS3	RAS-4HVRNS3E	RAS-5HVRNS2E	RAS-6HVRNS2E		
					
	RAS-4HRNS3E	**RAS-5HRNS2E**	**RAS-6HRNS2E**	**RAS-8HRNSE**	**RAS-10HRNSE**
					

◆ DSW4 and RSW1: Refrigerant cycle number setting (Setting is required)

• Setting for the tens digit (Factory setting)	

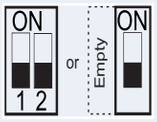
• Setting position Set by inserting slotted screwdriver into the groove (setting for the last digit)	

◆ DSW5: End terminal resistance (No setting is required)

To ensure the impedance corresponds, set the DSW5 according to the number of outdoor units of the H-LINK system.

• Factory setting	
• Cancellation	

◆ DSW6: No setting is required (Only RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4(H)VRNS3E)

• Factory setting	

◆ DSW6: Power supply and series setting (No setting is required) (Only RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE)

	5/6 HP	8/10 HP
• Factory setting		

4.3.2 Jumpers

◆ RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

Jumper lead setting (JP1-6)

Setting before shipment:

System	JP1	JP2	JP3	JP4	JP5	JP6
Single phase (1~)	0	1	1	1	0	0
Three-phase (3N~)	1	1	0	1	0	0

NOTE

- *0: Open*
- *1: Short circuit*

The function selection using the jumper lead setting is shown in the tables below:

RAS-3HVRNS3		
Setting	**Function**	**Details**
JP1	Not used	—
JP2	Not used	—
JP3	Not used	—
JP4	Fixing for Cooling Only	When JP4 is set to “open”, operation mode is fixed for cooling. Thermo-ON is available only by “COOL” or “DRY” mode at indoor unit.
JP5	Selfdiagnosis	For function test of the outdoor unit control PCB.
JP6	Phase detection release	Phase detection abnormaly not detected. Release of the Momentary Power Failure between S and T phases

RAS-4H(V)RNS3E		
Setting	**Function**	**Details**
JP1	230V power source voltage	When JP1 is set to “open”, changes value of current protection, etc., to 230V power source voltage.
JP2	Not used	—
JP3	400V power source voltage	When JP3 is set to “open”, changes value of current protection, etc., to 400V power source voltage. However, in single phase units it becomes 230V power source voltage.
JP4	Fixing for Cooling Only	When JP4 is set to “open”, operation mode is fixed for cooling. Thermo-ON is available only by “COOL” or “DRY” mode at indoor unit.
JP5	Selfdiagnosis	For function test of the outdoor unit control PCB. Factory default setting is open. When power ON in short condition it enters selfdiagnosis.
JP6	Phase detection release	Phase detection abnormaly not detected. When short, doesn’t affect phase detection.

◆ RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

Jumper lead setting (JP1-6)

Setting before shipment:

JP1	JP2	JP3	JP4	JP5	JP6
1	0	0	1	1	1

NOTE

- *0: Open*
- *1: Short circuit*

The function selection using the jumper lead setting is shown in the table below.

RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE		
Setting	**Function**	**Details**
JP1	Not used	—
JP2	Not used	—
JP3	Not used	—
JP4	Fixing for Cooling Only	When JP4 is set to “open”, operation mode is fixed for cooling. Thermo-ON is available only by “COOL” or “DRY” mode at indoor unit.
JP5	Not used	—
JP6	R407C pipes	When JP6 is set to “open”, existing piping system control is available. High pressure control is performed depending on existing piping strength.

4.3.3 LED’s indication for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

LED Indication		
LED1	Red	This LED indicates the transmission status between the indoor unit and the RCS
LED2	Yellow	This LED indicates the transmission status between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit
LED3	Green	Power source for the PCB

4.4 Common wiring

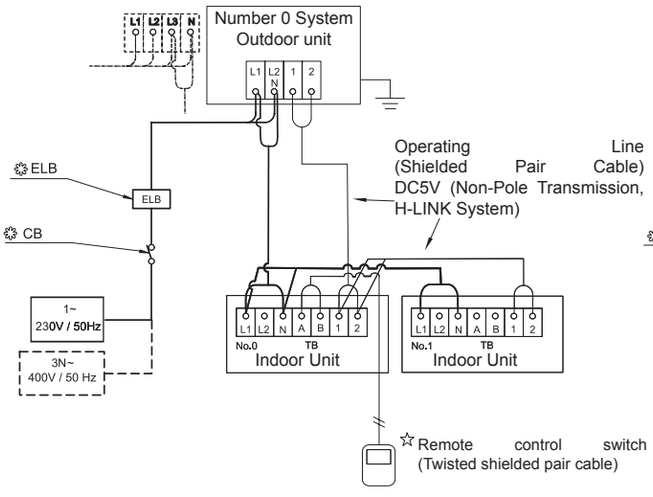
4.4.1 Electrical wiring between outdoor and indoor unit

- Connect the electrical wires between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit as show in the figure.
- When installing the electrical wiring, follow local codes and regulations.
- The refrigerant piping and the control wiring are connected to the units in the same refrigerant cycle.
- Use twist pair wire (more than 0.75 mm^2) for operation wiring between the outdoor unit and indoor unit, and operation wiring between indoor unit and indoor unit.
- Use a 2-core wire for the operating line (do not use wire with more than 3 cores).
- Use shielded wires for intermediate wiring to protect the units from noise interference at lengths of less than 300 m. The size must comply with local code.
- Open a hole near the connection hole of power source wiring when multiple outdoor units are connected from a single power source line.
- The recommended circuit-breaker sizes are shown in the table of electrical data and recommended wiring and breaker sizes / 1 O.U.
- If a duct for field-supplied wiring is not used, fix rubber bushes with adhesive on the panel.
- All field wiring and equipment must comply with local and international codes.
- H-LINK twist pair shielded cable must be grounded in the outdoor unit side.

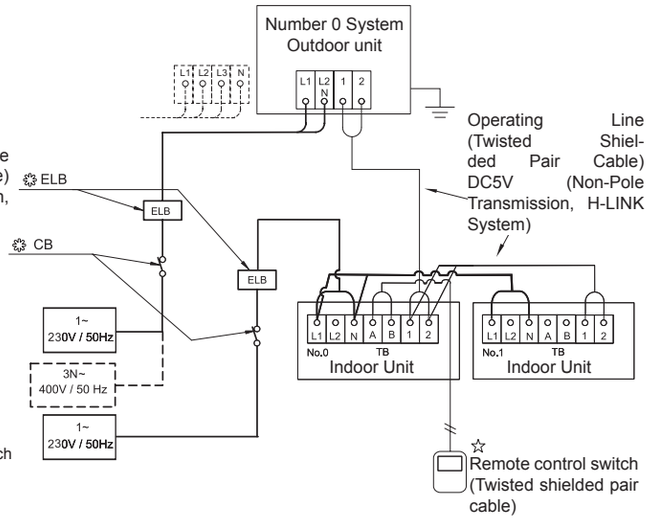
NOTE

Take care with the connection of the operating line. Incorrect connection may cause a failure of the PCB.

Example of power source from the outdoor unit to the indoor unit



Example of independent power source of outdoor unit and indoor unit



TB Terminal board
CB Circuit Breaker (field supplied)
ELB Earthleakage Breaker (field supplied)
A Power source from the outdoor unit to the indoor unit
___ Field Wiring
Field supplied
☆ Optional Accessory

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 86 04/06/2013 18:13:36

4.4.2 Wiring size

◆ Connection wiring

Recommended minimum sizes for field provided wires:

Model	Power supply	Maximum current (A)	Power supply cable size EN60 335-1	Transmitting cable size EN60 335-1
RAS-3HVRNS3	1~ 230V 50Hz	16.0	4.0 mm²	0.75 mm²
RAS-4HVRNS3E		28.0	6.0 mm²	
RAS-5HVRNS2E		26.0	6.0 mm²	
RAS-6HVRNS2E		26.0	6.0 mm²	
RAS-4HRNS3E	3N~ 400V 50Hz	15.0	4.0 mm²	
RAS-5HRNS2E		13.0	4.0 mm²	
RAS-6HRNS2E		13.0	4.0 mm²	
RAS-8HRNSE		20.0	6.0 mm²	
RAS-10HRNSE		23.0	6.0 mm²	

NOTE

- *Follow local codes and regulation when selecting field wires.*
- *Use the wires which are not lighter than the ordinary polychloroprene sheathers flexible cord (code designation 60245 IEC 57).*

4.4.3 Main switch protection

Select the main switches according to the following tables:

Model	Power supply	Maximum current (A)	CB (A)	ELB N°. of poles/A/mA
RAS-3HVRNS3	1~ 230V 50Hz	16.0	20	2/40/30
RAS-4HVRNS3E		28.0	32	
RAS-5HVRNS2E		26.0	32	
RAS-6HVRNS2E		26.0	32	
RAS-4HRNS3E	3N~ 400V 50Hz	15.0	20	4/40/30
RAS-5HRNS2E		13.0	20	
RAS-6HRNS2E		13.0	20	
RAS-8HRNSE		20.0	40	
RAS-10HRNSE		23.0	40	

NOTE

CB: Circuit breaker.

ELB: Earth leakage breaker.

4.5 H-LINK II system

The H-LINK II is the wiring connection system between units.

The H-LINK II wiring system only needs:

- Two transmission wires connecting each indoor and outdoor unit for a total of 64 refrigerant cycles.
- Connection wiring for all indoor and outdoor units in series.

CAUTION

The H-LINK II system cannot be applied to the models with an old transmission.

4.5.1 Features

- The total wiring length is considerably reduced compared to traditional connections.
- Only one connection is required for the wiring between the indoor and outdoor units.
- The wiring connection of the complementary central control devices is easy.

NOTE

CSNET WEB is centralized control system which allows the installation to be controlled remotely. It can be connected at any point of the local corporate network, or even via the Internet.

4.5.2 Specifications

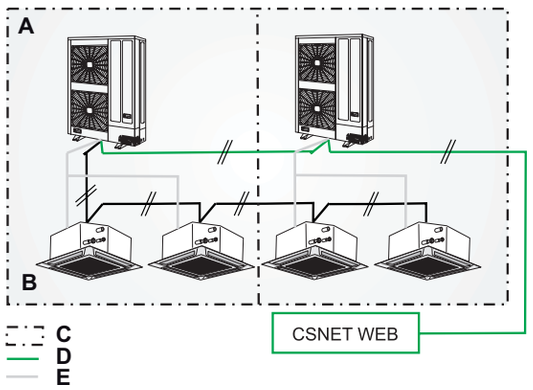
A: outdoor unit.

B: indoor unit.

C: a refrigerant cycle.

D: transmission cables.

E: refrigerant piping.



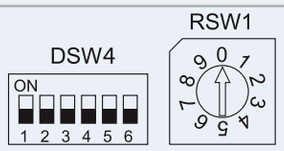
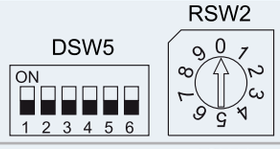
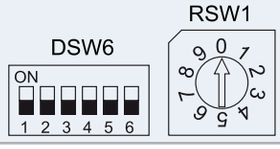
- Transmission cable: 2-wire.
- Polarity of transmission cable: non-polar wire.
- Maximum number of indoor units that can be connected: 4 units per cycle and 160 units per H-LINK II system.
- Maximum wiring length: total 1000 m (including CSNET WEB).
- It is possible to increase the maximum wiring length up to 5000 m by using up to four PSC-5HR units.
- Recommended cable: shielded twisted pair cable, over 0.75 mm^2 (Equivalent to KPEV-S).
- Voltage: 5 V.

CAUTION

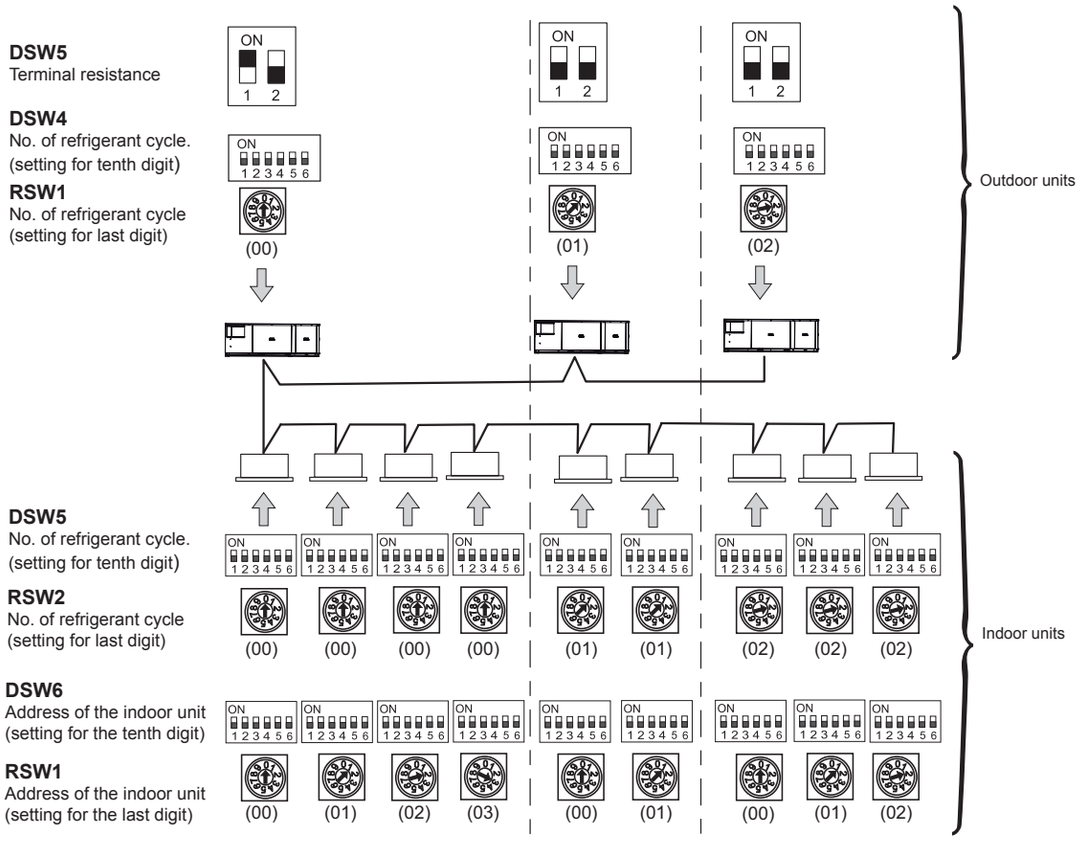
For the H-LINK II system must use twisted shielded pair cable or shielded pair cable.

4.5.3 DIP Switch setting for multiple H-LINK systems

The DIP switches of all outdoor and indoor units have to be set as follows:

Unit	Name of DIP switch	Mark	Setting before the Shipment	Function
Outdoor unit	Terminal resistance	DSW5		DSW5-1 is in “ON” position before shipment. • It is not necessary to set when H-LINK is connected with only one outdoor unit. • When H-LINK is connected with more than one outdoor unit, set as following: - First outdoor unit: keep DSW5-1 in “ON”. - Rest of outdoor units: set DSW5-1 to “OFF”.
	Refrigerant cycle	DSW4 RSW1		For setting the refrigerant cycle address of the Outdoor unit. Set the DSW4 and RSW1 to overlap the setting of other outdoor units in the same H-LINK system.
Indoor unit	Refrigerant cycle	DSW5 RSW2		For setting the refrigerant cycle address of the indoor unit. Set the DSW5 and RSW2 corresponding to the address of outdoor unit in the same refrigerant cycle.
	Address of the indoor unit	DSW6 RSW1		Setting indoor unit address. Set the DSW6 and RSW1 not to overlap the setting of other indoor units in the same refrigerant cycle. (If no set, the automatic address function is performed.)

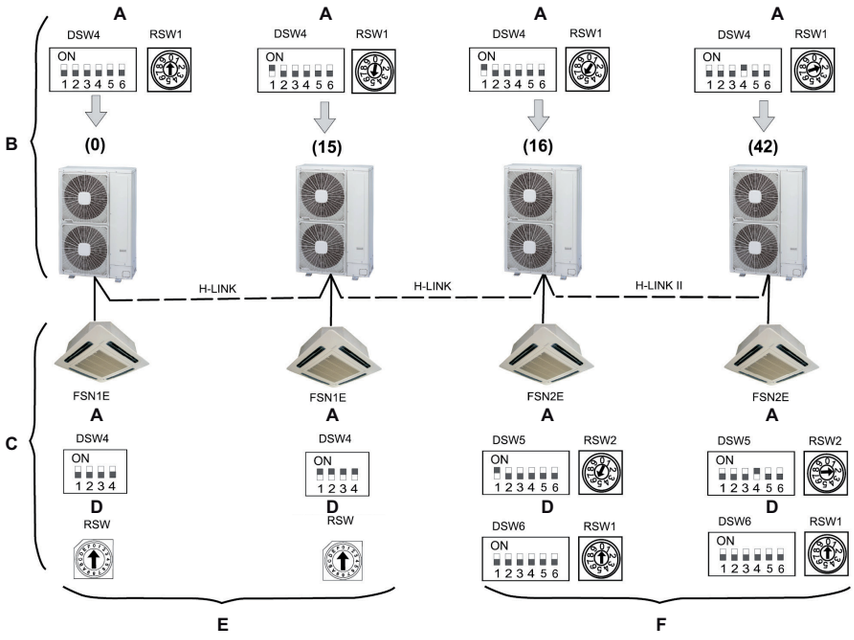
- Example of the setting of the DIP switches.



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 89 04/06/2013 18:13:37

4.5.4 Examples of the system of connection between H-LINK and H-LINK II units

In the case of mixed systems with H-LINK and H-LINK II, set the H-LINK units in the first 16 position of the system, as in the following example where 42 systems are connected, 16 with indoor FSN1E units and 26 with indoor FSN(H)(2/3/4)(E/M)(i)(-DU) units.



A: Refrigerant cycle.

B: Outdoor unit.

C: Indoor unit.

D: Indoor unit address.

E: Either the current remote control switch (H-LINK) or the new one (H-LINK II) can be used.

F: Only the new remote control switch (H-LINK II) can be used.

NOTE

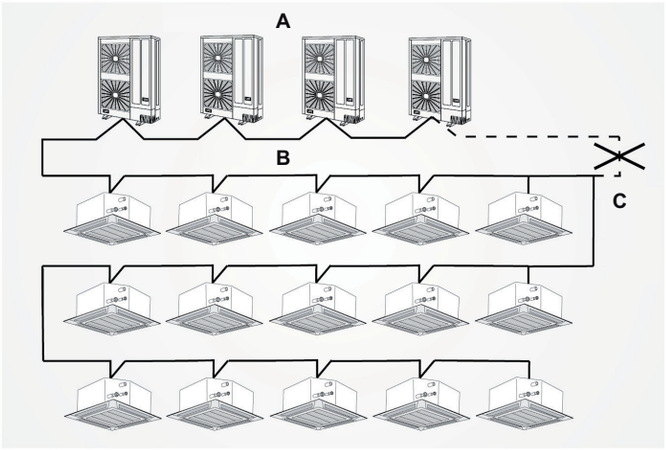
- *The maximum number of indoor units than an H-LINK II can control is 160.*
- *If you use PSC-5S and the CSNET WEB 2.0 (systems only compatible with H-LINK) bear in mind that it will only recognize 16 indoor and 16 outdoor units.*

4.5.5 Examples of H-LINK II system

Two cases:

1. Using H-LINK II system for air conditioning systems without a central control device (CSNET WEB, PSC-A64S or PSC-A64GT).

- Line connection with all units.

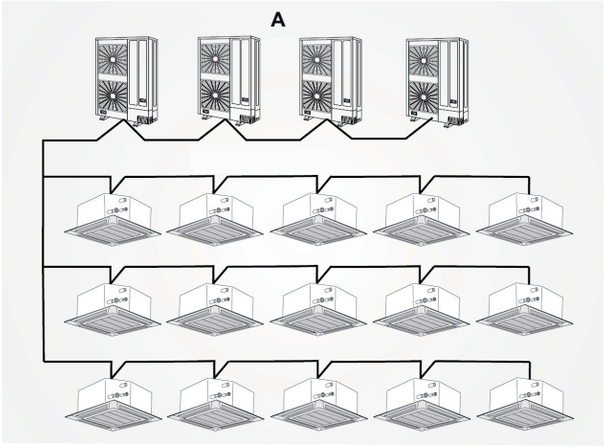


A: Outdoor units.

B: Indoor units.

C: Do not install wiring in a loop.

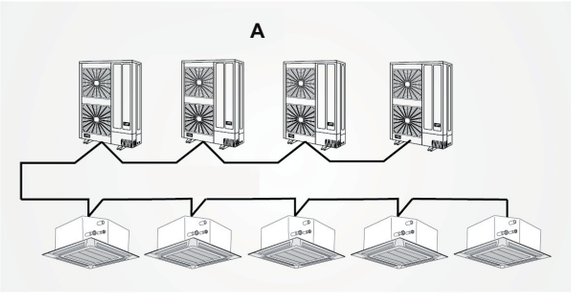
- Line connection for each floor.



A: Outdoor units.

B: Indoor units.

- Connection with one main line and with the branch lines for the units.



A: Outdoor units.

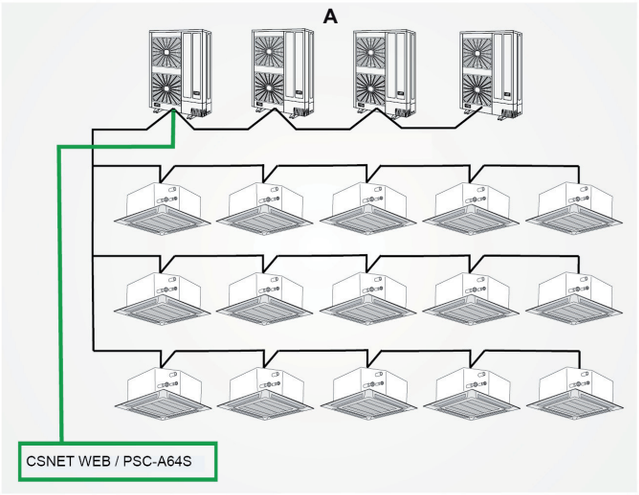
B: Indoor units.

CAUTION

- *The maximum number of units than can be connected is 64 outdoor units and 160 indoor units.*
- *Do not install the wiring in a loop.*
- *If the H-LINK II system is not used when carrying out the electrical wiring as shown above, it must be used once the wiring of the instrument is completed. The DIP switches must therefore be set as specified in the DIP switches on the PCB.*

2. Using the H-LINK II system for air conditioning systems with a central control device (CSNET WEB, PSC-A64S or PSC-A64GT).

- If the central control device is used when carrying out electrical wiring, the CS-NET WEB can be connected at any point of the H-LINK II wiring.



A: Outdoor units.

B: Indoor units.

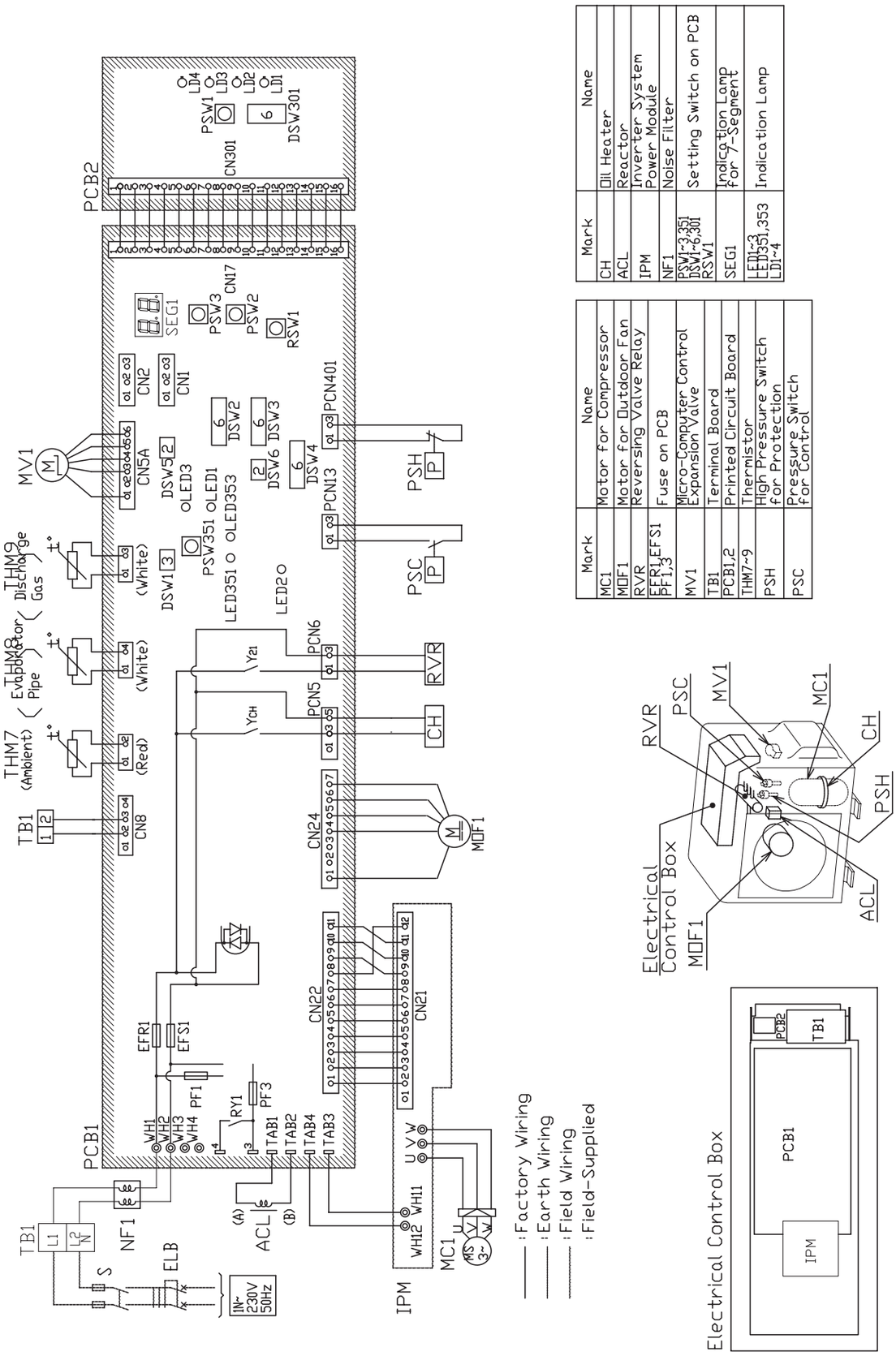
- If the central control device is not used when electrical wiring is carried out, you must connect the H-LINK II wiring to all the systems. The easiest method is usually to connect the outdoor units.

NOTE

For CSNET WEB 2.0 the limitations are those corresponding to H-LINK.

4.6 Electrical wiring diagrams

4.6.1 RAS-3HVRNS3



Mark	Name
MC1	Motor for Compressor
MDF1	Motor for Outdoor Fan
RVR	Reversing Valve Relay
EFR1,EFS1 PF1,3	Fuse on PCB
MV1	Micro-Computer Control Expansion Valve
TB1	Terminal Board
PCB1,2	Printed Circuit Board
THM7~9	Thermistor
PSH	High Pressure Switch for Protection
PSC	Pressure Switch for Control

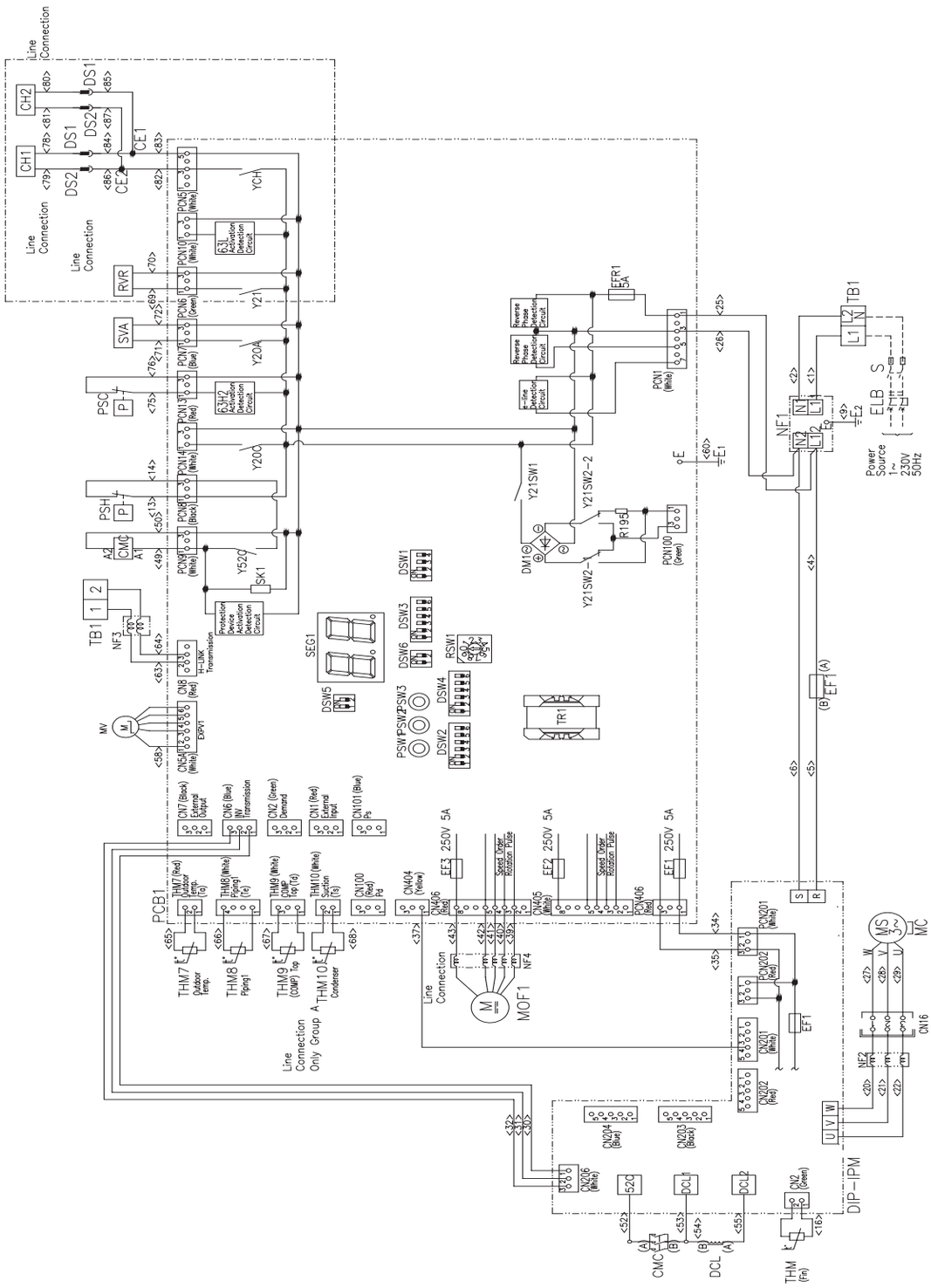
Mark	Name
CH	Oil Heater
ACL	Reactor
IPM	Inverter System Power Module
NF1	Noise Filter
PSW1~3,351 DSW1~6,301 RSW1	Setting Switch on PCB
SEG1	Indication Lamp for 7-Segment
LED1~3 LED351,353 LD1~4	Indication Lamp

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 93 04/06/2013 18:13:39

4.6.2 RAS-4HVRNS3E

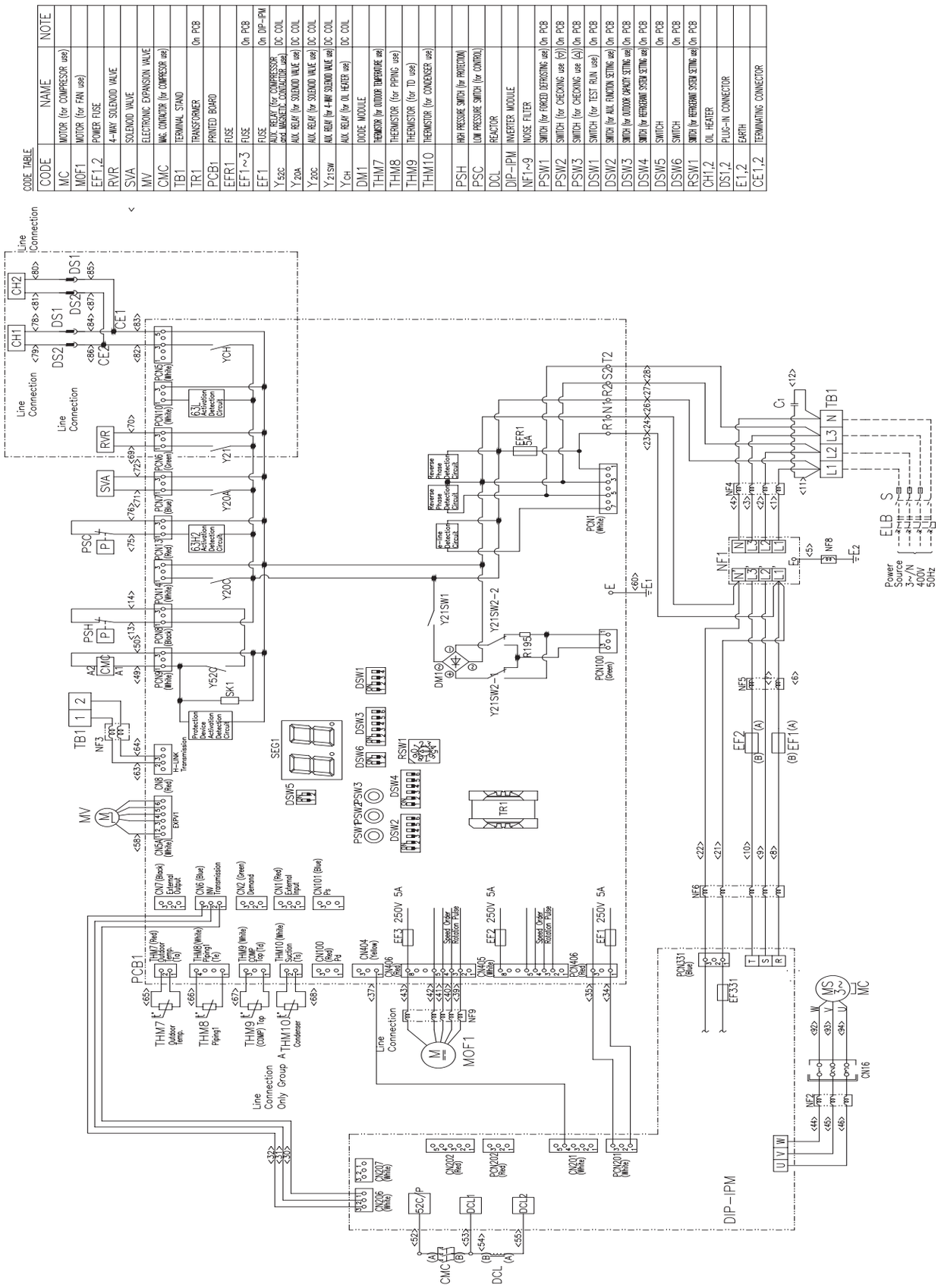
CODE TABLE

CODE	NAME	NOTE
MC	MOTOR (for COMPRESSOR use)	
MOF1	MOTOR (for FAN use)	
EF1	POWER FUSE	
RVR	4-WAY SOLENOID VALVE	
SVA	SOLENOID VALVE	
MV	ELECTRONIC EXPANSION VALVE	
CMC	MAG. CONTACTOR (for COMPRESSOR use)	
TB1	TERMINAL STAND	
TR1	TRANSFORMER	On PCB
PCB1	PRINTED BOARD	
EFR1	FUSE	On PCB
EF1~3	FUSE	On PCB
EF1	FUSE	On DIP-IPM
Y52C	AUX. RELAY (for COMPRESSOR, 52C MAGNETIC CONTACTOR use)	DC COIL
Y 20A	AUX. RELAY (for SOLENOID VALVE use)	DC COIL
Y 20C	AUX. RELAY (for SOLENOID VALVE use)	DC COIL
Y 21SW	AUX. RELAY (for 4-WAY SOLENOID VALVE use)	DC COIL
Y CH	AUX. RELAY (for OIL HEATER use)	DC COIL
DM1	DIODE MODULE	
THM7	THERMISTOR (for OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE use)	
THM8	THERMISTOR (for PIPING use)	
THM9	THERMISTOR (for TD use)	
THM10	THERMISTOR (for CONDENSER use)	
THM	FIN THERMISTOR	
PSH	HIGH PRESSURE SWITCH (for PROTECTION)	
PSL	LOW PRESSURE SWITCH (for CONTROL)	
DCL	REACTOR	
DIP-IPM	INVERTER MODULE	
NF1~4	NOISE FILTER	
PSW1	SWITCH (for FORCED DEFROSTING use)	On PCB
PSW2	SWITCH (for CHECKING use (▽))	On PCB
PSW3	SWITCH (for CHECKING use (△))	On PCB
DSW1	SWITCH (for TEST RUN use)	On PCB
DSW2	SWITCH (for AUX. FUNCTION SETTING use)	On PCB
DSW3	SWITCH (for OUTDOOR CAPACITY SETTING use)	On PCB
DSW4	SWITCH (for REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SETTING use)	On PCB
DSW5	SWITCH	On PCB
DSW6	SWITCH	On PCB
RSW1	SWITCH (for REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SETTING use)	On PCB
CH1,2	OIL HEATER	
DS1,2	PLUG-IN CONNECTOR	
E1,2	EARTH	
CE1,2	TERMINATING CONNECTOR	



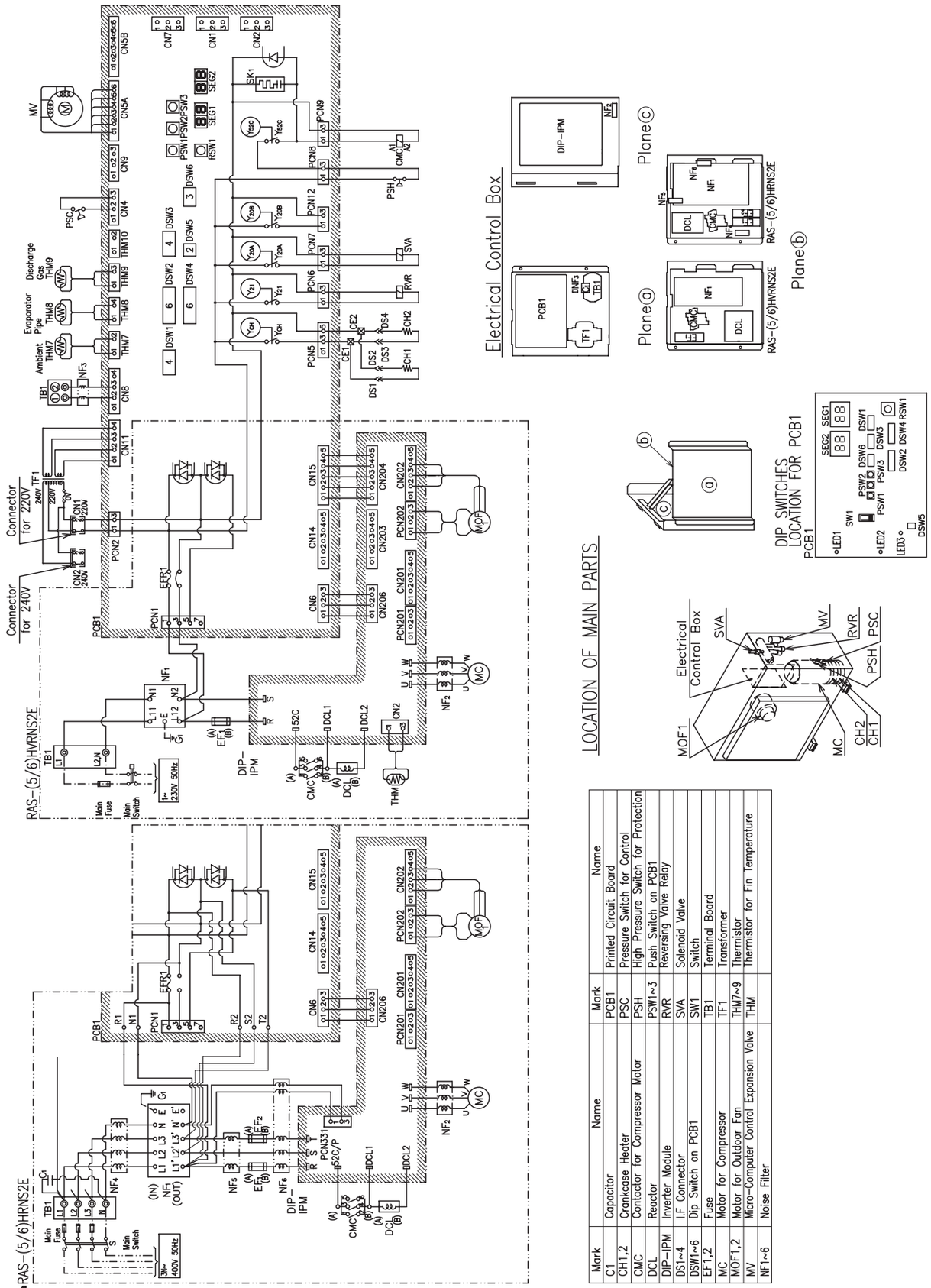
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 94 04/06/2013 18:13:39

4.6.3 RAS-4HRNS3E



CODE TABLE		
CODE	NAME	NOTE
MC	MOTOR (for COMPRESOR use)	
MOF1	MOTOR (for FAN use)	
EF1,2	POWER FUSE	
RVR	4-WAY SOLENOID VALVE	
SVA	SOLENOID VALVE	
MV	ELECTRONIC EXPANSION VALVE	
CMC	MAG. CONTACTOR (for COMPRESOR use)	
TB1	TERMINAL STAND	
TR1	TRANSFORMER	On PCB
PCB1	PRINTED BOARD	
EFR1	FUSE	
EF1~3	FUSE	On PCB
EF1	FUSE	On DIP-IPM
Y52C	AUX. RELAY (for COMPRESSOR and MAGNETIC CONTACTOR use)	DC COIL
Y20A	AUX. RELAY (for SOLENOID VALVE use)	DC COIL
Y20C	AUX. RELAY (for SOLENOID VALVE use)	DC COIL
Y21SW	AUX. RELAY (for 4-WAY SOLENOID VALVE use)	DC COIL
YCH	AUX. RELAY (for OIL HEATER use)	DC COIL
DM1	DIODE MODULE	
THM7	THERMISTOR (for OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE use)	
THM8	THERMISTOR (for PIPING use)	
THM9	THERMISTOR (for TD use)	
THM10	THERMISTOR (for CONDENSER use)	
PSH	HIGH PRESSURE SWITCH (for PROTECTION)	
PSC	LOW PRESSURE SWITCH (for CONTROL)	
DCL	REACTOR	
DIP-IPM	INVERTER MODULE	
NF1~9	NOISE FILTER	
PSW1	SWITCH (for FORCED DEFROSTING use)	On PCB
PSW2	SWITCH (for CHECKING use (▽))	On PCB
PSW3	SWITCH (for CHECKING use (△))	On PCB
DSW1	SWITCH (for TEST RUN use)	On PCB
DSW2	SWITCH (for AUX. FUNCTION SETTING use)	On PCB
DSW3	SWITCH (for OUTDOOR CAPACITY SETTING use)	On PCB
DSW4	SWITCH (for REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SETTING use)	On PCB
DSW5	SWITCH	On PCB
DSW6	SWITCH	On PCB
RSW1	SWITCH (for REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SETTING use)	On PCB
CH1,2	OIL HEATER	
DS1,2	PLUG-IN CONNECTOR	
E1,2	EARTH	
CE1,2	TERMINATING CONNECTOR	

4.6.4 RAS-(5/6)H(V)VRNS2E

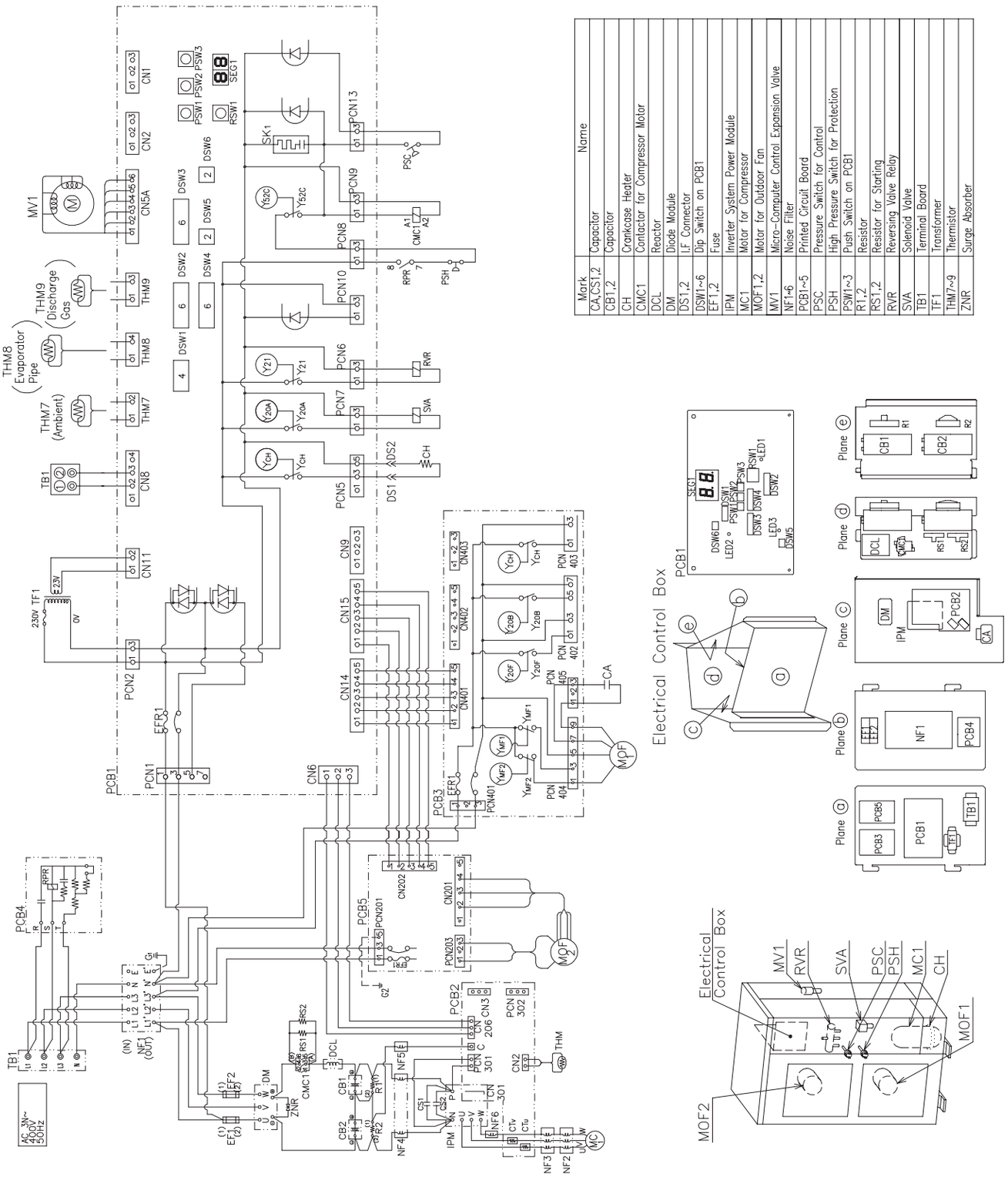


Mark	Name	Mark	Name
C1	Capacitor	PCB1	Printed Circuit Board
CH1,2	Crankcase Heater	PSC	Pressure Switch for Control
CMC	Contactor for Compressor Motor	PSH	High Pressure Switch for Protection
DCL	Reactor	PSW1~3	Push Switch on PCB1
DIP-IPM	Inverter Module	RVR	Reversing Valve Relay
DS1~4	I.F Connector	SVA	Solenoid Valve
DSW1~6	Dip Switch on PCB1	SW1	Switch
EF1,2	Fuse	TB1	Terminal Board
MC	Motor for Compressor	TF1	Transformer
MOF1,2	Motor for Outdoor Fan	THM7~9	Thermistor
MV	Micro-Computer Control Expansion Valve	THM	Thermistor for Fin Temperature
NF1~6	Noise Filter		

4.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 96 04/06/2013 18:13:40

4.6.5 RAS-(8/10)HRNSE



Mark	Name
CA,CS1,2	Capacitor
CB1,2	Capacitor
CH	Crankcase Heater
CMC1	Contactor for Compressor Motor
DCL	Reactor
DM	Diode Module
DS1,2	I.F. Connector
DSW1~6	Dip Switch on PCB1
EF1,2	Fuse
IPM	Inverter System Power Module
MC1	Motor for Compressor
MOF1,2	Motor for Outdoor Fan
MV1	Micro-Computer Control Expansion Valve
NF1~6	Noise Filter
PCB1~5	Printed Circuit Board
PSC	Pressure Switch for Control
PSH	High Pressure Switch for Protection
PSW1~3	Push Switch on PCB1
R1,2	Resistor
RS1,2	Resistor for Starting
RVR	Reversing Valve Relay
SVA	Solenoid Valve
TB1	Terminal Board
TF1	Transformer
THM7~9	Thermistor
ZNR	Surge Absorber

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 98 04/06/2013 18:13:40

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

5. Control system

Index

5.1. Device control system 100

5.1.1. Device control system 100

5.2. Outdoor units PCB 102

5.2.1. Outdoor units PCB for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 102

5.2.2. Outdoor units PCB for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 104

5.3. Protection and safety control 105

5.3.1. Protection and safety control 105

5.4. Standard operation sequence 107

5.4.1. Standard operation sequence for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 107

5.4.2. Standard operation sequence for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 117

5.5. Standard control functions 124

5.5.1. Standard control functions for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 124

5.5.2. Standard control functions for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 129

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 99 04/06/2013 18:13:41

5.1 Device control system

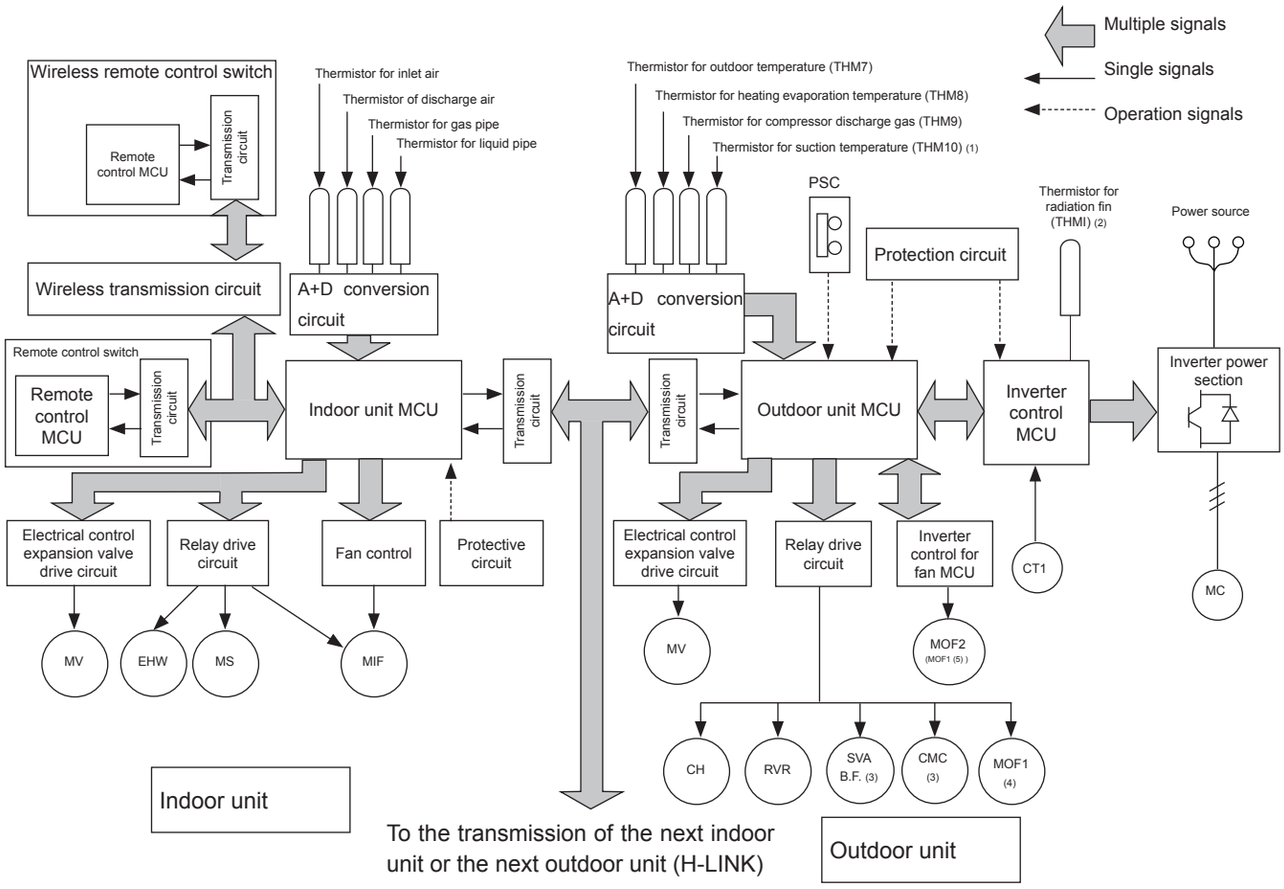
5.1.1 Device control system

Control subject	Purpose		
	Cooling operation	Heating operation	Defrost operation
Control frequency of inverter compressor	The control frequency is determined by the following parameter: • Temperature difference between air inlet temperature and setting air temperature	The control frequency is determined by the following parameter: • Temperature difference between air inlet temperature and setting air temperature	Fixed frequency (Compressor is stopped during 30 seconds after completion of defrosting condition)
Opening degree of expansion valve in outdoor unit	Fully open	• The opening degree of expansion valve is controlled to optimize the temperature on top of compressor.	Fully open
Opening degree of expansion valve in indoor unit	• The opening degree of expansion valve is controlled to optimize the difference between I.U. gas pipe temperature (Tg) and I.U liquid pipe temperature (Tl).	• The opening degree is specificed at normal control starting. Afterward, it is controlled to optimize I.U. liquid pipe temperature (Tl).	The specificied opening degree is determined by the temperature on top of compressor (Td).
Outdoor fan control	• Fan step is controlled to stabilize O.U. liquid pipe temperature (Te).	• Fan Step is controlled according to O.U. liquid pipe temperature and temperature on the top of compressor.	Fan stop.
4-Way valve (RVR)	OFF	ON	OFF
Solenoid valve (SVA) (Equalised pressure valve)	• Turn ON at starting.	• Turn ON at starting.	• Turn ON at defrosting.
Solenoid valve (SVC) (Hot gas discharge bypass)	—	Turn ON depending on I.U. discharge / suction temperature, outdoor temperature, outdoor liquid temperature, etc.	—
High/Low pressure balance	Turn ON SVA before compressor starting. RAS-3HVRNS3: Performed at the indoor expansion valve.	Turn ON SVA before compressor starting RAS-3HVRNS3: Performed at the outdoor expansion valve.	—

I.U.: Indoor unit
O.U.: Outdoor unit
Tc / Te: Condensing temperature / Evaporating temperature
Td: Discharge temperature
Tl: Liquid temperature
Tg: Gas temperature
Cap: Capacity
Temp.: Temperature

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 100 04/06/2013 18:13:41

The figure below shows the outline of the control system.



Symbol	Name	Symbol	Name
MC	Motor (for compressor)	CH	Crankcase heater
MIF	Motor (for indoor fan)	CT1	Current transformer
MOF1, 2	Motor (for outdoor fan)	RVR	4-way valve
MS	Motor (for auto-louver)	SVA BF	Solenoid valve
MV	Electronic expansion valve	PSC	Pressure switch for control
CMC	Compressor magnetic contactor	EHW	Electric heater
MCU	Microprocessor unit		

NOTE

- *(1) Only for RAS-4H(V)RNS3E.*
- *(2) Only for RAS-4HVRNS3E, RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE.*
- *(3) Except for RAS-3HVRNS3.*
- *(4) Only for RAS-(8/10)HRNSE.*
- *(5) For RAS-(3-6)H(V)RNS(2/3)E, there is one fan only.*

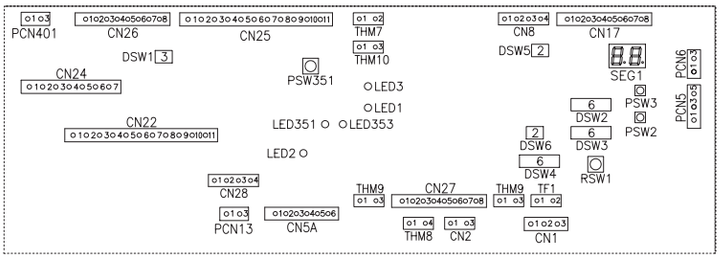
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 101 04/06/2013 18:13:41

5.2 Outdoor units PCB

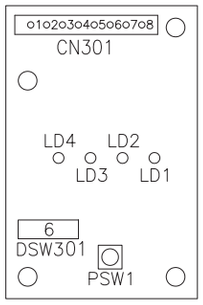
5.2.1 Outdoor units PCB for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

◆ RAS-3HVRNS3

PCB1



PCB2



IPM



PCB1 Connector indication	
Connector	**Name**
PCN5	Crankcase heater of compressor (oil)
PCN6	Reversing valve relay
PCN13	Pressure switch control (PSC)
PCN401	High pressure switch protection (PSH)
THM7	Outdoor air temperature thermistor
THM8	Pipe evaporation temperature thermistor
THM9	Compressor discharge temperature thermistor
CN1	Input function
CN2	Demand input
CN5A	Micro electronic expansion valve
CN8	Transmission from outdoor unit to indoor unit
CN17	Transmission to PCB2
CN22	Transmission to IPM
CN24	Motor for outdoor fan
CN25	For inspection
CN26	For inspection

PCB1 Switch indication	
Connector	**Name**
DSW1	For RAS-3HVRNS3: No setting is required For RAS-4H(V)RNS3E: Test run mode
DSW2	Optional function setting and piping lenght
DSW3	Capacity setting
DSW4/ RSW1	Refrigerant cycle number setting
DSW5	End terminal resistance
DSW6	No setting is required
PSW2	Available optional function. Setting can be selected using the 7-segment display
PSW3	
PSW351	The inverter micro-computer checking

PCB1 LED indication		
LED	**Colour**	**Name**
LED1	Red	Power source for the PCB1
LED2	Green	This LED indicates the transmission status between the indoor unit and the RCS
LED3	Yellow	This LED indicates the transmission status between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit
LED351	Red	For inspection
LED353	Red	For inspection

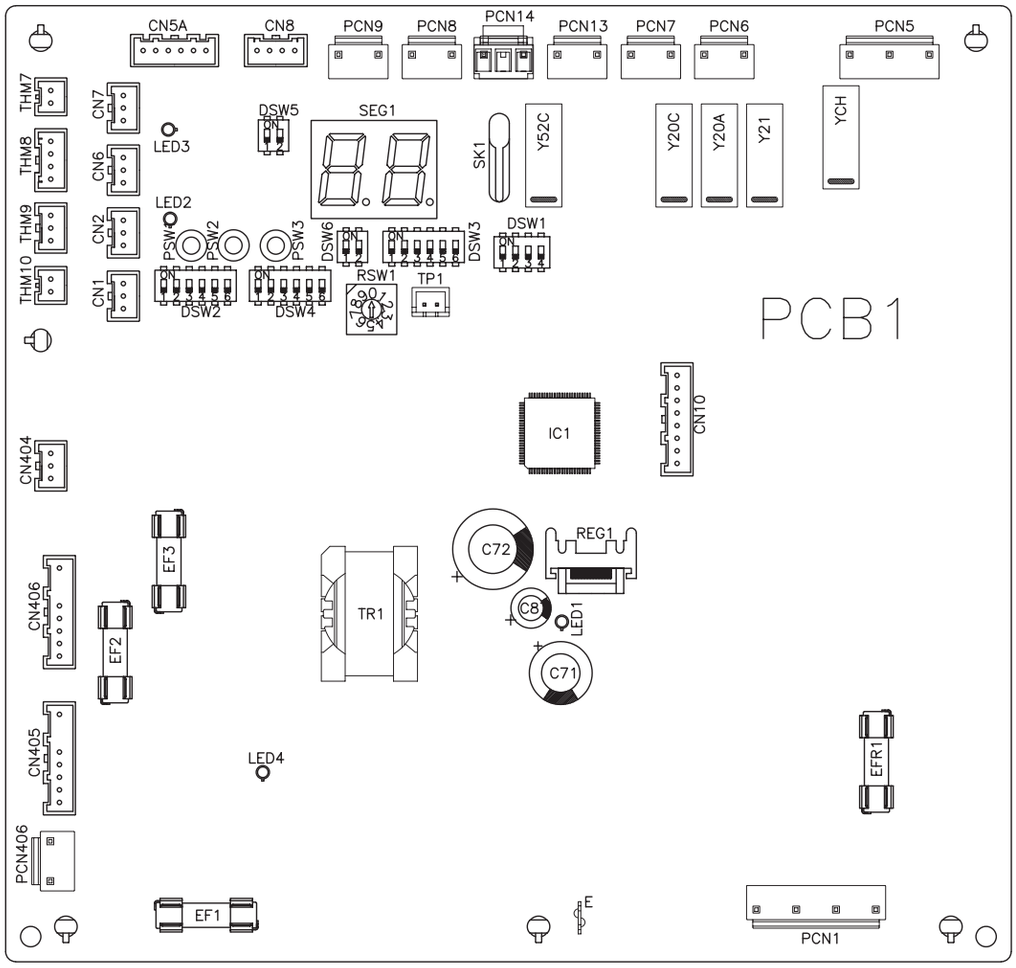
PCB2 Connector indication	
Connector	**Name**
CN301	Transmission to PCB1

PCB2 LED indication		
LED	**Colour**	**Name**
LED1~4	Red	These LEDS indicate the cause of unit stoppages

PCB2 Switch indication	
Connector	**Name**
DSW301	Test run mode
PSW1	Manual defrost operation switch. The defrost option is manually available under the forced defrost area

IPM Connector indication	
Connector	**Name**
CN21	Transmission to PCB1

◆ RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

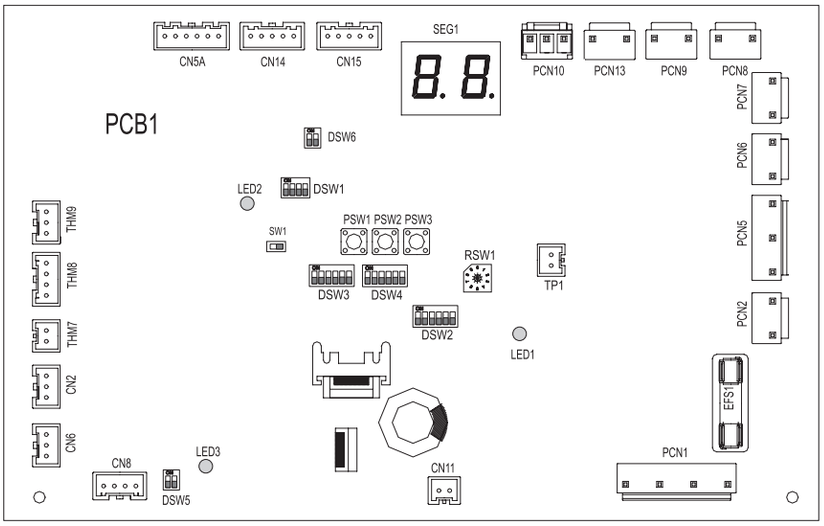


Connector indication	
PCN1	Fuse (For power source)
PCN5	Crankcase heater of compressor (oil)
PCN6	4-way valve
PCN7	Solenoid valve A (SVA)
PCN8	High pressure switch protection (PSH)
PCN9	Compressor contactor
PCN13	Pressure switch control (PSC)
PCN406	Power connection between PCB and DIP-IPM
THM7	Outdoor air temperature thermistor (Ta)
THM8	Pipe evaporation temperature thermistor (Te)
THM9	Compressor discharge temperature thermistor (Td)
THM10	Compressor suction temperature thermistor (Ts)
CN5A	Micro electronic expansion valve (EV1)
CN6	Transmission between PCB and DIP-IPM
CN8	Transmission from outdoor to indoor unit
CN404	Line connection between PCB and DIP-IPM
CN406	Motor for fan
EF1,2,3 EFR1	Power protection
CN1	External input (input signal)
CN2	Demand (input signal)
CN7	External output signal

Switch indication	
DSW1	Test run
DSW2	Protection function setting
DSW3	Capacity code
DSW4/ RSW1	Refrigerant cycle number
DSW5	Transmission
DSW6	Individual / Simultaneous
PSW1	Manual defrost
PSW2	Inspection mode (Back)
PSW3	Inspection mode (Forth)

LED indication		
LED1	Red	Power source for the PCB1
LED2	Green	This LED indicates the transmission status between the indoor unit, the RCS, the PCB1 and DIP-IPM.
LED3	Yellow	This LED indicates the transmission status between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit
LED4	Red	280V power source for the PCB1

5.2.2 Outdoor units PCB for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE



Connector indication	
PCN1	Fuse
PCN2	PCB1 connection for transformer
PCN5	Crankcase heater of compressor (oil)
PCN6	Output optional function
PCN7	Output optional function
PCN8	Pressure switch protection
PCN9	Compressor contactor
PCN13	Pressure switch control
THM7	Outdoor air temperature thermistor
THM8	Pipe temperature thermistor
THM9	Compressor temperature thermistor
CN2	Current transformer (DIP-IPM)
CN5A	Micro electronic expansion valve
CN6	Transmission between PCB1 and DIP-IPM
CN8	Transmission from outdoor to indoor unit

Connector indication	
CN11	Transformer (230V)
CN14	Transmission between PCB1 and DIP-IPM
CN15	Transmission between PCB1 and DIP-IPM
EFS1	Power protection

Switch indication	
DSW1 (PCB1)	Test run
DSW2	Piping length and function selection
DSW3	Capacity code
DSW4/RSW1	Ref. cycle number
DSW5	End terminal resistance
DSW6	Power source setting
PSW1/2/3	Push switch on PCB

PCB1 LED indication		
LED1	Red	This LED indicates the power source for PCB1.
LED2	Green	This LED indicates the transmission between PCB1 and PCB3.
LED3	Yellow	This LED indicates the transmission status between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit

5.3 Protection and safety control

5.3.1 Protection and safety control

◆ Compressor protection

The following devices and their combinations protect the compressor

High-pressure switch	This switch cuts out the operation of the compressor when the discharge pressure exceeds the setting.
Oil heater	This band heater protects against the oil carry-over during the cold starting, as the band heater is energized while the compressor is stopped.
Fan motor protection	Internal thermostat that is embedded in the fan motor winding: this internal thermostat cuts out the operation of the fan motor when the temperature of the fan motor winding exceeds the setting. (only for some RPI models)

◆ Safety and control device setting for the outdoor units

RAS-3HVRNS3 amd RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

	Model			RAS-3HVRNS3E	RAS-4HVRNS3E	RAS-4HNRS3E
For compressor	Pressure Switches			Automatic Reset, Non-Adjustable (each one for each compressor)		
	High	Cut-Out	MPa	$4.15^{-0.05}_{-0.15}$		
		Cut-In	MPa	3.20±0.15	3.20±0.15	3.20±0.15
For fuse control	1~ 230V 50Hz		A	25	40	-
	3N~ 400V 50Hz			-		2 X 20
CCP Timer			min.	Non-Adjustable		
Setting Time				3	3	3
Discharge gas Thermistor			ºC	115 (OFF) Cooling 115 (OFF) Heating	127 (OFF) Cooling 120 (OFF) Heating	127 (OFF) Cooling 120 (OFF) Heating
For Condenser Fan Motor Internal Thermostat				Automatic Reset, Non-Adjustable (each one for each motor)		
	Cut-Out		ºC	-	120	120
For Control Circuit Fuse Capacity on PCB			A	3	5	5

RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E

Mode			RAS-5HRNS2E	RAS-6HRNS2E	RAS-5HVRNS2E	RAS-6HVRNS2E
For compressor High pressure switch	Cut-out	MPa	$4.15^{-0.05}_{-0.15}$			
	Cut-in		3.20±15			
For control	Fuse 1~ 230V 50Hz	A	-	-	50	50
	3N~ 400V 50Hz				-	-
	CCP timer	min	Non adjustable			
	Setting time		3			
For condenser fan motor Internal thermostat	Cut-out	°C	Automatic reset, non-adjustable (each one for each motor)			
For control circuit Fuse capacity on PCB		A	5			

5

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 105 04/06/2013 18:13:42

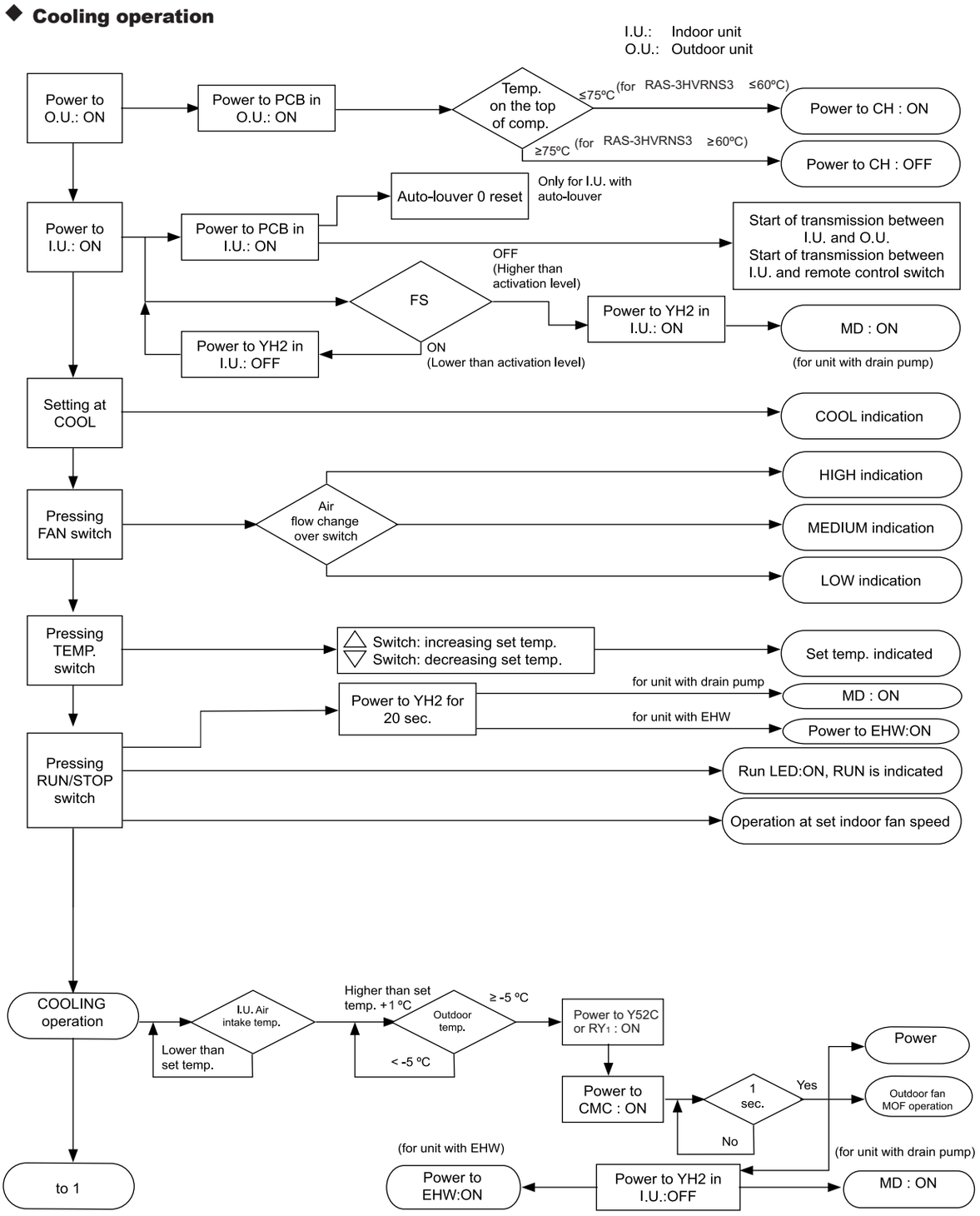
RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

Model				RAS-8HRNSE	RAS-10HRNSE
For compressor High pressure switch				Automatic reset, non-adjustable (each one for each compressor)	
	Cut-out		MPa	$4.15^{-0.05}_{-0.15}$	
	Cut-in			3.20±0.15	
For control pressure switches	Cut-out		MPa	$3.6^{0}_{-0.15}$	
	Cut-in			2.85±0.10	
For control	Fuse 3N~ 400V 50Hz		A	40	
	CCP timer		min	Non adjustable	
	Setting time			3	
For condenser fan motor Internal thermostat				Automatic reset, non-adjustable (each one for each compressor)	
	DC	Cut-out	°C	120±5	
	AC	Cut-out	°C	130±5	
		Cut-in	°C	83±15	
For control circuit Fuse capacity on PCB			A	5	

5.4 Standard operation sequence

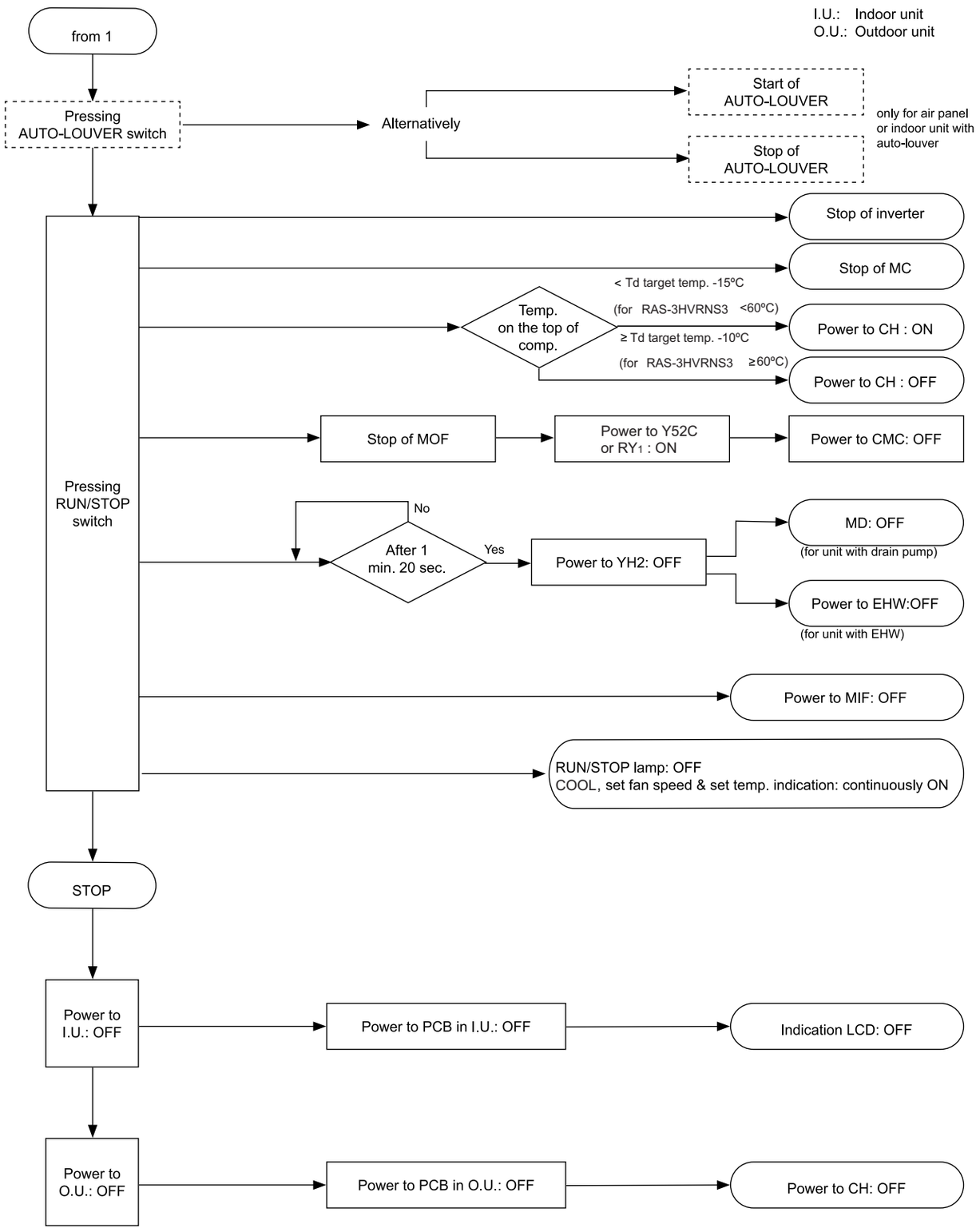
5.4.1 Standard operation sequence for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

◆ Cooling operation



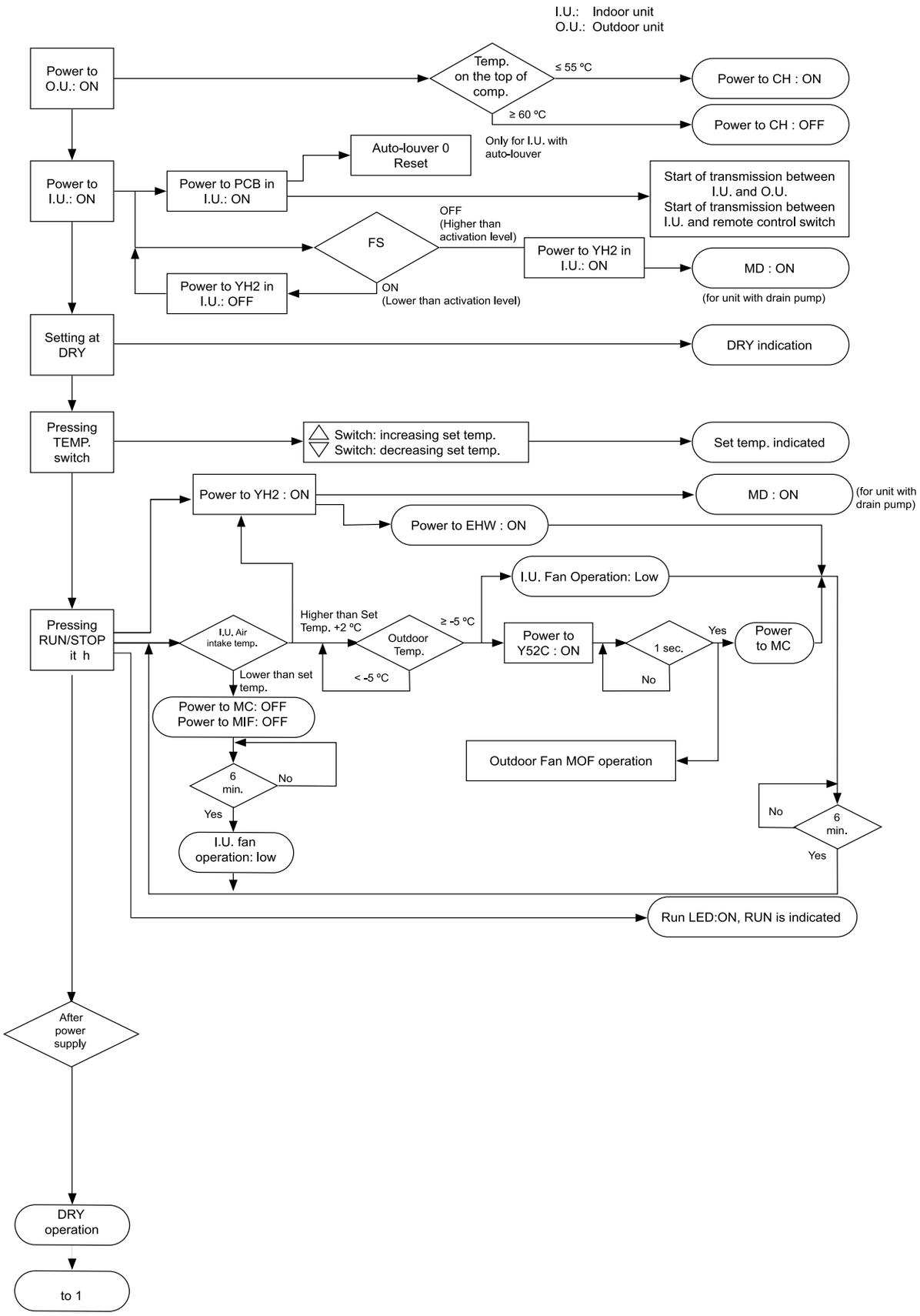
Continues in the next page.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 107 04/06/2013 18:13:42



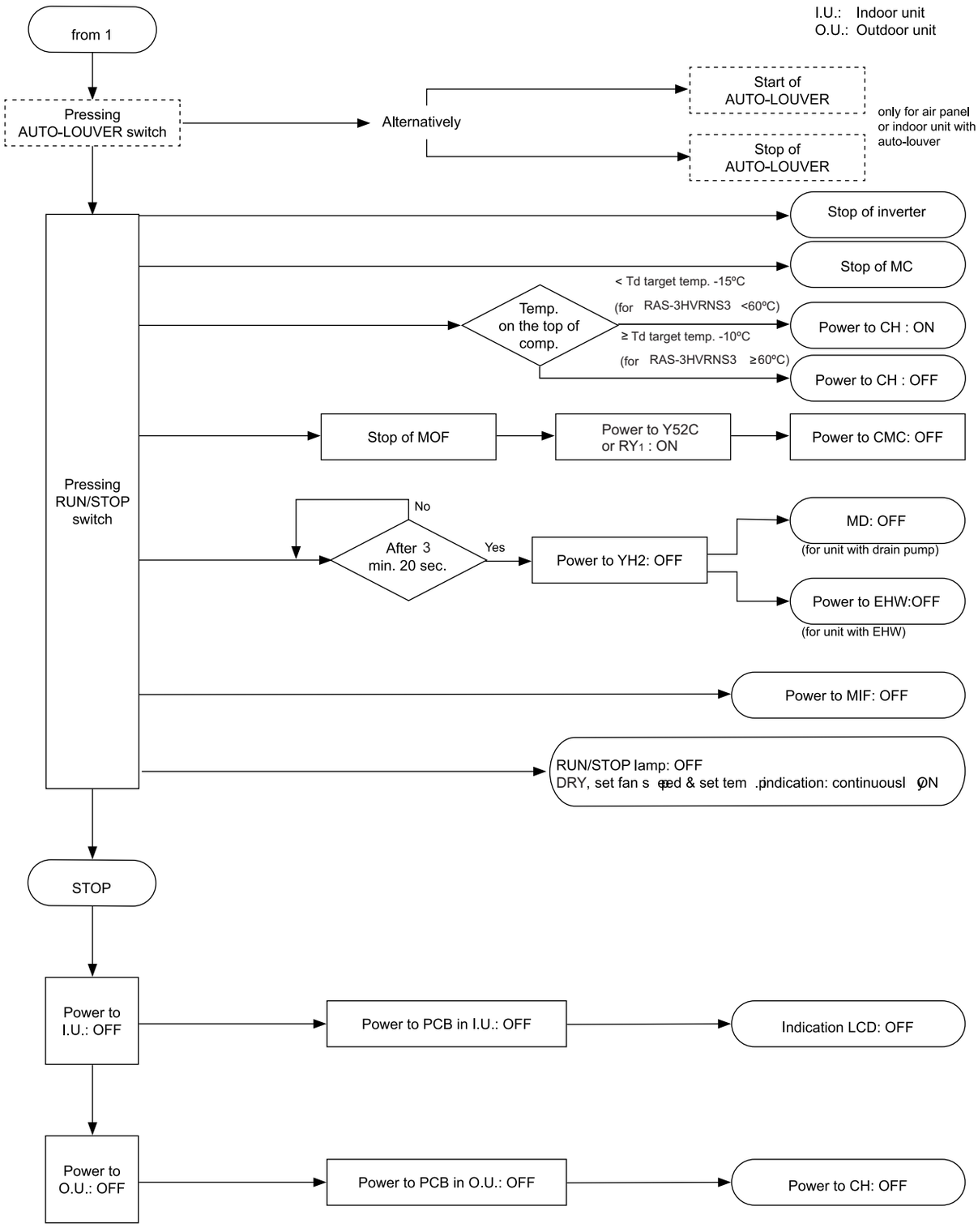
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 108 04/06/2013 18:13:43

◆ Dry operation

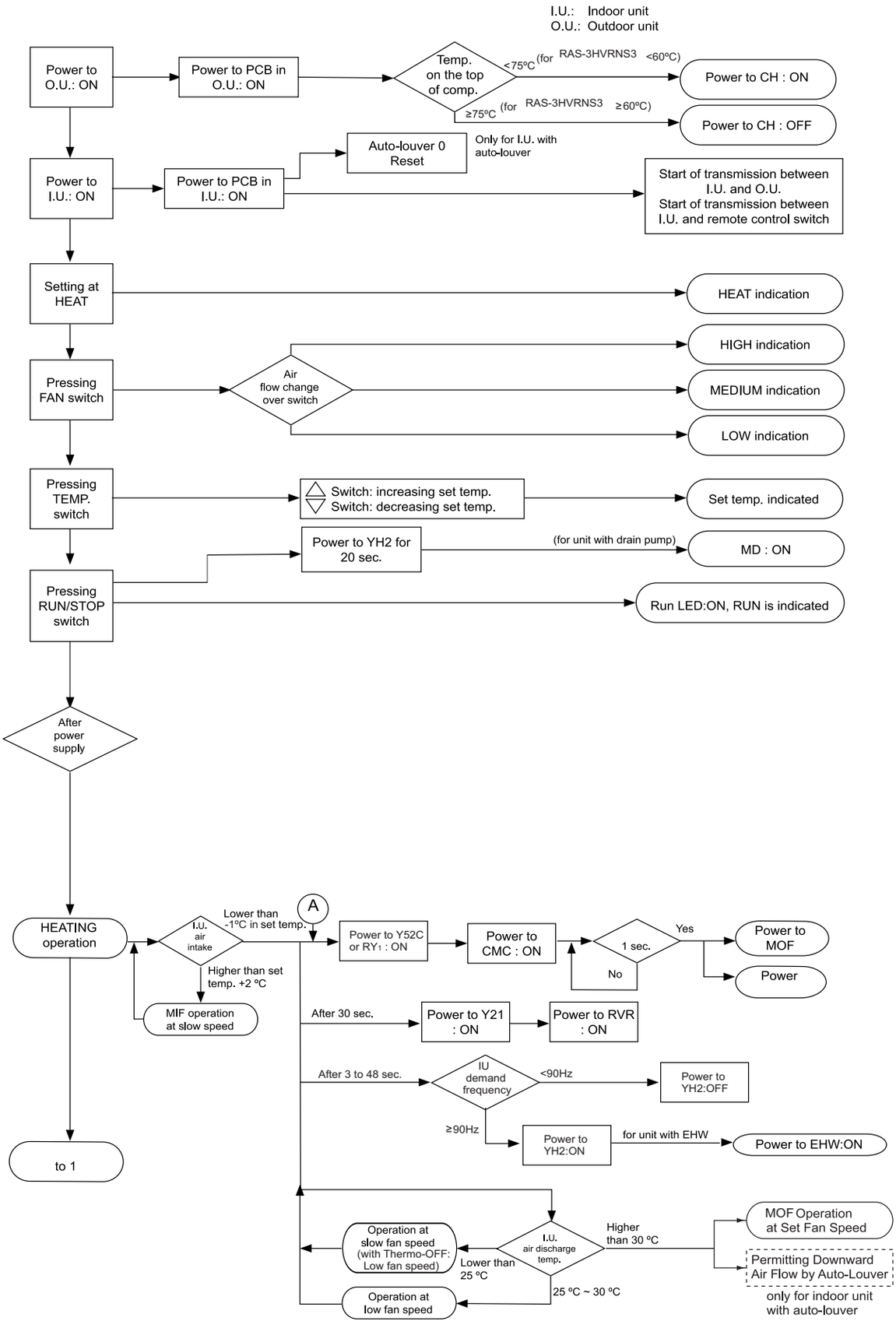


Continues in the next page.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 109 04/06/2013 18:13:43

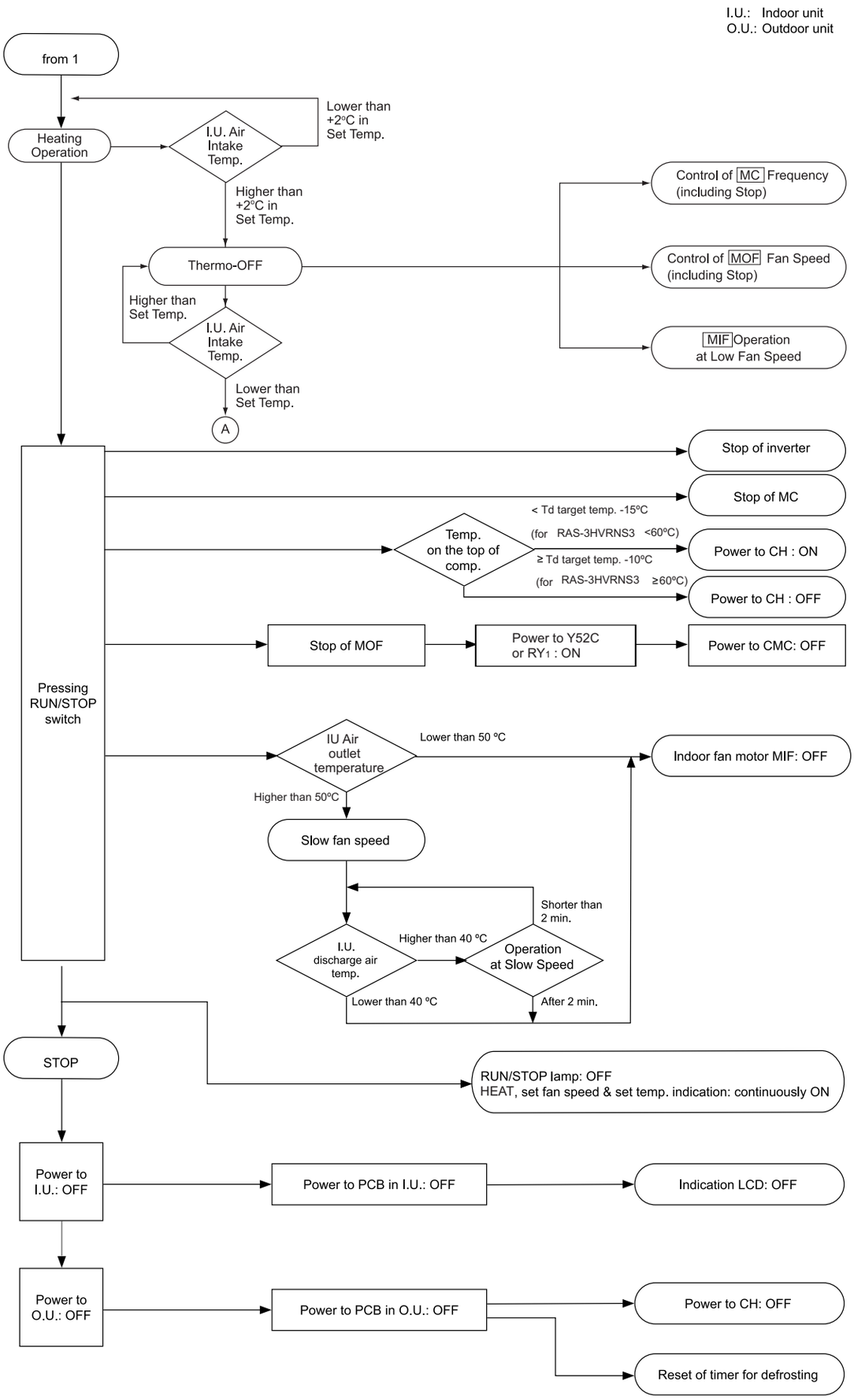

I.U.: Indoor unit
O.U.: Outdoor unit
from 1
Pressing AUTO-LOUVER switch
Alternatively
Start of AUTO-LOUVER
Stop of AUTO-LOUVER
only for air panel or indoor unit with auto-louver
Pressing RUN/STOP switch
Stop of inverter
Stop of MC
Temp. on the top of comp.
< Td target temp. -15ºC
(for RAS-3HVRNS3 <60ºC)
≥ Td target temp. -10ºC
(for RAS-3HVRNS3 ≥60ºC)
Power to CH : ON
Power to CH : OFF
Stop of MOF
Power to Y52C or RY1 : ON
Power to CMC: OFF
No
After 3 min. 20 sec.
Yes
Power to YH2: OFF
MD: OFF
(for unit with drain pump)
Power to EHW:OFF
(for unit with EHW)
Power to MIF: OFF
RUN/STOP lamp: OFF
DRY, set fan speed & set temp. indication: continuous ON
STOP
Power to I.U.: OFF
Power to PCB in I.U.: OFF
Indication LCD: OFF
Power to O.U.: OFF
Power to PCB in O.U.: OFF
Power to CH: OFF

◆ Heating operation



Continues in the next page.

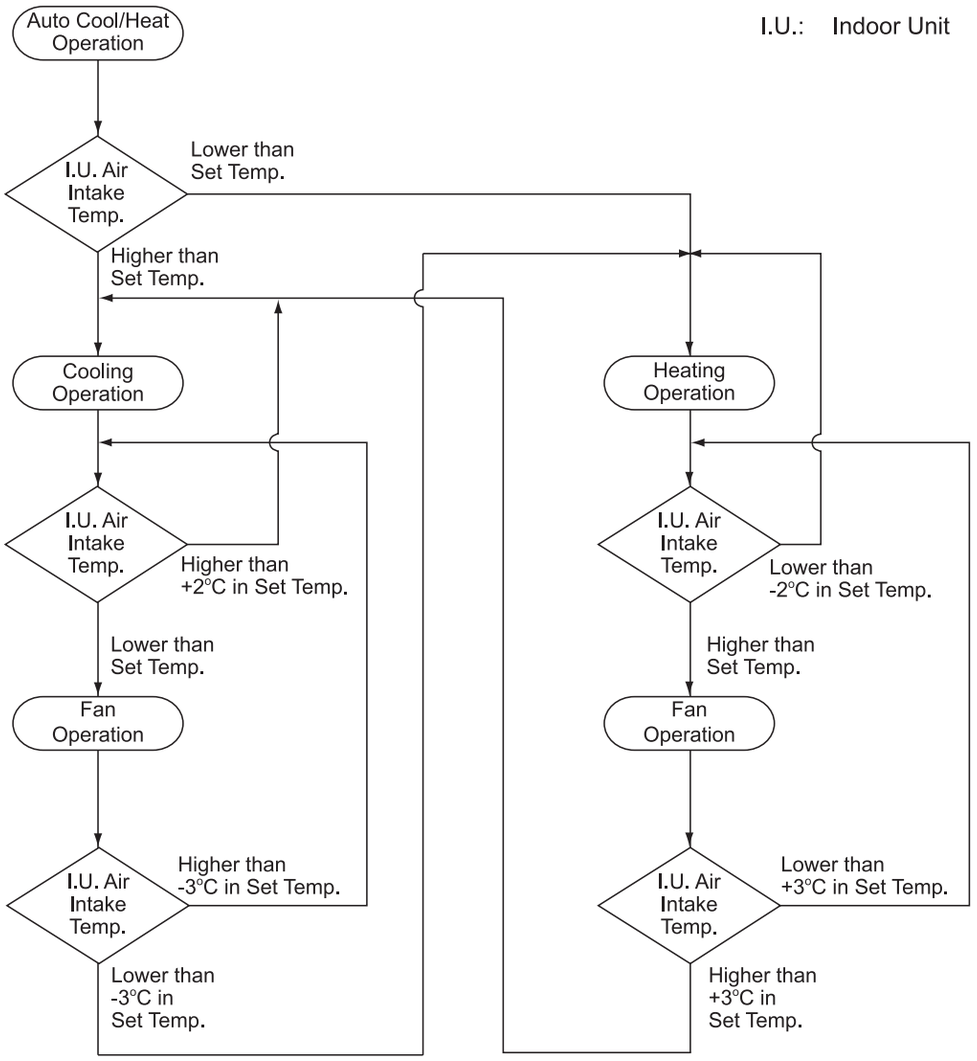
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 111 04/06/2013 18:13:43



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 112 04/06/2013 18:13:44

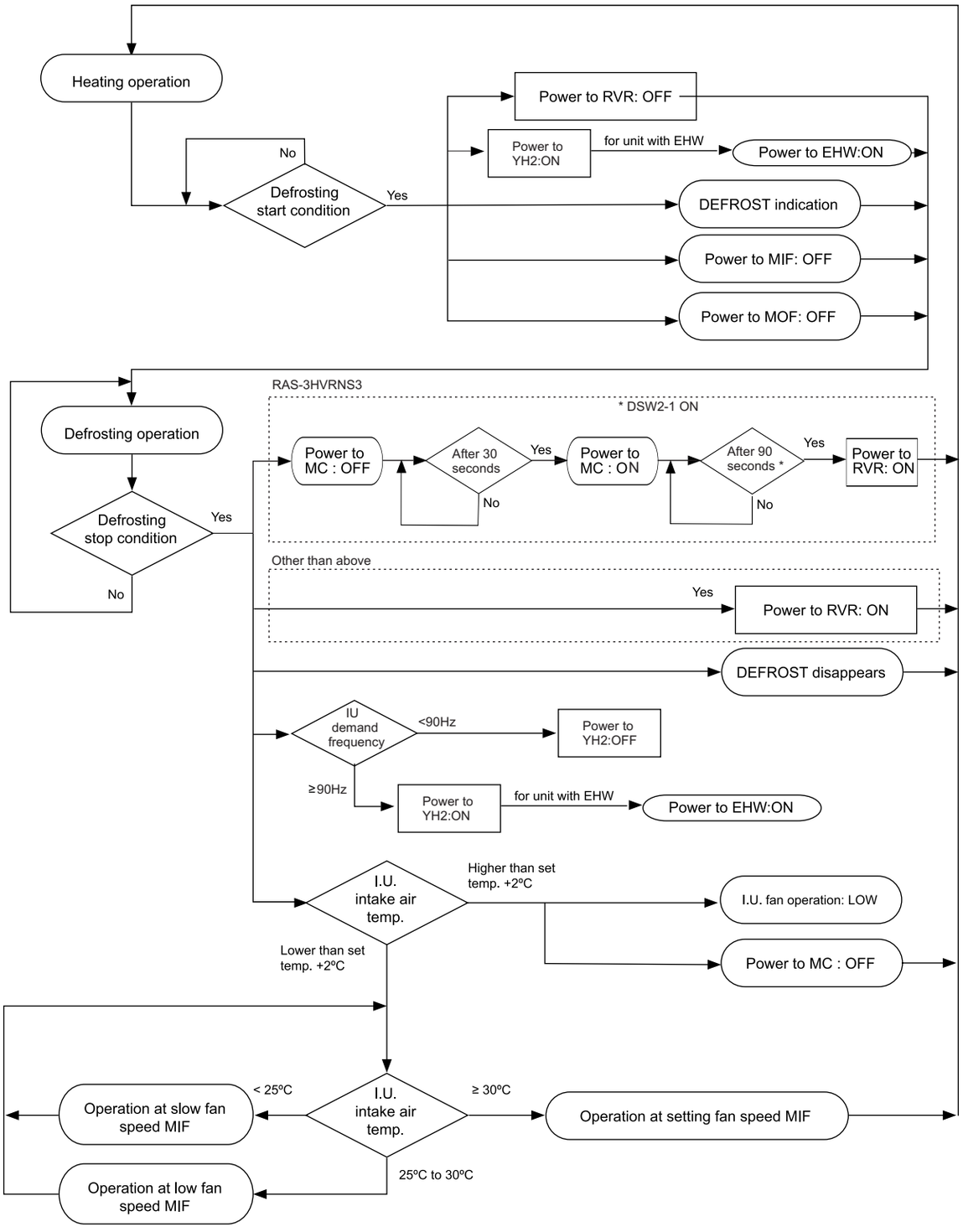
HITACHI
Inspire the Next

◆ Automatic cooling and heating operation



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 113 04/06/2013 18:13:44

◆ Defrost operation control



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 114 04/06/2013 18:13:44

Defrosting Operation

The following defrosting operations, “Standard Defrost”, “Forced Defrost” and “Manual Defrost” are available.

1 Standard Defrost
This operation is started according to the outdoor temperature, the outdoor evaporating temperature and operating time.

2 Forced Defrost
This operation starts when the indoor unit is operated Thermo-ON/OFF repeatedly and the standard defrost is not used.

3 Manual Defrost
This operation starts when the push switch “PSW1” on the outdoor PCB is pressed and hold for more than 3 seconds during the maintenance work. (It is not performed when the defrosting operation is started, the high pressure and the outdoor evaporating temperature is high.)

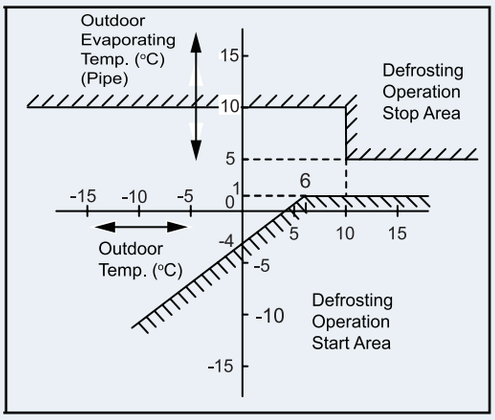
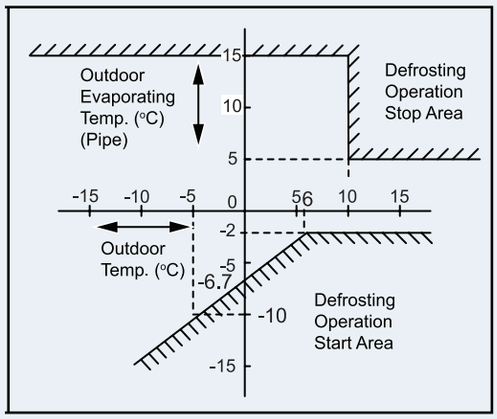
NOTE

Do not repeat defrost operation frequently.

Condition for Starting Defrost

1 Standard Defrost

a. Temperature Condition

Model	RAS-3HVRNS3	RAS-4H(V)RNS3E
Temperature condition under defosting operation		

b. Condition for Operating Time of Defrost Operation Start

The defrosting operation is started when the temperature condition is met “(a) Temperature Condition” after the heating operation is performed for 40 to 120 minutes. The heating operation time is determined by estimating the amount of frosting on the heat exchanger.

2 Forced Defrost

Condition for Starting

The forced defrosting operation is started when all the following conditions are met.

a. 120 minutes are passed after the reversing valve is “ON”.

b. The outdoor temperature is lower than 10°C.

c. The accumulated heating operation time is more than 60 minutes. (*1)
(The accumulated time is reset when the operation is stopped or the defrosting operation is performed.)

d. The compressor is operated continuously for more than 1 and half minutes. (*2)

e. The outdoor evaporating temperature is lower than 5°C (*3) right before starting the operation.

f. The pressure switch for control is “OFF”.

NOTE

For RAS-3HVRNS3:

- *(*1) More than 39 minutes.*
- *(*2) If outdoor temperature is less than -6ºC then the compressor is operated continuously for more than 2 minutes. If outdoor temperature is more than -6ºC then the compressor is operated continuously for more than 9 minutes.*
- *(*3) Less than 6ºC.*

Condition for Completing Defrost Operation

The defrosting operation is stopped when any of following conditions are met.

1 The outdoor evaporating temperature becomes more than 25°C (*1) for 2 minutes from starting the defrosting operation.
2 The outdoor evaporating temperature becomes more than 15°C (*2) (the outdoor temperature < 10°C) after passing 2 minutes from starting the defrosting operation.
3 The outdoor evaporating temperature becomes more than 5°C (the outdoor temperature ≥ 10°C) after passing 2 minutes from starting the defrosting operation.
4 The pressure switch for control is “ON”.
5 More than 9 minutes (*3) are passed after starting the defrosting operation.

NOTE

For RAS-3HVRNS3:

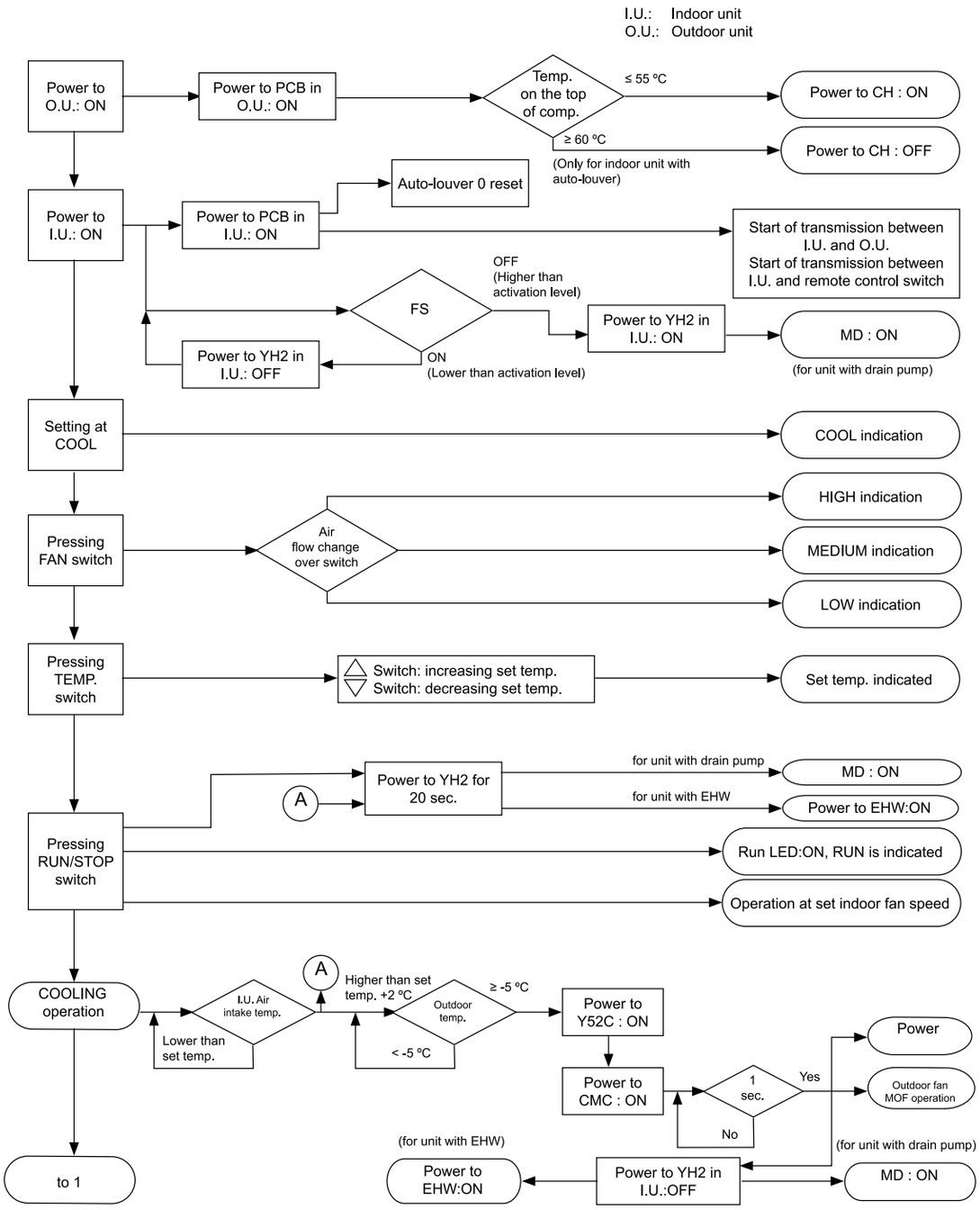
- *(*1) More than 20ºC.*
- *(*2) More than 10ºC*
- *(*3) More than 10 minutes.*

NOTE

- *The defrosting operation is not started immediately even if the above conditions are met. (The defrosting condition may be met temporally depending on the refrigerant cycle variability.)*
- *The defrosting operation is started when the conditions are met continuously for period of time.*

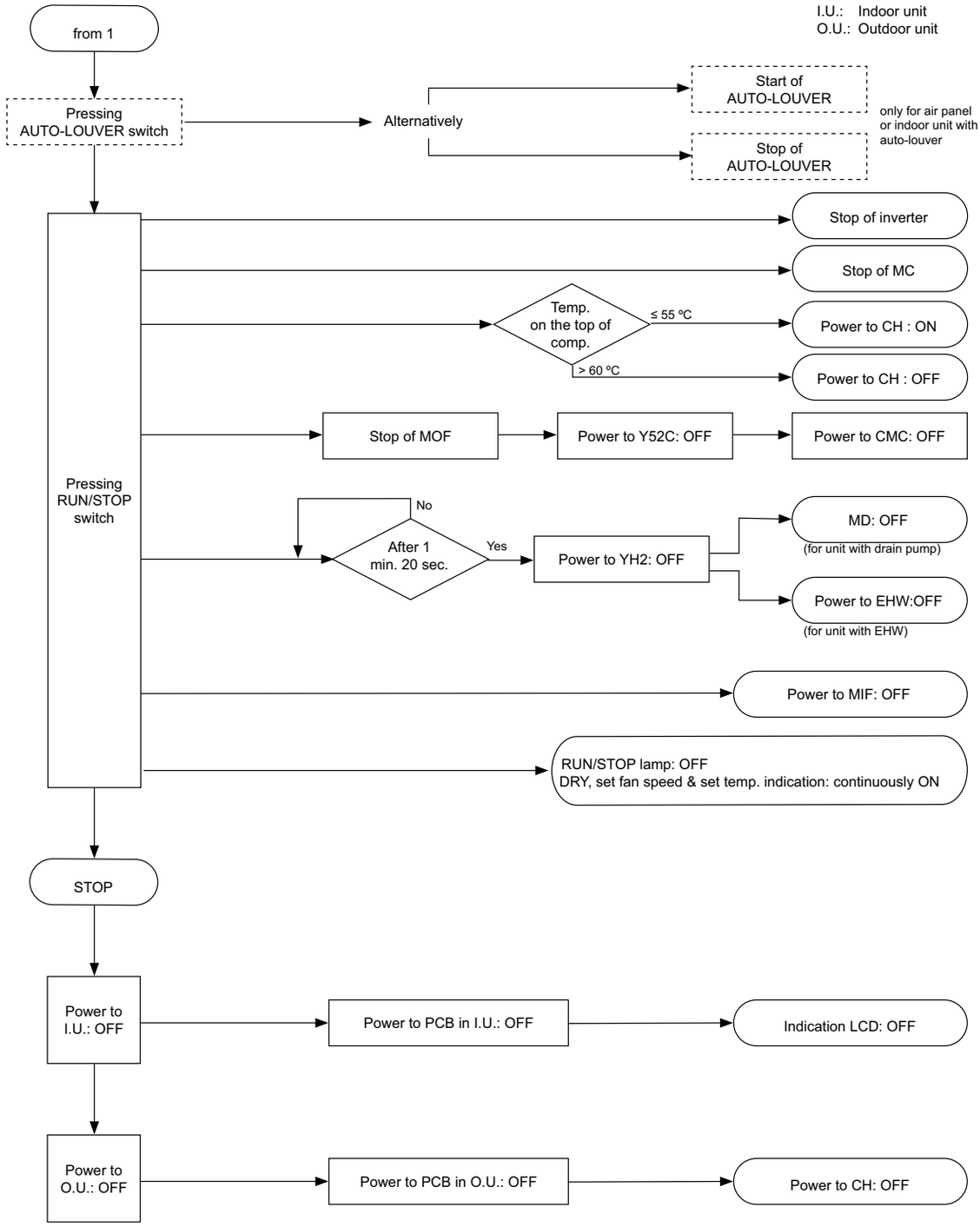
5.4.2 Standard operation sequence for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

◆ Cooling operation



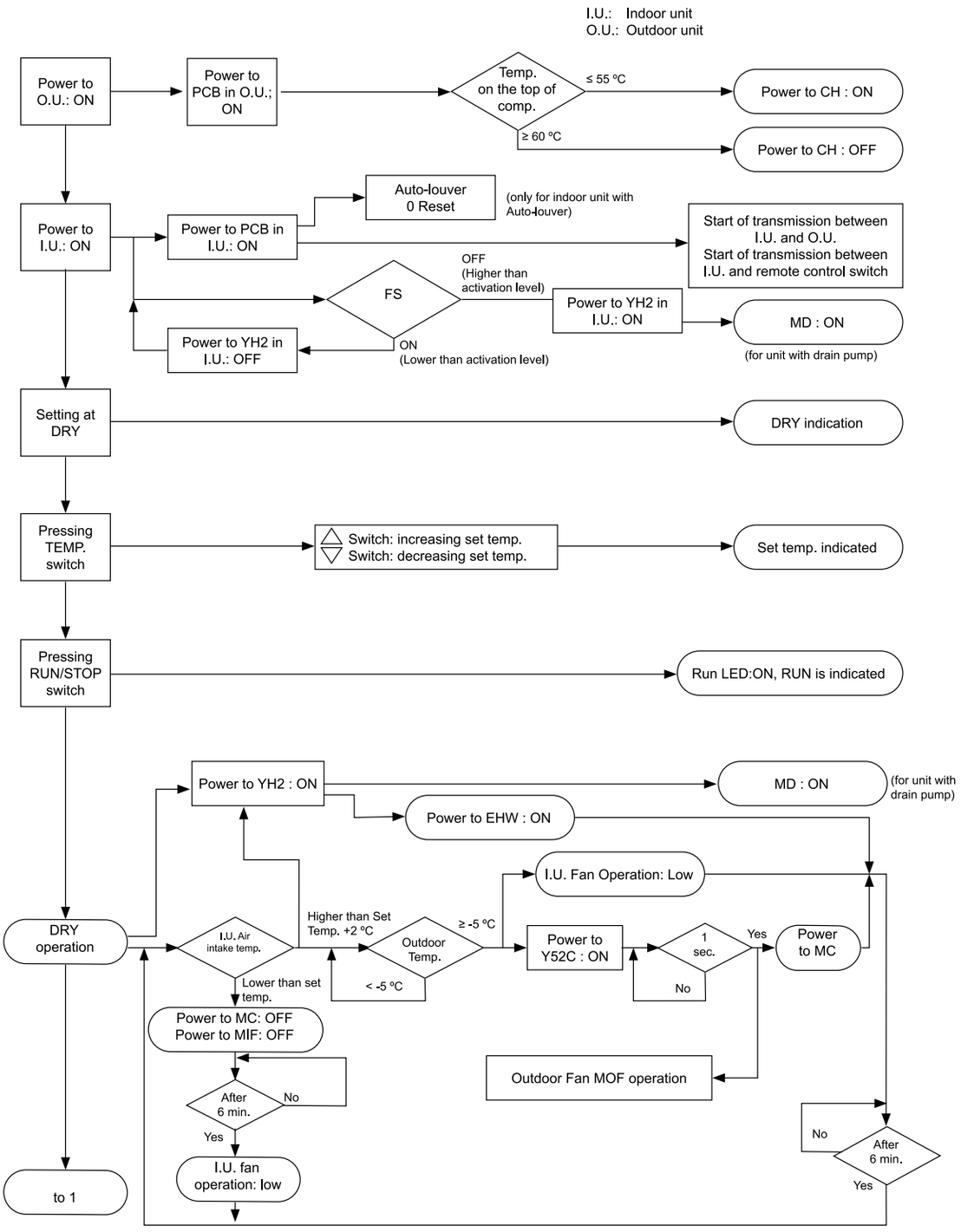
Continues in the next page.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 117 04/06/2013 18:13:45



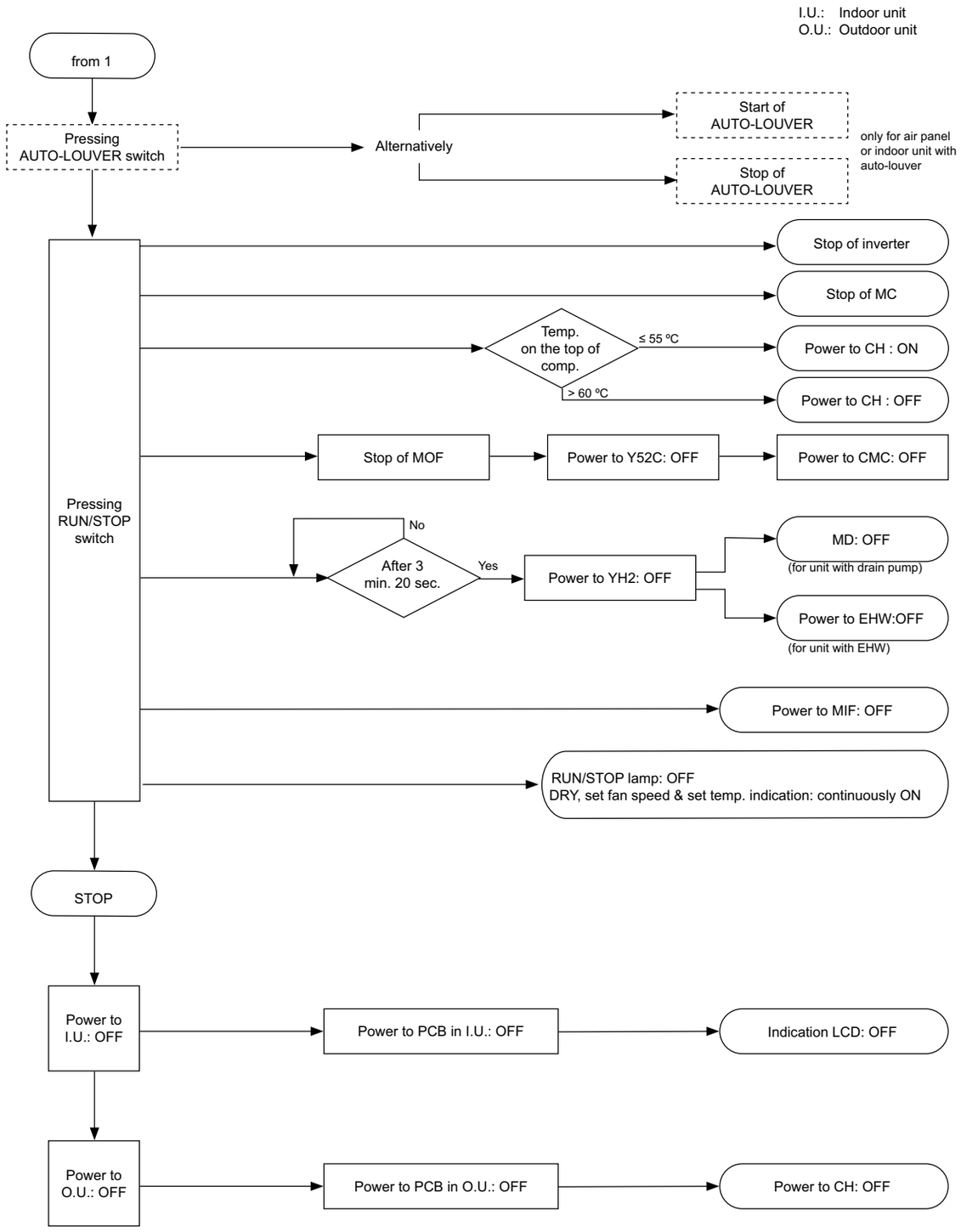
Dry operation

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 118 04/06/2013 18:13:45



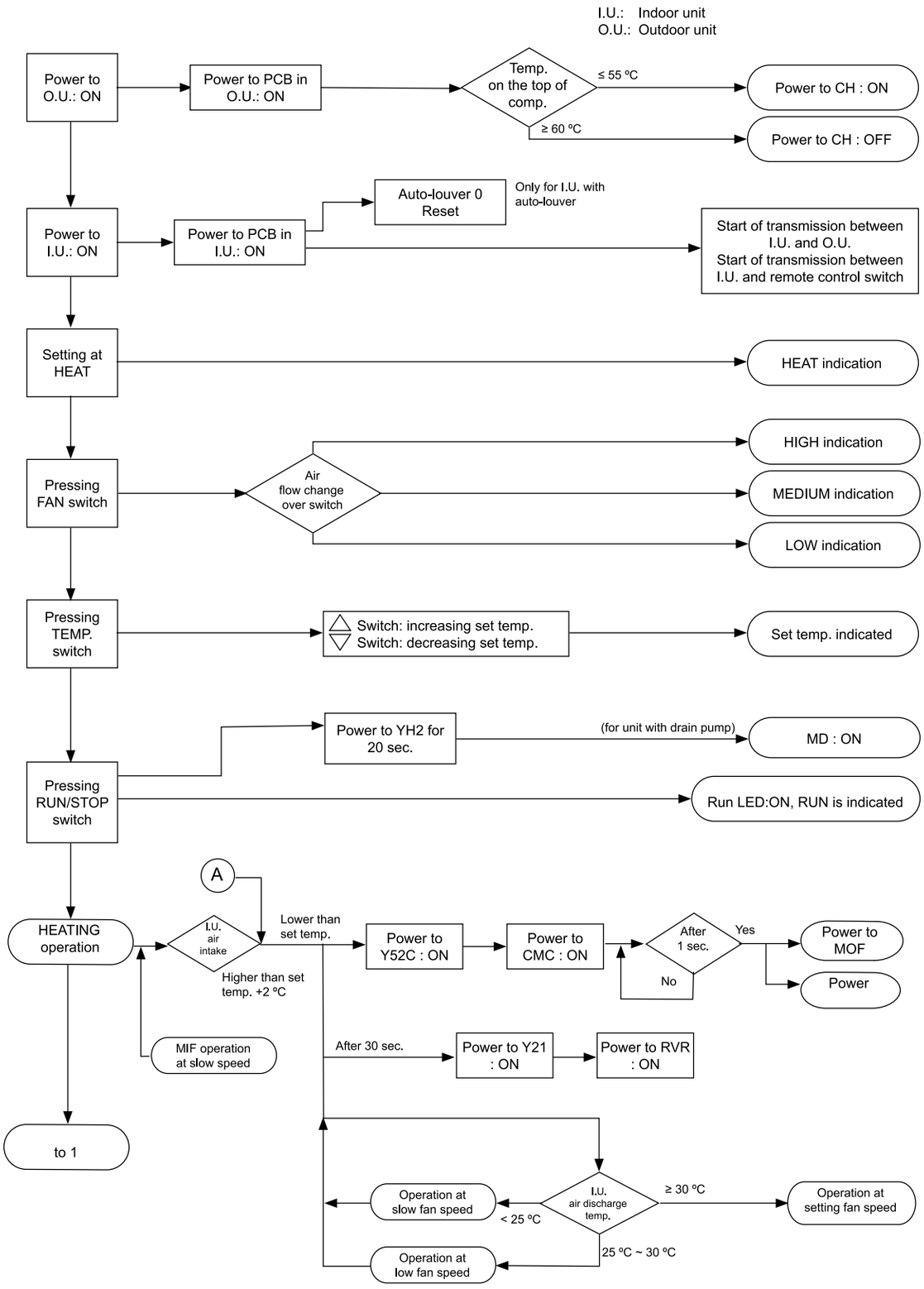
Continues in the next page.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 119 04/06/2013 18:13:45



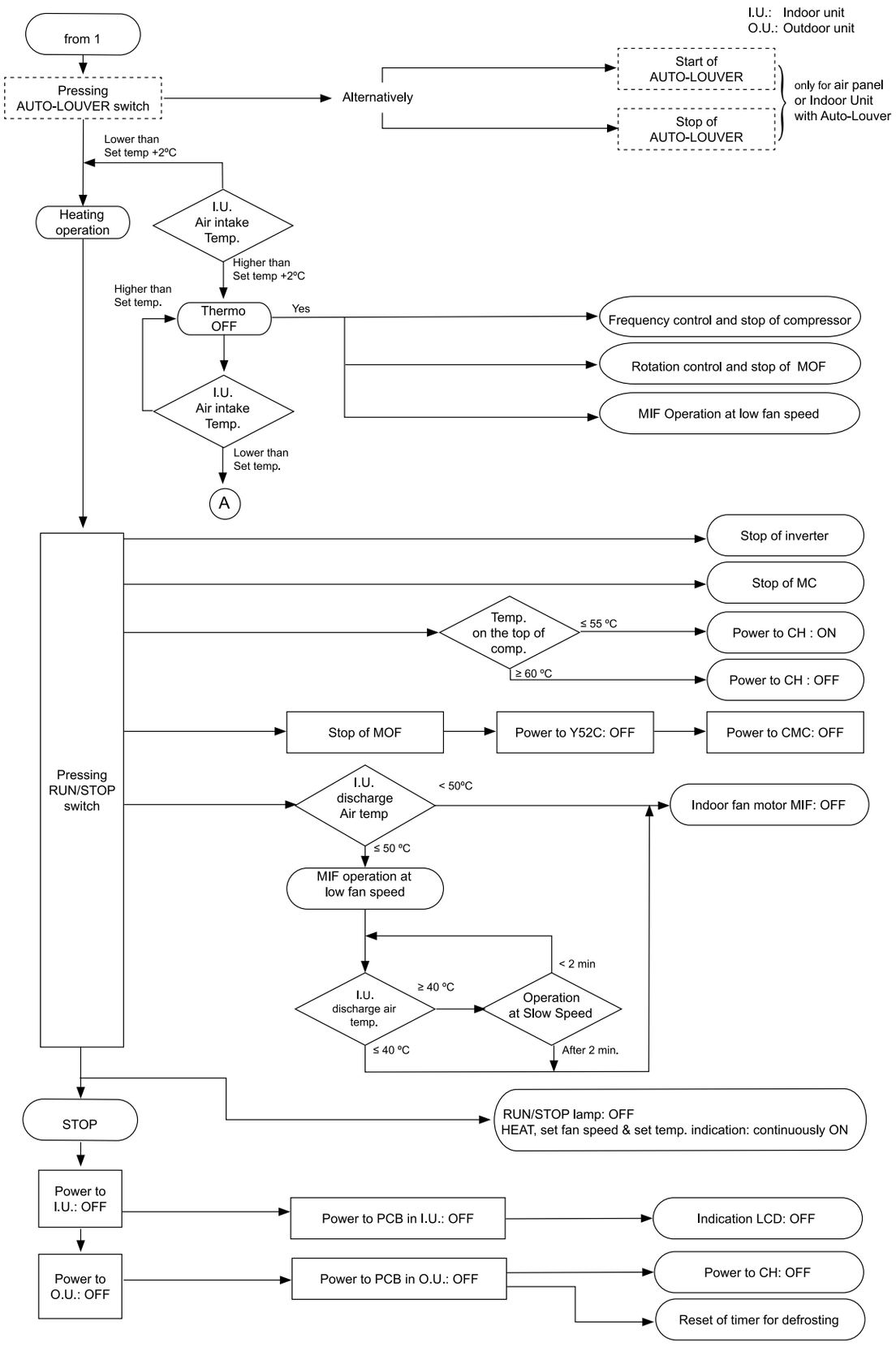
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 120 04/06/2013 18:13:46

◆ Heating operation



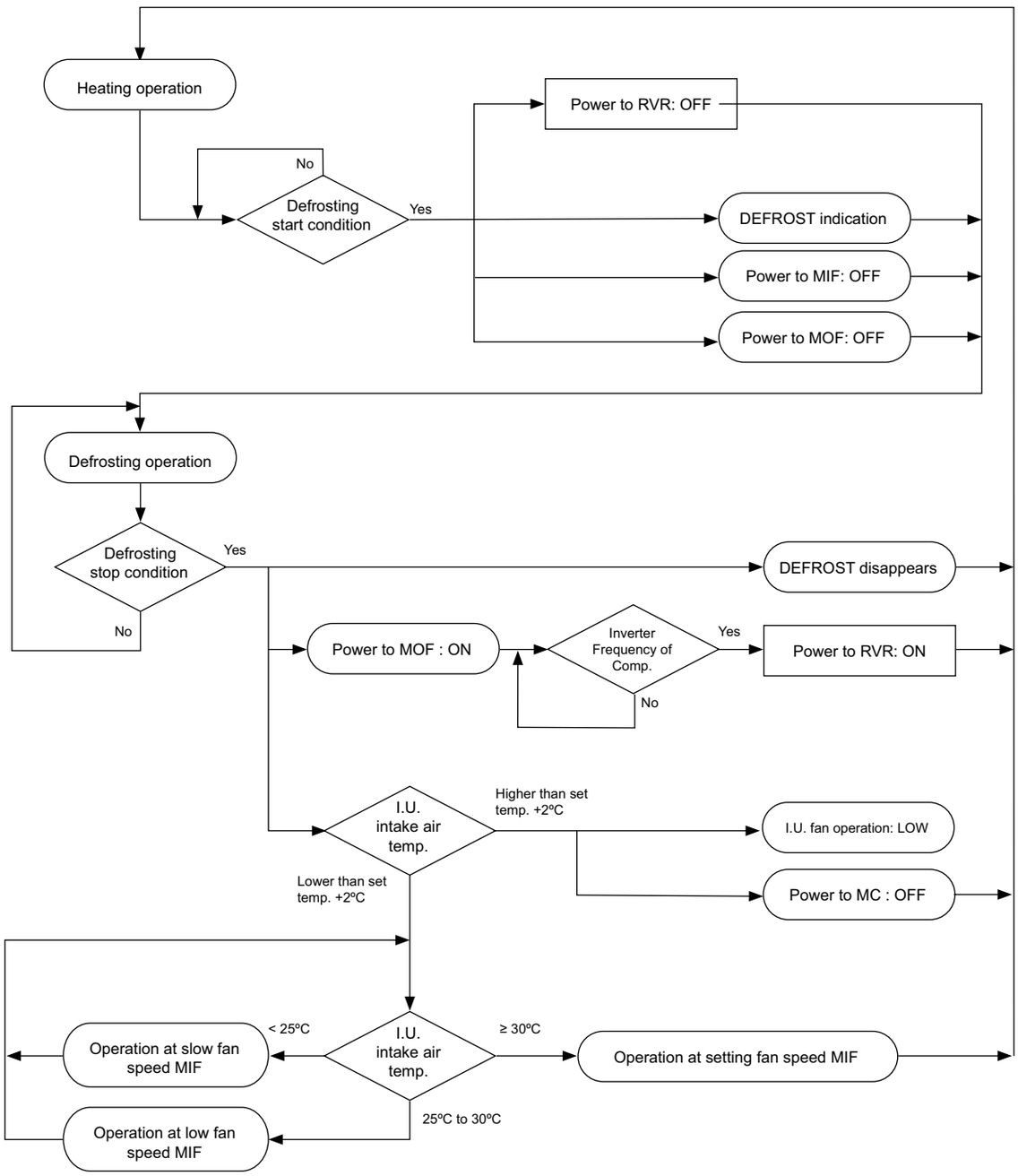
Continues in the next page.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 121 04/06/2013 18:13:46



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 122 04/06/2013 18:13:46

◆ Defrost operation control

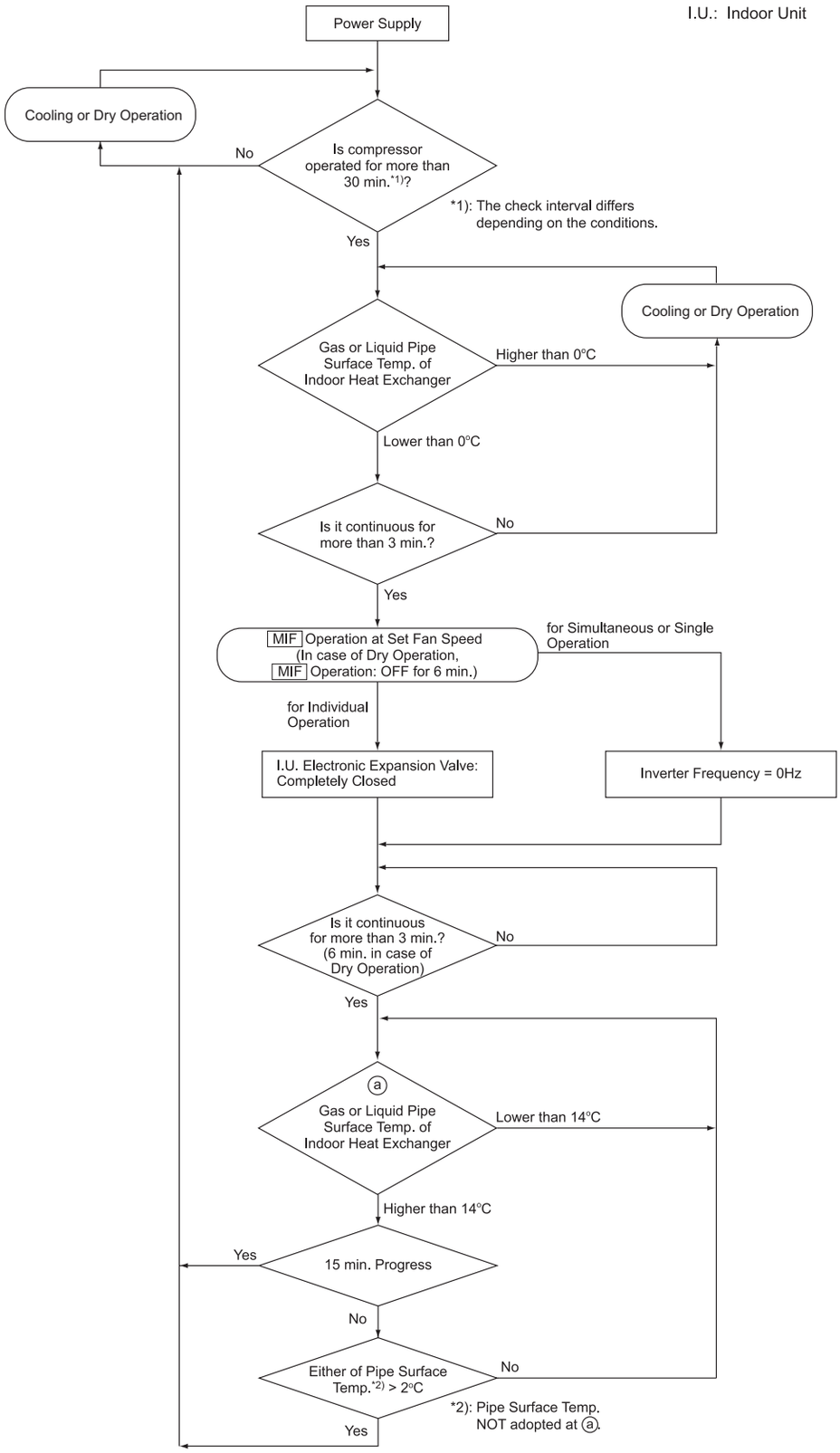


SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 123 04/06/2013 18:13:46

5.5 Standard control functions

5.5.1 Standard control functions for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

◆ Freezing protection during cooling process or dry operation



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 124 04/06/2013 18:13:47

◆ Prevention Control for High Pressure Increase during Cooling Operation

This function is performed to prevent the abnormal condition (Alarm Code: 02) when the air flow volume is decreased by a seasonal wind against air outlet of the outdoor unit. When the following conditions are met, the forced Thermo-OFF operation will be performed.

The cause of stoppage will be 13 during Thermo-OFF.

RAS-3HVRNS3

1 Y52C is turned “ON” during the cooling operation, or RY1 is turned “ON” (during the compressor operation).
2 Pressure switch for control is turned “ON”.

ON	3.6MPa
OFF	2.85MPa

3 Outdoor liquid pipe temperature ≥ 55ºC

RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

1 Y52C is turned “ON” during the cooling operation, or RY1 is turned “ON” (during the compressor operation).
2 Pressure switch for control is turned “ON”.

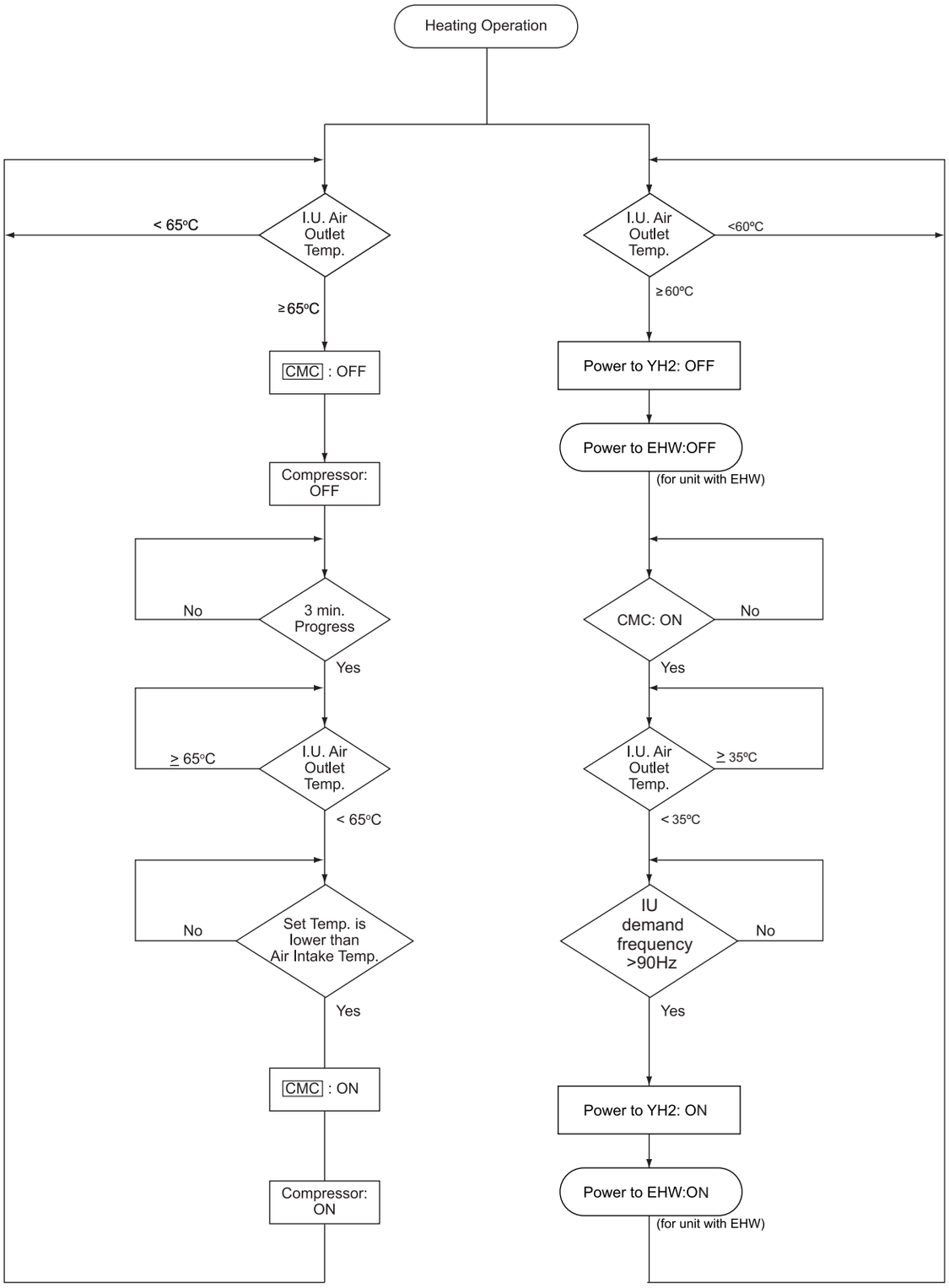
ON	3.6MPa
OFF	2.85MPa

3 Condensation temperature ≥ 62ºC

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 125 04/06/2013 18:13:47

◆ Prevention control for excessively high discharge gas temperature

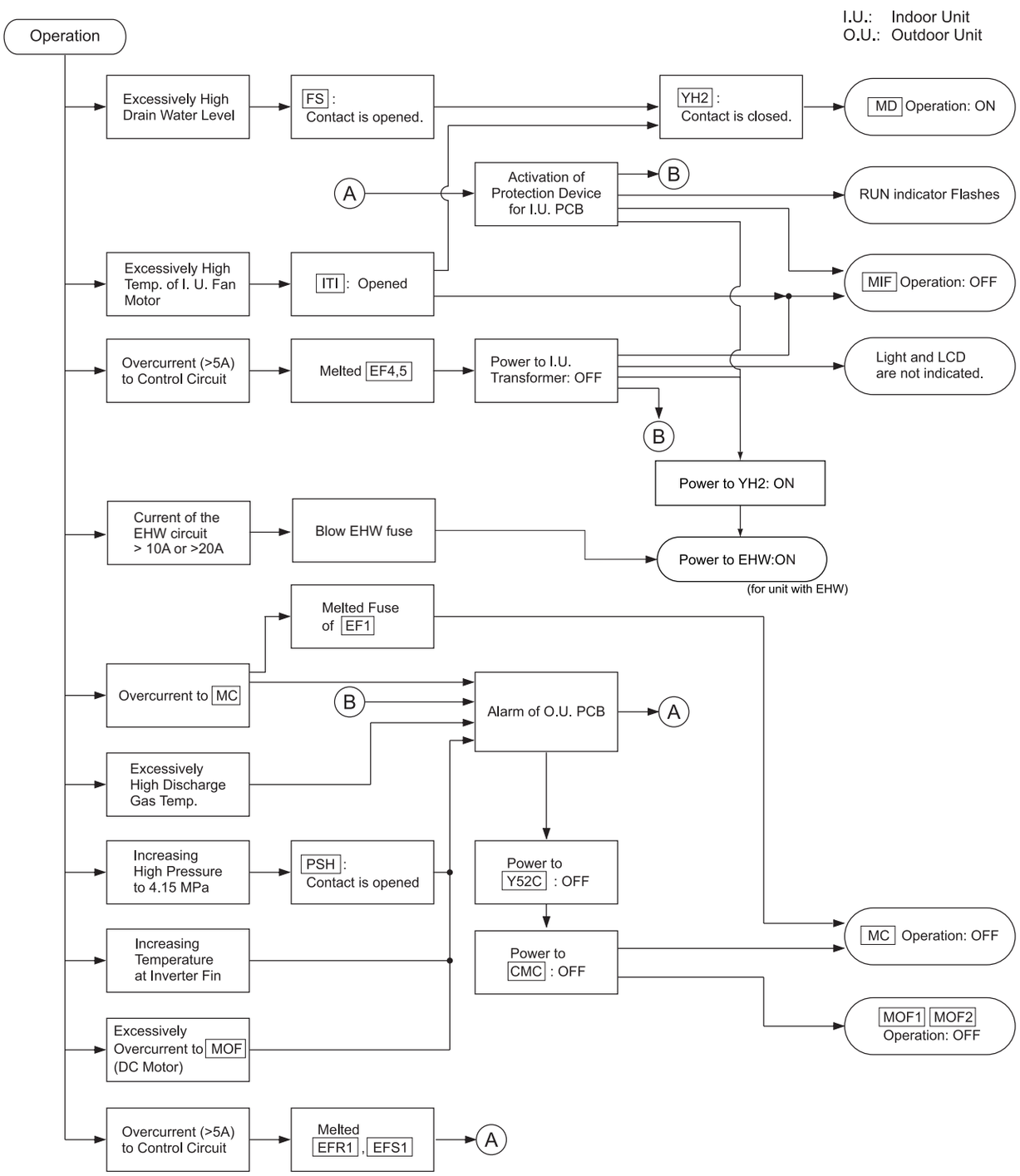
I.U.: Indoor Unit



Thermo-ON/OFF Control for Indoor Unit

Heater control for Indoor Unit

◆ Activation for protection device control

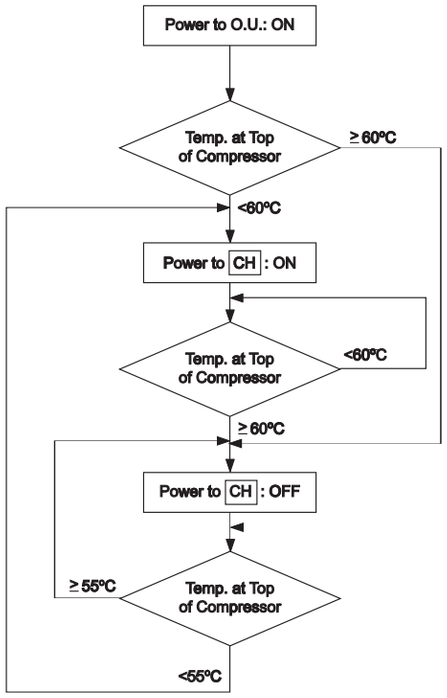


SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 127 04/06/2013 18:13:47

◆ Preheating control of compressor

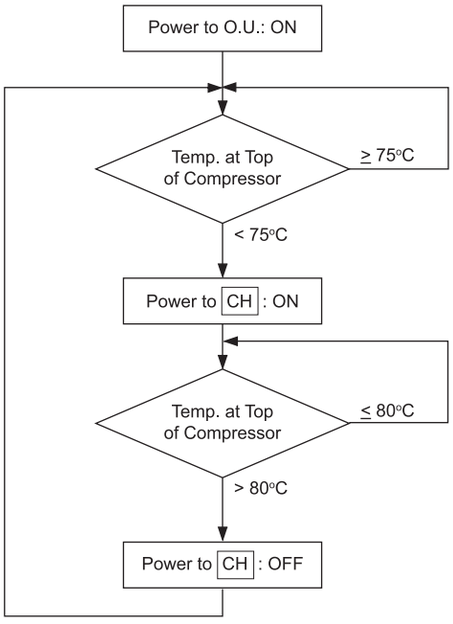
RAS-3HVRNS3

During stopping and operating compressor

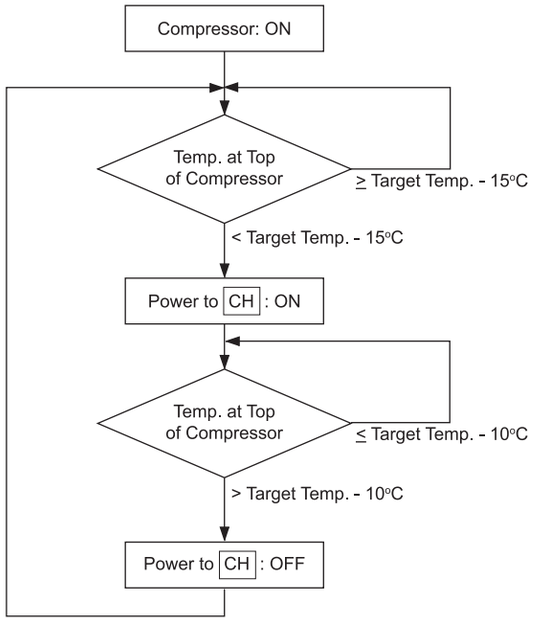


Other than above

During stopping compressor



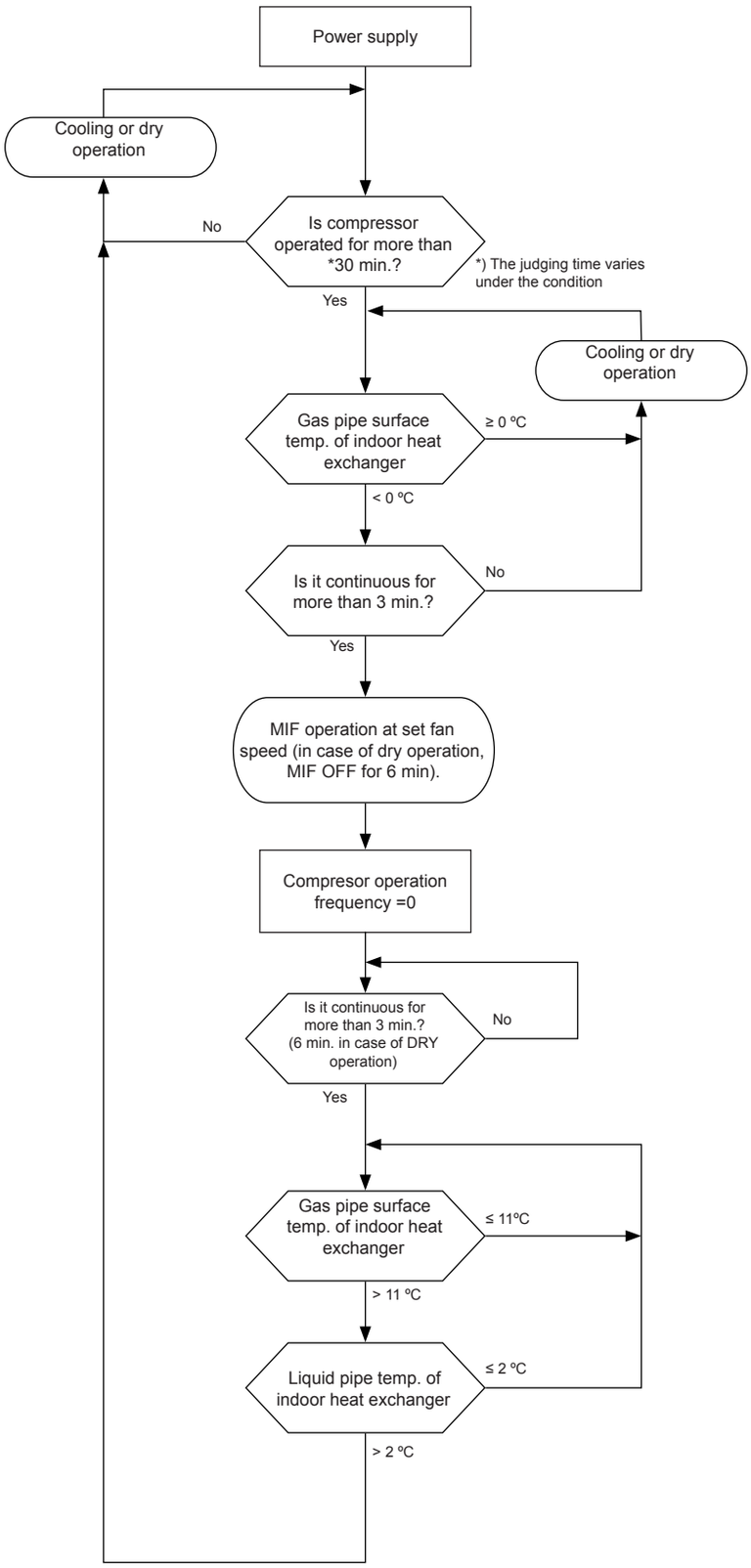
During operating compressor



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 128 04/06/2013 18:13:47

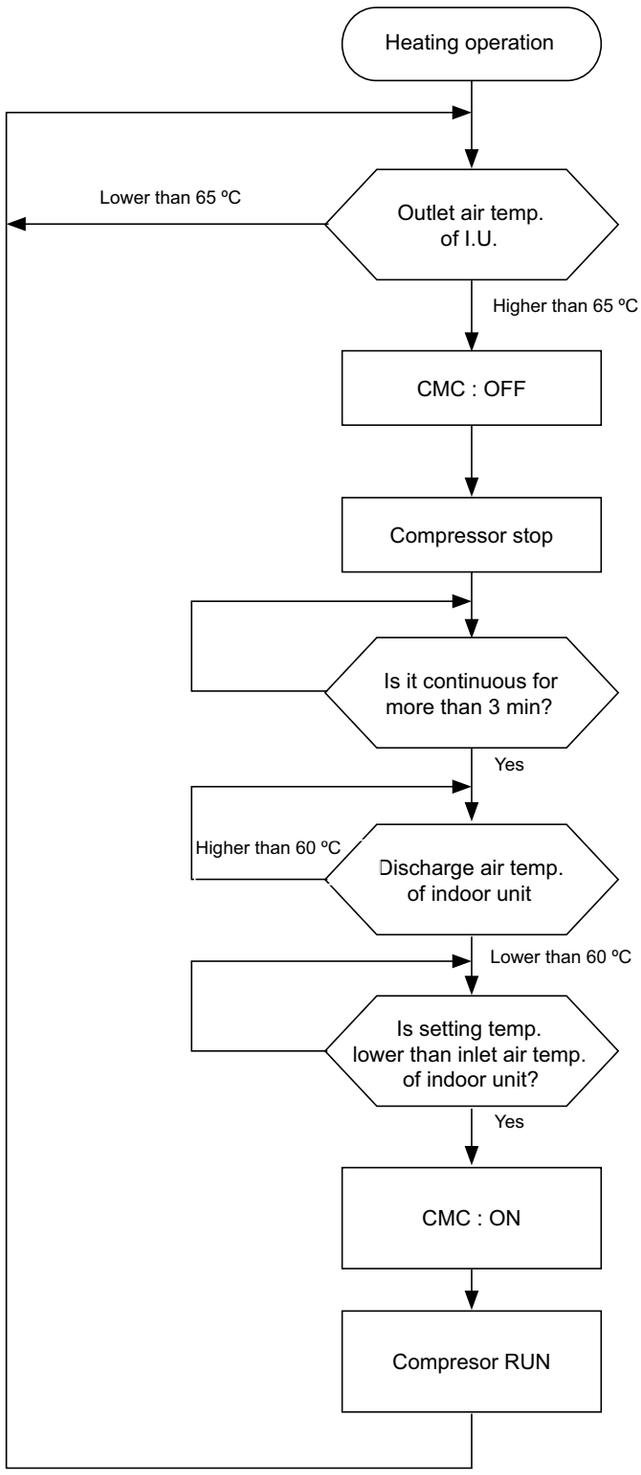
5.5.2 Standard control functions for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

◆ **Freezing protection during cooling process or dry operation**



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 129 04/06/2013 18:13:48

◆ Prevention control for excessively high discharge gas temperature



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 130 04/06/2013 18:13:48

◆ Outdoor unit electrical expansion valve control

1 After supplying power source, the electronic expansion valve is completely opened.
2 When the compressor is stopped, the electronic expansion valve is completely closed to adjust its opening.
3 At starting operation (compressor is operated), opening of the electronic expansion valve is set at a specified opening.
a. Specified opening during heating operation: 1 minute
4 During the cooling and the defrosting operations, the electronic expansion valve is set at the specified opening.
5 Normal opening of the electronic expansion valve.

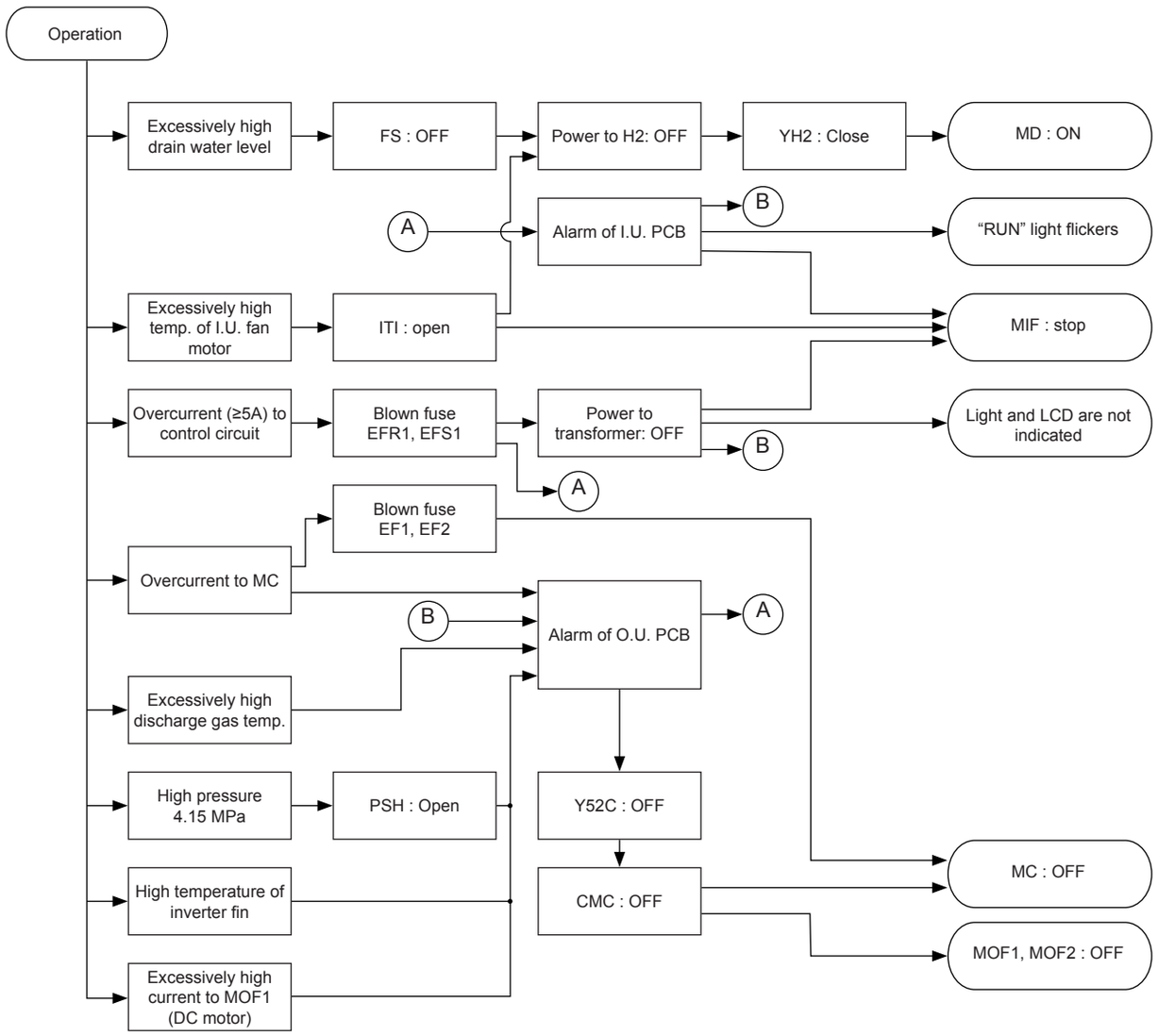
- **Coling operation**
  - 480 pulse (100%)
- **Heating operation**

a. Set of target temperature

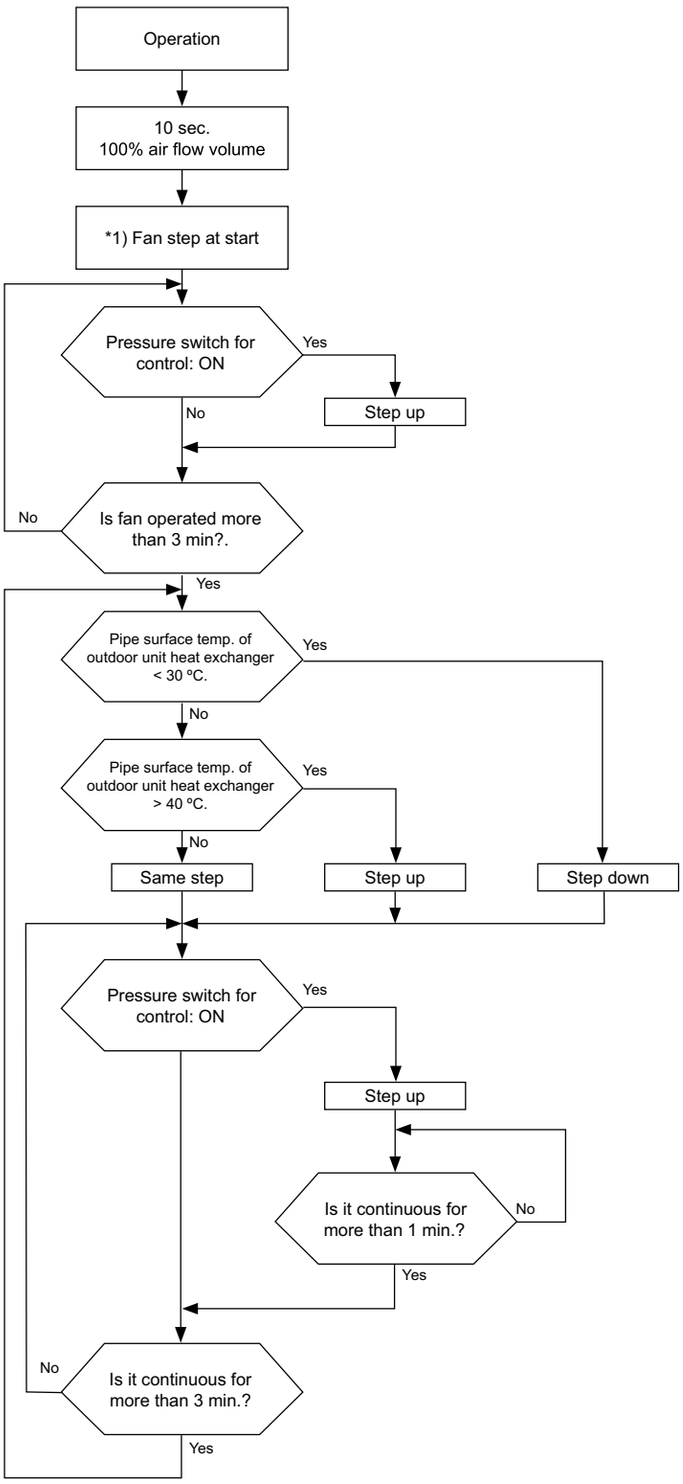
TdSH = 20-25 ºC

b. Simulation PI control for the electronic expansion valve. The electronic expansion valve opening is controlled so that the thermistor temperatures for the compressor can reach the target temperature.

◆ Activation for protection device control



◆ Outdoor fan control during cooling operation



NOTE

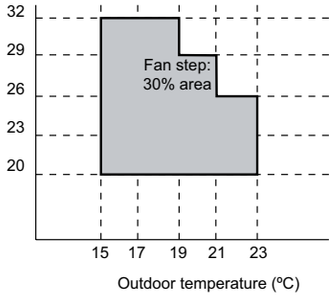
This sequence is for the standard operation.

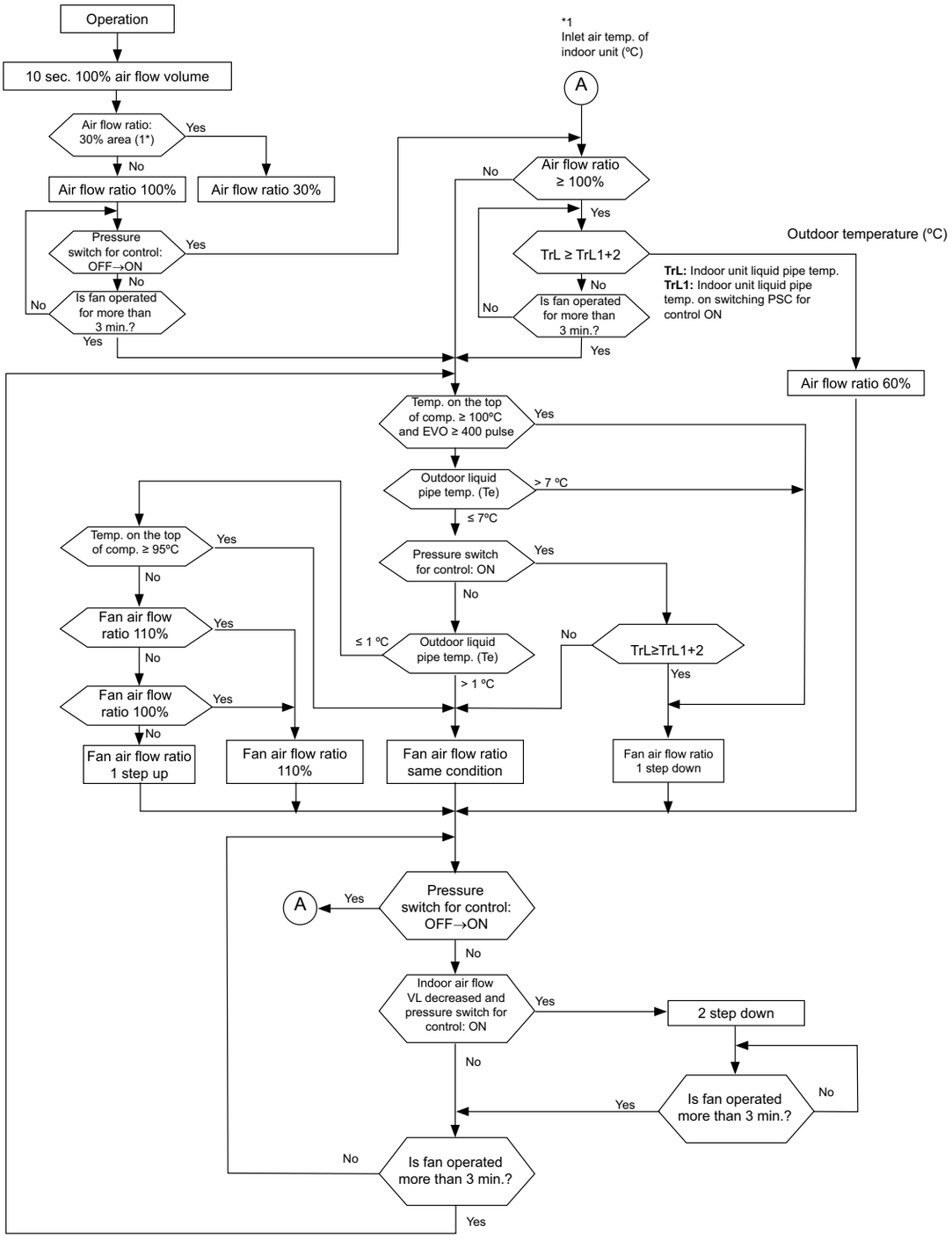
*1) Fan step at start

Outdoor temp. (Tao)	Air flow ratio
Tao ≤ 2 °C	15%
2 °C < Tao ≤ 12 °C	25%
12 °C < Tao ≤ 22 °C	40%
22 °C < Tao ≤ 27 °C	60%
27 °C < Tao ≤ 32 °C	80%
32 °C < Tao ≤ 37 °C	100%
37 °C < Tao	110%

*2) Temp. diference ±5 °C

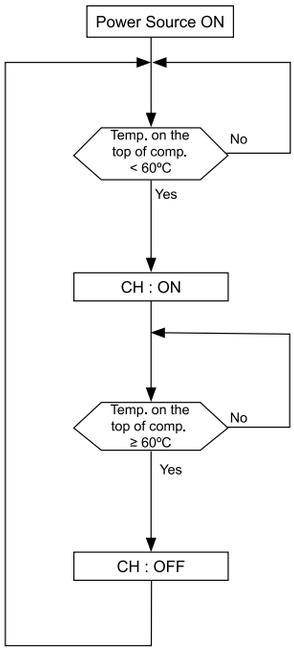
◆ Outdoor fan control during heating operation

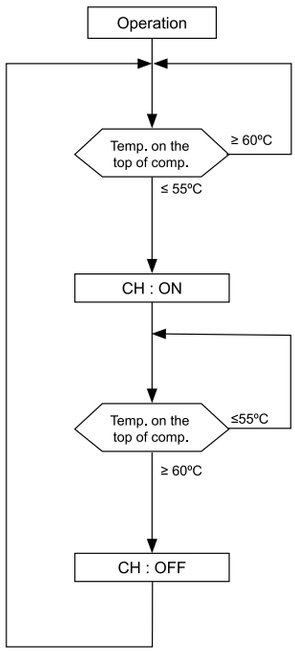


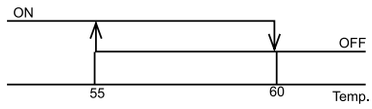


SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 134 04/06/2013 18:13:48

◆ Preheating control of compressor

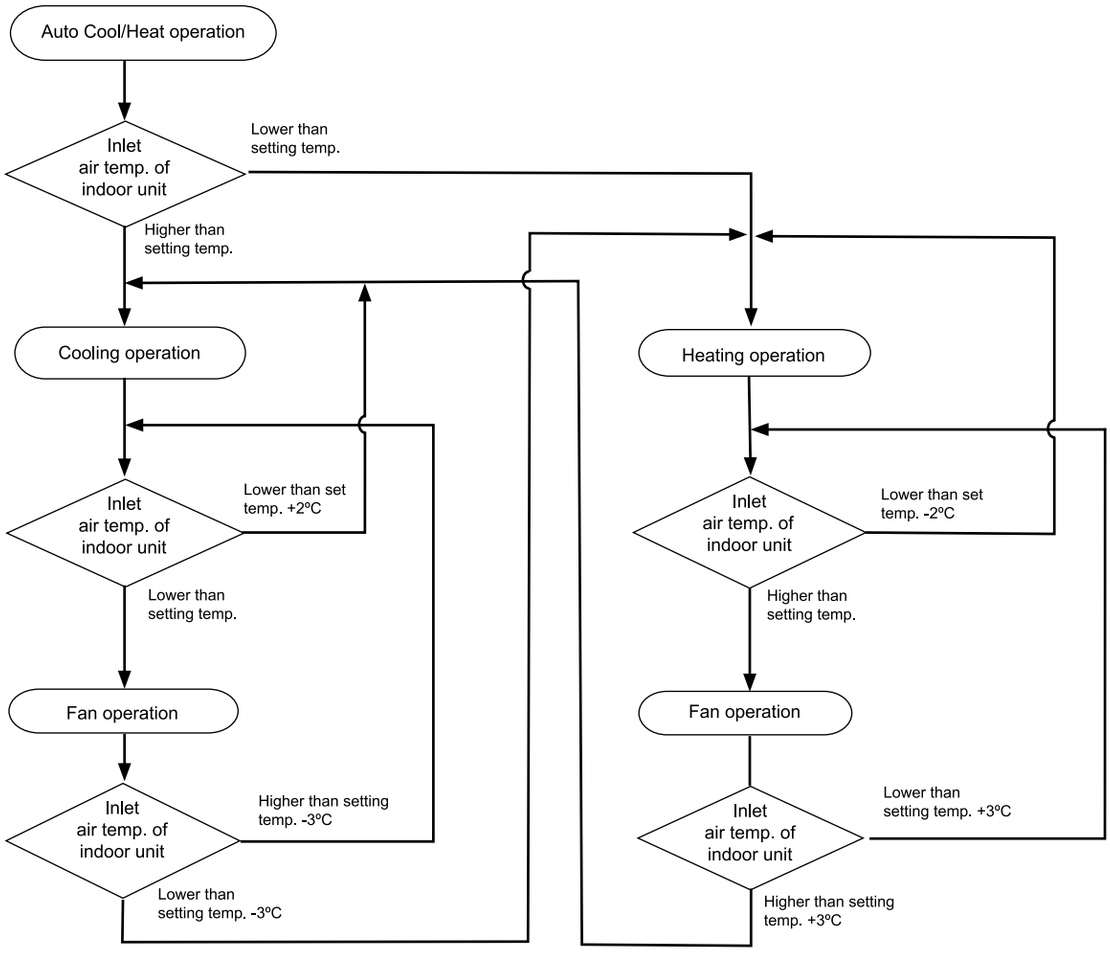






SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 135 04/06/2013 18:13:49

◆ Control for auto cool/heat operation



Prevention control for high pressure increase

This function is performed to prevent the abnormal condition (Alarm: 02) when the outdoor air flow is decreased by a seasonal wind against air outlet.

When the **CMC** is ON during cooling operation, **PSC** is ON and Tc is higher than Tc1+4°C, forced thermo-off operation will be performed.

Tc: Outdoor piping temperature

Tc1: Outdoor piping temperature when **PSC** is ON

PSC ON: 3.60 MPa

However, if it occurs more than 6 times during operation, forced thermo-off operation will not be performed. Cause of stoppage will be 13.

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

6. Optional functions

Index

6.1. Optional input and output signals (by 7-segment display) 138
6.1.1. Available ports 138
6.1.2. Available optional signals 140
6.1.3. Setting of the optional signals 143
6.1.4. Description of optional signals 144
6.2. Optional functions (By 7-segment display) for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 146
6.2.1. Setting of the optional functions 146
6.2.2. Description of the optional functions 148
6.3. Optional functions (by 7 segment display) for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 152
6.3.1. Setting of the optional functions 152
6.3.2. Description of the optional functions 154
6.4. Optional functions (By remote control switch) 156

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 137 04/06/2013 18:13:49

6.1 Optional input and output signals (by 7-segment display)

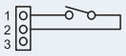
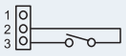
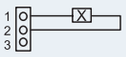
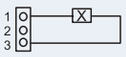
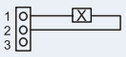
The system has several input and output signals, which can be selected using the following connectors of the outdoor unit's PCB:

- Input connectors CN1 and CN2, which have two and one ports respectively to configure three optional input signals.
- Output connector CN7, which has two ports to configure two optional output signals.

The selection of these input and output signals represent the selection of some optional functions programmed in the PCB of the outdoor unit.

6.1.1 Available ports

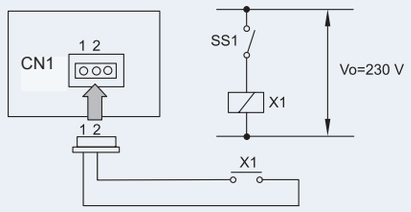
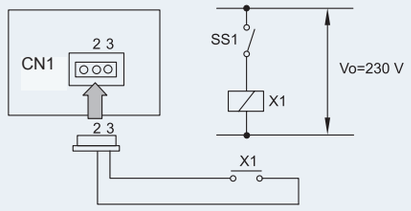
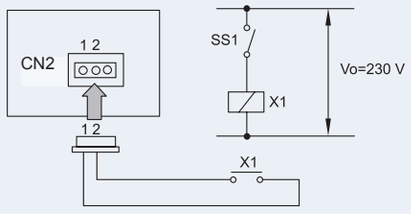
The system has the following input and output ports.

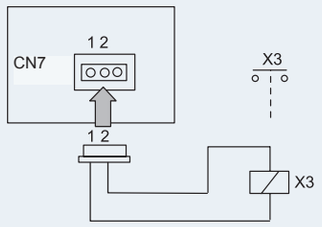
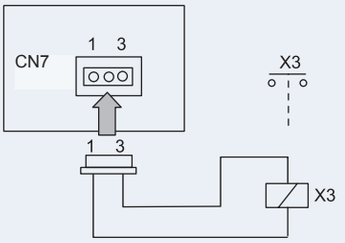
Content		Setting of the port in the PCB of the indoor unit	Remarks	Outlet
Inputs	i1	1-2 of CN1		Contact
	i2	2-3 of CN1		Contact
	i3	1-2 of CN2		Contact
Outputs	o1	1-2 of CN7		DC 12V
	o2	1-3 of CN7		DC 12V

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 138 04/06/2013 18:13:49

◆ Connection

The system has the following connections:

Input connections	
Indication	Connections
i1	
i2	
i3	

Output connections	
Indication	Connections
o1	
o2	

6

◆ Specification of the components for a correct installation

Component		Manufacturer or specifications	Remarks
Auxiliary relay (X3)		OMRON mini power relay model: MY1F or equivalent	Voltage between relay terminals 12 Vdc - 75 mA
(SS1) (x1), (x2) contact example		Manual type	Voltage between terminals of the 230V - 5 mA contactor
3P connector cable		Optional part PCC-1A (capable of connecting the JST XHP –3 connector)	Five wires with connectors as one set
Wire (control	Voltage: 12V DC	0.5 mm²	
Wire (power)	Voltage: 230V	2.0 mm²	

NOTE

- *The connection of the input signal is only an example.*
- *Keep the CN1 and CN2 wires as short as possible.*
- *Do not run the wires along 230V/400V CA power cables separately install them at a distance of more than 30cm. (The cables may intersect.)*
- *If you install the wires along a power supply wire, insert the wires in a metal conduit tube and ground one end of the tube.*
- *The maximum wiring length is 70 m. If you use this function, it is recommended that you use safety devices such as an electrical leakage breaker or a smoke detector.*

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 139 04/06/2013 18:13:50

6.1.2 Available optional signals

The outdoor units have the following signals that are described in the following table.

These signals are set up through the PCB of the outdoor unit.

◆ **RAS-3HVRNS3**

Input signals functions

Ind.	Input signal	Application	Port
0	No setting application	No setting	—
1	Fixing the heating mode	This signal allows to pre-fix the operation mode, in this case the heating mode, independently of what the indoor unit requests. If the indoor units request the oposite mode than the outdoor unit, the compressor will not start. This is very useful to set up a unique operation mode.	CN1 and CN2
2	Fixing the cooling mode	This signal allows to pre-fix the operation mode, in this case the cooling mode, independently of what the indoor unit requests. If the indoor units request the oposite mode than the outdoor unit, the compressor will not start. This is very useful for computer rooms where the cooling mode is fixed throughout the year.	CN1 and CN2
3	Demand thermo OFF	This signal allows to stop the compressor if it reaches a certain power as well as to put the indoor unit in Thermo-OFF. This is very useful for installations with high power consumption.	CN1 and CN2
4	Forced stoppage	This signal allows to control the stoppage of the compressor and the fans of the indoor as well as outdoor units. This is very useful when used with the alarm signals of the fire prevention systems.	CN1 and CN2
5	Current control demand 60%	This signal allows to regulate current consumption and establish an average consumption of 60% of the rate point. This is very useful for installations that run 24 hours a day.	CN1 and CN2
6	Current control demand 80%	This signal allows to regulate current consumption and establish an average consumption of 80% of the rate point.This is very useful for installations that run 24 hours a day.	CN1 and CN2
7	Current control demand 100%	This signal allows to regulate current consumption and establish an average consumption of 100% of the rate point. This is very useful for installations that run 24 hours a day.	CN1 and CN2

Output signals functions

Ind.	Output signal	Application	Port
0	No setting application	No setting	—
1	Operation signal	This signal allows to pick up the machine's operation signal. This is very useful to start up additional systems such as humidifiers, fans and other additional air-conditioning systems.	CN7
2	Alarm signal	This signal picks up the machine's alarm. This is very useful to warn that an alarm has been tripped.	CN7
3	Compressor ON signal	This single allows to pick up the compressor's operation signal. It is very useful for checking signals during remote-control operation and for the interlock of the outdoor unit.	CN7
4	Defrost operation signal	This signal allows to pick up the defrosting of the unit. This is very useful to know how the indoor unit is operating if there is an abnormal situation.	CN7

NOTE

Do not set same function to multiple input port. If set, the higher input terminal number will be cancelled.

◆ RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

Input signals functions

Ind.	Input signal	Application	Port
0	No setting application	No setting	—
1	Fixing the heating mode	This signal allows to pre-fix the operation mode, in this case the heating mode, independently of what the indoor unit requests. If the indoor units request the oposite mode than the outdoor unit, the compressor will not start. This is very useful to set up a unique operation mode.	CN1 and CN2
2	Fixing the cooling mode	This signal allows to pre-fix the operation mode, in this case the cooling mode, independently of what the indoor unit requests. If the indoor units request the oposite mode than the outdoor unit, the compressor will not start. This is very useful for computer rooms where the cooling mode is fixed throughout the year.	CN1 and CN2
3	Demand thermo OFF	This signal allows to stop the compressor if it reaches a certain power as well as to put the indoor unit in Thermo-OFF. This is very useful for installations with high power consumption. This signal is only activated if function F1 has value 1.	CN1 and CN2
4	No setting application	No setting	—
5	Forced stoppage	This signal allows to control the stoppage of the compressor and the fans of the indoor as well as outdoor units. This is very useful when used with the alarm signals of the fire prevention systems. This signal is only activated if function F1 has value 1.	CN1 and CN2
6	Current control demand 60%	This signal allows to regulate current consumption and establish an average consumption of 60% of the rate point. This is very useful for installations that run 24 hours a day.	CN1 and CN2
7	Current control demand 70%	This signal allows to regulate current consumption and establish an average consumption of 70% of the rate point. This is very useful for installations that run 24 hours a day.	CN1 and CN2
8	Current control demand 80%	This signal allows to regulate current consumption and establish an average consumption of 80% of the rate point.This is very useful for installations that run 24 hours a day.	CN1 and CN2
9	Current control demand 100%	This signal allows to regulate current consumption and establish an average consumption of 100% of the rate point. This is very useful for installations that run 24 hours a day.	CN1 and CN2
10	No setting application	No setting	—

Output signals functions

Ind.	Output signal	Application	Port
0	No setting application	No setting	—
1	Operation signal	This signal allows to pick up the machine's operation signal. This is very useful to start up additional systems such as humidifiers, fans and other additional air-conditioning systems.	CN7
2	Alarm signal	This signal picks up the machine's alarm. This is very useful to warn that an alarm has been tripped.	CN7
3	Compressor ON signal	This single allows to pick up the compressor's operation signal. It is very useful for checking signals during remote-control operation and for the interlock of the outdoor unit.	CN7
4	Defrost operation signal	This signal allows to pick up the defrosting of the unit. This is very useful to know how the indoor unit is operating if there is an abnormal situation.	CN7

NOTE

Do not set same function to multiple input port. If set, the higher input terminal number will be cancelled.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 141 04/06/2013 18:13:50

◆ RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

Input signals functions

Ind.	Input signal	Application	Port
0	N° setting application	N° setting	—
1	Fixing the heating mode	This signal allows to pre-fix the operation mode, in this case the heating mode, independently of what the indoor unit requests. If the indoor units request the oposite mode than the outdoor unit, the compressor will not start. This is very useful to set up a unique operation mode.	CN1 and CN2
2	Fixing the cooling mode	This signal allows to pre-fix the operation mode, in this case the cooling mode, independently of what the indoor unit requests. If the indoor units request the oposite mode than the outdoor unit, the compressor will not start. This is very useful for computer rooms where the cooling mode is fixed throughout the year.	CN1 and CN2
3	Demand thermo OFF	This signal allows to stop the compressor if it reaches a certain power as well as to put the indoor unit in Thermo-OFF. This is very useful for installations with high power consumption.	CN1 and CN2
4	Forced stoppage	This signal allows to control the stoppage of the compressor and the fans of the indoor as well as outdoor units. This is very useful when used with the alarm signals of the fire prevention systems.	CN1 and CN2
5	Current control demand 50%	This signal allows to regulate current consumption and establish an average consumption of 50% of the rate point. This is very useful for installations that run 24 hours a day.	CN1 and CN2
6	Current control demand 75%	This signal allows to regulate current consumption and establish an average consumption of 75% of the rate point.This is very useful for installations that run 24 hours a day.	CN1 and CN2
7	Current control demand 100%	This signal allows to regulate current consumption and establish an average consumption of 100% of the rate point. This is very useful for installations that run 24 hours a day.	CN1 and CN2

Output signals functions

Ind.	Output signal	Application	Port
0	N° setting application	N° setting	—
1	Operation signal	This signal allows to pick up the machine's operation signal. This is very useful to start up additional systems such as humidifiers, fans and other additional air-conditioning systems.	CN7
2	Alarm signal	This signal picks up the machine's alarm. This is very useful to warn that an alarm has been tripped.	CN7
3	Compressor ON signal	This single allows to pick up the compressor's operation signal. It is very useful for checking signals during remote-control operation and for the interlock of the outdoor unit.	CN7
4	Defrost operation signal	This signal allows to pick up the defrosting of the unit. This is very useful to know how the indoor unit is operating if there is an abnormal situation.	CN7

NOTE

Do not set same function (01-04) to multiple input port.

6.1.3 Setting of the optional signals

The optional signals of the outdoor unit are set up from the PCB of the outdoor unit and can be selected by pushing switches PSW1, PSW2 and PSW3.

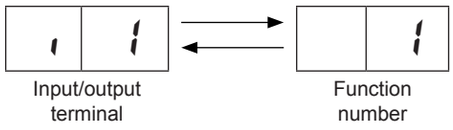
NOTE

Before setting the optional signals, must be complied the following conditions:

- *Outdoor unit must be stopped*
- *Check mode must not be selected*
- *External optional signal must not be connected*

If the initial setting has to be modified, the following instructions must be followed:

1 Set pin 6 of DSW2 to ON. Set DSW1 pin 4 to ON (For 4-10HP) or set DSW301 pin 4 to ON (For 3HP). Because of these settings, the input/output signals selection mode becomes available and the following indication appears on the 7-segment display.



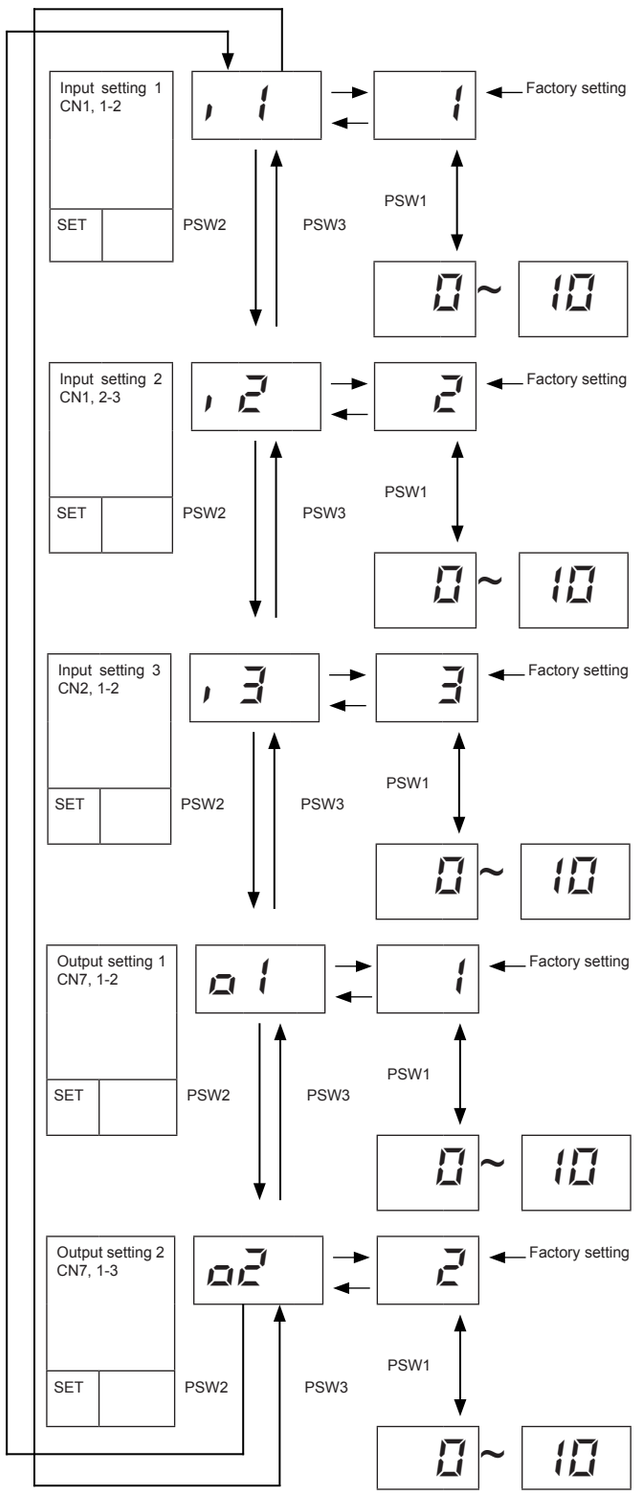
This example indicates that function number 1 “Fixing the heating mode” is set at input 1.

2 By pressing the push switches PSW2 and PSW3, it can be changed the input/output terminal name. (See the flowchart)

3 By pressing the push switch PSW1, it can be changed the function number. (See the flowchart)

4 After selecting the function number, return DSW1 pin 4 to OFF (For 4-10HP) or set DSW301 pin 4 to OFF (For 3HP).

The selected contents are memorized in the outdoor unit printed circuit board and the function selection mode is stopped. The memorized data is maintained even power source lines are disconnected. The connecting details of each function are described, and the required parts are also indicated in the section *Description of the optional signals*.



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 143 04/06/2013 18:13:50

6.1.4 Description of optional signals

◆ Input signals

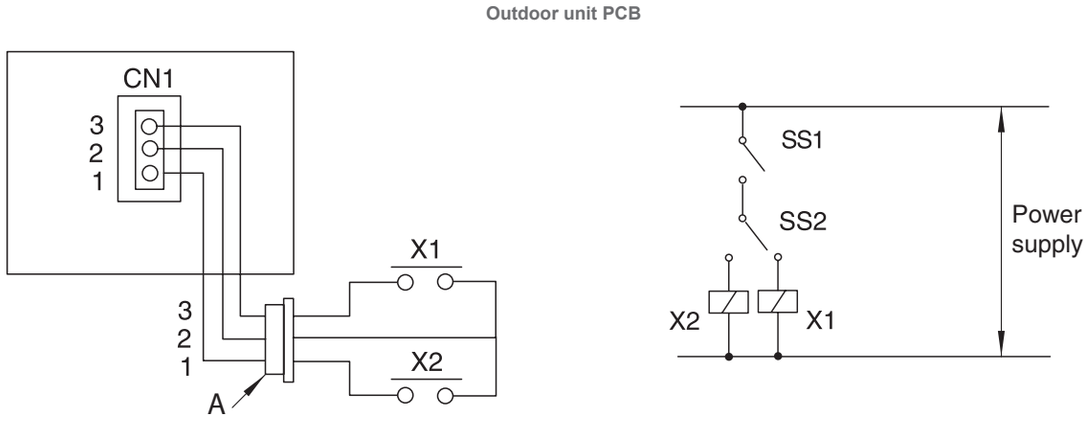
Fixing operation mode (heating / cooling) (1/2)

This input function is fixed in terminals CN1 or CN2 of the PCB of the outdoor unit, to use it as a cooling and heating mode. CN1 must be set up as follows.

Short circuit between the terminals 1 and 2 of CN1: set heating mode.

Short circuit between the terminals 2 and 3 of CN1: set cooling mode.

After having pre-fixed the established mode, the remote control can only be used to adjust the temperatures. Stoppage code “d1” “20” will be displayed if an attempt is made to change the operation mode of any of the indoor units with the remote control.
Example of wiring diagram of fixing the operation mode.



- A: 3P connector cable.
- X1: Cooling.
- X2: Heating.
- SS1: Fixing operation mode switch.
- SS2: Change over switch

Demand thermo OFF (3)

This is an input function to control the maximum power that the compressor can consume. When this option is turned on, the outdoor units are stopped completely, and the indoor units go into thermo-OFF. Alarm “10” is displayed on the remote control. If the switch of this function is disconnected it becomes available again.

Connect the cabling and use the materials as shown in *Available ports*.

Forced stoppage (4) (5: for RAS-4H(V)RNS3E)

This is an input function that turns on when the switch receives a signal that causes the compressor and the fan motor of the indoor unit to stop; alarm “10” displays on a remote-controlled when this option turns on. If the switch of this function is disconnected it becomes available again.

Connect the cabling and use the materials as shown in *Available ports*.

Current control demand (5/6/7) (6/7/8/9: for RAS-4H(V)RNS3E)

This is an input function that turns on when it detects that the frequency of the compressor reaches the values in the following table:

Unit	Frequency
RAS-3HVRNS3	60%, 80% or 100%
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E	60%, 70%, 80% or 100%
RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E RAS-(8/10)HRNSE	50%, 75% or 100%

The frequency of the compressor is determined when the maximum current reaches the established limit.

Connect the cabling and use the materials as shown in *Available ports*.

If the running current of the outdoor unit exceeds the maximum limit, the unit changes to the thermo-OFF condition. Stoppage cause code “10” will appear. When the input terminal is opened during the demand current control, the control of the input terminal is reset.

◆ Output signals

Operation signal (1)

This optional signal is used to pick up the operation signal. It can be used to turn on or off complementary units of the air-conditioning system,such as fans, humidifiers, etc.

Connect the cabling and use the materials as shown in *Available ports*.

Note that the contact of auxiliary relay X3 is closed when an operation signal is issued.

Alarm signal (2)

This optional signal is used to pick up the activation of safety devices.

Connect the cabling and use the materials as shown in *Available ports*.

Note that the contact of auxiliary relay X3 is closed when an operation signal is issued.

Compressor on signal (3)

This optional signal is used to pick up the signal when the compressor is ON. It can be used to check how the compressor is running at all times. It is very useful for locking the compressor when the fans are locked.

Connect the cabling and use the materials as shown in *Available ports*.

Note that the contact of auxiliary relay X3 is closed when an operation signal is issued.

Defrost operation signal (4)

This optional signal is used to pick up when defrosting turns on. It is very useful to check if the indoor unit is in thermo-OFF.

Connect the cabling and use the materials as shown in *Available ports*.

Note that the contact of auxiliary relay X3 is closed when an operation signal is issued.

6.2 Optional functions (By 7-segment display) for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

The outdoor unit has several optional functions which can be selected through the 7-segment display of the outdoor unit PCB.

6.2.1 Setting of the optional functions

The optional functions of the outdoor unit are set up from the PCB of the outdoor unit and can be selected by pushing switches PSW1, PSW2 and PSW3.

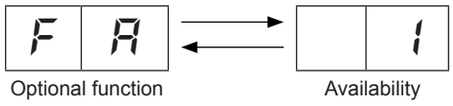
NOTE

Before setting the optional functions, must be complied the following conditions:

- *Outdoor unit must be stopped*
- *Check mode must not be selected*
- *External optional signal must not be connected*

If the initial setting has to be modified, the following instructions must be followed:

1 Set pin 5 of DSW2 to ON. Set DSW1 pin 4 to ON (For 4HP) or set DSW301 pin 4 to ON (For 3HP). Because of these settings, the optional function selection mode becomes available and the following indication appears on the 7-segment display.



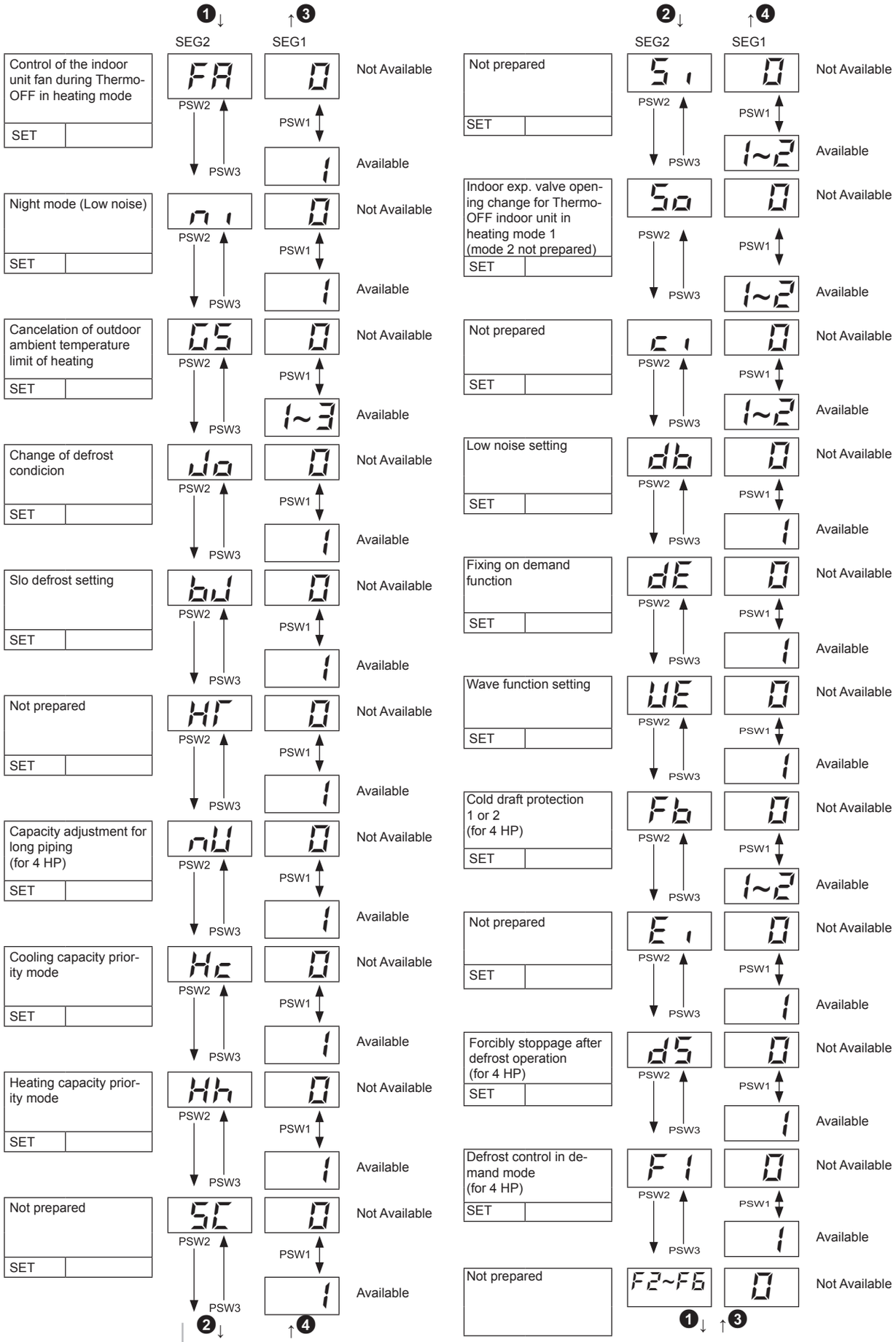
This example indicates that optional function “Control of the indoor unit fan during Thermo-OFF in heating mode” is available.

2 By pressing the push switches PSW2 and PSW3, it can be changed the optional function. (See the flowchart show in the next page).

3 By pressing the push switch PSW1, it can be selected the availability of this optional function. (See the flowchart show in the next page).

4 After selecting the function number, return DSW2 pin 5 and DSW1 pin 4 to OFF position (For 4HP) or DSW301 pin 4 to OFF (For 3HP).

The selected contents are memorized in the outdoor unit printed circuit board and the function selection mode is stopped. The memorized data is maintained even power source lines are disconnected. The details of each function are described in the section *Description of the optional functions*.


❶↓
↑❸
SEG2
SEG1
Control of the indoor unit fan during Thermo-OFF in heating mode
SET
FA
0
Not Available
PSW2
PSW1
PSW3
1
Available
Night mode (Low noise)
SET
n1
0
Not Available
1
Available
Cancelation of outdoor ambient temperature limit of heating
SET
C5
0
Not Available
1~3
Available
Change of defrost condicion
SET
dA
0
Not Available
1
Available
Slo defrost setting
SET
bU
0
Not Available
1
Available
Not prepared
SET
HF
0
Not Available
1
Available
Capacity adjustment for long piping (for 4 HP)
SET
nU
0
Not Available
1
Available
Cooling capacity priority mode
SET
Hc
0
Not Available
1
Available
Heating capacity priority mode
SET
HH
0
Not Available
1
Available
Not prepared
SET
SC
0
Not Available
1
Available
❷↓
↑❹
❷↓
↑❹
SEG2
SEG1
Not prepared
SET
S1
0
Not Available
1~2
Available
Indoor exp. valve opening change for Thermo-OFF indoor unit in heating mode 1 (mode 2 not prepared)
SET
So
0
Not Available
1~2
Available
Not prepared
SET
c1
0
Not Available
1~2
Available
Low noise setting
SET
db
0
Not Available
1
Available
Fixing on demand function
SET
dE
0
Not Available
1
Available
Wave function setting
SET
UE
0
Not Available
1
Available
Cold draft protection 1 or 2 (for 4 HP)
SET
Fb
0
Not Available
1~2
Available
Not prepared
SET
E1
0
Not Available
1
Available
Forcibly stoppage after defrost operation (for 4 HP)
SET
dS
0
Not Available
1
Available
Defrost control in demand mode (for 4 HP)
SET
F1
0
Not Available
1
Available
Not prepared
F2~F6
0
Not Available
❶↓
↑❸

6.2.2 Description of the optional functions

Control of the indoor unit fan during Thermo-OFF in heating mode (FA)

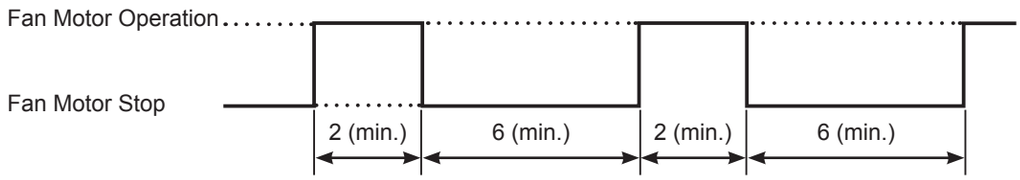
In case that the fan speed is changed to “LOW” at heating Thermo-OFF, there is a case that the room air temperature is too high at heating Thermo-OFF.

In this case, the circulator function at heating thermo-OFF is recommended, and its function explains below.

The indoor fan operates for 2 minutes and stops for 6 minutes as a cycle when the activation conditions are satisfied.

- Operation

When the indoor unit is at thermo-OFF during the heating operation, the indoor fan operates and stops for 6 minutes in 2 minute cycles



NOTE

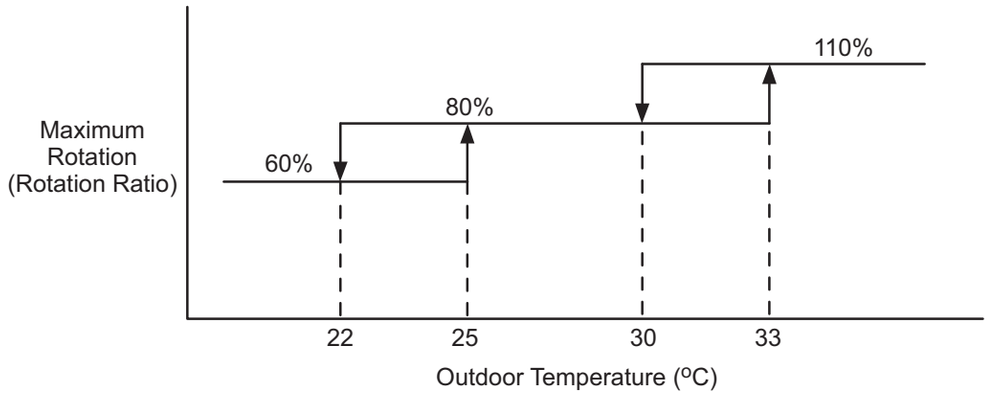
When the indoor fan is stopped by another control, it is not available to operate indoor fans.

Night mode (Low noise) (n1)

The outdoor fan operation is controlled by fan controller as shown below.

The night shift operation shall be applied in case that the cooling capacity has the margin to be allowed for the capacity decrease and the low sound operation is required especially in the nighttime.

- Outdoor Fan



NOTE

When the outdoor temperature is lower then 30 ºC in the cooling operation, the compressor frequency and the outdoor fan speed will be operated low. In this case, the cooling capacity decreases to approximately 60% at the same time.

Cancellation of Outdoor Ambient Temperature Limit (C5)

The heating operation is continued under a high outdoor temperature or the cooling operation is continued under a low temperature.

Setting condition*	Operation mode for cancellation
0	Not available (default setting)
1	Heating
2	Cooling
3	Heating / Cooling

Cancelled Conditions for Outdoor Unit Ambient Temperature Limit

- Heating Operation

If one of following conditions is continued for 1 second, the unit will be under Termo-OFF.

- Ta ≥ 23 ºC and Pd ≥ 3.7 MPa
- Ta ≥ 21 ºC, Ti ≥ 26 ºC and Pd ≥ 3.7 MPa
- Ta ≥ 15 ºC, Ti ≥ 29 ºC and Pa ≥ 3.7 MPa

- Cooling Operation

If the following condition is continued for 1 second, the unit will be under Termo-OFF.

- Ta < -7 ºC

Ta: Outdoor Ambient Temperature

Ti: Indoor Air Inlet Temperature

Pd: Discharge Pressure

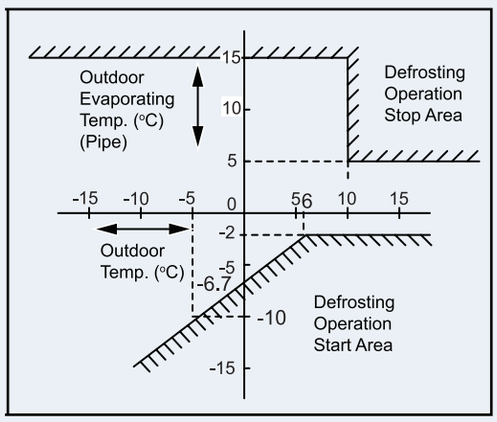
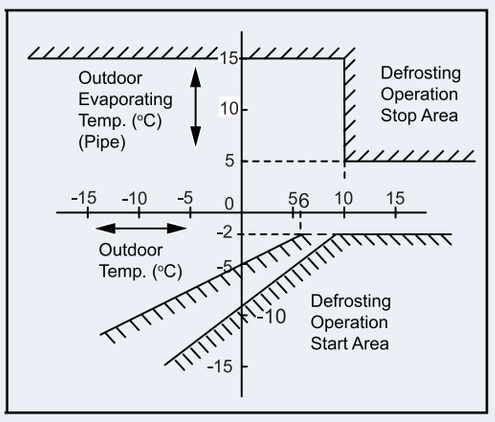
NOTE

If this function is set and the outdoor unit operates in the stoppage area for a long time, the outdoor unit may be damaged since protection control is cancelled.

Change of defrost condition (Jo)

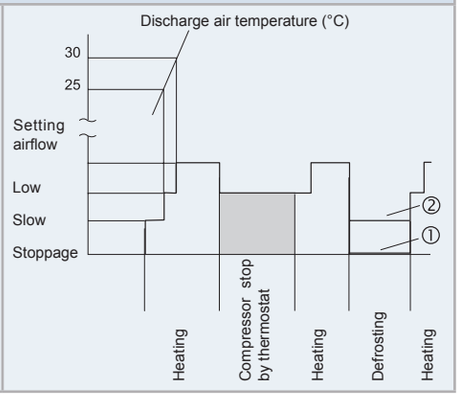
This function allows to change the operation conditions in defrosting mode. The change is shown in the folloing illustrations:

- Example for RAS-3H(V)RNS3E:

Setting condition	Standard Specifications (factory default state)	Heating specification
	Function selection setting Jo :0	Function selection setting Jo : 1
Temperature conditions under defrosting operation		

Setting defrosting at low-speed (bU)

Using this option, the speed of the indoor unit fan during the defrost period can be selected.

Fan speed during defrosting	
① Standard situation: Indoor unit fan stoppage during defrosting. ② Optional situation: Speed of the indoor unit fan at slow mode during the defrosting.	

Long piping setting (only for RAS-4H(V)RNS3E (nU)

If cooling capacity or heating capacity is not enough under the long-distance piping condition, this function can be set the target compressor frequency higher than normal target value.

Low noise setting (db)

The outdoor fan maximum rotation is set lower than normal setting. Unlike night shift mode, this option allows to set a compressor's frequency lower than normal, both in cooling and heating regardless outdoor temperature.

Fixing on demand function (dE)

It is not necessary to short-circuit the demand input terminals on the outdoor unit PCB. (Refer to section *Description of optional signals* in the input *Current control demand*)

The tables below is the limit of the running current for this function.

RAS-3HVRNS3

Control function number (*)	Demand running current control
1 to 4	100%
5	60%
6	80%
7	100%

(*) This function can be activated when demand function is selected at one of the input terminal indications i1, i2 and i3. In case that multiple demand functions are set at the input terminal indications i1, i2 and i3, the demand running current is selected as below.

5 > 6 > 7
(Control function number)

RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

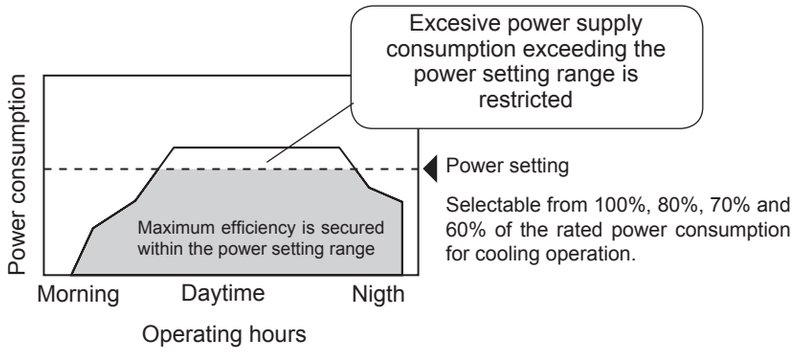
Control function number (*)	Demand running current control
1 to 5, 10	100%
6	60%
7	70%
8	80%
9	100%

(*) This function can be activated when demand function is selected at one of the input terminal indications i1, i2 and i3. In case that multiple demand functions are set at the input terminal indications i1, i2 and i3, the demand running current is selected as below.

6 > 7 > 8 > 9
(Control function number)

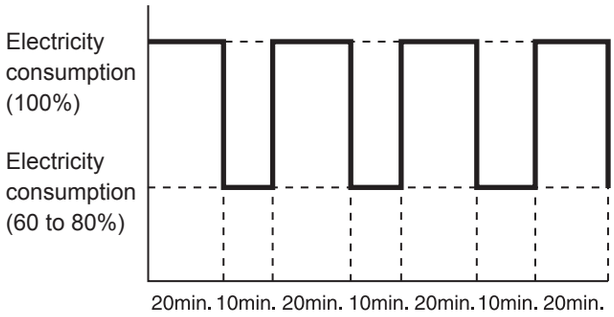
- Example of Demand Control for RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

Adopting self-demand function which drastically decreases power consumption has largely improved energy-saving.



Wave function setting (UE)

While this function is activated, the maximum limit of running current is changed from 60% to 100% as shown in the figure.



NOTE

- *Wave function can be activated when demand function is selected at one of the input terminal indications d1, d2 and d3.*
- *The minimum limit of running current control is according to the set value of the demand function.*
- *If demand function is not set at the input terminal indication, this function can not be activated.*

Cold draft protection 1 (and 2 for RAS-4H(V)NRS3E) (Fb)

When the minimum indoor unit discharge air temperature falls down to 12 ºC and below at cooling operation, outdoor fan stops and compressor frequency forcibly decreases to prevent a drop in discharge air temperature.

Setting condition	Temperature (ºC)	Condition
0	-	Not available (default setting)
1	< 12	The cold draft is prevented by the compressor frequency control and turning ON SVC (solenoid valve for high pressure bypass circuit).
2	< 12	The cold draft is prevented by the compressor frequency control.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 151 04/06/2013 18:13:52

6.3 Optional functions (by 7 segment display) for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

6.3.1 Setting of the optional functions

The outdoor unit has several optional functions which can be selected through the 7-segment display of the outdoor unit PCB.

The optional functions of the outdoor unit are set up from the PCB of the outdoor unit and push switches PSW1, PSW2 and PSW3.

1 While the outdoor unit is ON, set the following DIP switches on the printed circuit board of the outdoor unit as follows: set pin 5 of DSW2 to ON. Because of these settings, the function selection mode becomes available and the following indication appears on the 7-segment display.

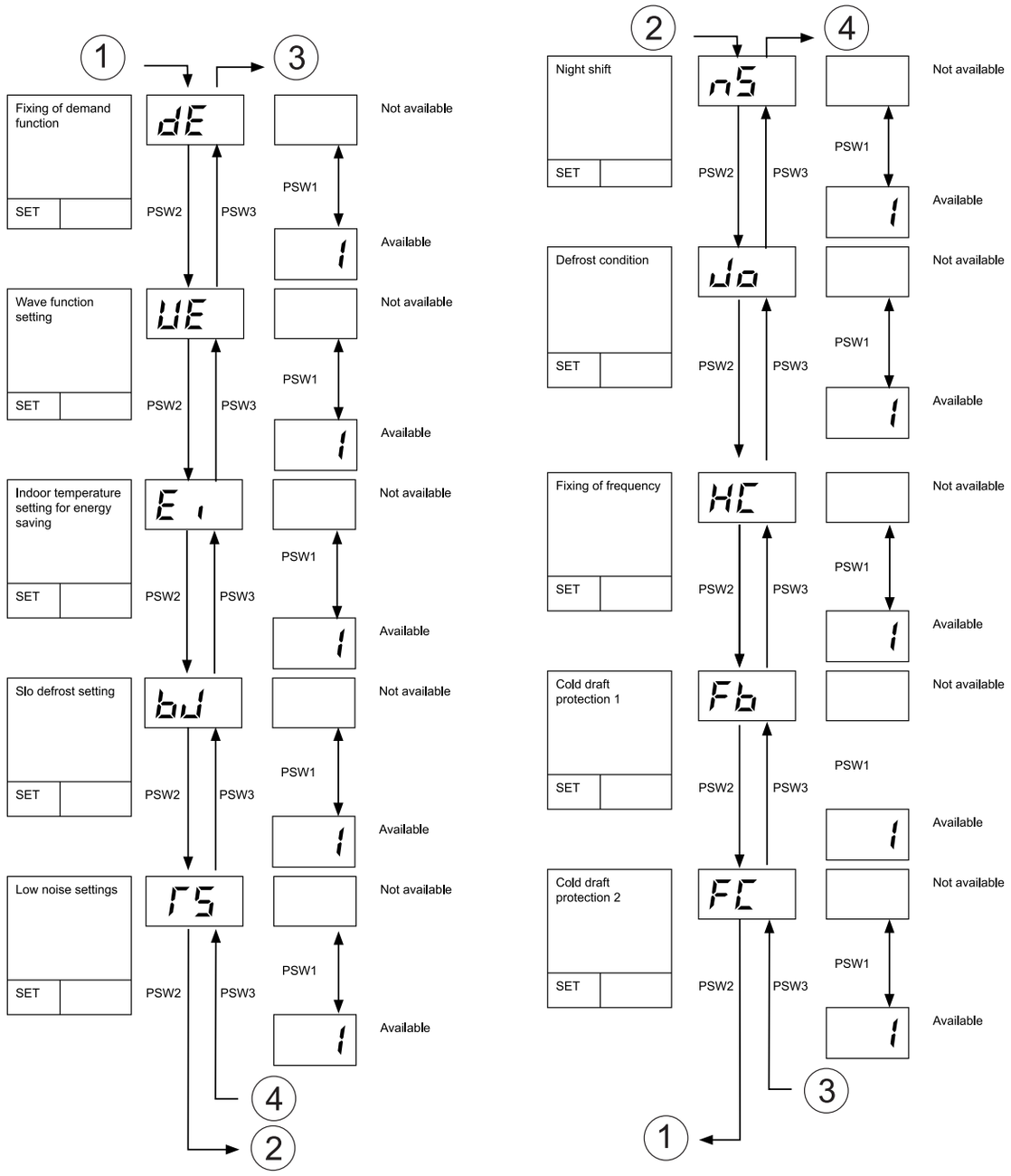


This indicates that the “fixing of demand” function is available.

2 By pressing push switches PSW2 and PSW3, you change the input/output terminal name. The flowcharts shown on the figure reflects the changes on the 7-segment display when you press PSW2 and PSW3. (See the flowcharts).

3 After selecting the terminal of the function setting, select the availability function by pressing the PSW1.

4 After setting the pin 5 of DSW2 to OFF, the selected contents are memorized in the PCB of the outdoor unit, and, immediately afterwards, the function selection mode is set to OFF. The memorized data is maintained even when the power supply wires are disconnected.



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 153 04/06/2013 18:13:52

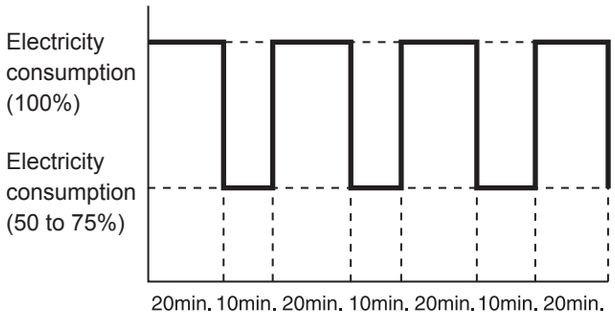
6.3.2 Description of the optional functions

Fixing of demand function (dE)

This function regulates the running current of the outdoor unit. If the demanded current is above the set current, the indoor unit capacity is reduced. The running current can be regulated both from internal signal. The capacity regulation is 50%, 75%, 100%.This function can be activated when the demand is selected at one of input terminal indications ,1, ,2, and ,3. In case that multiple demand functions are set the input terminal indications, ,1, ,2, and ,3. The demand running current is selected with 5, 6, 7. PSW1.

Wave function setting (UE)

This function regulates the power consumption of the outdoor unit. While this function is activated, the maximum limit of running is changed as shown:



NOTE

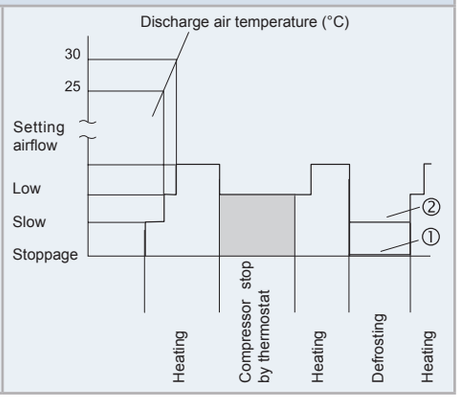
- *Wave function can be activated when demand function is selected at one of the input terminal indications ,1, ,2 and ,3.*
- *The minimum limit of running current control is according to the set value of the demand function.*
- *If demand function is not set at the input terminal indication, this function can not be activated.*

Indoor temperature setting for energy saving (E ,)

This function can be activated when the customer wants to reduce the system power consumption. The setting temperature will be increased or decreased depends if it is in cooling or heating mode.

Setting defrosting at low-speed (bJ)

Using this option, the speed of the indoor unit fan during the defrost period can be selected.

Fan speed during defrosting	
① Standard situation: Indoor unit fan stoppage during defrosting. ② Optional situation: Speed of the indoor unit fan at slow mode during the defrosting.	

Low noise setting (F5)

This function can be activated and then the compressor frequency is set lower than the normal setting. This function can activate in cooling or heating mode.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 154 04/06/2013 18:13:52

Night-shift (low noise) (n5)

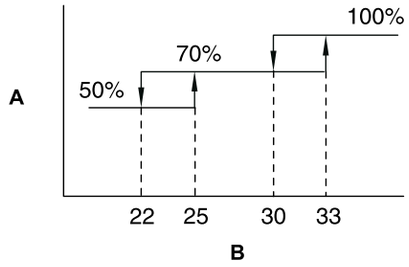
The outdoor fan operation is controlled by fan controller as shown below.

The night shift operation shall be applied in case that the cooling capacity has the margin to be allowed for the capacity decrease and the low sound operation is required especially in the nighttime.

- Outdoor Fan

A. Maximum rotation (rotating speed)

B. Outdoor temp (ºC)



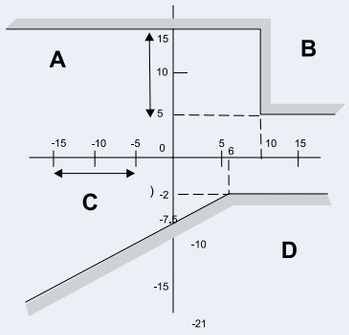
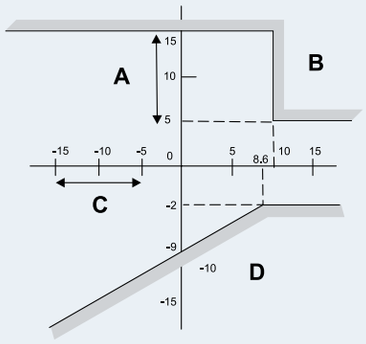
NOTE

The maximum rotation (rotating speed) is always 100% for the standard unit. (No limitation of the outdoor temperature).

Change of defrost condition (Jo)

This function allows to change the operation conditions in defrosting mode.

The change is shown in the following illustrations:

Setting condition	Normal defrosting condition Function selection setting Jo : 0	Optional defrosting condition Function selection setting Jo : 1
Temperature conditions under defrost operation.		

A. Outdoor evaporator temperature ºC (pipe).

B. Defrosting operation stop area.C. Outdoor temperature (ºC).D. Defrosting operation start area.

Fixing of frequency (HC)

No setting for this function is available.

Cool draft protection 1 (Fb)

This function can be activated, when the minimum discharge Air temperature falls down to 8 ºC in cooling operation. Outdoor fan stop and compressor frequency forcibly declines to prevent discharge air temperature from dropping.

Cool draft protection 2 (FC)

This function can be activated, when the minimum discharge Air temperature falls down to 10 ºC in cooling operation. Compressor stop. In this case stoppage code Nº 24 is given.

6.4 Optional functions (By remote control switch)

Additionally to the possible optional functions by the 7-segment display of the outdoor unit's PCB, there are available a large quantity of optional functions for each remote control switch connected to the system.

Please, refer to the Controller's Technical Catalogue and Installation and Operation Manual for the specific information about the remote control optional functions.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 156 04/06/2013 18:13:52

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

7. Test run

Index

7.1. Checking procedure before the test run 158
7.2. Test run procedure using the remote control switch (PC-ART) 160
7.3. Test run procedure using the remote control switch (PC-ARF) 162
7.4. Test run procedure using the wireless remote control switch (PC-LH3A/B) 165
7.5. Test run procedure from the outdoor unit side 167
7.6. Check list 169
7.6.1. Check list on test run 169

7

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 157 04/06/2013 18:13:52

7.1 Checking procedure before the test run

When the installation is finished, perform the test run according to the following procedure. After performing the test run, hand over the system to the customer.

Perform the test run of the indoor units one by one in order.

Make sure that the electrical wiring and the refrigerant piping are correctly connected.

Start the indoor units one by one in order to make sure that the indoor units are correctly numbered.

The test run should be performed according to *Test run procedure using the remote control switch on next pages.*

DANGER

- ***Do not operate the system until all the check points have been cleared.***
- ***Measure the resistance between the ground and the terminal of the electrical components. Make sure that the electrical resistance is more than 1 MΩ. Otherwise, do not operate the system until you find the electrical leakage and you repair the electrical leakage. Do not impress the voltage on the terminals for transmission 1 and 2. (*)***
- ***Pay attention to the following items while the system is running.***
  - ***Do not touch any of the parts at the discharge gas side with your hands because the compressor chamber and the pipes at the discharge gas side are hot at a temperature that is higher than 90 °C.***
  - ***DO NOT PUSH THE BUTTON OF THE MAGNETIC SWITCH(ES). If you do, you will cause a serious accident.***
- ***Do not touch any electrical components for more than three minutes after turning OFF the main switch.***

Checking procedure

1. Make sure that the stop valve of the gas line and the stop valve of the liquid line are fully open.
2. Make sure that there is no refrigerant leakage. The flare nuts sometimes loosen because of the vibration during the transportation.
3. Make sure that the refrigerant piping and the electrical wiring belong to the same system. Make sure that the setting of the unit number of DSW1, DSW6 and RSW1 of indoor units correspond to the system.
4. Make sure that the setting of the DIP switches on the printed circuit board of the indoor units and the outdoor units are correct. Especially, pay attention to the setting of the lift between the indoor units and the outdoor units. Refer to chapter 4 “Electrical Wiring” for details.
5. Make sure that the switch on the main power source has been ON for more than twelve hours in order to warm the compressor oil by means of the oil heater.
6. Check whether or not the electrical wiring of the indoor units and the outdoor units are connected as shown in chapter 4 “Electrical Wiring”.
7. Make sure that each wire terminal (L1,L2,L3 and N or L1 and N) is correctly connected at the power source.

NOTE

- *Make sure that the field-supplied electrical components (main switch fuse, fuse-free breaker, earth leakage breaker, wires, conduit connectors and wire terminals) have been properly selected according to the electrical data in the technical catalogue of the unit. Also, make sure that the field-supplied electrical components comply with the national codes and the local codes.*
- *Use the shielded cables for the field wiring in order to avoid the electrical noise. (The length of the shielded cable should be less than 1000 m. The size of shielded cable should comply with the local codes).*
- *Make sure that the terminals for the power supply wiring (“L1” to “L1” and “N” to “N” of each terminal board for AC 230 V and the terminals for the intermediate wires between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit (Operating Line: terminals of each terminal board for DC 12 V) match correctly. Otherwise, you may damage some components.*
- *Check to ensure the operating temperature:*
  - *Cooling operation:*
    - *Indoor DB 21.5 °C and above.*
    - *Indoor WB 16 °C and above.*
    - *Outdoor DB 0 °C and above.*
  - *Heating operation:*
    - *Indoor DB 27 °C and below.*

(*) About insulation resistance

- The insulation may lower during a test run or after being left with the main power OFF for a long time, due to refrigerant accumulation in the compressor. Check the following when the insulation resistance lowers to 1 MΩ or below, or in case that the ground-fault circuit interrupter activates.

  1 Remove compressor cables and measure the insulation resistance of the compressor alone. If the resistance is over 1 MΩ, other insulation failure of electric live part may exist.

  2 If the resistance is under 1 MΩ, remove compressor cables from the inverter PCB and turn the power ON and energize the oil heater. Measure the resistance after more than three hours of electric current application. If the insulation resistance recovers, the compressor does not have problems. In case that the resistance does not recover, compressor failure may exist. (More time may be required to apply the current depending on the conditions of air, pipe length or the refrigerant)

  NOTE

  To reconnect the removed compressor cables, re-caulk the terminal using a tool like longnose pliers in order that the Faston terminal does not remain loose.

- In case of Earth Leakage Breaker (ELB) activation, please confirm the rated capacity of ELB as well. Earth leakage breaker (ELB) shall be inverter compatible, and select a high-sensitive and high-speed model for sensed current rating under 30 mA (activation time within 0.1 sec).

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 159 04/06/2013 18:13:53

7.2 Test run procedure using the remote control switch (PC-ART)

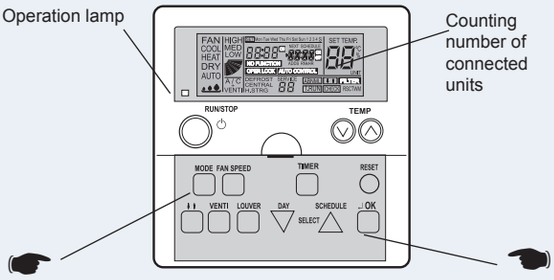
❶ Turn ON the power source of the units

❷ Procedure for TEST RUN mode of remote control switch.

Depress the MODE and the ↵OK switches together for more than 3 seconds.

a. If TEST RUN and the counting number of the connected units to the remote control switch (for example 05) are indicated on the remote control switch, the connection of remote control cable is correct. → Go to ❹

b. If no indication appears or the number of the units indicated is smaller than the actual number of the units, some abnormalities exist. → Go to ❸



❸

Remote control switch indication	Wrong portions	Inspection points after the power source OFF
No indication	The power source of outdoor unit is not turned ON.	**1** Connecting points of remote control cable, terminal board of remote control switch and indoor unit.
	The connection of the remote control cable is incorrect.	**2** Contact of terminals of remote control cable.
	The connecting wires of power supply line are incorrect or loosened.	**3** Connection order of each terminal board. **4** Screw fastening of each terminal boards.
Counting number of connected units is incorrect	The power source of outdoor unit is not turned ON.	**5** Dip switch setting on printed circuit board.
	The operating line wiring between indoor unit and outdoor unit is not connected.	**6** Connection on the PCB.
	The connection of control cables between each indoor units are incorrect. (When one remote control switch controls multiple units).	**7** This is the same as item ❸ 1, 2, and 3.

Back to ❶ after checking

❹ Select TEST RUNNING MODE by depressing MODE Switch (COOL OR HEAT)

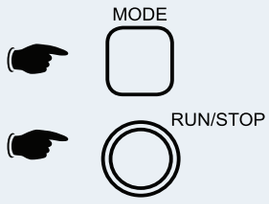
❺ Depress RUN/STOP switch.

The TEST RUN operation will be started. (The 2 hours OFF-TIMER will be set and the TEST RUN operation will be finished after 2 hours unit operation or by depressing the RUN/STOP switch again).

NOTE

- TEST RUN operation ignores the temperature limitation and ambient temperature during heating operation to have a continuous operation, but the protections are alive. Therefore, the protection may activate when the heating TEST RUN operation is performed in high ambient temperature.
- TEST RUN operation time can be modifyed / increased depressing the time switch in the Remote Control.

If the unit do not start or the operation lamp on the remote control switch is flickered, some abnormalities exist. →Go to ❻

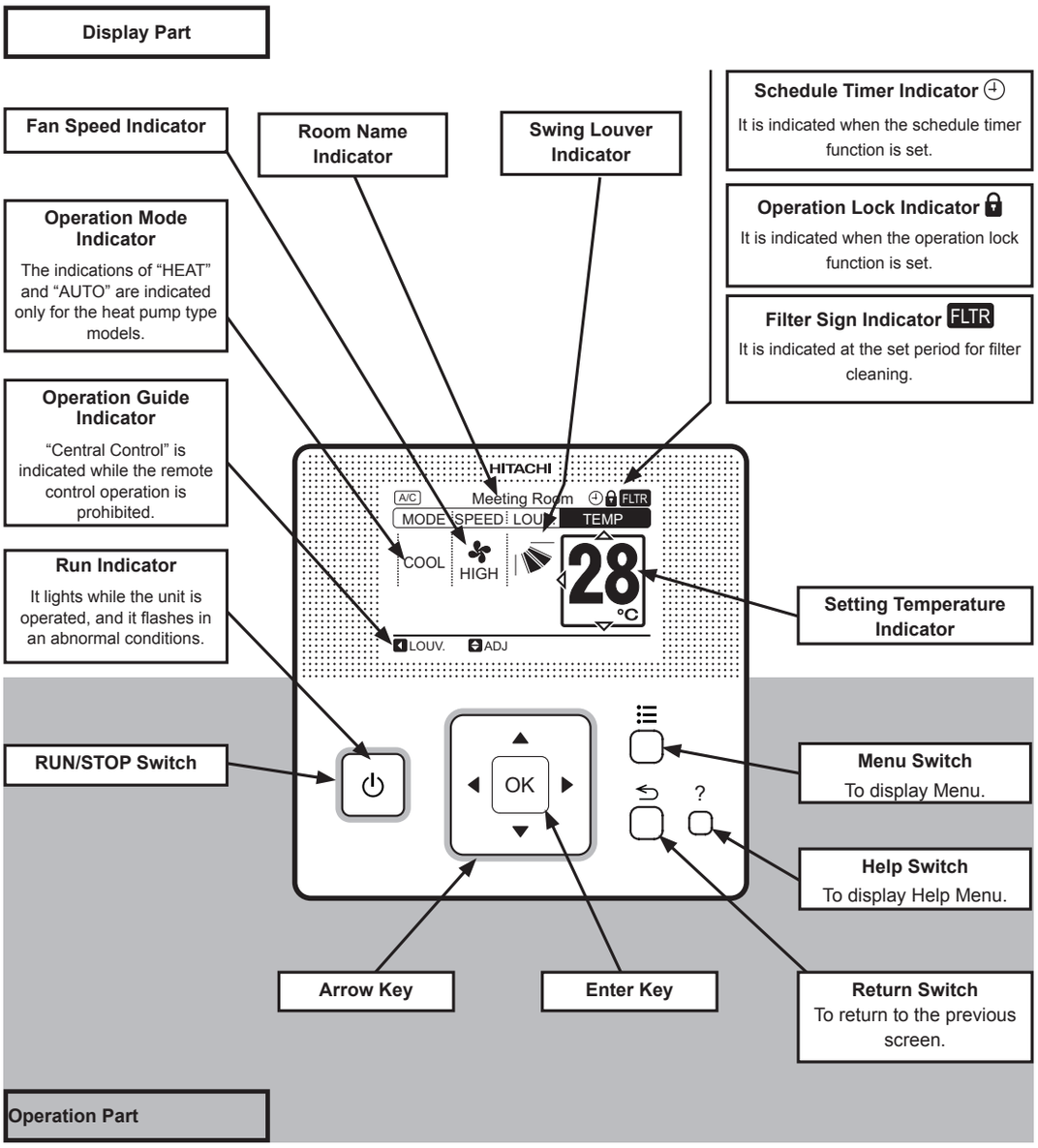


	Remote control switch indication	Unit condition	Wrong portions	Inspection points after power source OFF
❻	The operation lamp flickers. (1 time/1 sec.) and the unit number and alarm code 03 flicker.	The unit does not start.	The power source of outdoor unit in not turned ON. The connecting wires of operating line are incorrect or loosened.	**1** Connecting order of each terminal boards. **2** Screw fastening of each terminal boards. **NOTE** *Recovering method of FUSE for operating circuit. There is a fuse (FUSE4 on indoor unit PCB1, EF1 on outdoor unit PCB1) to protect operating circuit on the PCB, when the power lines are connected to operating lines. If fuse is melted, operating circuit can be recovered once by setting the dip switch on the PCB as shown in* ❼
	The operation lamp flickers. (1 time/2 sec.)	The unit does not start.	Remote control cable is broken. Contact of connectors is not good. The connection of remote control cable is incorrect	This is the same as item ❸ 1 and 2
	Indication of flicker except above	The unit does not start, or start once and then stops	The connection of thermistor or other connectors are incorrect. Tripping of protector exists, or else.	Check by the abnormality mode table in the Technical Catalogue (Do it by service people).
	The operation lamp flickers. (1 Time/1s) Unit number 00, alarm code dd and unit code E00 flicker	The unit does not start.	The connection of the remote control cable between indoor units is incorrect.	Check by the abnormality mode table in the Technical Catalog (Do it by service people).
	Back to ❶ after checking			

❼	Instructions for the recovery when the fuse of the transmission circuit is blown out: **1** Correct the wiring to the terminal board. **2** Set pin 2 of DSW7 on the indoor units PCB to ON Only for RPK-(0.8-1.5): set DSW7 on the indoor unit PCB ON	Except RPK(0.8/1.5)	Only RPK-(0.8/1.5)
			

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 161 04/06/2013 18:13:53

7.3 Test run procedure using the remote control switch (PC-ARF)

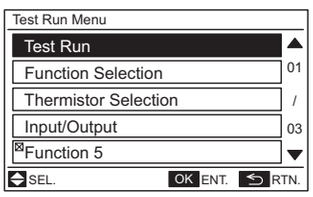


1 Turn ON the power supply for all the indoor units.

2 For the models with the auto-address function, wait for 3 minutes approximately. The addressing is automatically performed. (There is a case that 5 minutes is required according to the setting condition.) After that, select using language from "Menu". Refer to the operation manual for details.

3 Press and hold "☰" (menu) and "⮌" (return) simultaneously for at least 3 seconds.

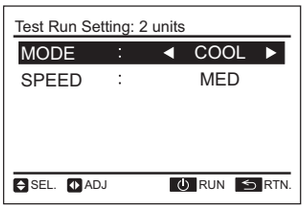
Test run screen



a. The test run menu will be displayed.

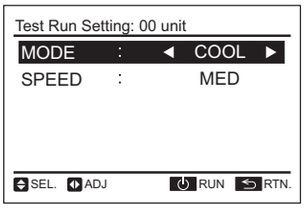
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 162 04/06/2013 18:13:54

b. Select “Test Run” and press “OK”. The test run settings will be displayed.

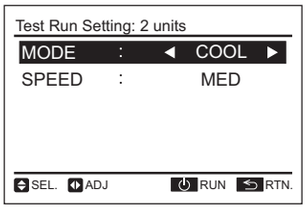


NOTE

When “00” is indicated, the auto-address function may be performing.
Cancel “Test Run” mode and set it again.



4 The total number of the indoor units connected is indicated on the LCD (liquid crystal display). The case of the twin combination (one (1) set with two (2) indoor units) is indicated “2 units”, and the triple combination (one (1) set with three (3) indoor units) is indicated “3 units”.



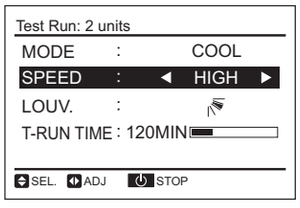
c. If the indicated number is not equal to the actual connected number of indoor unit, the auto-address function is not performed correctly due to incorrect wiring, the electric noise or etc. Turn OFF the power supply and correct the wiring after checking the following points; (Do not repeat turning ON and OFF within 10 seconds.)

- Power supply for indoor unit is not turned ON or incorrect wiring.
- Incorrect connectionn of connecting cable between indoor u nits or incorrect connection of controller cable.
- Incorrect setting of rotary switch and dip switch (the setting is overlapped) on the indoor units PCB.

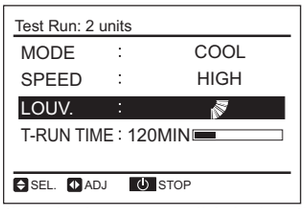
d. Press “⏻” (run/stop) to start the test run.

e. Press “△ ▽ ◁ ▷” and set each item.

5 Press “⏻” (run/stop). Start the test run when indicatin the air flow volume “HIGH” (default setting) and light the operation lamp. At this time, 2-hour OFF timmer will be set automatically..



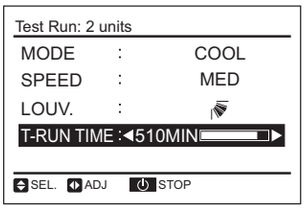
6 Press “△” or “▽”, select “LOUV.” and select “” (auto swing) by pressing “◁” or “▷”. The auto swing operation will be started. Check the operating sound at the louvers. If abnormal sound is not generated, press “◁” or “▷” again to stop the auto swing operation.



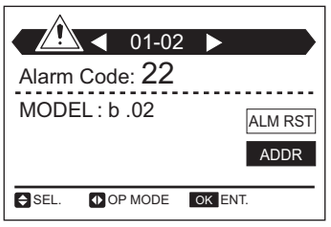
7 The temperature detections by the thermistors are invalid though the protection devices are valid during the test run.

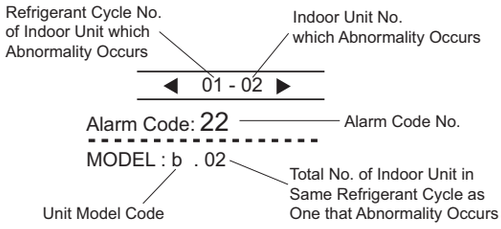
8 For SET-FREE Series: According to the label “Checking of Outdoor Unit by 7-Segment Display on PCB1” attached to the rear side of the front cover of the outdoor unit, check temperature, pressure and the operation frequency, and connected indoor unit numbers by 7-segment displays.

9 To finish the test run, press "⏻" (run/stop) again or pass over the set test run time. When changing the test run time, press "△" or "▽" to select "T-RUN TIME". Then, set the test run time (30 to 600 minutes) by pressing "◁" or "▷"



- The RUN indicator on the remote control switch flashes when some abnormalities such as protection devices activated occur during the test run as well as the RUN indicator (orange) on the indoor unit flashes (0.5 second ON/ 0.5 second OFF). Additionally, the alarm code, the unit model code and connected number of indoor units will be displayed on the LCD as shown in the figure below. If the RUN indicator on PC-ARF flashes (2 seconds ON/ 2 seconds OFF), it may be a failure in the transmission between the indoor unit and the remote control switch (loosening of connector, disconnecting wiring or breaking wire, etc.). In this case, check the item 8.3 "Alarm Code" and perform for troubleshooting. Consult to authorized service engineers if abnormality can not be recovered.

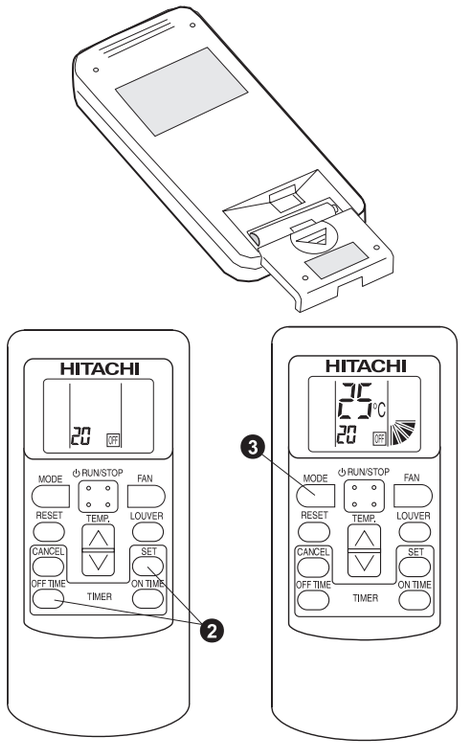




7.4 Test run procedure using the wireless remote control switch (PC-LH3A/B)

NOTE

If the wired remote control switch is used or if multiple units (SET-FREE, DC INVERTER and UTOPIA series) are operating simultaneously, you cannot perform the test run by means of the remote control switch. If that is the case, perform the test run by means of the wired remote control switch.



1 Perform the test run after completing the installation.

- **a.** Set the batteries for the remote control switch.
- **b.** Turn ON the power source of the indoor units and the outdoor units.
- **c.** The yellow '((' LED on the receiver of the indoor unit flickers (0.25 seconds ON ↔ 0.25 seconds OFF). Then, the yellow LED turns OFF. While the LED is flickering, the unit will not operate because the unit is initializing.

2 Set the TEST RUN mode by pressing the SET switch and the OFF TIME switch simultaneously for more than three seconds. The LCD should look like the LCD on the right figure. The TEST RUN mode is not operating

3 Set the operation mode by pressing the MODE switch. The TEST RUN mode is operating.

4 Operate the test run by pointing the transmitter towards the receiver of the indoor unit. Then, press the RUN/STOP switch. When the indoor unit receives the commands, the yellow '((' LED of the receiver will turn on briefly. Make sure that the commands are received well and the selected mode 3) is set correctly. In the TEST RUN mode, the red RUN LED of the receiver is turned ON and the green TIMER LED flickers (0.5 seconds ON ↔ 0.5 seconds OFF) (*2). Then, the timer switches off for two hours.

NOTE

- *If the yellow '((' LED does not turn ON, the commands from the remote control switch may not have reached the receiver. Send the commands again.*
- *(*2) In the case of the RPK model, the TIMER LED is turned OFF.*

5 Adjust the angle of the air grille as follows. The air louver has a mechanism for the auto-swing function. Do not move the louver by hand forcefully.

- **a.** Select the FAN mode by pressing the MODE switch.
- **b.** Set the louver angle by pressing the LOUVER switch.

6 Stop the test run (normal)

- **a.** The test run stops automatically after two hours.
- **b.** You stop the test run by pressing the RUN/STOP switch again. After the test run has finished, check that the red RUN LED and the green TIMER LED turn OFF.

7 Stop the test run (abnormal) for the PC-ALHD/PC-ALHZ. If you cannot use the PC-LH3A because of battery shortage or any other reason, perform the emergency operation as follows.

- **a.** COOL switch: Press the COOL switch in order to start the cooling process. Press the COOL switch again in order to stop the cooling process.
- **b.** HEAT switch: Press the HEAT switch in order to start the heating process. Press the HEAT switch again in order to stop the heating process.

NOTE

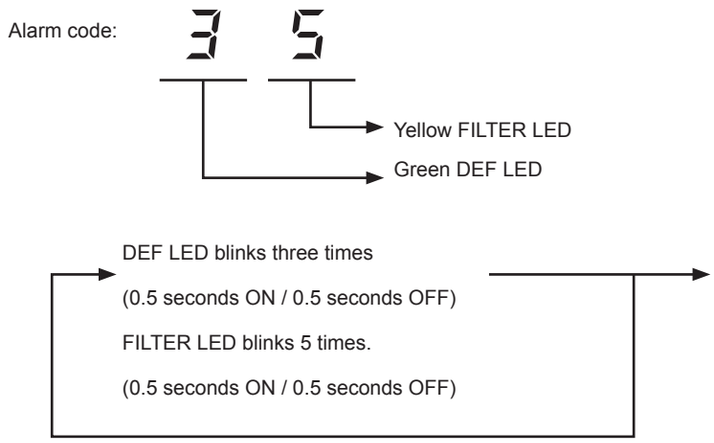
During the emergency operation, the yellow LED blinks (0.5 seconds ON / 0.5 seconds OFF).

- **c.** Alarm code display

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 165 04/06/2013 18:13:55

- If some malfunction occurs because of the activation of a safety device or any other reason, the red RUN LED blinks (0.5 seconds ON / 0.5 seconds OFF).
- Refer to section *Alarm codes* on chapter *Troubleshooting*.
- The alarm code displays the number of blinks of the green DEF LED and the yellow FILTER LED as shown bellow:
- Green DEF LED: Digit 2 of the alarm code blinks.
- Yellow FILTER LED: Digit 1 of the alarm code blinks. (Alphabet code: A=10 blinks, B=11 blinks, C=12 blinks, etc.).

Example:



The red RUN LED (1 second ON / 1 second OFF) means that there is an abnormal transmission between the indoor units and the outdoor unit.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 166 04/06/2013 18:13:55

7.5 Test run procedure from the outdoor unit side

The test run procedure from the outdoor unit side is shown below.

You can set this DIP switch while the power source is ON.

Setting of dip switch

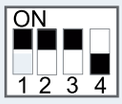
DSW1	
	1. Test Run 2. Cooling (OFF) / Heating (ON) 3. Intermediate season 4. Manual Compressor stop

DANGER

- ***Do not touch any other electrical components while you are setting the switches on the PCB.***
- ***Do not attach or detach the service access panel when the power source for the outdoor unit is ON and the outdoor unit is operating.***

NOTE

Set all the DIP switches of DSW1 to OFF after completing the test run.

	Dip switch setting	Operation	Remarks
Test run	**1** Setting operation mode (a) Cooling: Set DSW1-1 ON  (b) Heating SET DSW1-1 and 2 ON  (c) Cooling intermediate season: Set DSW1-1 and 3 ON  (d) Heating intermediate season: Set DSW1-1, 2 and 3 ON 	• The indoor unit automatically starts to operate when the test run of the outdoor unit is set. • You can perform the ON/OFF operation from the remote control switch or the DSW1-1 of the outdoor unit. • Continuous operation during 2 hours is performed without the Thermo-OFF condition.	• Make sure that the indoor units start to operate in accord with the test run of the outdoor unit. • If you start the test run from the outdoor unit and you stop the test run from the remote control switch, the test run function of the remote control switch is cancelled. However, the test run function of the outdoor unit is not cancelled. • If the more than one indoor unit is connected with one remote control switch, all the units start the test run at the same time. Therefore, turn OFF the power source so that the indoor units do not perform the test run. If this is the case, the TEST RUN indication of the remote control switch may flicker. This is not abnormal. • The setting of DSW1 is not required for the test run from the remote control switch.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 167 04/06/2013 18:13:56

	Dip switch setting	Operation	Remarks
Manual OFF of compressor	**2** Forced stoppage of compressor: Set DSW1-4 ON 	• When DSW1-4 is ON during the compressor operation, the compressor stops operating immediately and the indoor unit is under the Thermo-OFF condition. • When DSW1-4 is OFF, the compressor starts to operate after the cancellation of the 3-minute guard.	• Do not turn ON and OFF the compressor frequently.

NOTE

In case of RAS-3HVRNS3E operation is performed by DSW301 on the PCB of the outdoor unit instead of DSW1.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 168 04/06/2013 18:13:56

7.6 Check list

7.6.1 Check list on test run

MODEL:	
SERIAL No.	
COMPRESSOR MFG No.	
NAME AND ADDRESS OF CUSTOMER:	
DATE:	

1 Is the rotation direction of the indoor coil fan correct? _____
2 Is the rotation direction of the outdoor coil fan correct? _____
3 Is there any abnormal compressor sound? _____
4 Has the unit been operating for at least twenty (20) minutes? _____
5 Check the room temperature:

Inlet	No 1	DB____ °C WB ____ °C	No 2	DB____ °C WB ____ °C	No 3	DB____ °C WB ____ °C	No 4	DB____ °C WB ____ °C
Outlet		DB____ °C WB ____ °C		DB____ °C WB ____ °C		DB____ °C WB ____ °C		DB____ °C WB ____ °C
Inlet	No 5	DB____ °C WB ____ °C	No 6	DB____ °C WB ____ °C	No 7	DB____ °C WB ____ °C	No 8	DB____ °C WB ____ °C
Outlet		DB____ °C WB ____ °C		DB____ °C WB ____ °C		DB____ °C WB ____ °C		DB____ °C WB ____ °C

6 Check the outdoor ambient temperature:

Inlet	DB____ °C WB ____ °C
Outlet	DB____ °C WB ____ °C

7 Check the refrigerant temperature: Operating mode (cool or heat).

Discharge gas temperature	Td = _____ °C
Liquid pipe temperature	Te = _____ °C

8 Check the pressure:

Discharge pressure	Pd = _____kg/cm²G
Suction pressure	Ps = _____kg/cm²G

9 Check the voltage:

Rated voltage	_____V	—	—
Operating voltage	L1–L2_____V	L1–L3_____V	L2–L3_____V
Starting voltage	_____V	—	—
Phase imbalance	1-(V/Vm) =	—	—

10 Check the compressor input running current

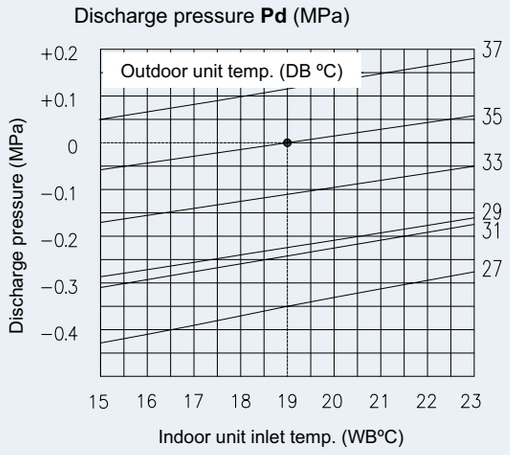
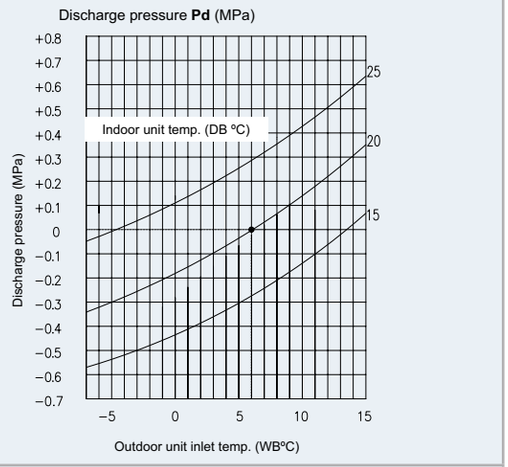
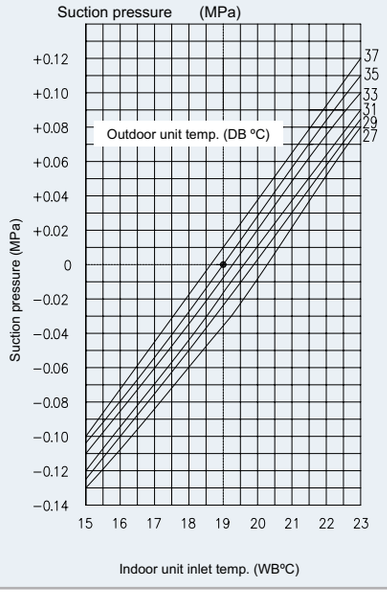
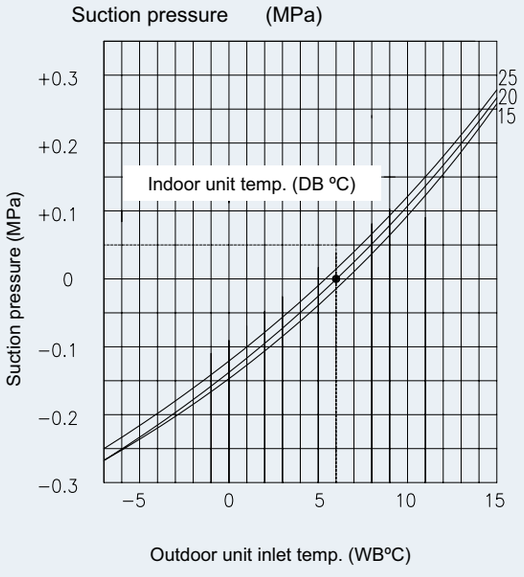
Input	_____kW
Running current	_____A

11 Is the refrigerant charge adequate? _____
12 Do the operation control devices operate correctly? _____
13 Do the safety devices operate correctly? _____
14 Has the unit been checked for refrigerant leakage? _____
15 Is the unit clean inside and outside? _____
16 Are all the cabinet panels fixed? _____
17 Are all the cabinet panels free from rattles? _____
18 Is the filter clean? _____
19 Is the heat exchanger clean? _____
20 Are the stop valves open? _____
21 Does the drain water flow smoothly from the drain pipe? _____

◆ Normal operation pressure

You can check the excess or the deficiency of the refrigerant in comparision with the following charts and actual pressure measurement.

The following checking procedure is useful during test run and maintenance work.

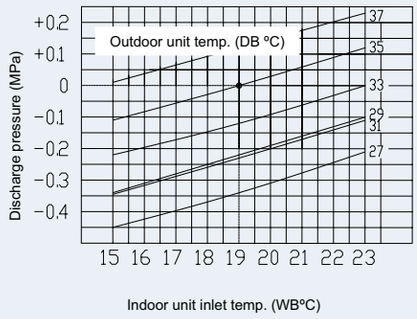
Cooling operation	Heating operation
	
	

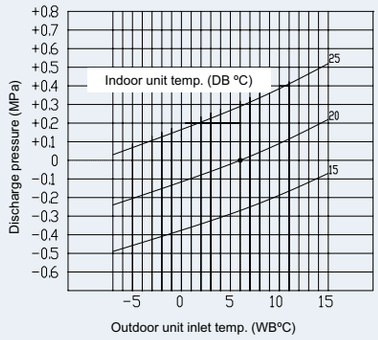
NOTE

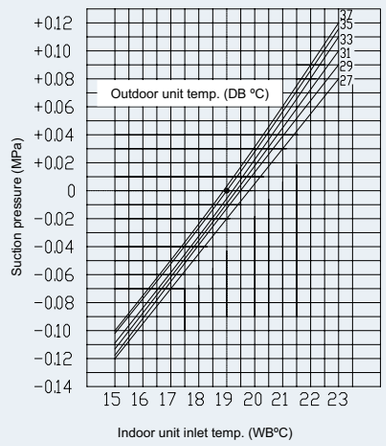
When ambient temperature is less than 30 ºC, outdoor fan volume decrease.

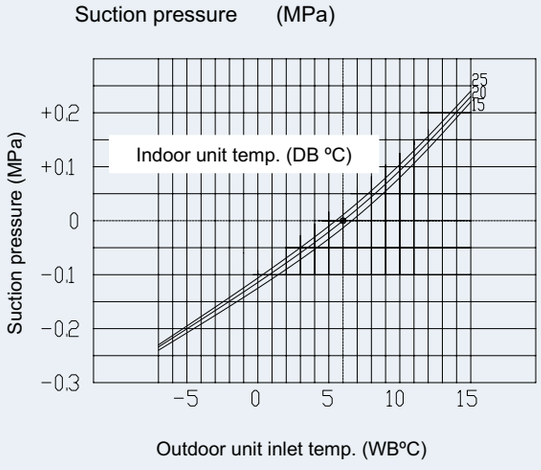
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 170 04/06/2013 18:13:57

Cooling operation	Heating operation
Discharge pressure **Pd** (MPa)	Discharge pressure **Pd** (MPa)
Suction pressure **Ps** (MPa)	Suction pressure (MPa)









NOTE

- *When ambient temperature is less than 30 °C, outdoor fan volume decrease.*
- *The above curves indicate pressures under the following conditions:*
  - *Indoor fan speed: HIGH*
  - *Indoor total capacity: 100% compared with the capacity of the outdoor unit. (Connected 1 indoor unit, and connected to two indoor for RAS-(8/10)HRNSE)*
  - *Piping length: 7.5 m (main piping: 5m, branch piping: 2.5 m x 4, branch piping for RAS-(8/10)HRNSE): 2.5 m x 2).*
- *Do not use the above data for the refrigerant charge procedure.*
  - *These data should be used as a reference for the checking of operating conditions.*
  - *Nominal Pd and Ps Indoor unit combination:*

Nominal value (MPa)			RCI	RCD	RPC	RPI	RPK	RPF(I)
Cooling	3 HP	Pd	2.79	3.13	2.98	2.98	2.95	—
		Ps	0.99	0.78	0.78	0.80	0.81	—
Heating		Pd	2.20	2.68	2.61	2.80	2.67	—
		Ps	0.66	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	—
Cooling	4 HP	Pd	2.83	2.91	2.92	2.92	2.91	—
		Ps	0.88	0.82	0.77	0.79	2	—
Heating		Pd	2.32	2.68	2.86	2.73	3.11	—
		Ps	0.65	0.68	0.64	0.63	0.64	—
Cooling	5 HP	Pd	2.87	2.90	2.91	2.92	—	—
		Ps	0.88	0.82	0.77	0.79	—	—
Heating		Pd	2.50	2.84	2.63	2.37	—	—
		Ps	0.65	0.66	0.66	0.66	—	—
Cooling	6 HP	Pd	2.95	—	3.00	2.99	—	—
		Ps	0.77	—	0.73	0.79	—	—
Heating		Pd	2.65	—	2.71	2.38	—	—
		Ps	0.65	—	0.65	0.65	—	—
Cooling	8 HP	Pd	2.93	2.97	2.97	2.98	2.97	—
		Ps	0.87	0.82	0.77	0.79	0.71	—
Heating		Pd	2.31	2.68	2.86	2.73	3.21	—
		Ps	0.65	0.62	0.63	0.63	0.63	—
Cooling	10 HP	Pd	2.95	2.98	3.01	3.00	—	—
		Ps	0.82	0.79	0.76	0.81	—	—
Heating		Pd	2.47	2.54	3.00	2.35	—	—
		Ps	0.65	0.65	0.65	0.65	—	—

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 172 04/06/2013 18:13:58

8. Electrical checks of main parts

Index

8.1. Inverter 174

8.1.1. Specifications of inverter 174

8.2. Thermistor 179

8.3. Electronic expansion valve 182

8.4. High pressure protection device 183

8.4.1. Location of the high pressure protection devices 183

8.4.2. High pressure switch (PSH) 184

8.4.3. Pressure switch for control (PSC) 184

8.5. Noise filter (NF) 185

8.5.1. Noise filter for 3N~ 400V 50Hz 185

8.5.2. Noise filter for 1~ 230V 50Hz 186

8.6. Capacitor (CB1 CB2) - 8/10 HP only 187

8.7. Reactor (DCL) 188

8.7.1. Reactor (DCL) for 3N~ 400V 50Hz 188

8.7.2. Reactor (DCL) for 1~ 230V 50Hz 188

8.8. Scroll compressor 189

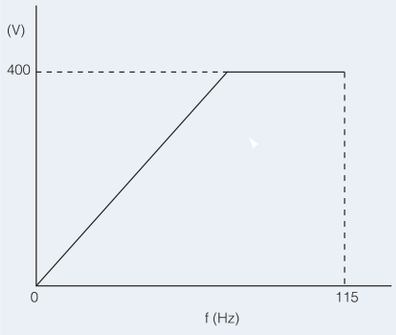
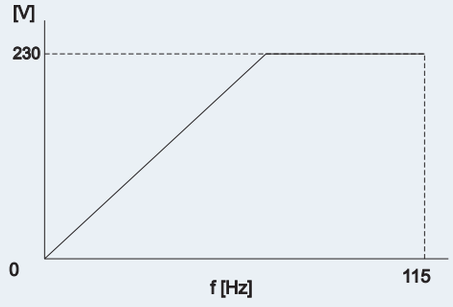
8.8.1. Reliable mechanism for low vibrating and low sound 189

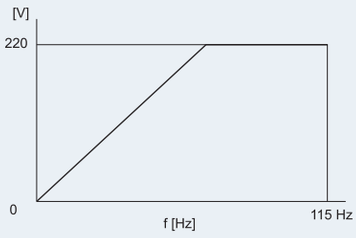
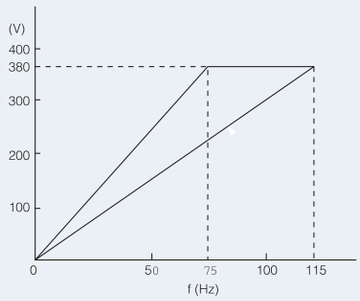
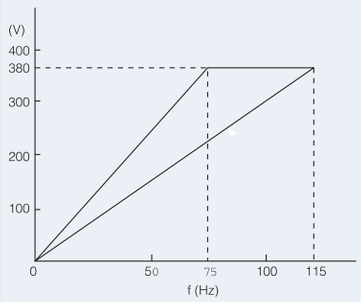
8.8.2. Principle of compression 189

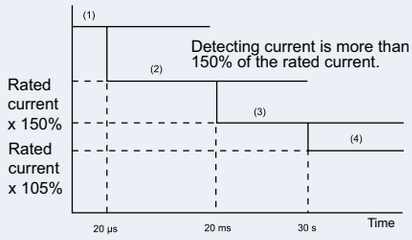
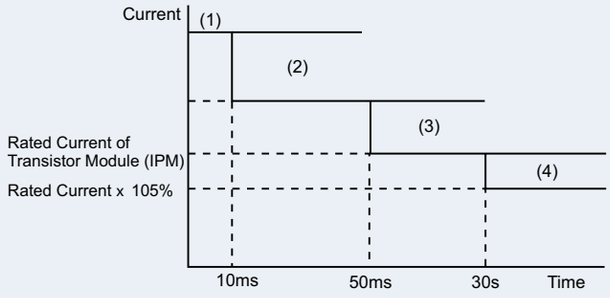
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 173 04/06/2013 18:13:58

8.1 Inverter

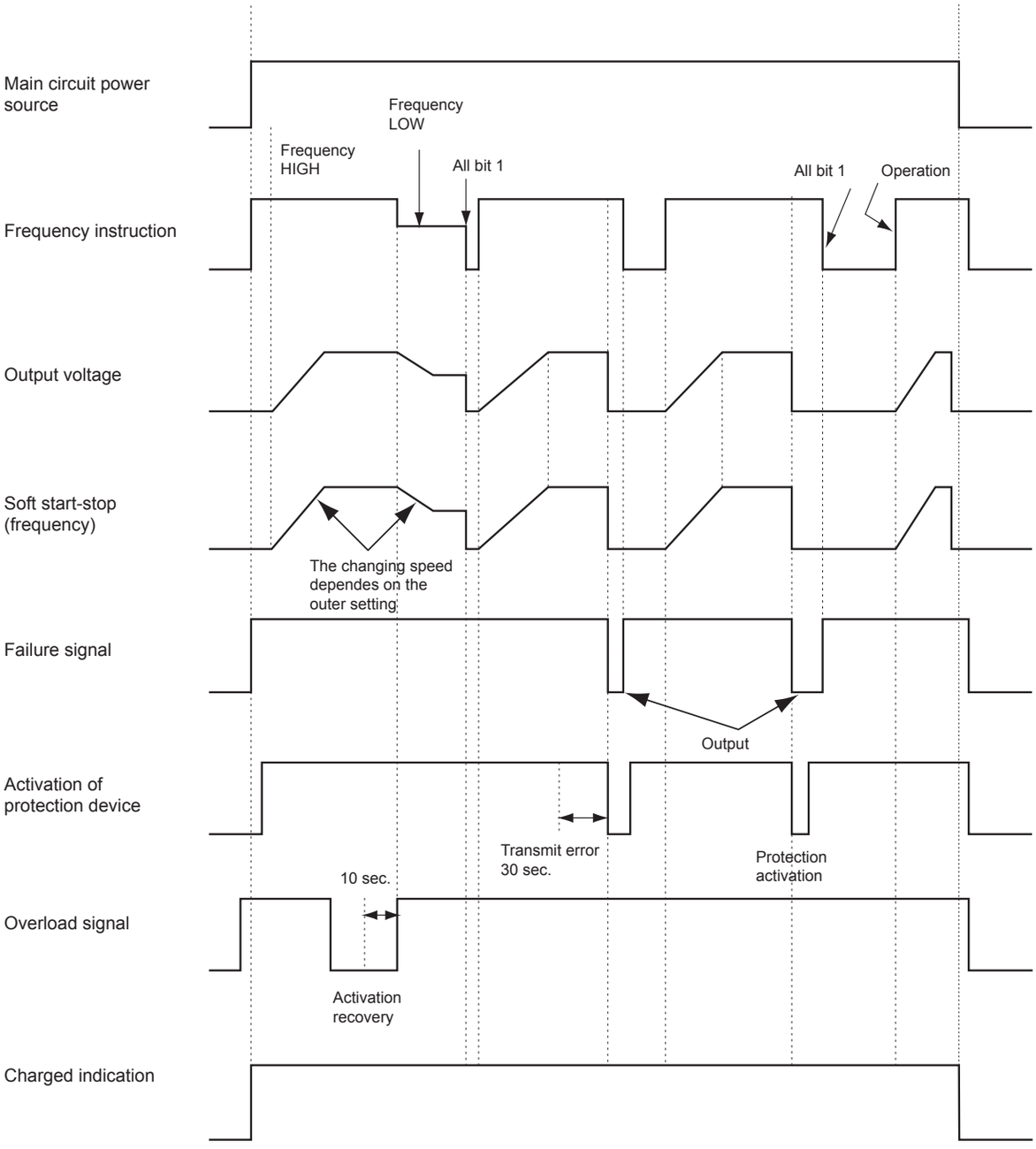
8.1.1 Specifications of inverter

Applicable model	RAS-4HRNS3E	RAS-3HVRNS3	RAS-4HVRNS3E
Applicable power source	3N~ 400V 50 Hz	1~ 230V 50 Hz	
Output current	11.0A	10.5A	21.5A
Control Method	Vector control		
Range output frequency	20-115Hz	31-115Hz	20-115Hz
Accuracy of frequency	0.01Hz at applicable frequency range		
Output / characteristics	Conditions: 1. Power source voltage AC400V 2. Non-loading (free output) 3. Ammeter type volt-meter (X1.1) 	Conditions: 1. Power source voltage AC230V 2. Non-loading (free output) 3. Ammeter type volt-meter (X1.1) 	
Soft start stop	0.125–3.00 Hz/s		

Applicable model	RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E	RAS-(5/6)HRNS2E	RAS-(8/10)HRNSE
Applicable power source	1~ 230V 50 Hz	3N~ 400V 50 Hz	
Output current	25A	6-25A	25A
Control Method	Vector control		
Range output frequency	20-115Hz	20-115HZ	20-115Hz
Accuracy of frequency	0.01Hz at applicable frequency range		
Controlled frequency	0.01Hz at applicable frequency range		
Output / characteristics	Conditions: Power source voltage AC2300V Non-loading (free output) Ammeter type volt-meter (X1.1) 	Conditions: Power source voltage AC400V Non-loading (free output) Ammeter type volt-meter (X1.1) 	Conditions: Power source voltage AC400V Non-loading (free output) Ammeter type volt-meter (X1.1) 
Soft start stop	0.125 0.5 1 2 Hz/s (4 steps)	0.125–3.00 Hz/s	0.125 0.5 Hz/s (4 steps)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">Protection function</th></tr>
<tr><th>Applicable model</th><th>RAS-3HVRNS3
RAS-4HVRNS3E
RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E</th><th>RAS-4HRNS3E
RAS-(5/6)HRNS2E
RAS-(8/10)HRNSE</th></tr>
<tr><td>Excessive high or low voltage for inverter</td><td>Excessive low voltage at a voltage is lower than 194 V DC
Excessive high voltage at a voltage is higher than 420 V DC</td><td>Excessive low voltage at a voltage is lower than 350 V DC
Excessive high voltage at a voltage is higher than 750 V DC</td></tr>
<tr><td>Protection function
Abnormality of current sensor (0A detection)</td><td colspan="2">Stoppage at a current of compressor smaller than 1.5A.
When the frequency is 15 to 18Hz after starting
Cause of abnormality:
• Failure of current sensor.
• Failure of IPM/DIP-IPM/ ISPM.
• Failure of compressor/fan motor.
• Disconnected wiring.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3"></td><td colspan="2">RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E
 
</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">RAS-(8-10)HRNSE / RAS-(5/6)HRNS2E
 
</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1. Short-circuit trip of arm *)
2. Instantaneous overcurrent trip *)
3. Instantaneous overcurrent trip
4. Electronic thermal trip
Condition is maintained longer than 30 seconds or accumulated longer than 3 minutes during 10 minutes sampling time.
*) Internal protection IPM</td></tr>
<tr><td>Protection of IPM</td><td colspan="2">IPM has four protection function for self-protection.
1. Some of the output terminals between “U” and “V” “V” and “W” “W” and “U” has a short-circuit.
2. Running current reaches the maximum rated current.
3. Abnormal temperature is measured by internal thermistor.
4. Control voltage decreases abnormally.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overload control</td><td colspan="2">Overload control as a current greater than (rated current X105%).
Overload control release at a current smaller than (rated current X 88%).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fin temperature increase</td><td colspan="2">The unit is stopped when the fin temperature is higher than 80 ºC (1 Phase) 100 °C (3 Phase).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Earth detection</td><td colspan="2">The unit is stopped when the compressor is earthing.</td></tr>
</table>

◆ Inverter time chart



◆ Protective function

1 Excessive high or low voltage for inverter

a. Level of detection

- When the voltage of direct current is greater than (A) V abnormalities are detected.
- When the voltage of direct current is smaller than (B) V abnormalities are detected.

Power supply	1~ 230V 50Hz	3N~ 400V 50Hz
(A)	440	750
(B)	194	350

b. Function
When abnormalities are detected the inverter compressor is stopped and transmit the signal code of stoppage cause to PCB1.

c. Cancellation of protection function
Transmission for signal code of stoppage cause is cancelled when a stopping order is given or main power source is cut off.

2 Abnormality of current sensor

a. Level of detection
When current of the inverter compressor decreases lower than 0.5A during the inverter compressor frequency between 15Hz and 18Hz an abnormality is detected.Function
When abnormalities are detected the inverter compressor is stopped and transmit the signal code of stoppage cause to PCB1.

b. Cancellation of Protection Function
Transmission for signal code of stoppage cause is cancelled when a stopping order is issued or main power source is cut off.

3 Overcurrent protection for inverter

a. Level of detection
When the current detected by current sensor reaches 150 % of the rated current overcurrent is detected. (Instantaneous overcurrent).
When the current detected by current sensor exceeds 105 % of the rated current continuously for 30 seconds or for 3.5 minutes in total during a 10 minutes period overcurrent is detected. (Electric thermal relay) .

b. Function
When abnormalities are detected the inverter compressor is stopped and transmit the signal code of stoppage cause to PCB1.

c. Cancellation of protection function
Transmission for signal code of stoppage cause is cancelled by stopping order is issued or main power source is cut off.

4 Protection of IPM/DIP-IPM/ISPM

a. Level of detection
When some of the output terminals between “U” and “V” “V” and “W” “W” and “U” of IPM/DIP IPM/ISPM are short-circuited an abnormality is detected.
When the running current of IPM/DIP-IPM/ISPM reaches (maximum rated current x 105%) an abnormality is detected.
When an internal temperature is measured by internal thermistor of IPM an abnormality is detected.
When the control voltage of IPM/DIP-IPM/ISPM decreases an abnormality is detected.

b. Function
When abnormalities are detected the inverter compressor is stopped and the signal code of stoppage cause is transmitted to PCB1.

c. Cancellation of protection function
Transmission for signal code of stoppage cause is cancelled when a stopping order is issued or main power source is cut off.

5 Fin temperature increase

a. Level of detection
When the temperature of internal thermistor exceeds more than 80ºC (for 3HP), 92ºC (for 4HP) 100 ºC (for 5 to 10HP) an abnormality is detected.

b. Function
When abnormalities are detected the inverter compressor is stopped and the signal code of stoppage cause is transmitted to PCB1.

c. Cancellation of protection function
Transmission for signal code of stoppage cause is cancelled when a stopping order is issued or main power source is cut off.

6 Earth detection

a. Level of detection
When the starting current of the compressor reaches 80 % of the overcurrent protection value an abnormality is detected.

b. Function
When abnormalities are detected the inverter compressor is stopped and the signal code of stoppage cause is transmitted to PCB1.

c. Cancellation of protection function
Transmission for signal code of stoppage cause is cancelled when a stopping order is issued or main power source is cut off.

◆ Overload control

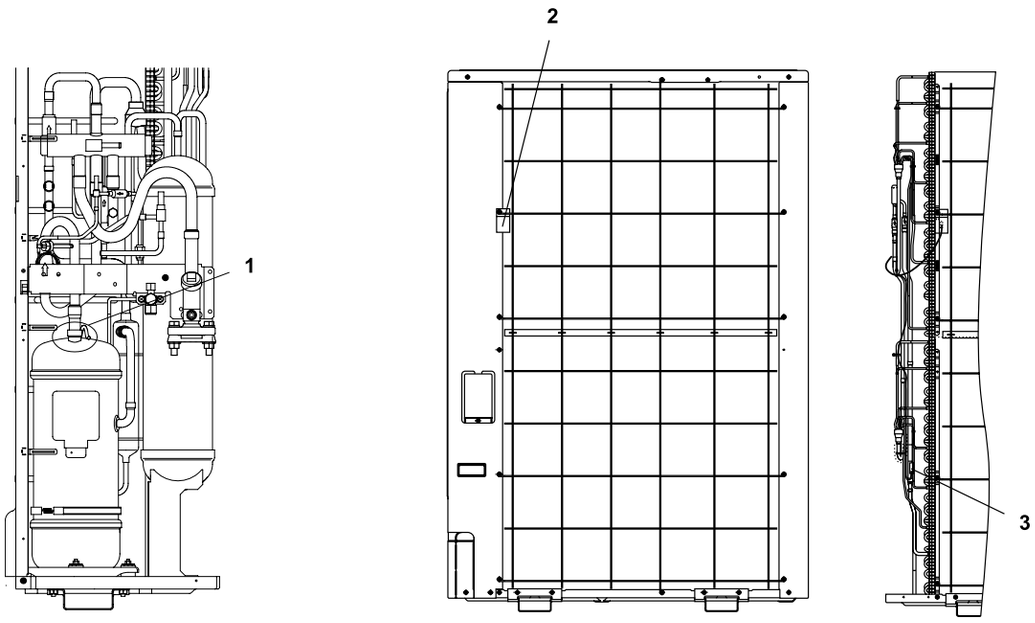
1 Level of detection
When the output current exceeds 105 % of the maximum output current an abnormality is detected.

2 Function
An overload signal is issued when output current exceeds 105 % of the maximum output current and the frequency decreases.
For 10 seconds after the output current decreases lower than 88 % of the rated current the operation is performed with the compressor frequency limited to the upper level frequency when the output current decreases lower than 88 of the rated one.
However if the frequency order is smaller than the maximum value the operation is performed according to the order.

3 Cancellation of protection function
After the operation described in the above item b. is performed for 10 seconds this control is cancelled.

8.2 Thermistor

Thermistors for the outdoor unit (example with RAS-(8/10)HRNSE)



Only for illustration purpose. The actual product may differ.

1. Thermistor for discharge gas temperature (THM9).
2. Thermistor for outdoor ambient temperature (THM7).
3. Thermistor for evaporating temperature (THM8).

NOTE

There is a fourth thermistor for condensing temperature (THM10) for RAS-4H(V)RNS3E units. It is located over thermistor for evaporating temperature (THM8).

Thermistor for discharge gas temperature (THM9)

(For prevention of discharge gas overheating)

1 A thermistor for the upper part temperature of the compressor is installed to prevent discharge gas from overheating.
If discharge gas temperature increases excessively lubricating oil deterioration occurs and lubricating properties deteriorate resulting in short compressor life.

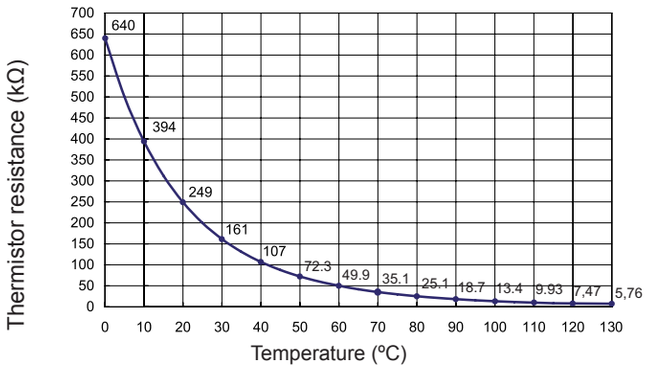
2 If discharge gas temperature increases excessively compressor temperature increases. At the worst compressor motor winding will be burnt out.

3 When the upper part temperature of compressor increases during heating operation the unit is controlled according to the following method.

- An electronic expansion valve of outdoor units is (are) opened to return the liquid refrigerant to the compressor through the accumulator decreasing compressor temperature.
- If the compressor upper part temperature increases exceeding 132 ºC even if an electronic expansion valve opens the compressor is stopped in order to protect the compressor. In cooling operation the above function is also available.

4 If compressor upper part temperature increases excessively the protection control is activated and the compressor is stopped according to the following method.

Thermistor resistance characteristics

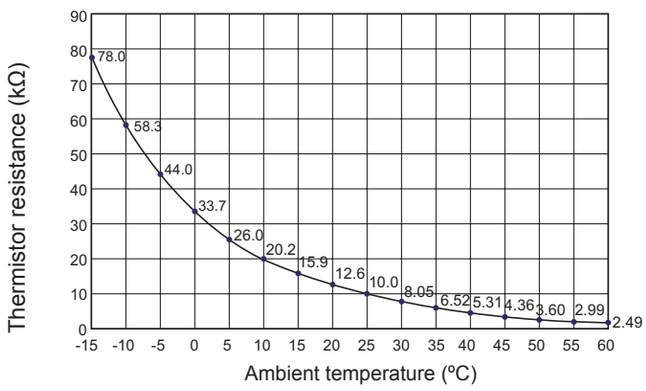


Operation	Upper part temperature of compressor	Defecting period
Cooling	Over 132 ºC	10 minutes (continuously)
	Over 140 ºC	5 seconds (continuously)
Heating	Over 132 ºC	10 minutes (continuously)
	Over 140 ºC	5 seconds (continuously)
Defrosting	Over 132 ºC	5 seconds (continuously)

Thermistor for outdoor ambient temperature (THM7)

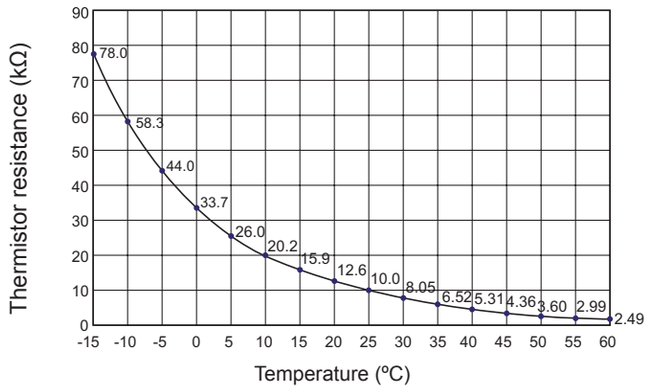
The thermistor resistance characteristics are shown in the figure.

Thermistor resistance characteristics



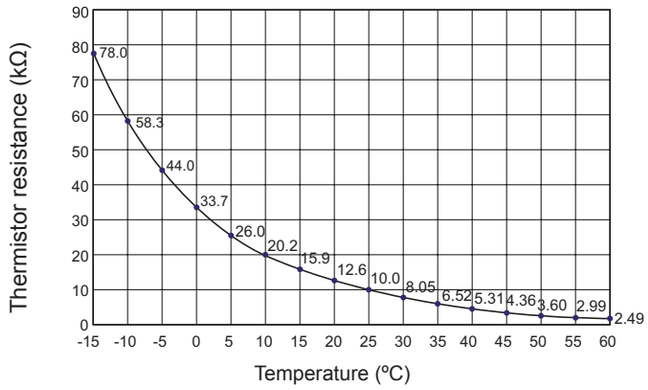
Thermistor for evaporating temperature of outdoor unit in heating operation (for defrosting) (THM8)

Thermistor resistance characteristics



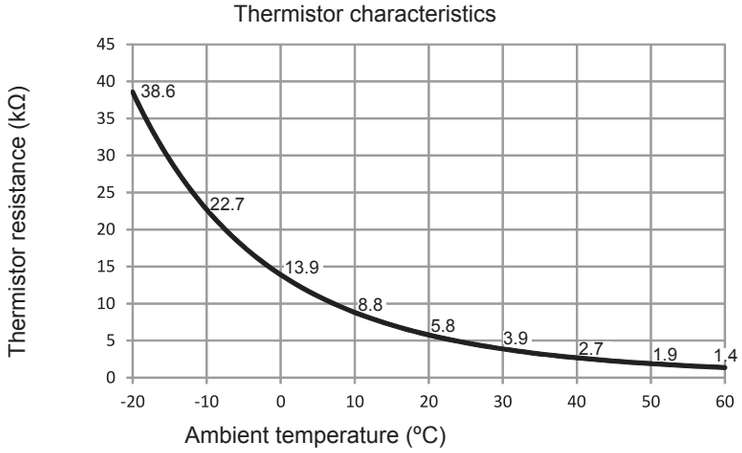
Thermistor for condensing temperature of RAS-4H(V)RNS3E outdoor unit (THM10)

Thermistor resistance characteristics



Thermistor for inverter fin temperature (THMI)

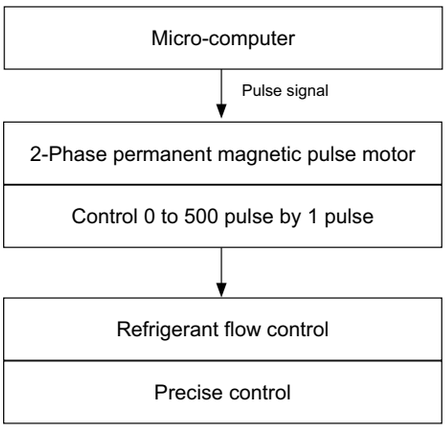
Thermistor characteristics

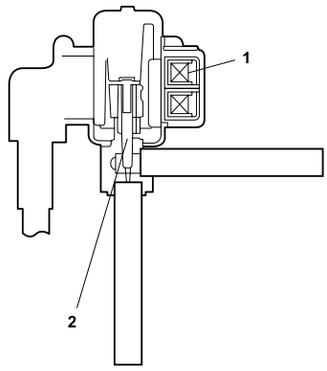


8

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 181 04/06/2013 18:13:59

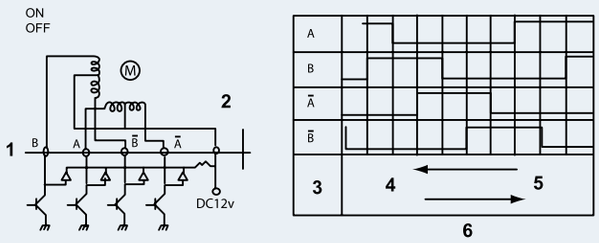
8.3 Electronic expansion valve





Only for illustration purpose. The actual product may differ.

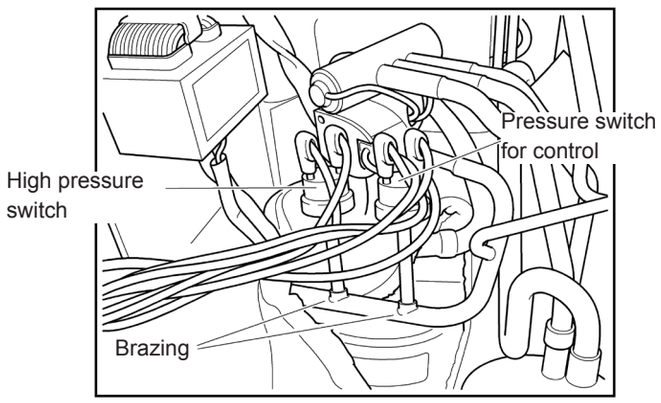
1. Pulse motor.
2. Needle.

Items	Specifications
Type	For 3, 4, 8 and 10 HP: UKV series. For 5, 6, HP: CAM series
Refrigerant	R410A
Working temperature range	For 3, 4 HP: -30 ºC - 70 ºC (Duty ratio of the coil: less than 50%) For 5 and 6 HP: -30 °C - 60 °C (Duty ratio of the coil: less than 50%) For 8 and 10 HP: -30ºC - 65ºC (Duty ratio of the coil: less than 50%)
Mounting direction	Drive shaft in vertical direction within an angle of 45 °C as maximum
Flow direction	Reversible
Drive method	4-Phase canned motor method
Rated voltage	DC12V±1.8 V For 8 and 10 HP: DC12V±1.6 V
Drive condition	For 3 and 4 HP: 63 ± 5PPS, 1-2 phase excitation For 5 and 6 HP: 30 - 90PPS, 1-2 phase excitation For 8 and 10 HP: 80 ± 5PPS, 1-2 phase excitation
Coil resistance (each phase)	46Ω ± 3 (at 20 °C)
Wiring diagram drive circuit and activation mode	 1. Drive circuit. 2. Wiring diagram. 3. Valve. 4. Close. 5. Open. 6. Activation.

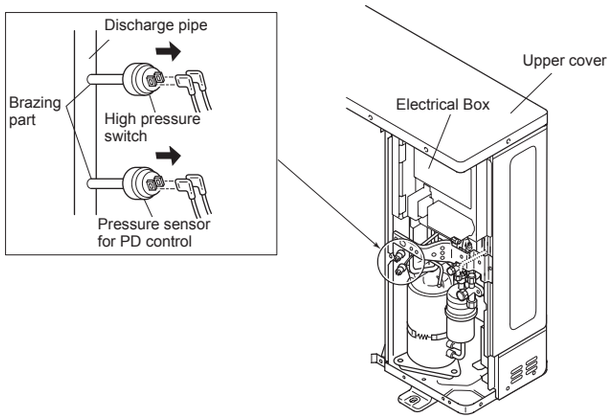
8.4 High pressure protection device

8.4.1 Location of the high pressure protection devices

RAS-3HVRNS3

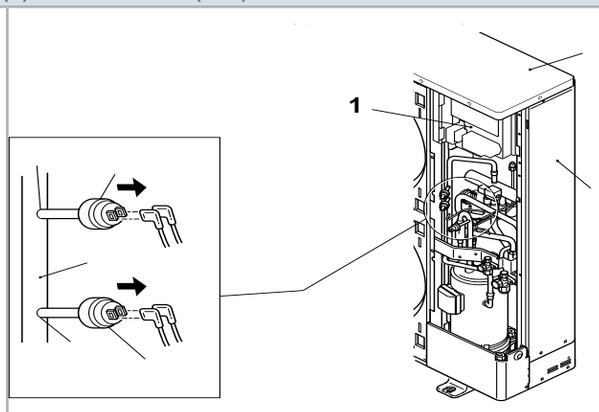


RAS-4H(V)RNS3E



RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

1. Electrical box.
2. Upper cover.
3. Rear cover.
4. Brazing.
5. Pressure switch for control (PSC).
6. Discharge pipe.
7. High pressure switch (PSH).



8.4.2 High pressure switch (PSH)

If the discharge pressure is excessively high the compressor and the component parts of the refrigeration cycle can be damaged. Therefore, in case that the discharge pressure is higher than 4.15 MPa (R410A) the protection control is activated and the compressor is stopped.

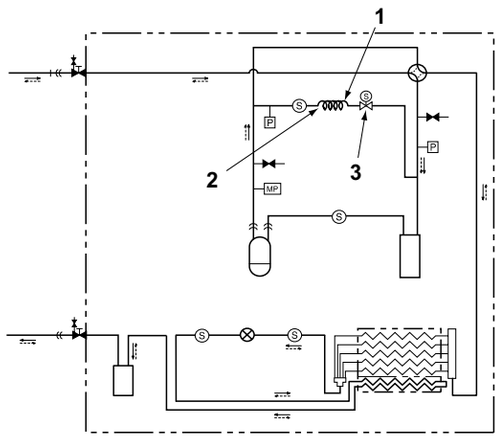
8.4.3 Pressure switch for control (PSC)

In case that the discharge pressure is higher than 3.6 MPa (R410A) the protection control might be performed.

1 For controlling the high pressure not to increase excessively during heating operation the gas by-pass circuit and the air volume of the outdoor fan is controlled automatically.

2 The gas by-pass circuit which is composed of the solenoid valve and the capillary tube for flow adjustment control the high pressure not to increase excessively by leading the high pressure gas to the low pressure side.

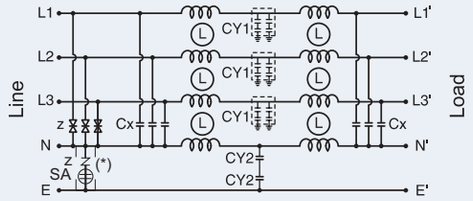
1. Gas by-pass circuit.
2. Capillary tube.
3. Solenoid valve.

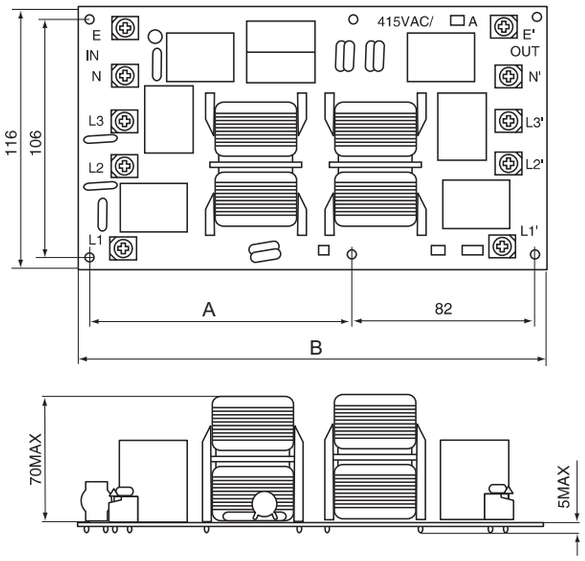


8.5 Noise filter (NF)

8.5.1 Noise filter for 3N~ 400V 50Hz

The noise filter decreases the leakage of noise made by the inverter to the power supply side. Terminals indicated with “LOAD” are connected to the inverter side and terminals indicated with “LINE” to the power supply side.

Items	Specifications For 4HP	Specifications For 5-10HP
Model	4LFB-22930-2FB	4LFB-16830-2FA
Rated current	AC415V 27 A	AC415V 27 A
Permissible temperature range	-25 ºC to 85 ºC	-25 ºC to 85 ºC
Circuit diagram	 (*) For 4HP only	

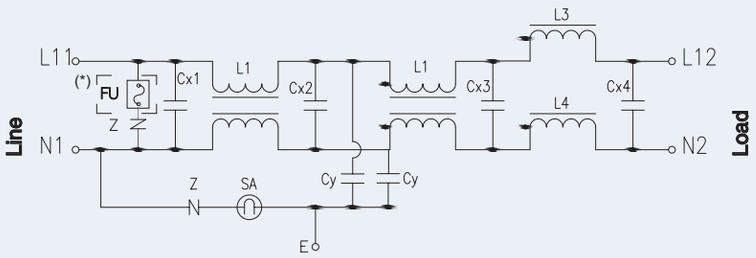


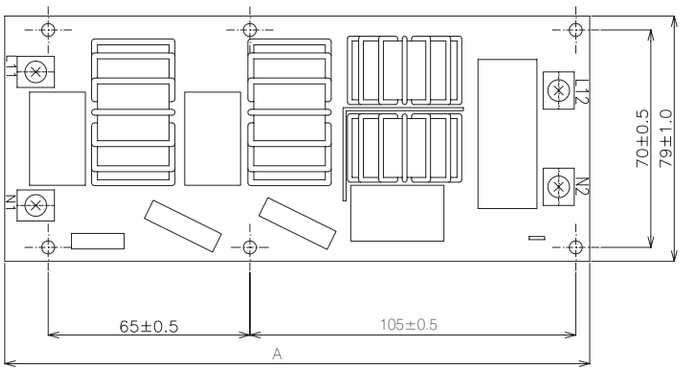
	For 4 HP	For 5-10 HP
A	123	118
B	217	210

Only for illustration purpose. The actual product may differ.

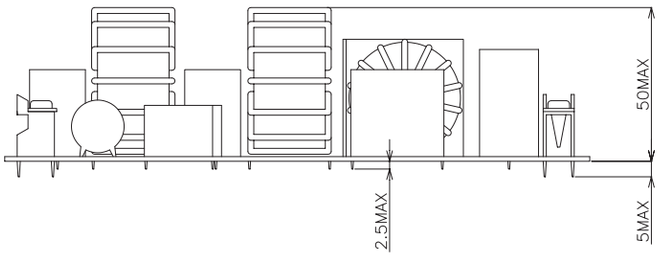
8.5.2 Noise filter for 1~ 230V 50Hz

The noise filter decreases the leakage of noise made by the inverter to the power supply side. Terminals indicated with “LOAD” are connected to the inverter side and terminals indicated with “LINE” to the power supply side.

Items	Specifications
Model	For 4 HP: LFB-14930-3MA For 5-10: HP: LFB-14930-3M
Rated current	AC230V 30 A
Working temperature range	-25 ºC to 60 ºC
Circuit diagram	 (*) For 4HP only



	For 4 HP	For 5-10 HP
A	194.5±1.0	188.5±1.0

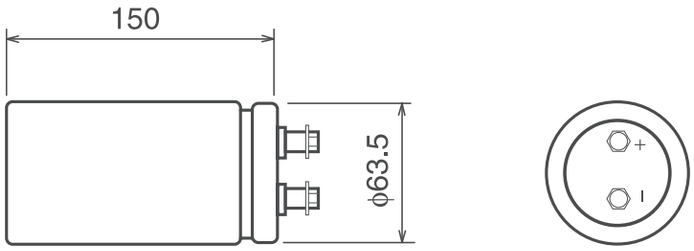


Only for illustration purpose. The actual product may differ.

8.6 Capacitor (CB1 CB2) - 8/10 HP only

This part is used for changing the alternative current to the direct current for the inverter. Connect two capacitor in line and used.

Items	Specifications
Models	LNX2G472MSEAHE
Capacity of static electricity	4700 µF
Rated voltage	400 VDC
Permissible temperature range	-25 ºC to 85 ºC

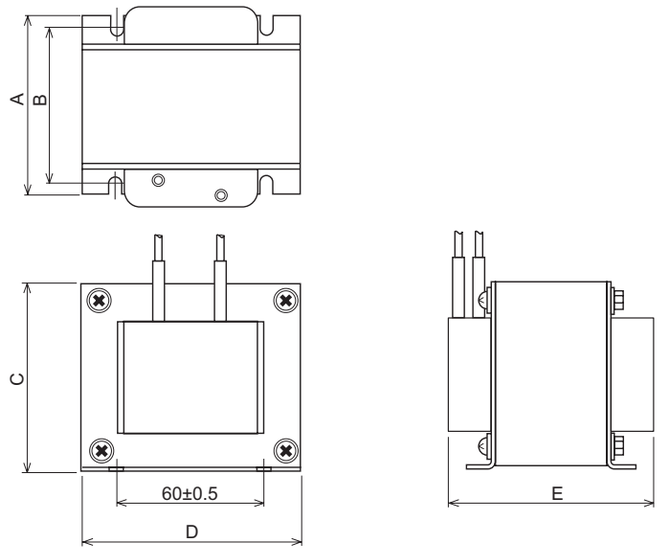


8.7 Reactor (DCL)

8.7.1 Reactor (DCL) for 3N~ 400V 50Hz

This part is used for changing the alternative current to the direct current for the inverter.

Items	Specifications For 4-6 HP	Specifications For 8/10 HP
Character	0.5mH ±10% (at 1 kHz)	1.0 mH +15% -10% (at 1 kHz)
Rated current	30 A	30 A
Direct resistance	15 mΩ ±20% (at 20 °C)	27.4 mΩ ±20% (at 20 °C)
Permissible temperature range	-20 ºC to 60 ºC	-20 ºC to 60 ºC



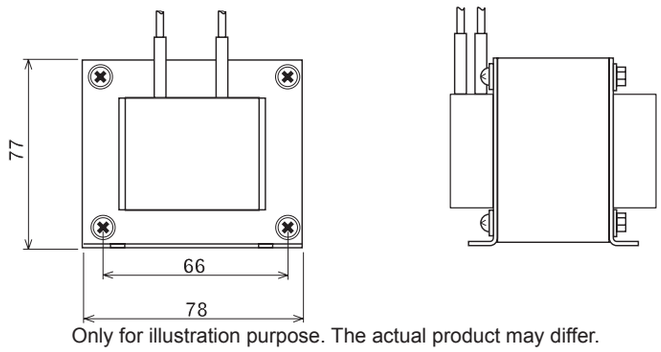
	For 4-6 HP	For 8/10 HP
A	56.0±2	66.0±1.0
B	37.5±2	47.5±0.5
C	74.0±2	73.1±1.0
D	86.0±2	85.8±1.0
E	70MAX	65MAX

Only for illustration purpose. The actual product may differ.

8.7.2 Reactor (DCL) for 1~ 230V 50Hz

This part is used for changing the alternative current to the direct current for the inverter.

Items	Specifications
Character	0.59 mH±15% (at 1 kHz)
Rated current	30 A
DC Resistance	26 mΩ (at 20 °C)
Permissible temperature range	-20ºC to 60ºC



Only for illustration purpose. The actual product may differ.

8.8 Scroll compressor

8.8.1 Reliable mechanism for low vibrating and low sound

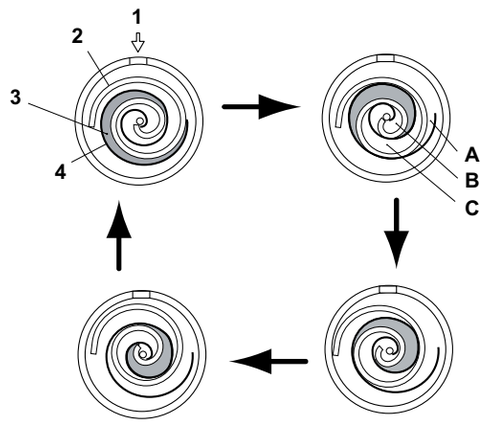
1 The rotating direction is definite.
2 The pressure inside of the chamber is high pressure and the surface temperature of the chamber is 60 °C to 110 °C.

8.8.2 Principle of compression

1. The gas is inhaled from the inlet port at the outer frame of the fixed scroll.
2. The gas inside of the compression space is compressed toward the center of the scroll.
3. The compression space is minimum at the center of the scroll, and the gas compressed at the maximum is discharged from the outlet port of at the center of the scroll.
4. The above procedures (suction compression discharge) is repeated continuously.

1. Gas.
2. Rotating scroll.
3. Compression space.
4. Fixed scroll

A. Suction procedure.
B. Discharge process.
C. Compression process.



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 190 04/06/2013 18:14:02

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

9. Spare Parts

Index

9.1. RAS-3HVRNS3 192

9.1.1. Cycle, structural and electrical parts 192

9.2. RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 194

9.2.1. Cycle and structural parts 194

9.2.2. Electrical parts of RAS-4HVRNS3E 196

9.2.3. Electrical parts of RAS-4HRNS3E 197

9.3. RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E 198

9.3.1. Cycle and structural parts 198

9.3.2. Electrical parts RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E 200

9.3.3. Electrical parts RAS-(5/6)HRNS2E 201

9.4. RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 202

9.4.1. Cycle and structural 202

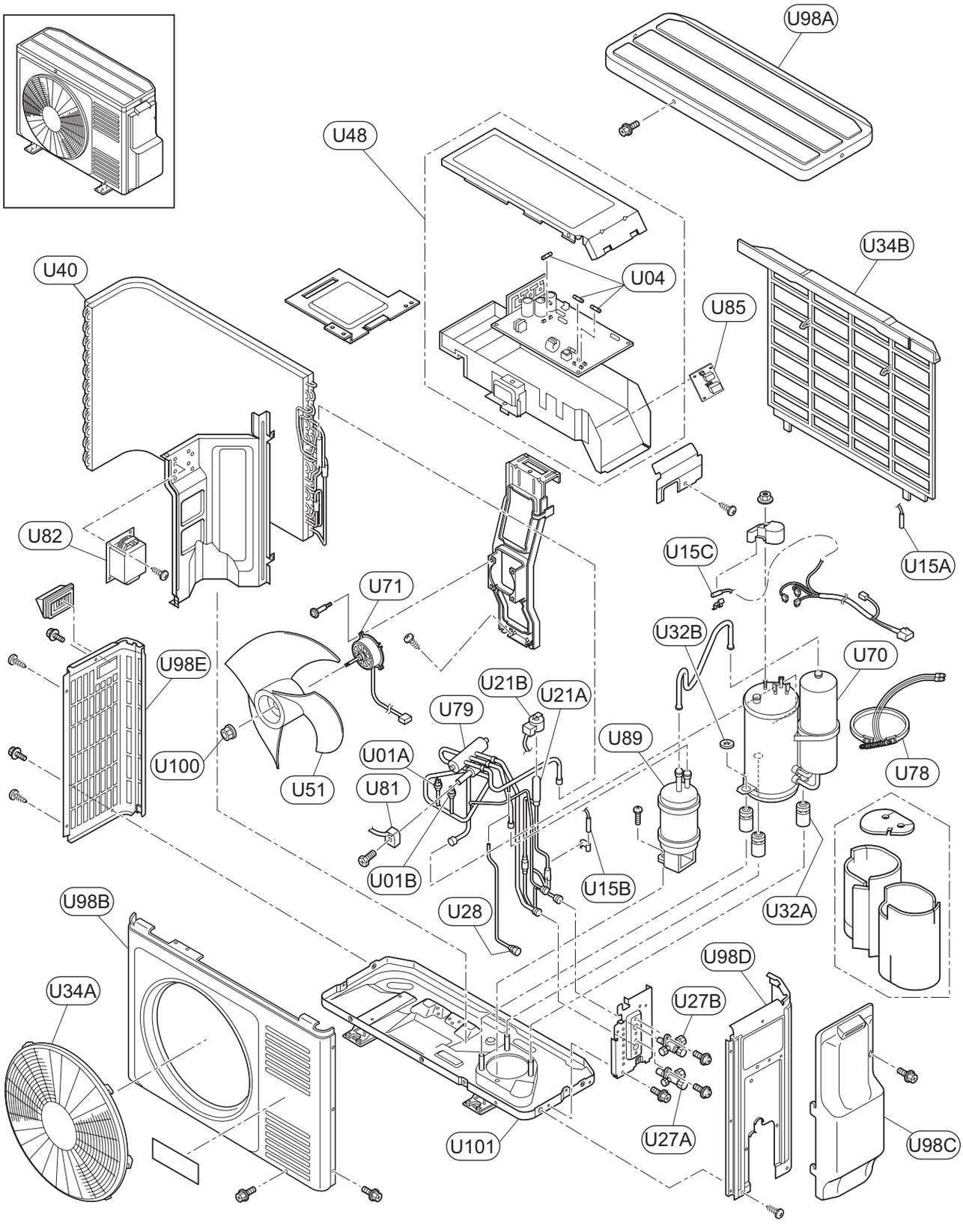
9.4.2. Electrical parts 204

9

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 191 04/06/2013 18:14:02

9.1 RAS-3HVRNS3

9.1.1 Cycle, structural and electrical parts

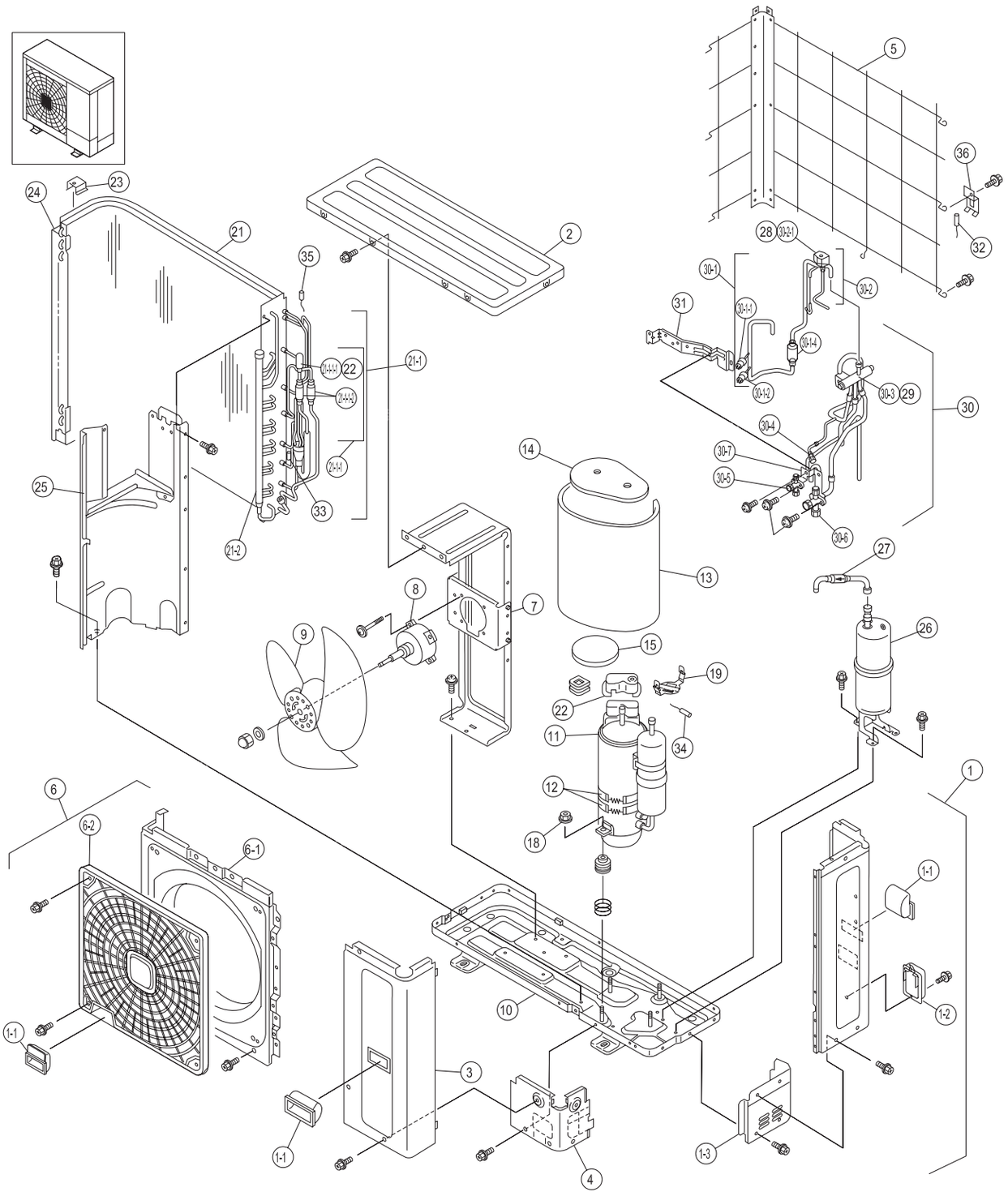


No.	Part name	Remarks
U01A	Pressure SW	High pressure
U01B	Pressure SW	For control
U04	Fuse	3A
U15A	Thermistor	Ta
U15B	Thermistor	Te
U15C	Thermistor	Td
U21A	Exp. valve	
U21B	Coil for expansion valve	
U27A	Stop valve	Gas line
U27B	Stop valve	Liquid line
U28	Check joint	
U32A	Vibration absorber	
U32B	Vibration absorber	
U34A	Air grille	Outlet
U34B	Air grille	Inlet
U40	Condenser assembly	
U48	Electrical box assembly	
U51	Propeller fan	
U70	Compressor	
U71	Motor	
U78	Oil heater	
U79	Four-way valve assembly	
U81	Coil for 4-way valve	
U82	Reactor	
U85	Printed circuit board	
U89	Accumulator	
U98A	Cabinet panel	
U98B	Cabinet panel	
U98C	Cabinet panel	
U98D	Cabinet panel	
U98E	Cabinet panel	
U98E	Cabinet panel	
U100	Special nut	For propeller fan
U101	Bottom base assembly	

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 193 04/06/2013 18:14:02

9.2 RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

9.2.1 Cycle and structural parts

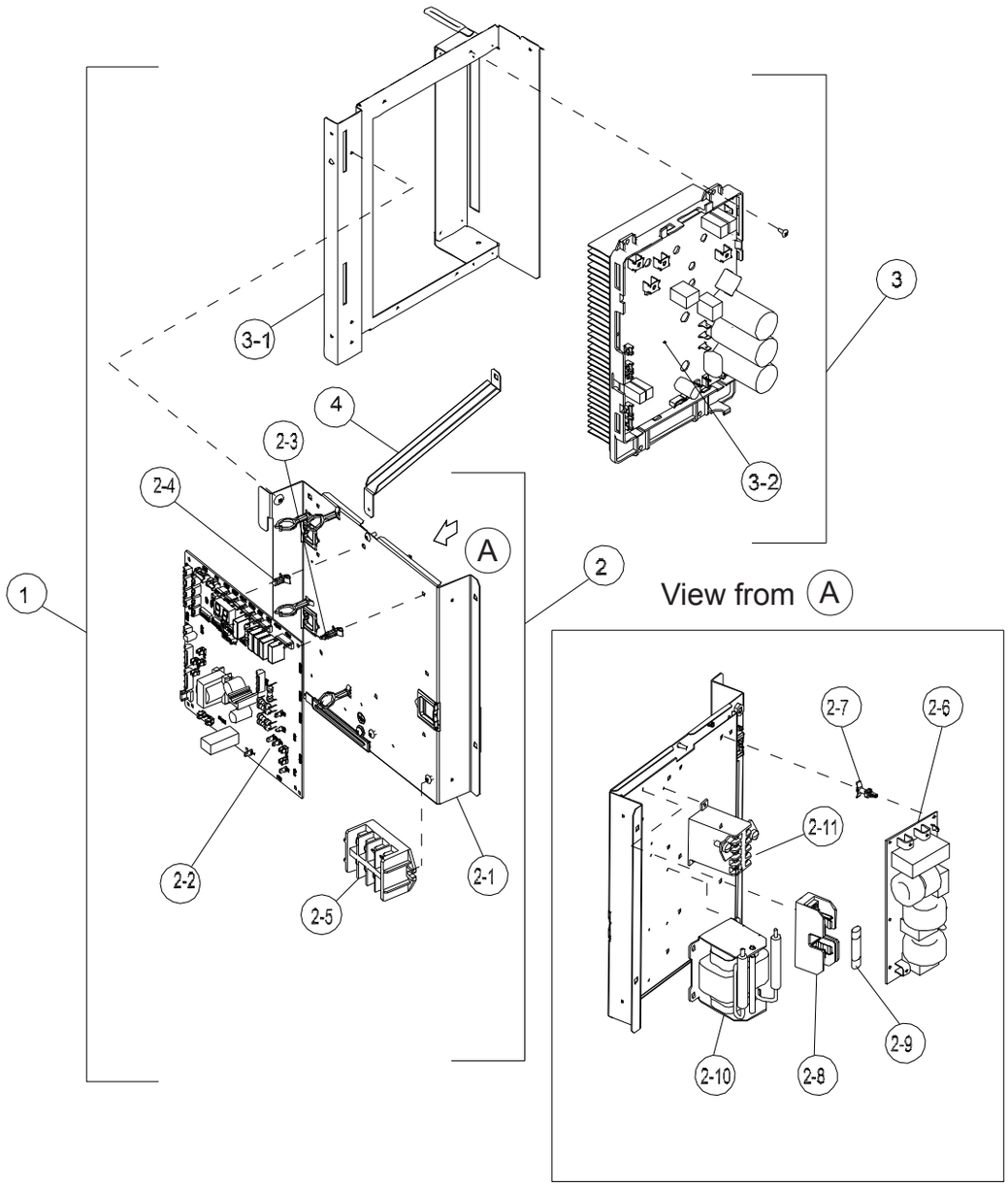


EPN-201211C

No.	Part name	Remarks
1	Rear Cover Assy	Assembly
1-1	Handle	
1-2	H Cover	
1-3	Pipe Cover B	
2	Upper Cover Assy	Assembly
3	Service Cover S Assy	Assembly
4	S Cover B	Lower Service Cover
5	Protector Net S Assy	
6	Shroud S Assy	Assembly
6-1	Shroud S	Shroud
6-2	Front Protector Net	Air Outlet
7	Clamp S Assy	
8	Fan Motor	MOF, DC190W, 8P
9	Propeller Fan	Ø544
10	B-Base Assy	Assembly
11	Compressor	Comp 2YC63FXD (RAS-4HVRNS3E)
		Comp 2YC63RXD (RAS-4HRNS3E)
12	Crankcase Heater	240V-30W
13	Acoustical Cover	
14	Acoustical Cover	Upper Cover
15	Acoustical Cover	Lower Cover
18	Special Nut	
19	THM Support D	
21	Condenser	Assembly (Heat exchanger + 21-1+21-2)
21-1	Header L Unit	Assembly
21-1-1	EVO Assy	Assembly
21-1-1-1	Expansion Valve	EVO

No.	Part name	Remarks
21-1-1-2	Strainer	
21-2	Header G Unit	Assembly
22	EXPV Coil	Coil for Expansion Valve
23	Stay	
24	End P Unit	
25	Partition S Assy	
26	Accumulator Assy	
27	Strainer	
28	Coil 20	Coil for Solenoid Valve
29	Coil	Coil for 4 Way Valve
30	4-Way Valve Assy	Assembly
30-1	D Pipe Unit	
30-1-1	Pressure SW	PSH (High)
30-1-2	Pressure SW	PSC (Control)
30-1-4	Silencer	
30-2	SVA Assy	
30-2-1	Solenoid valve	SVA
30-3	4 Way Valve	RVR
30-4	Check JA	
30-5	Stop Valve	For liquid line 3/8
30-6	Stop Valve	For gas line 5/8
30-7	Valve Stay	
31	V-Stay	
32	Thermistor	for Outdoor Temp., THM7
33	Thermistor	for Pipe Temp., THM8
34	Thermistor	for Discharge Gas Temp., THM9
35	Thermistor	for Condenser Temp., THM10
36	TH-Plate	

9.2.2 Electrical parts of RAS-4HVRNS3E

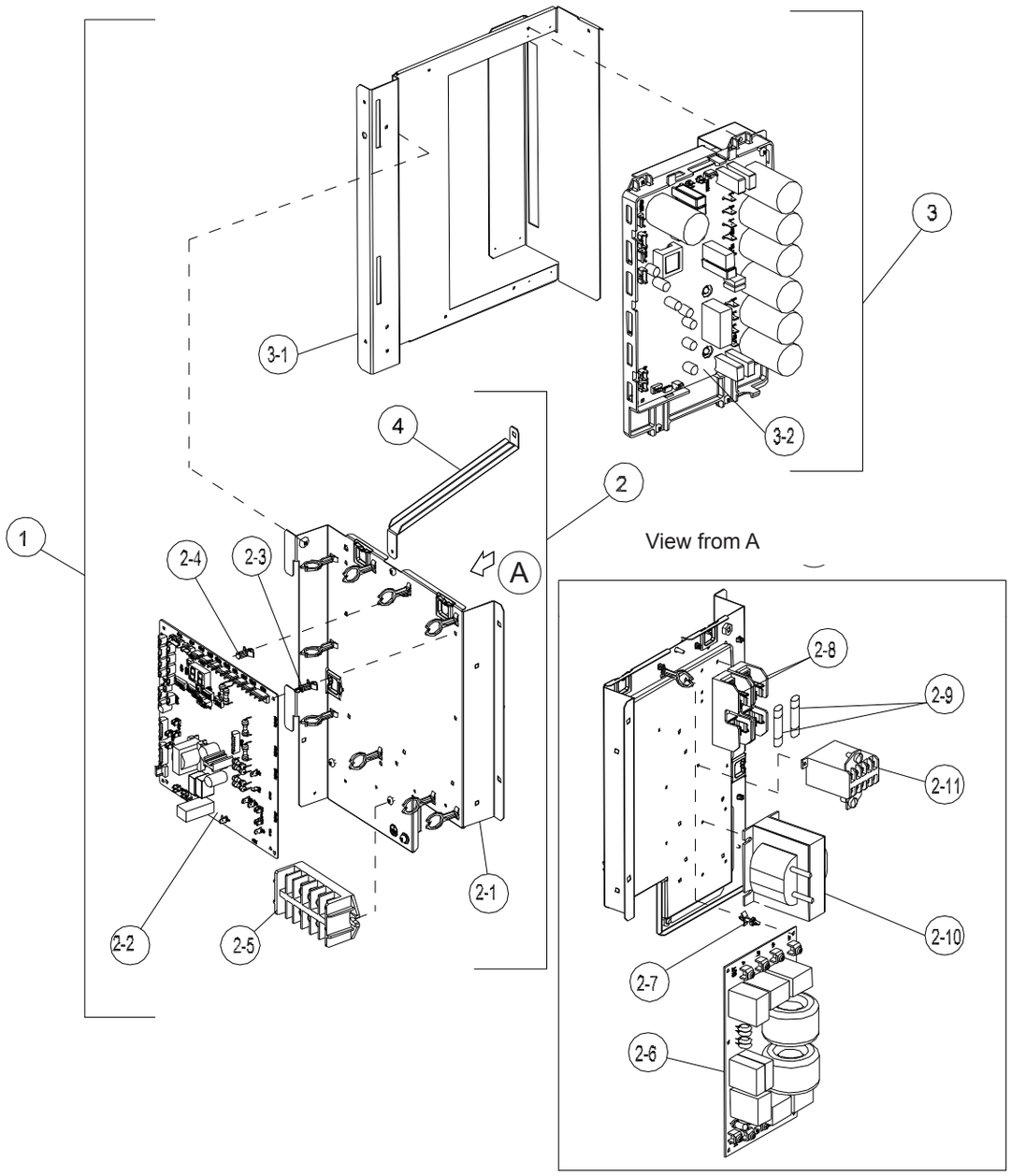


EPN-201211A

No.	Part name	Remarks
1	Electrical box	Assembly (2+3+Harness)
2	P Plate Unit	Assembly (2-1~2-11)
2-1	P Plate Assy	Assembly
2-2	Printed Circuit Board	PCB1, PO101F Assy
2-3	Spacer	for PCB1
2-4	Push Spacer	for PCB1
2-5	Terminal Board	TB
2-6	Noise Filter	NF
2-7	Spacer	for Noise Filter

No.	Part name	Remarks
2-8	Fuse Holder	
2-9	Fuse	50A
2-10	Reactor Unit	
2-11	Magnetic Switch (MG SW)	CMC1
3	Power Unit Assy	Assembly (3-1~3-2)
3-1	Power Stay Assy	Assembly
3-2	Inv. Fin Assy	
4	Upper Support	

9.2.3 Electrical parts of RAS-4HRNS3E



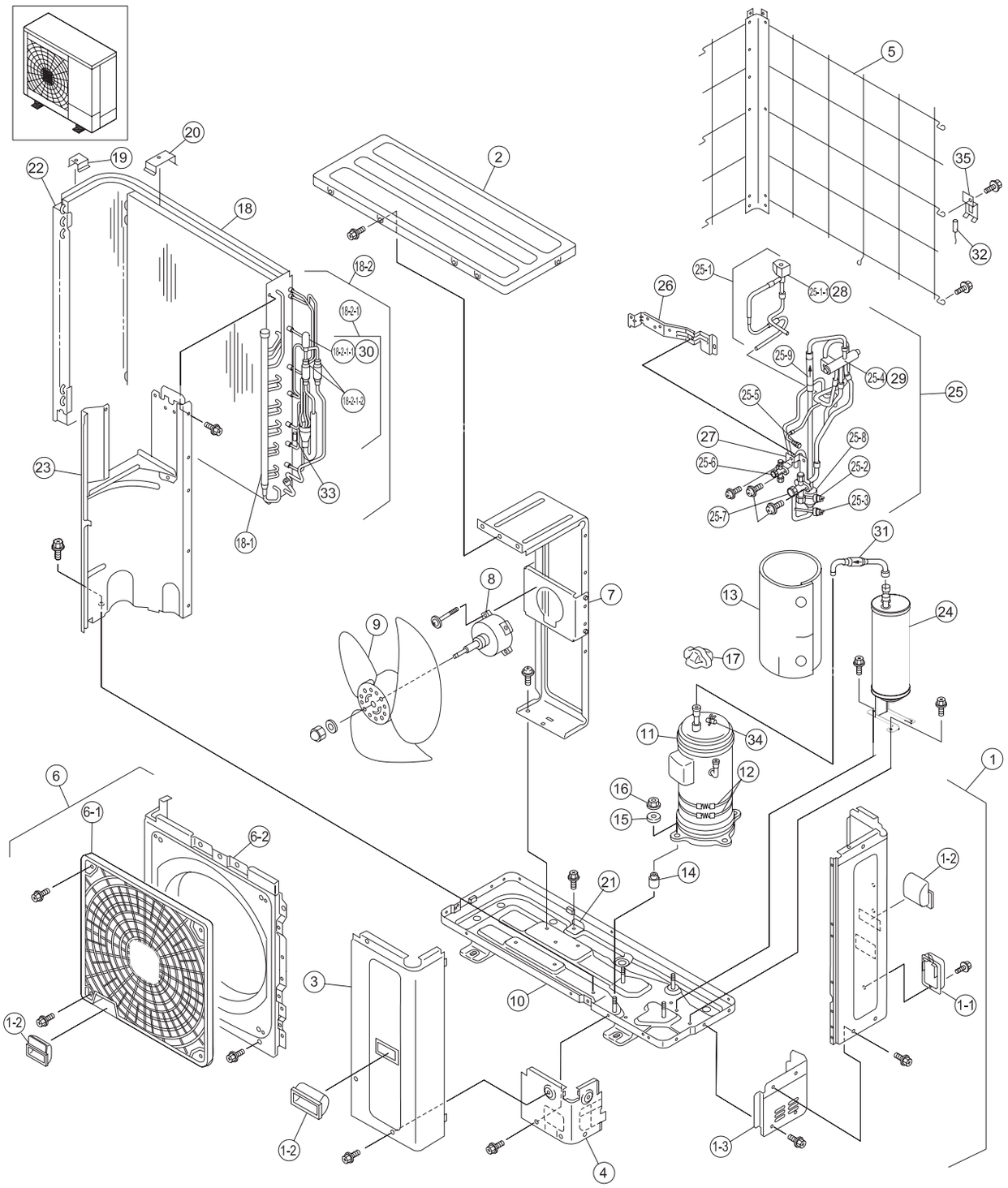
EPN-201211A

No.	Part name	Remarks
1	Electrical box	Assembly (2+3+Harness)
2	P Plate Unit	Assembly (2-1~2-11)
2-1	P Plate Assy	Assembly
2-2	Printed Circuit Board	PCB1, PO101G Assy
2-3	Spacer	for PCB1
2-4	Push Spacer	for PCB1
2-5	Terminal Board	TB
2-6	Noise Filter	NF
2-7	Spacer	for Noise Filter

No.	Part name	Remarks
2-8	Fuse Holder	
2-9	Fuse	20A
2-10	Reactor Unit	
2-11	Magnetic Switch (MG SW)	CMC1
3	Power Unit Assy	Assembly (3-1~3-2)
3-1	Power Stay Assy	Assembly
3-2	Inv. Fin Assy	
4	Upper Support	

9.3 RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E

9.3.1 Cycle and structural parts



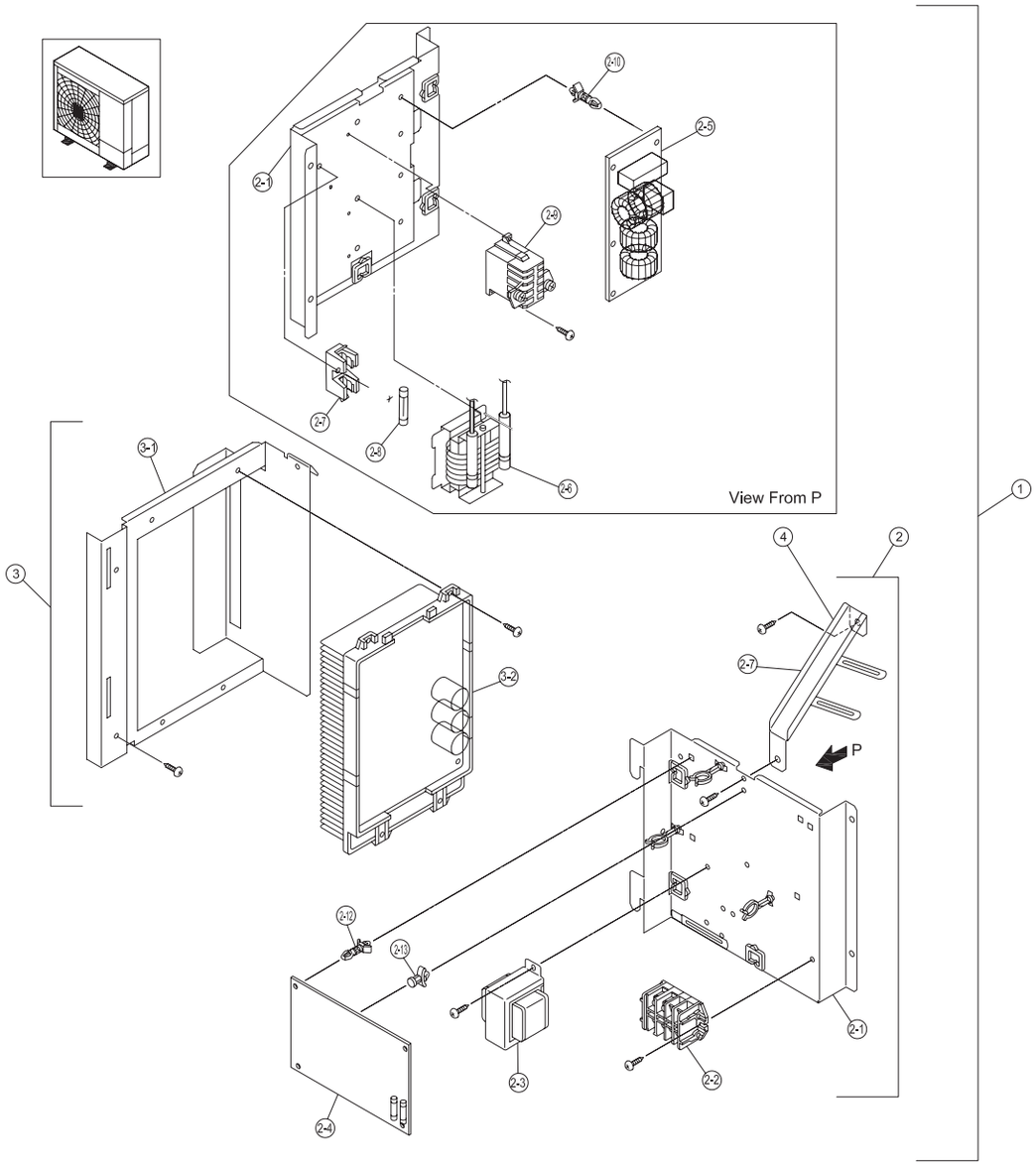
EPN-201105C

No.	Part name	Remarks
1	Rear Cover S Assy	Assembly
1-1	H-Cover	
1-2	Handle	
1-3	Piping Cover	Rear Piping Cover
2	Upper Cover Assy	Assembly
3	Service Cover Assy	Assembly
4	S Cover B	Lower Service Cover
5	Protection Net	
6	Shroud S Assy	
6-1	Shroud S	
6-2	Air Grille	Air Outlet
7	Clamp Assy	
8	Fan Motor	DC 138W 8P
9	Propeller Fan	Ø544
10	B- Base Assy	
11	Compressor	RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E: E400HHD-36A2 RAS-(5/6)HRNS2E: E400HHD-36D2
12	Oil Heater	32W
13	Accoustical Cover	
14	Vibration Absorber	
15	Vibration Absorber	
16	Nut	
17	Rubber Cap	
18	Condenser	Assembly (Heat exchanger+18-1+18-2)
18-1	Header L Assy	Assembly
18-2	Header G Assy	Assembly
18-2-1	EVO Assy	Assembly

No.	Part name	Remarks
18-2-1-1	Expansion Valve	EVO
18-2-1-2	Strainer	
19	Attaching Plate	Not included in 18
20	Stay	Not included in 18
21	Condenser Support	
22	End Plate Assy	
23	Partition S Plate	
24	Accumulator	Assembly
25	4-Way Valve Assy	Assembly
25-1	SVA Assy	Assembly
25-1-1	Solenoid Valve	SVA
25-2	Pressure Switch	PSH (High)
25-3	Pressure Switch	PSC (Control)
25-4	Reversing Valve	RVR
25-5	Check JA	
25-6	Stop Valve	For Liquid Line (3/8)
25-7	Stop Valve	For Gas Line (5/8)
25-8	Silencer	
25-9	Check Valve	
26	Valve Stay	
27	Valve Stay	
28	Coil	For SVA
29	Coil	For RVR
30	Coil	For MV
31	Strainer	
32	Thermistor	TA
33	Thermistor	TE
34	Thermistor	TD
35	TH Plate	

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 199 04/06/2013 18:14:10

9.3.2 Electrical parts RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E



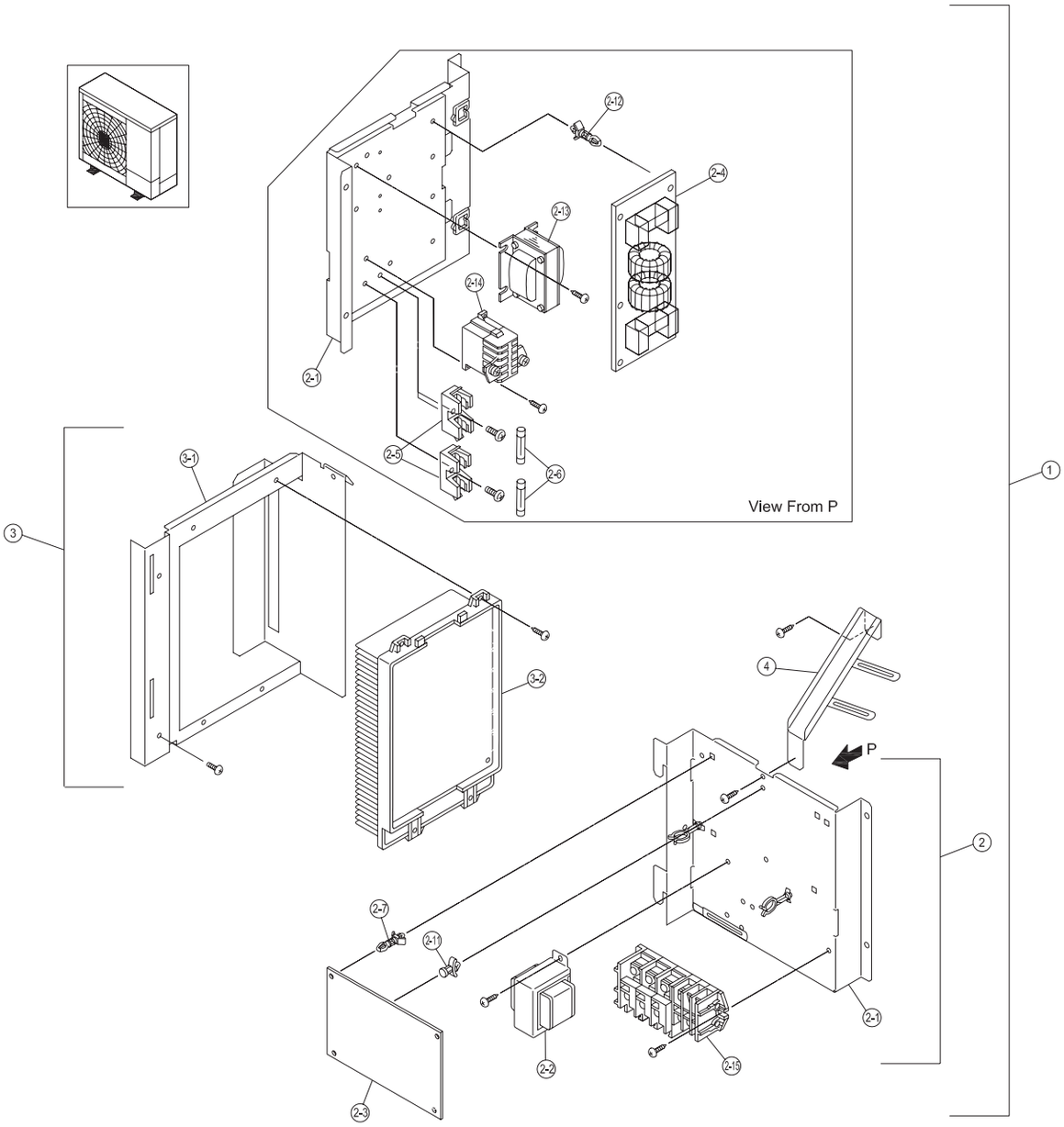
EPN-201105C

No.	Part name	Remarks
1	Electrical box	Assembly (2+3+harness)
2	P-Plate Assy	Assembly (2-1~2-13)
2-1	P-Plate Unit	
2-2	Terminal Board	TB
2-3	Transformer	TF
2-4	Printed Circuit Board	PO081 Assy
2-5	Noise Filter	NF1
2-6	Reactor Unit	DCL
2-7	Fuse Holder	

No.	Part name	Remarks
2-8	Fuse	50A
2-9	Mag. Contactor	CMC1
2-10	Spacer	For Noise Filter
2-12	Spacer	For PCB1
2-13	Push Spacer	For PCB1
3	Power Unit Assy	Assembly (3-1~3-2)
3-1	Power Stay Assy	
3-2	Inverter Fin Assy	DIP-IPM (25A)
4	Stay	

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

9.3.3 Electrical parts RAS-(5/6)HRNS2E



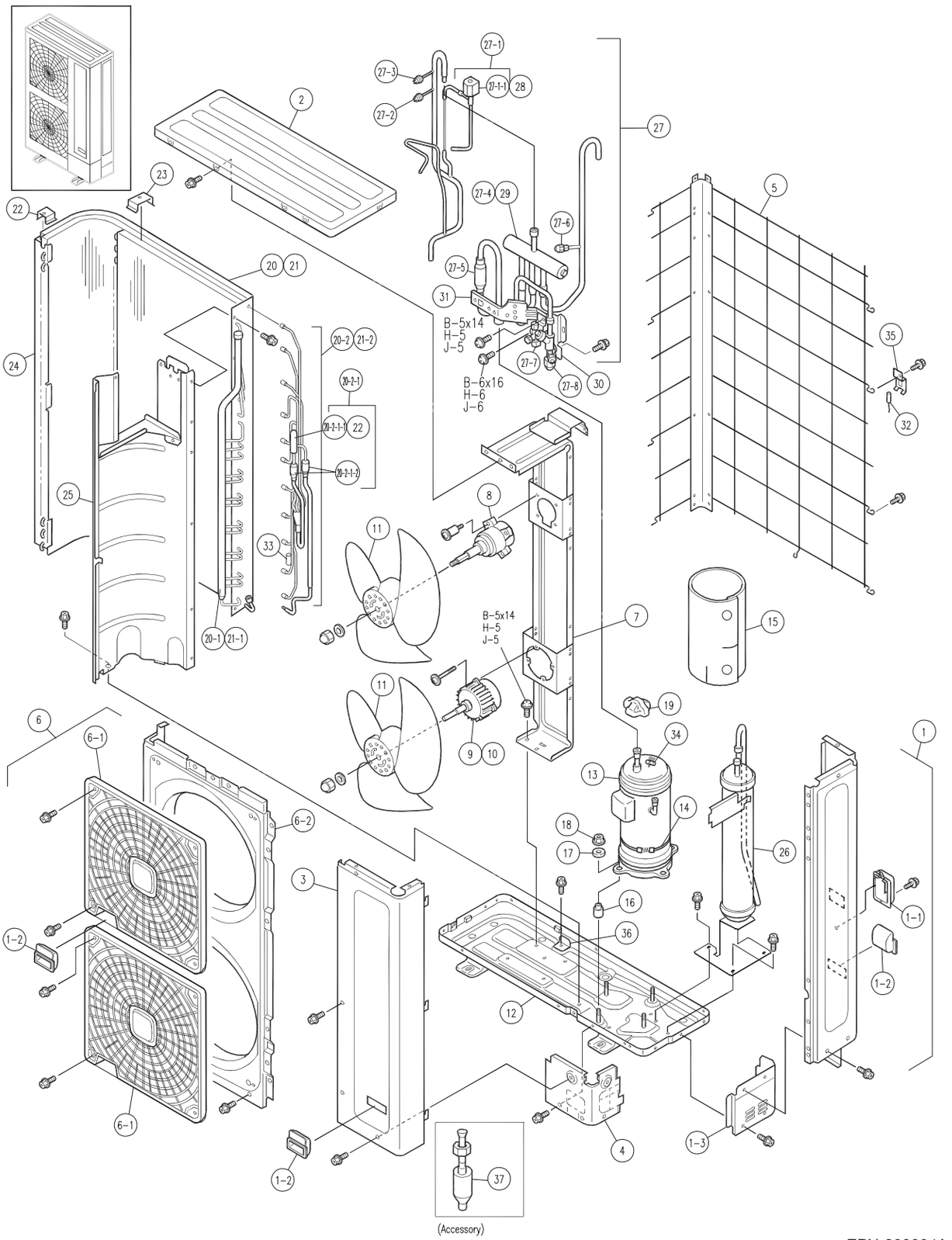
EPN-201105C

No.	Part name	Remarks
1	Electrical box	Assembly (2+3+harness)
2	P-Plate Assy	Assembly (2-1~2-15)
2-1	P-Plate Unit	
2-2	Transformer	TF
2-3	Printed Circuit Board	PO081 Assy
2-4	Noise Filter	NF1
2-5	Fuse Holder	
2-6	Fuse	20A
2-7	Spacer	For PCB1

No.	Part name	Remarks
2-11	Push Spacer	For PCB1
2-12	Spacer	For Noise Filter
2-13	Reactor	DCL
2-14	Mag. Contactor	CMC1
2-15	Terminal Board	TB
3	Power Unit Assy	Assembly (3-1~3-2)
3-1	Power Stay Assy	
3-2	Inverter Fin Assy	DIP-IPM (13A)
4	Upper Support	

9.4 RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

9.4.1 Cycle and structural



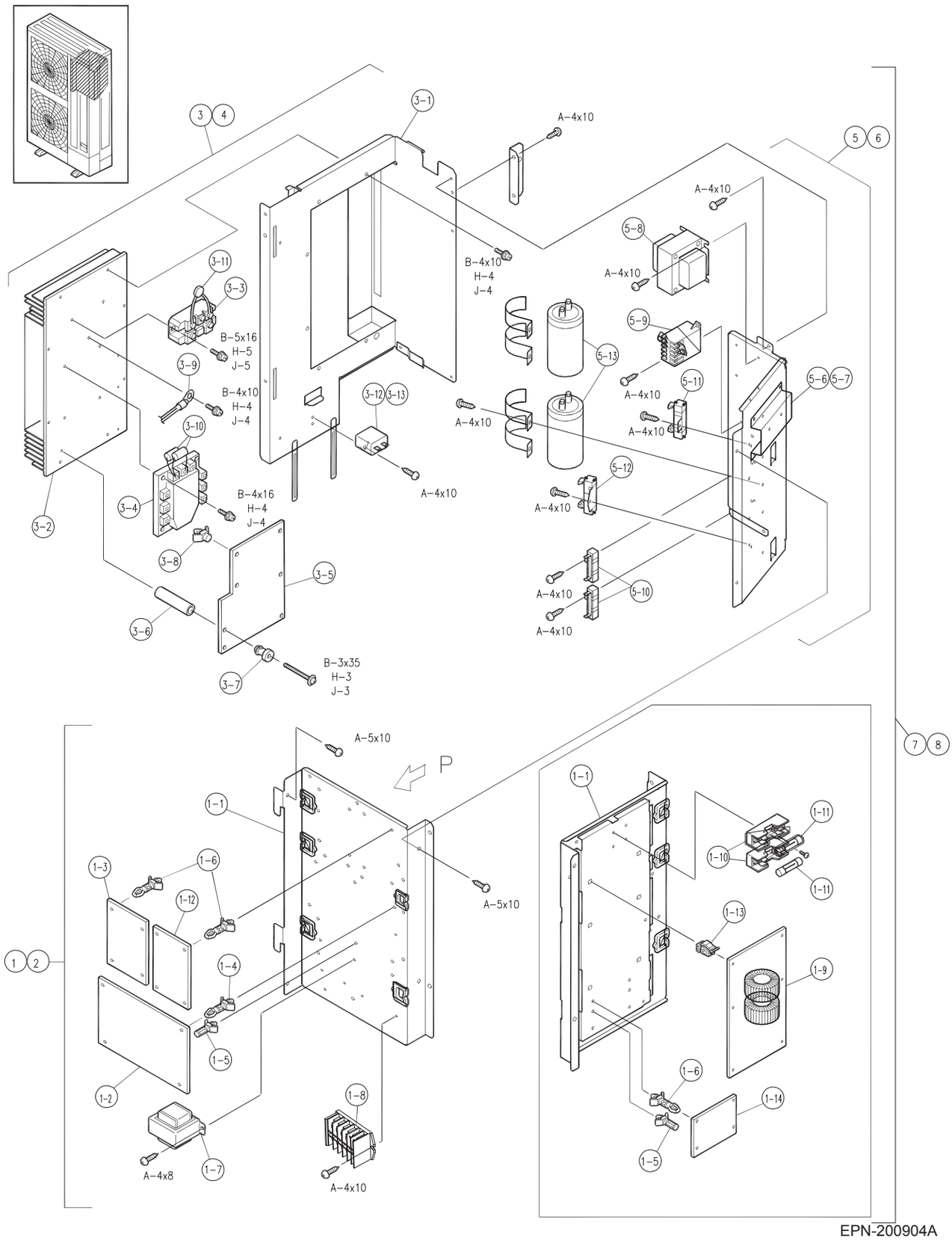
EPN-200904A

No.	Part name	Remarks
1	Rear Cover Assy	Assembly
1-1	H-Cover	
1-2	Handle	
1-3	Piping Cover B	Rear Piping Cover
2	Upper Cover Assy	Assembly
3	Service Cover Assy	Assembly
4	S Cover B	Lower Service Cover
5	Protection Net	
6	Shroud Assy	
6-1	Fan protector net	Air Outlet
6-2	Shroud	
7	Clamp Assy	
8	Fan Motor	DC Fan Motor, MOF 1/ DC 138W,8P
9	Fan Motor (For RAS-8HRNSE)	AC Fan Motor,MOF 2/ AC 120W,8P
10	Fan Motor (For RAS-10HRNSE)	AC Fan Motor, MOF2/ AC 170W,8P
11	Propeller Fan	Ø544
12	Bottom Base Assy	
13	Compressor	E655DHD-65D2
14	Oil Heater	Ø40W
15	Acoustical Cover	
16	Vibration Absorber	
17	Vibration Absorber	
18	Special Nut	
19	Rubber Cap	
20	Condenser (For RAS-8HRNSE)	Assembly (Heat exchanger+20- 1+20-2)
20-1	Header G Assy (For RAS-8HRNSE)	Assembly
20-2	Header L Assy (For RAS-8HRNSE)	Assembly
20-2-1	EVO Assy	Assembly
20-2-1-1	Expansion Valve	EVO
20-2-1-2	Strainer	

No.	Part name	Remarks
21	Condenser (For RAS-10HRNSE)	Assembly (Heat exchanger+21-1+21-2)
21-1	Header G Assy (For RAS-10HRNSE)	Assembly
21-2	Header L Assy (For RAS-10HRNSE)	Assembly
22	Coil	for EVO
22	Attaching Plate	Not included in 20/21
23	Attaching Plate (For RAS-10HRNSE)	Not included in 21
24	End Plate Assy	Not included in 20/21
25	Partition Plate Assy	Assembly
26	LTank	
27	Reversing Valve Assy	Assembly
27-1	SVA Assy	
27-1-1	Solenoid Valve	SVA
27-2	Pressure Switch	PSH (High)
27-3	Pressure Switch	PSC (Control)
27-4	Reversing Valve	RVR
27-5	Strainer	
27-6	Check Joint	
27-7	Stop Valve 3/8''	for Liquid Line
27-8	Stop Valve 3/4''	for Gas Line
28	Coil	for SVA. Not included in 27-1
29	Coil	for RVR. Not included in 27
30	Valve Stay	
31	Valve Stay	Not included in 27
32	Thermistor	TA (Air)
33	Thermistor	TE (Piping)
34	Thermistor	TD (Compressor)
35	Thermo Attaching Plate	
36	Condenser Support (For RAS-10HRNSE)	
37	Accessory Pipe	

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

9.4.2 Electrical parts



EPN-200904A

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 204 04/06/2013 18:14:20

No.	Part name	Remarks
1 2	Attaching P-Plate Assy	Assembly (1-1~1-14)
1-1	Attaching P-Plate	
1-2	Printed Circuit Board	PCB Main (PO 052)
1-3	Printed Circuit Board	PCB for AC Fan Motor (PO 083)
1-4	Spacer	Spacer
1-5	Push Spacer	Spacer
1-6	Spacer	Spacer
1-7	Transformer	TF
1-8	Terminal Board	TB
1-9	Noise Filter	NF1
1-10	Fuse Holder	
1-11	Fuse	40 A
1-12	Printed Circuit Board	PCB for DC Fan Motor (PO084)
1-13	Plastic Material	Holder for NF1
1-14	Reverse Phase Relay	
3	Power Plate Assy (For RAS-8HRNSE)	Assembly (3-1~3-11+3-12)
4	Power Plate Assy (For RAS-10HRNSE)	Assembly (3-1~3-11+3-13)
3-1	Power Plate	From serial nº4HE40544 this plate must be sent together with CB Plate 17B41041 A (E02125)
3-2	Radiation Fin	
3-3	Diode Module	DM
3-4	Transistor Module	IPM

No.	Part name	Remarks
3-5	Printed Circuit Board	PCB for Inverter (PV041)
3-6	Plastic Material	Collar
3-7	Plastic Material	Bush
3-8	Plastic Material	Spacer
3-9	Thermistor	Fin Thermistor
3-10	Capacitor Assy	Harness PC301
3-11	Noise Suppressor	ZNR Assy
3-12	Capacitor (For RAS-8HRNSE)	440V AC, 6 µF
3-13	Capacitor (For RAS-10HRNSE)	440V AC, 7.5 µF
5	CB Plate Assy	Assembly (5-8~5-13+5-6)
6	CB Plate Assy	Assembly (5-8~5-13+5-7)
5-6	CB Plate Assy (For RAS-8HRNSE)	-
5-7	CB Plate (For RAS-10HRNSE)	From serial nº4HE40544 this plate must be sent together with Power Plate XEK23436 A (E02119)
5-8	Reactor	DCL
5-9	Mag Contactor	CMC1
5-10	Resistor	RS1, RS2
5-11	Resistor	R1
5-12	Resistor	R2
5-13	Capacitor	CB1,CB2 (400V AC,4700 µF)
7	Electrical Wiring Diagram (For RAS-8HRNSE)	Assembly (1+3+5+Harness)
8	Electrical Wiring Diagram (For RAS-10HRNSE)`	Assembly (2+4+6+Harness)

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 206 04/06/2013 18:14:20

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

10. Servicing

Index

10.1. Introduction 208

10.2. Servicing for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 209

10.2.1. Outdoor unit RAS-3HVRNS3 209

10.2.2. Outdoor Units RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 217

10.3. Servicing for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 224

10.3.1. Outdoor Units RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E 224

10.3.2. Outdoor Units RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 236

10

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 207 04/06/2013 18:14:21

10.1 Introduction

DANGER

- ***Before performing any of the service operations described in this chapter turn all the main switches off and the place security lockers or convenient warning indicators in order to prevent them from turning on accidentally.***
- ***In case of blocked or stucked parts use appropiated tools and eventually lubricants to release them.***
- ***In case of sharped edged parts as covers use security gloves to avoid getting injured.***
- ***When performing brazing work besides security gloves it is must to wear convenient eye protection.***
- ***Check and be sure that the LED201 (Red) on the inverter PCB is OFF for all electrical maintenance.***
- ***Do NOT touch the electrical components when the LED201 (Red) on the inverter PCB is ON to avoid electrical shock.***

NOTE

- *All compressors are connected by brazing. Check to ensure whether there are flammable things around or not when using a burner for pipe connections if not oil existing pipe inside may ignite.*
- *Do not expose the refrigerant cycle to the atmosphere for a long period in order to avoid mixing the water and foreign particles into the refrigerant cycle. After removing compressor replace it quickly. If exposed for a long period seal the suction pipe and discharge pipe.*
- *Remove the cap for the compressor just before replacing the compressor. Before mounting the compressor seal the suction pipe and discharge pipe with a tape to protect the compressor from foreign particles. Remove the tape at pipe connection.*

10.2 Servicing for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

10.2.1 Outdoor unit RAS-3HVRNS3

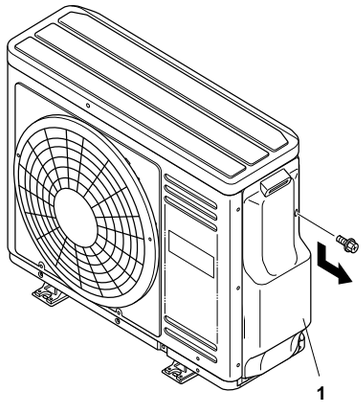
◆ Removing pipe cover

Follow the procedure below to remove main parts and components. For mounting follow the reverse procedure of removal.

Do not expose the refrigerant cycle to the atmosphere for a long period to avoid moisture or dust entering into the cycle. Be sure to replace parts immediately after removing. Seal the refrigerant cycle when left unattached for a long period.

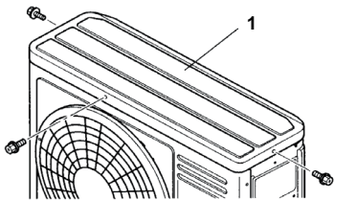
1 Remove pipe cover downward after removing 1 screw.

1. Pipe cover.

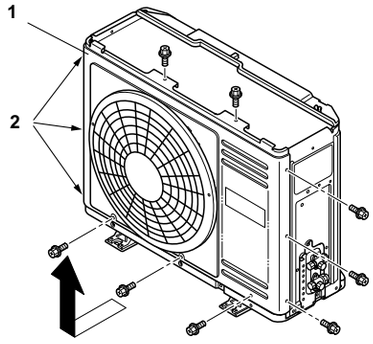


◆ Removing front cover

1 Remove the pipe cover following *Removing pipe cover*.
2 Remove 3 fixing screws and remove the upper cover.
3 To remove the front cover remove 8 fixing screws and 3 left nails.



1. Upper cover.



1. Front cover.
2. Nails.

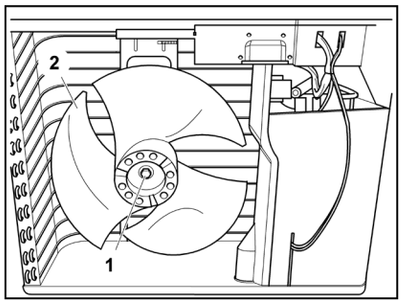
◆ Removing outdoor fan

1 Remove the pipe cover following *Removing pipe cover*.
2 Remove 3 fixing screws and remove the upper cover.
3 Remove the front cover following *Removing front cover*.
4 To remove the propeller fan remove the cap nut which fixes the propeller fan onto the motor shaft.

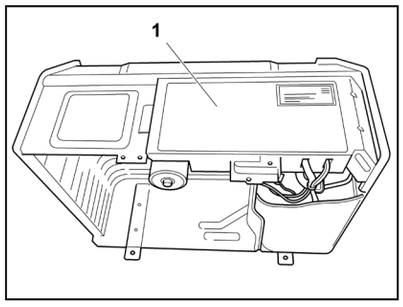
NOTE

- ***Use a puller when the propeller fan and motor shaft are fixed too tightly.***
- ***The cap nut is left thread. For removal turn to the reverse direction to the propeller fan.***

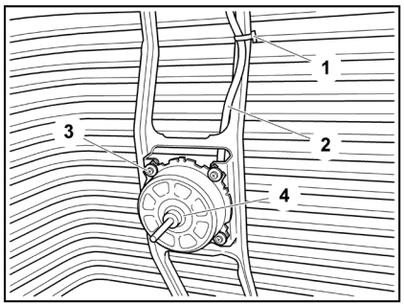
5 Remove the electrical box cover.
6 Remove the fan motor connector (CN24) inserted into the PCB in the electrical box.
Remove the fan motor lead wire fixed onto the motor clamp using a cord band.
Remove 4 screws which fixes the motor.



1. Cap nut.
2. Propeller fan.



1. Electrical box cover.



1. Cord band.
2. Fan motor lead wire.
3. Four (4) screws.
4. Fan motor.

NOTE

- *To mount the motor be sure to place the lead wire outlet downward.*
- *Fix the motor lead wire onto the motor clamp using a cord band as before to avoid obstructing the propeller fan.*
- *Mounting the propeller fan:*
- *Insert the skidding protection part of the fan boss matching with the motor shaft notch; tighten the nut after the shaft screw fully comes out. (Tightening Torque 3.0 Nm).*
- *Connect the motor lead wire to the electrical box PCB. (To connect insert into the connector (CN24) on the PCB).*

◆ Removing the compressor

NOTE

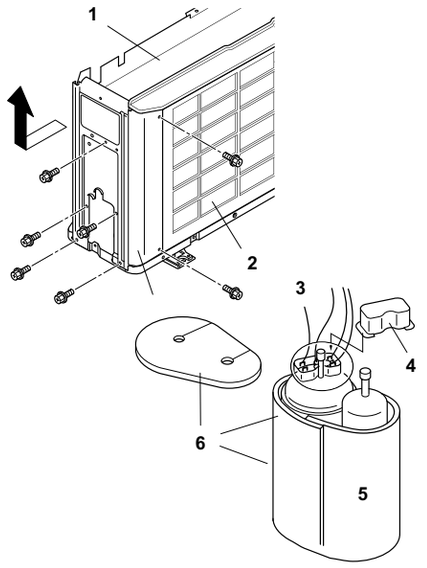
- *Do not expose the refrigerant cycle to the atmosphere for a long period to avoid moisture or dust into the cycle. Be sure to replace the compressor immediately after removing. Seal to the suction and discharge pipes when the refrigerant cycle is left unattached for a prolonged time.*
- *Remove the cap of new compressor right before the replacement. Before mounting the compressor seal the suction and discharge pipes with a tape to protect the compressor from dust. Remove the tape at pipe connection.*
- *To connect wiring at reassembling ensure that the compressor terminal numbers and wiring mark band codes are matched. Incorrect wiring numbers may result in inverse rotation and damage the compressor.*

1 Remove the pipe cover following Removing pipe cover.
When the outdoor unit is installed close to a wall move the unit from the wall removing the refrigerant piping.
2 Collect the refrigerant from the check joint.
3 Remove the front cover following Removing front cover.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 210 04/06/2013 18:14:22

4 Remove 7 fixing screws and remove the side cover.

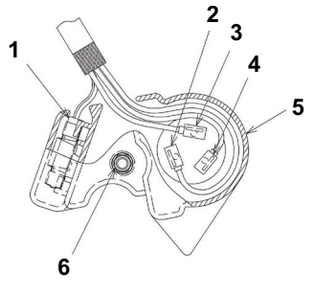
1. Electrical box.
2. Heat exchanger.
3. Compressor-top thermistor.
4. Compressor wiring.
5. Terminal cover.
6. Side cover Soundproof cover.



5 Open the soundproof cover wrapped around the compressor and remove the terminal box cover of the compressor body. Disconnect the compressor wires in the terminal box and remove the thermistor on top of the compressor.

- Check the wiring color and layout when disconnecting. Connecting wires in wrong order at reassembling may result in compressor damage.

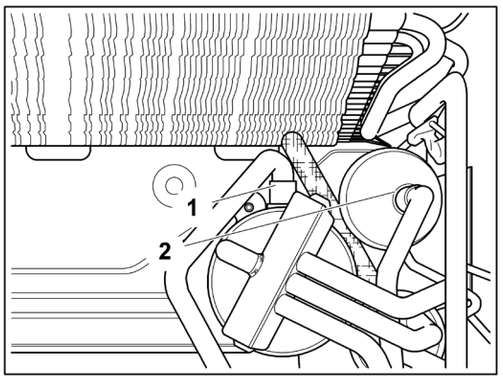
1. Compressor-Top Thermistor Mount onto Terminal Cover with Metal Fitting.
2. Yellow.
3. White.
4. Red.
5. Terminal cover.
6. M5 nut.



6 Remove the suction and discharge pipes from the compressor.

- Be sure to separate the blazing burner flame sufficiently from the wires and electrical components around the brazed part in order to avoid burning.

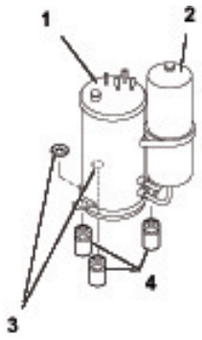
1. Blazing Discharge pipe.
2. Blazing Suction pipe.



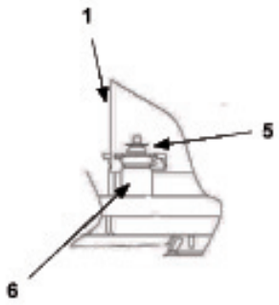
7 Remove push nuts A and B which fixes the compressor. Lift the compressor and remove from the unit body. (C in the figure does not have a push nut).

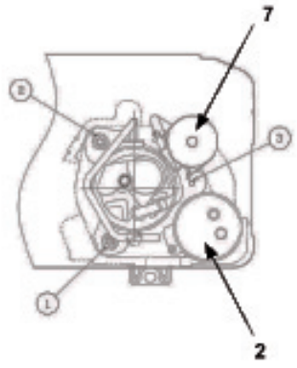
a. Check if the Faston terminal has any abnormality when replacing the compressor. (Ensure the pull out force greater than 20 N)If the Faston terminal is identified faulty replace to a new one.

b. Ensure the fixture of the lead wires.



1. Compressor.
2. Accumulator.
3. Push nut.
4. Vibration-proof rubber.
5. Two push nuts.
6. Three vibration-proof rubber.
7. Accumulator.

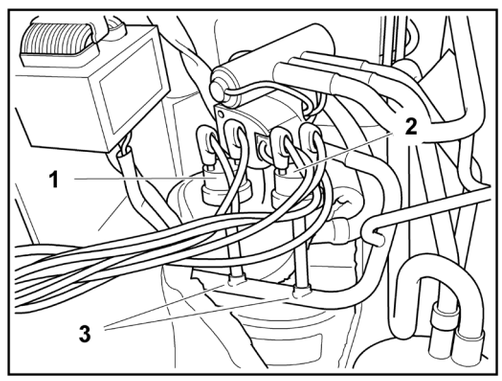




◆ Removing high pressure switch and pressure switch for control

1 Remove the pipe cover following *Removing pipe cover*.
2 Remove 3 fixing screws and remove the upper cover.
3 Remove the front cover following *Removing front cover*.
4 Collect the refrigerant from the check joint.
5 Disconnect the Faston Terminals.
6 Remove the high pressure switch and the pressure switch for control from the brazed part of discharge piping.

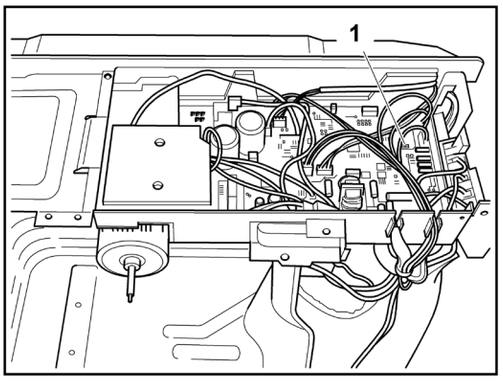
1. High pressure switch.
2. Pressure switch for control.
3. Brazing.



◆ Removing four-way valve coil

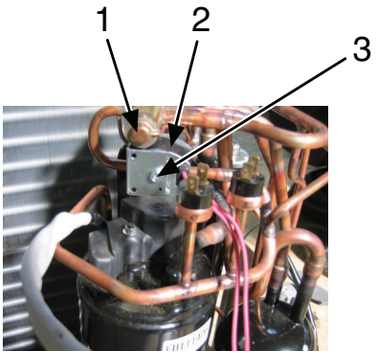
1 Remove the pipe cover following *Removing pipe cover*.
2 Remove 3 fixing screws and remove the upper cover.
3 Remove the front cover following *Removing front cover*.
4 Remove the electrical box cover.
5 Disconnect the PCN6 connector on the control PCB of the electrical box.

1: PCN6 Connector (Green)



6 Remove 1 fixing screw to remove the 4-way valve coil.

1. 4-way valve.
2. 4-way valve coil.
3. Screw.

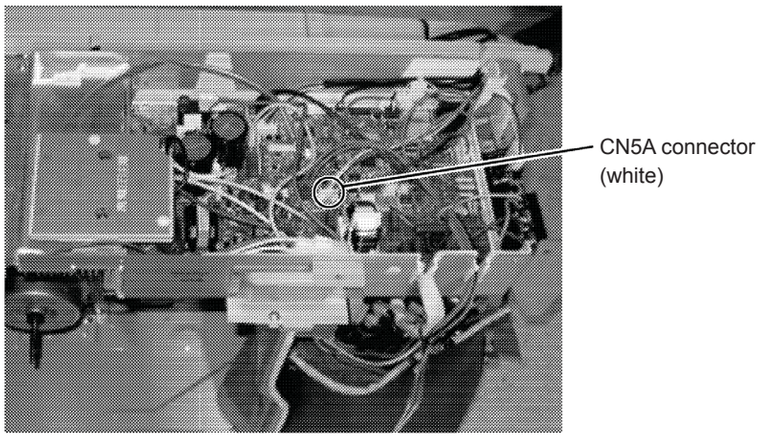


NOTE

DO NOT touch electrical components while the LED1 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock. Wait until the LED turns off.

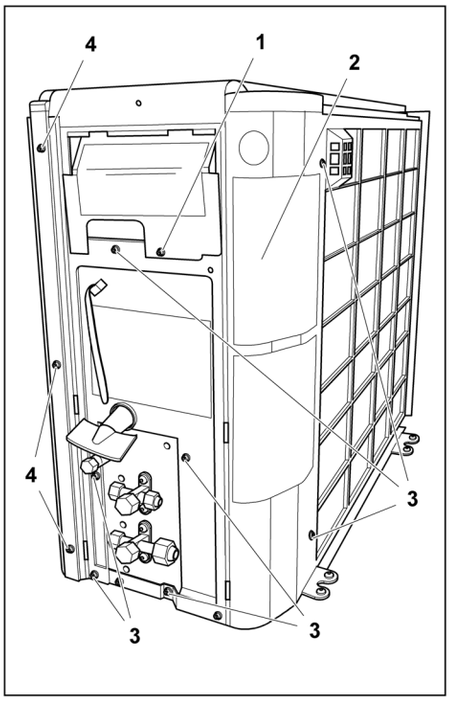
◆ Removing electronic expansion valve coil

1 Remove the pipe cover following *Removing pipe cover*.
2 Remove 3 fixing screws and remove the upper cover.
3 Remove the front cover following *Removing front cover*.
4 Remove the electrical box cover.
5 Remove 7 fixing screws and remove the side cover.
6 Remove the CN5A connector on the control PCB of the electrical box.

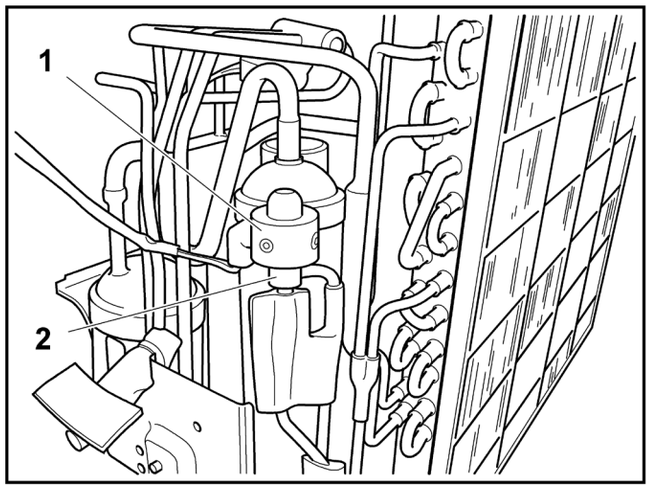


SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 213 04/06/2013 18:14:25

7 Hold and disconnect the coil of the expansion valve.The expansion valve coil is equipped with a lock mechanism.Ensure that the coil is locked when replacing.



1. One terminal cover screw.
2. Side cover.
3. Seven side cover screws.
4. Three front cover screws.



1. Expansion valve coil.
2. Expansion valve body.

NOTE

DO NOT touch electrical components while the LED1 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock. Wait until the LED turns off.

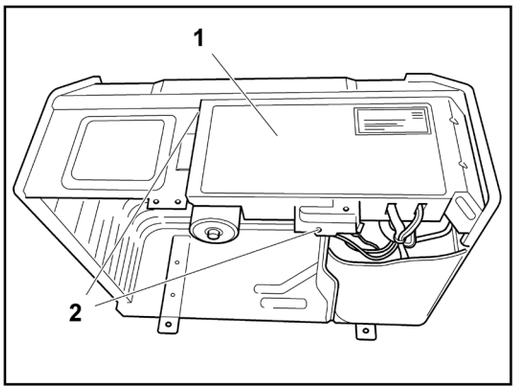
◆ Removing electrical components

Removing Electrical Box

1 Remove the pipe cover following *Removing pipe cover*.
2 Remove 3 fixing screws and remove the upper cover.
3 Remove the electrical box cover.
4 Remove 1 fixing screw and remove the terminal cover.
5 Disconnect all the wiring connected to the control PCB.
6 Remove 2 screws which fix the electrical box.

7 Pull up and remove the electrical box.

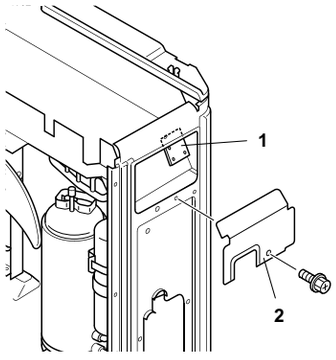
1. Electrical box cover.
2. Two screws.

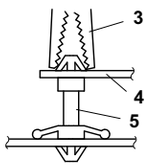


Removing Display PCB

1 Remove the pipe cover following *Removing pipe cover*.
2 Remove 1 fixing screw and remove the terminal cover.
3 Disconnect all the wiring connected to the display PCB.
4 Hold the upper part of 4 holders with long nose pliers and remove the display PCB.

1. Display PCB (PWB2).
2. Terminal cover.
3. Long nose pliers.
4. Display PCB.
5. Holder.





NOTE

DO NOT touch electrical components on the PCB. Pay attention not to bend or apply much force onto PCB in order to avoid PCB failure.

NOTE

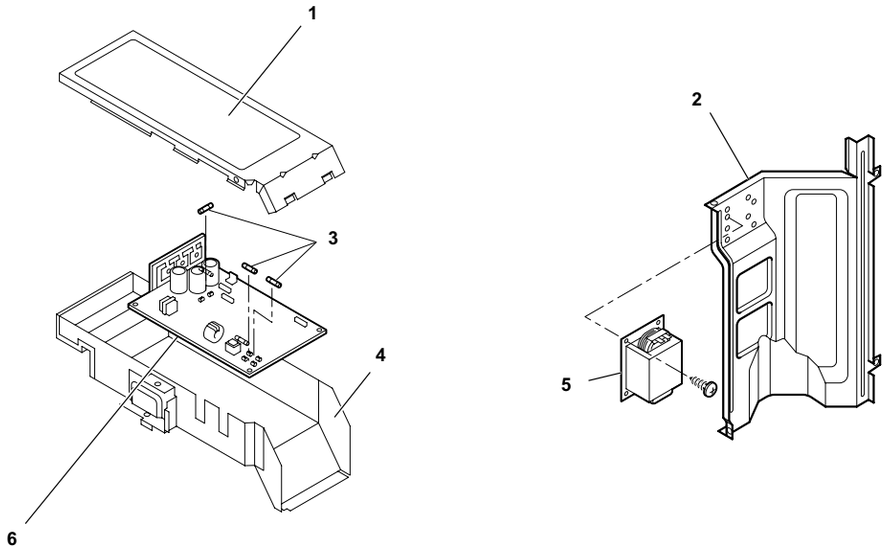
1 *To connect wiring at reassembling ensure that the terminal numbers and wiring mark band codes are matched. Incorrect wiring may result in malfunction or damage of electrical components.*
2 *Different dip switch setting shall be applied for each model when the electrical box is replaced; See chapter 8 "Troubleshooting".*
3 *Pay attention not to clamp any wiring between plates or electrical components when closing electrical box cover or front cover at reassembling.*

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 215 04/06/2013 18:14:27

◆ Removing other electrical components

1 Remove the pipe cover following *Removing pipe cover*.
2 Remove 3 fixing screws and remove the upper cover.
3 Remove the electrical box cover.
4 Removing Electrical Components.
Remove the fixing screw and remove the reactor.

- To mount components be sure to match the wiring connection with the mark band codes.



1. Electrical box cover.
2. Partition plate.
3. Fuse.
4. Electrical box.
5. Reactor.
6. See the note.

NOTE

- *The PCB cannot be removed from the electrical box. To replace PCB the entire electrical box must be replaced.*
- *DO NOT touch electrical components while the LED1 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock. Wait until the LED turns off.*

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 216 04/06/2013 18:14:27

10.2.2 Outdoor Units RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

◆ Removing service cover

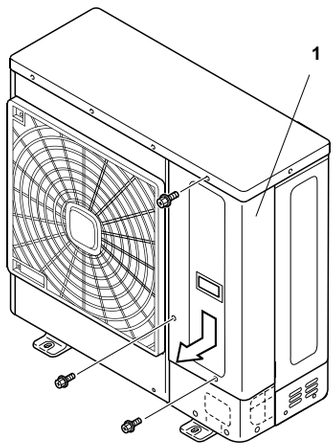
NOTE

- *Follow the procedure below to remove main parts and components. For mounting follow the reverse procedure of removal.*
- *Do not expose the refrigerant cycle to the atmosphere for a long period to avoid moisture or dust entering into the cycle. Be sure to replace parts immediately after removing. Seal the refrigerant cycle when left unattached for a long period.*

1 Pull downward and remove the service cover after removing 3 upper and lower fixing screws.

- Pay attention not to drop the service cover.

1. Service cover.

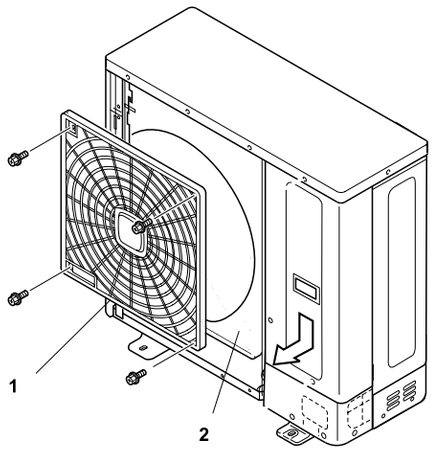


◆ Remove outlet grille

1 Remove 4 screws which fix the outlet grille.

1. Air outlet grille.

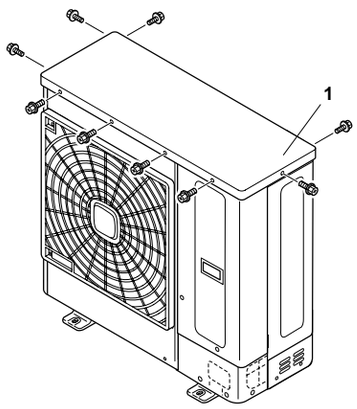
2. Shroud.



◆ Removing upper cover

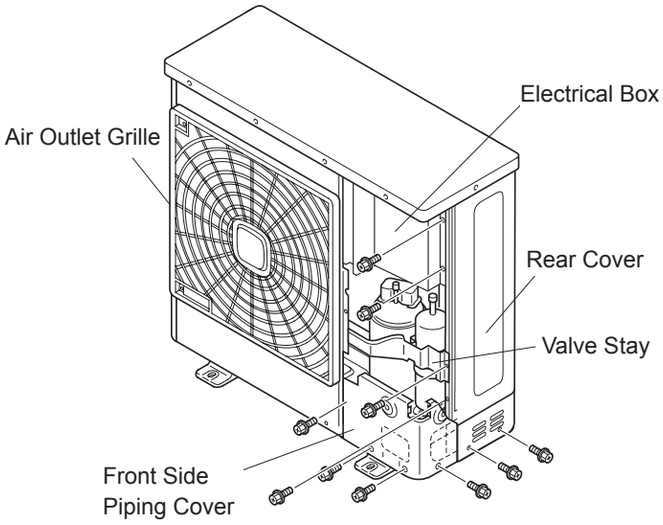
1 Remove the upper cover upward after removing 9 fixing screws.

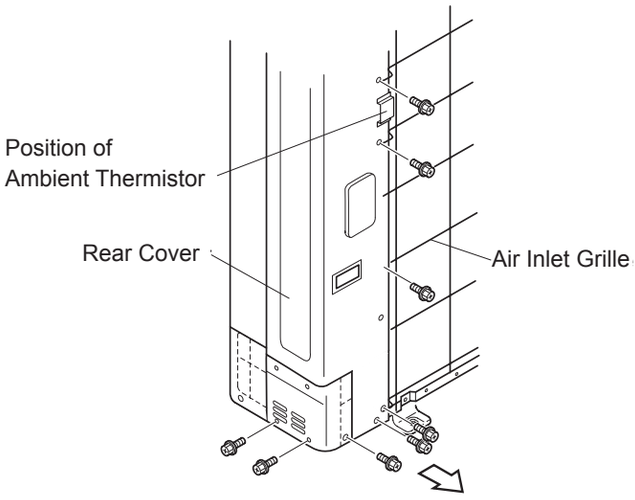
1. Upper cover.



◆ Removing bottom service cover and rear cover

1 Remove 5 screws which fix the bottom service cover. Pull and remove the bottom service cover.
2 Remove the upper cover following *Removing upper cover*.
3 Remove 9 screws which fix the rear cover. Pull backward and remove the rear cover.





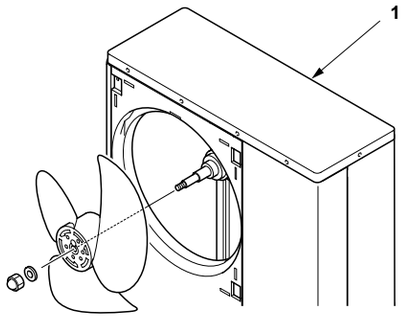
NOTE

Pay attention that the screw length for the ambient thermistor differs from other fixing screws.

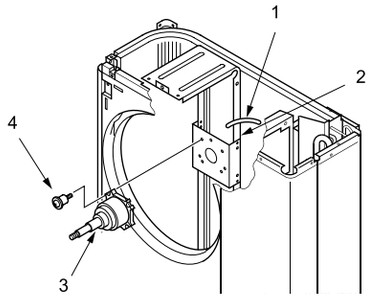
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 218 04/06/2013 18:14:28

◆ Removing outdoor fan motor

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Remove the outlet grille following *Remove outlet grille*.
3 Remove the upper cover following *Removing upper cover.*
4 To remove the propeller fan remove the cap nut and washer which fix the propeller fan onto the motor shaft. (Use a puller when the propeller fan and motor shaft are fixed too tightly).

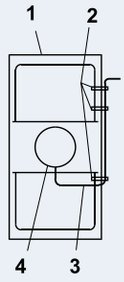


1. Upper cover.



1. Fan motor lead wire.
2. Motor clamp.
3. Motor.
4. Screw with spacer.

5 Remove the fan motor connector from PCB in the electrical box.
Cut the plastic tie with nippers which fixes the fan motor lead wire onto the motor clamp.
Remove 4 screws which fix the motor.

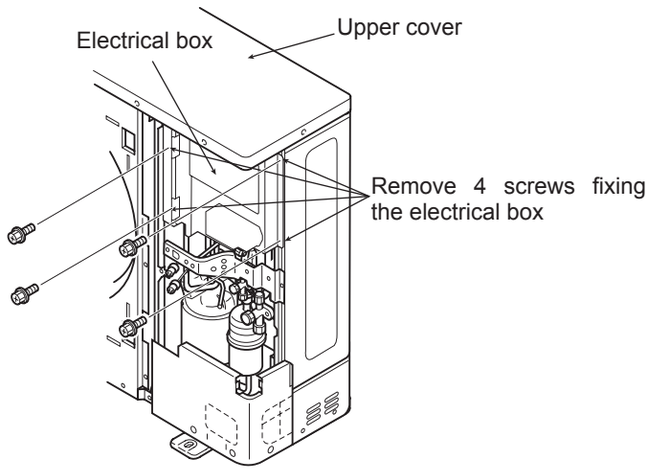
Model	RAS-4H(V)RNS3E
Connector pin location	Inverter PCB - CN202
Motor fixing screws	4x M5 screws
1. Motor clamp. 2. Plastic tie. 3. Wire. 4. Motor.	

NOTE

1 *To mount the motor be sure to place the lead wire outlet downward.*
(Adjust the propeller fan and shroud not to contact with each other).
2 *Fix the motor lead wire onto the motor clamp using a plastic tie as shown in the table on the previous page to avoid obstructing the propeller fan.*
3 *Mounting propeller fan:*
Insert the skidding protection part of the fan boss matching with the motor shaft notch; tighten the nut after the shaft screw fully comes out. (Tightening Torque 20 Nm)
4 *Connect the motor lead wire to PCB1 of the electrical box.*
(Be sure to match colors of the PCB connectors and motor lead wire connectors).
5 *Be sure to attach the outlet grill onto the shroud after replacing the fan motor.*

◆ Removing electrical box

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Remove the upper cover following *Removing upper cover*.
3 Remove 4 screws which fix the electrical box.
4 Pull up and remove the electrical box.



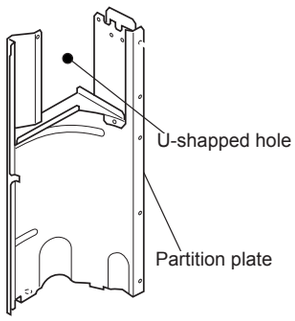
NOTE

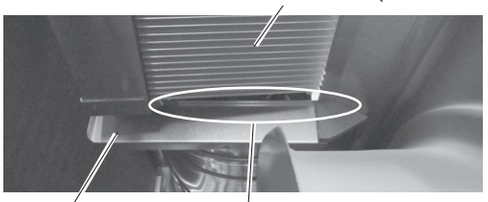
The following wiring must be removed to dismount the electrical box.

1. *Remove the reversing valve coil from the reversing valve. : Removing reversing valve coil.*
2. *Remove the expansion valve coil from the expansion valve. : Removing electronic expansion valve coil.*
3. *Remove the solenoid valve coil from the solenoid valve. : Removing solenoid valve coil.*
4. *Remove the Faston terminals of high/low pressure switch and the pressure switch for control from the switch body : Removing the high pressure switch, low pressure switch and pressure switch for control.*
5. *Remove all connectors on the control PCB.*
6. *Remove the compressor wires in the terminal box of the compressor.*
7. *To remount the electrical box attach the electrical box fitting with the partition plate.*
   (Insert the radiation fin into the U-notch on the partition plate and place the fin on the fan box side. Then attach the electrical box hooking onto the partition plate).

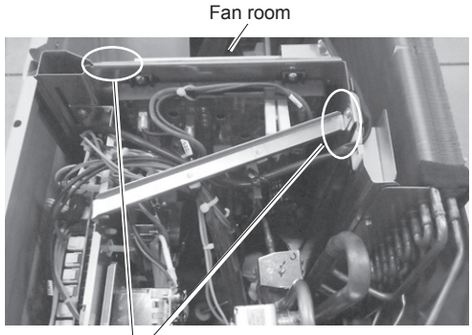


Original position





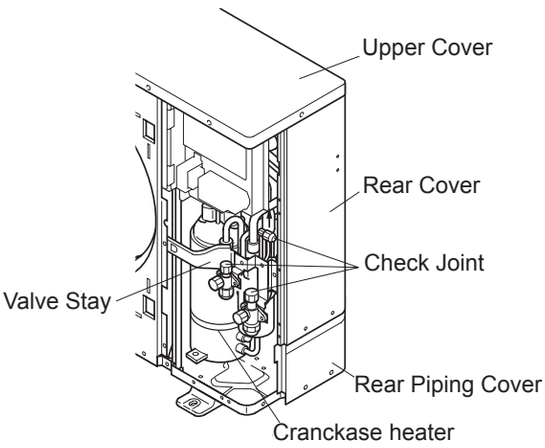
Place the electrical box (radiation fin) in front of the partition plate. (Refer to the original position)

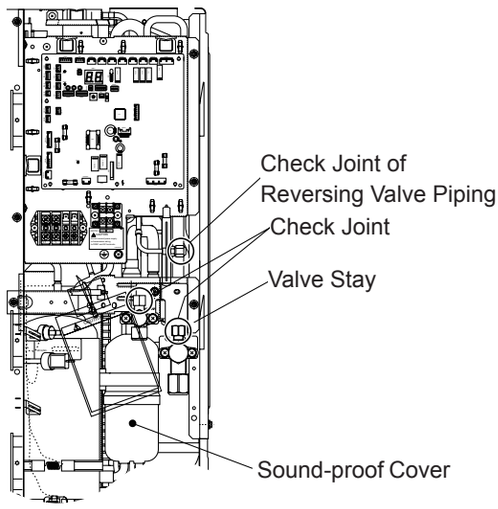


Place the electrical box to hook the parts onto the partition plate.

◆ Removing the compressor

1. Remove the service cover upper cover bottom service cover and rear cover following *Removing service cover, Removing upper cover,* and *Removing bottom service cover and rear cover*. When the outdoor unit is installed close to a wall remove the refrigerant piping and move the unit from the wall.
2. Remove the electrical box following *Removing electrical box*.
3. Collect the refrigerant from the check joint.
4. Remove the valve stay.





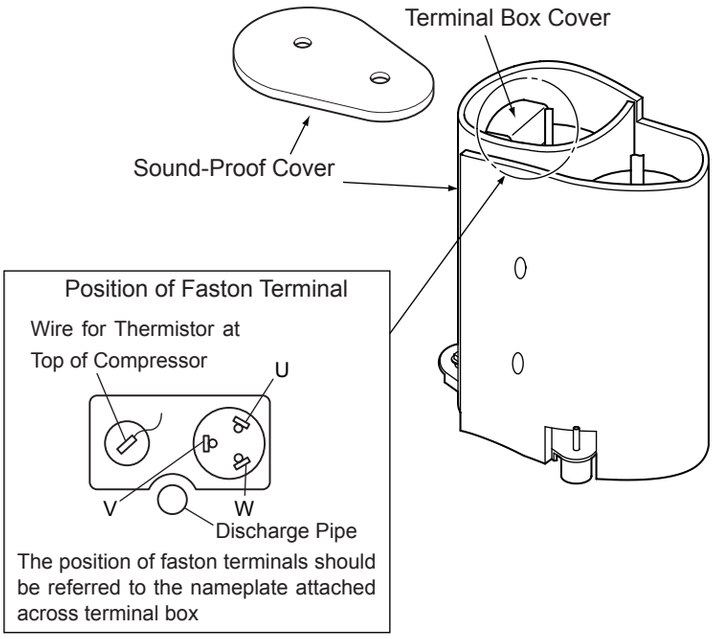
NOTE

Check Perform the recovery work at the check joint of piping. If not, the refrigerant remains inside.

5 Open the soundproof cover wrapped around the compressor and remove the terminal box cover of the compressor body. Disconnect the compressor wires in the terminal box and remove the thermistor on top of the compressor. Remove the soundproof cover.

NOTE

Check the terminal codes and mark bands when disconnecting the wires. Connecting wires in wrong order at reassembling may result in compressor damage.

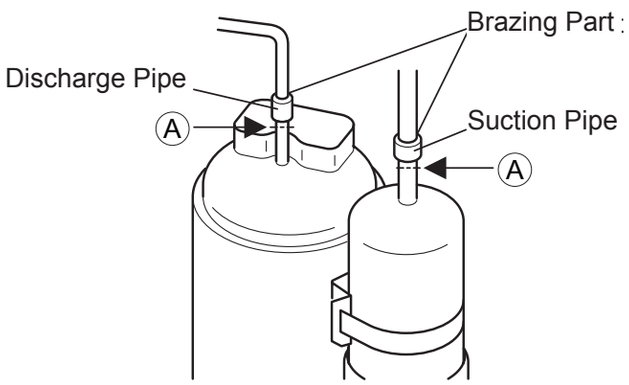


6 Remove the crankcase heater.

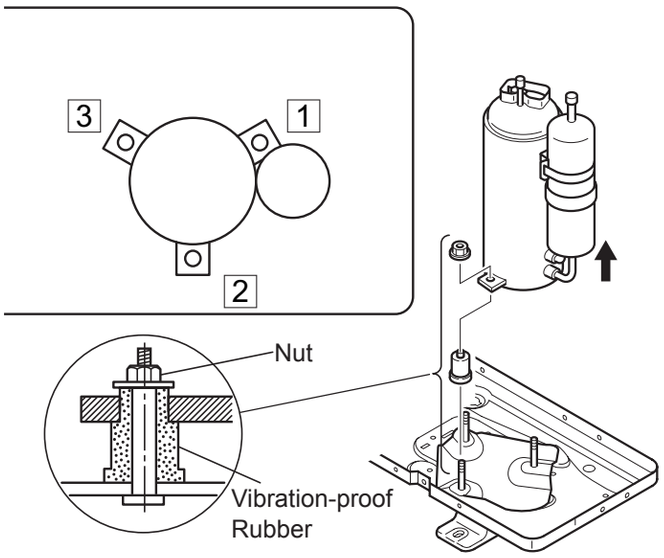
7 Remove the suction pipe and discharge pipe from the compressor. Remove the brazed part after cutting the pipes at "A" by a pipe cutter.

NOTE

Be sure to separate the blazing burner flame sufficiently from the wires and electrical components around the brazed part in order to avoid burning.



8 Remove 1 nut which fix the compressor and remove it by lifting up.



Compressor Position	1	2	3
Vibration-Proof Rubber	○	○	○
Nut	-	○	-

○ : with a nut
\- : without a nut

9 When brazing the replaced compressor braze quickly cooling the pipes on the compressor side with wet cloth to avoid the filler metal entering into the compressor.

NOTE

PAY CLOSE ATTENTION not to let the filler metal enter into the compressor which may result in compressor damage.

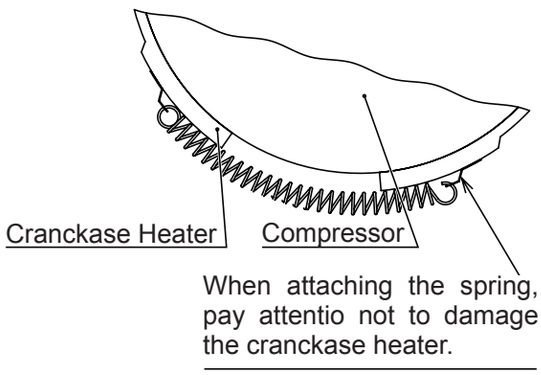
10 Perform in the reverse procedure of removing after replacing the compressor.

a. Check if the Faston terminal has any abnormality. (Ensure the pull out force greater than 20 Nm) If the Faston terminal is identified faulty replace with a new one.

b. Ensure the fixture of the lead wires.

c. Attach the cranckase heater to the compressor without torsion and gap as shown in the figure below.

Detail of Spring for Cranckase Heater



NOTE

- *To prevent contamination of the refrigerant by water or foreign materials, do not expose the refrigerant parts open to atmosphere for long periods. If necessary, seal pipe ends using caps or tape.*
- *Remove the cap for compressor right before replacing the compressor. When replacing the compressor, seal the tape at the suction and the discharge pipes to prevent foreign materials.*
  Remove it when brazing pipes.
- *Securely check terminal numbers and mark bands before disconnecting lead wires. When reassembling the lead wires, connect them to match surely the terminal numbers and the mark bands.*
  If the lead wires are connected incorrectly to the terminal, the compressor will be damaged due to reverse rotation.

10.3 Servicing for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

10.3.1 Outdoor Units RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E

◆ **Removing service cover**

NOTE

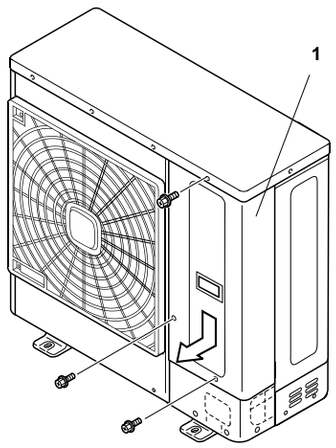
Follow the procedure below to remove main parts and components. For mounting follow the reverse procedure of removal.

Do not expose the refrigerant cycle to the atmosphere for a long period to avoid moisture or dust entering into the cycle. Be sure to replace parts immediately after removing. Seal the refrigerant cycle when left unattached for a long period.

1 Pull downward and remove the service cover after removing three (3) upper and lower fixing screws.

- Pay attention not to drop the service cover.

1. Service cover.

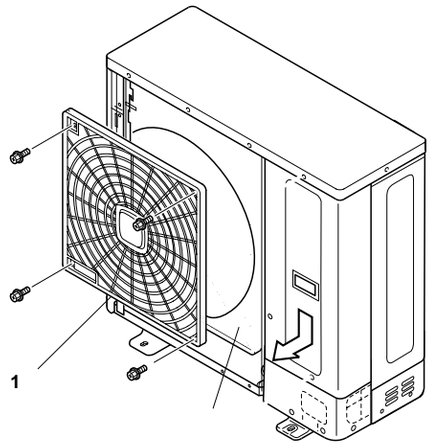


◆ **Remove outlet grille**

1 Remove four (4) screws which fix the outlet grille.

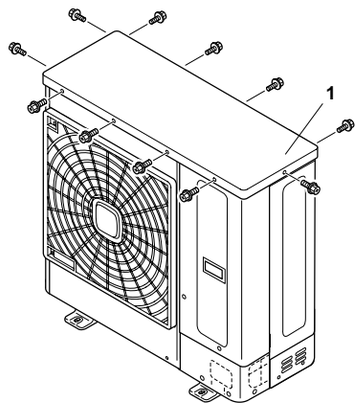
1. Air outlet grille.

2. Shroud.



◆ Removing upper cover

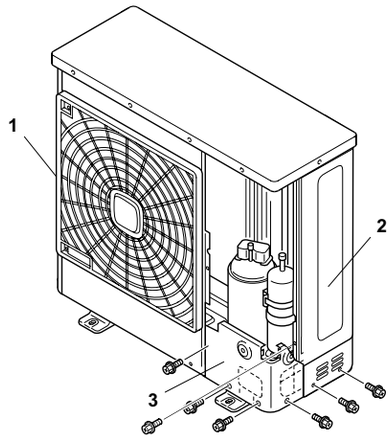
1 Remove the upper cover upward after removing nine (9) fixing screws.



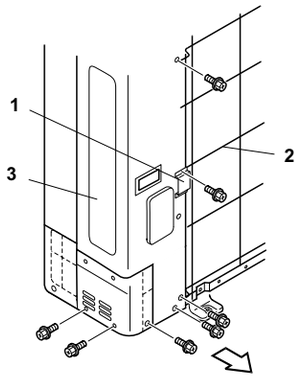
1. Upper cover.

◆ Removing bottom service cover and rear cover

1 Remove five (5) screws which fix the bottom service cover. Pull and remove the bottom service cover.
2 Remove the upper cover following *Removing upper cover*.
3 Remove seven (7) screws which fix the rear cover (eight (8) screws for two-fan models; the inlet grill is fixed with four (4)). Pull backward and remove the rear cover.



1. Outlet grille.
2. Rear cover.
3. Bottom service cover.



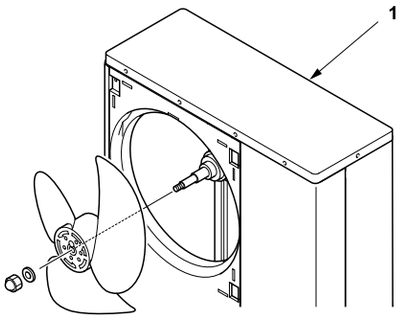
1. Outdoor air thermistor attachment.
2. Inlet grille.
3. Rear cover.

◆ Removing outdoor fan motor

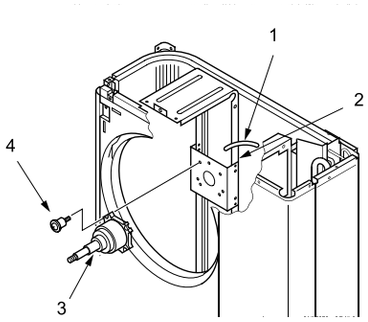
1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Remove the outlet grille following *Remove outlet grille*.
3 Remove the upper cover following *Removing upper cover*.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 225 04/06/2013 18:14:31

4 To remove the propeller fan remove the cap nut and washer which fix the propeller fan onto the motor shaft. (Use a puller when the propeller fan and motor shaft are fixed too tightly).

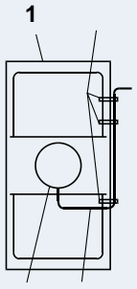


1. Upper cover.



1. Fan motor lead wire.
2. Motor clamp.
3. Motor.
4. Screw with spacer.

5 Remove the fan motor connector inserted into the electrical box DIP-IPM.
Cut the plastic tie with nippers which fixes the fan motor lead wire onto the motor clamp.
Remove four (4) screws which fix the motor.

Model	RAS-5/6H(V)RNS2E
Connector pin location	DIP-IPM - CN202
Motor fixing screws	4x M6 screws (with spacer)
1. Motor clamp. 2. Plastic tie. 3. Wire. 4. Motor.	

NOTE

1 *To mount the motor be sure to place the lead wire outlet downward.*
(Adjust the propeller fan and shroud not to contact with each other).
2 *Fix the motor lead wire onto the motor clamp using a plastic tie as shown in the table on the previous page to avoid obstructing the propeller fan.*
3 *Mounting propeller fan:*
Insert the skidding protection part of the fan boss matching with the motor shaft notch; tighten the nut after the shaft screw fully comes out. (Tightening Torque 20 Nm)
4 *Connect the motor lead wire to the electrical box DIP-IPM.*
(Be sure to match colors of the PCB connectors and motor lead wire connectors).
5 *Be sure to attach the outlet grill onto the shroud after replacing the fan motor.*

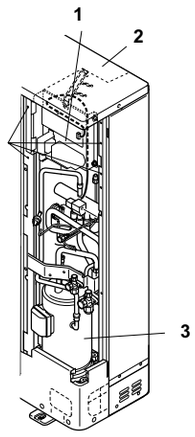
◆ Removing electrical box

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Remove the upper cover following *Removing upper cover*.
3 Remove four (4) screws which fix the electrical box.
4 Pull up and remove the electrical box.

1. Electrical box.

2. Upper cover.

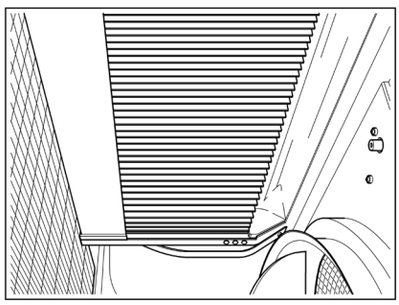
3. Compressor.

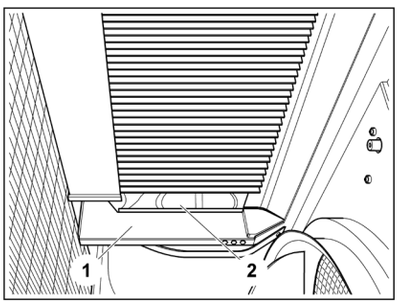


NOTE

- *Wiring must be removed to dismount the electrical box.*
  1. *Remove the 4-way valve coil from the 4-way valve. : Removing four-way valve coil.*
  2. *Remove the expansion valve coil from the expansion valve. : Removing electronic expansion valve coil.*
  3. *Remove the solenoid valve coil from the solenoid valve. : Removing solenoid valve coil (20A).*
  4. *Remove the Faston terminals of high pressure switch and the pressure switch for control from the switch body.*
  5. *Remove connectors on the control PCB.*
     - *THM7 (Outdoor Air).*
     - *THM8 (Piping).*
     - *THM9 (Compressor-top).*
     - *PCN5 (Crankcase Heater).*
  6. *Remove connectors on the DIP-IPM CN202*
  7. *Remove the compressor power wire from the compressor.*
  8. *To remount the electrical box attach the electrical box fitting with the partition plate.*
     (Insert the radiation fin into the U-notch on the partition plate and place the fin on the fan box side. Then attach the electrical box hooking onto the partition plate).

Correct installation

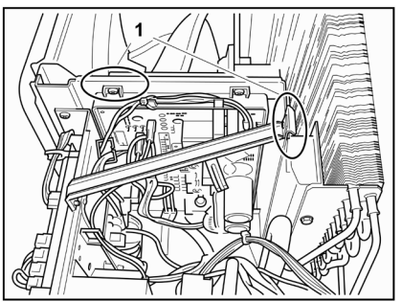




1. Partition Plate.

2. Place the electrical box onto the front fold of the partition plate (see correct installation).

Fan Box

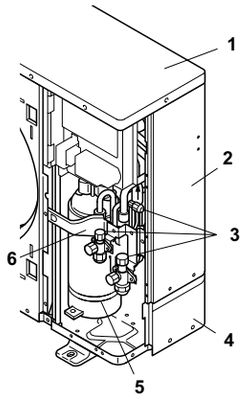


1. Place to hook the part onto the partition plate.

◆ Removing the compressor

1 Remove the service cover upper cover bottom service cover and rear cover following *Removing service cover, Removing upper cover* and *Removing bottom service cover and rear cover*. When the outdoor unit is installed close to a wall remove the refrigerant piping and move the unit from the wall.
2 Remove the electrical box following *Removing electrical box*.
3 Collect the refrigerant from the check joint.
4 Remove the valve stay.

1. Upper cover.
2. Rear panel.
3. Check joint.
4. Rear pipe cover.
5. Crankcase heater.



5 Open the soundproof cover wrapped around the compressor and remove the terminal box cover of the compressor body. Disconnect the compressor wires in the terminal box and remove the thermistor on top of the compressor. Remove the soundproof cover.

- Check the terminal codes and mark bands when disconnecting the wires. Connecting wires in wrong order at reassembling may result in compressor damage.

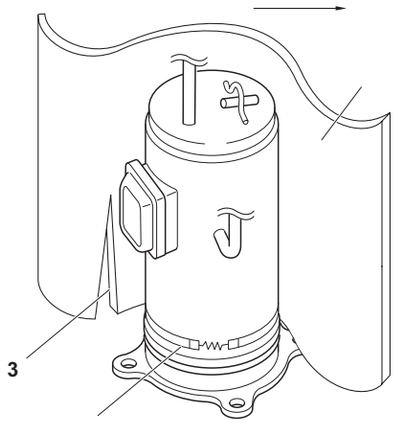
6 Remove the rubber cap and the thermistor attached on top of the compressor.
7 Remove the crankcase heater.

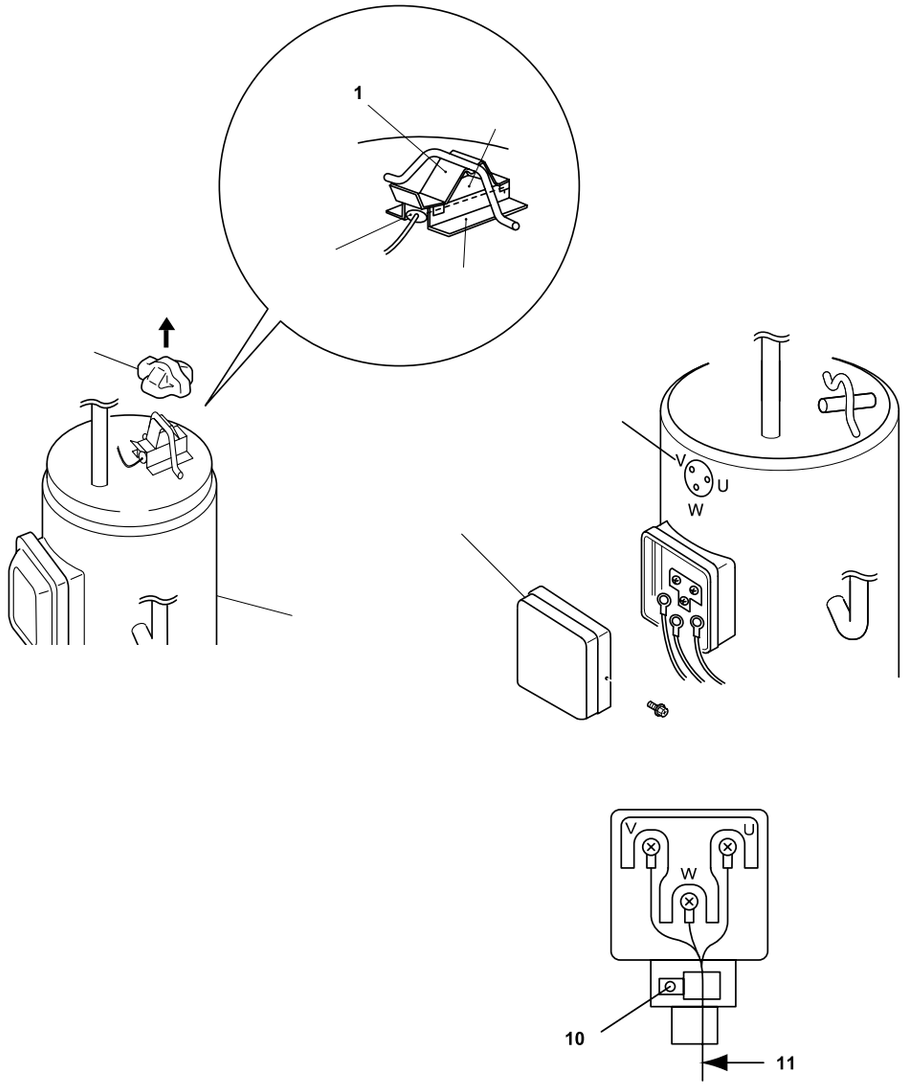
NOTE

- *Compressor piping must be connected by brazing. MAKE SURE that any flammable material is not around before heating with burner for the oil inside the piping may flame up.*
- *Do not expose the refrigerant cycle to the atmosphere for a long period to avoid moisture or dust into the cycle. Be sure to replace the compressor immediately after removing. Seal the suction and discharge pipes when the refrigerant cycle is left unattached for a long period.*
- *Remove the cap of new compressor right before the replacement. Before mounting the compressor seal the suction and discharge pipes with a tape to protect the compressor from dust. Remove the tape when blazing the pipe.*
- *For piping at reassembling ensure that the compressor terminal numbers and wiring mark band codes are matched. Incorrect wiring numbers may result in inverse rotation and damage of the compressor.*

1. Soundproof cover.
2. Oil heater.
3. Cut part.

A. Direction to remove the cover.





1. Thermistor holder.
2. Holder.
3. Td Thermistor.
4. Thermistor fixing plate.
5. Rubber cap Th Thermistor.
6. Indication of terminal number.
7. Terminal box cover.
8. Compressor.
9. Compressor wires.
10. Fix it with screw.
11. Compressor wires (3 wires).

A. Details for compressor terminals.

8 Remove the suction pipe and discharge pipe from the compressor.

- Be sure to separate the blazing burner flame sufficiently from the wires and electrical components around the brazed part in order to avoid burning.

9 Remove two (2) nuts which fix the compressor and remove the compressor. Lift the compressor and remove from the unit body.

NOTE

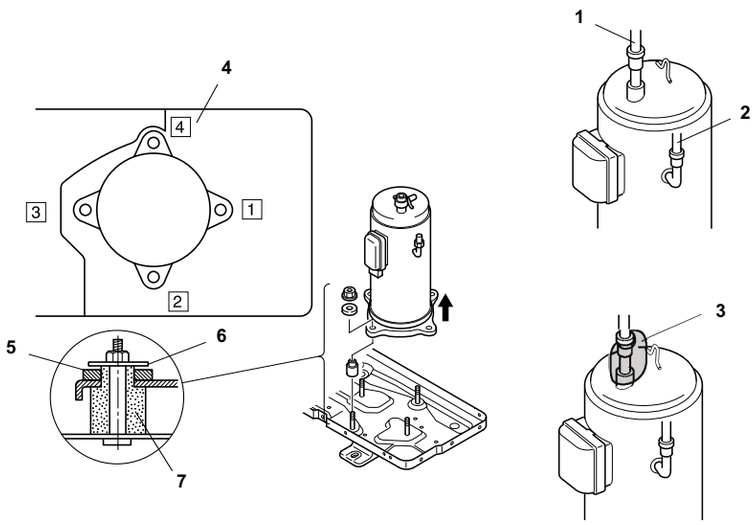
- *To remove the compressor the liquid stop valve pipe should be moved (bent) to the right side hand. PAY CLOSE ATTENTION not to crush to break the pipe.*

10 When brazing the replaced compressor braze quickly cooling the pipes on the compressor side with wet cloth to avoid the filler metal entering into the compressor.

- PAY CLOSE ATTENTION not to let the filler metal enter into the compressor which may result in compressor damage.

a. Check if the Faston terminal has any abnormality. (Ensure the pull out force greater than 20 Nm) If the Faston terminal is identified faulty replace with a new one.

b. Ensure the fixture of the lead wires.



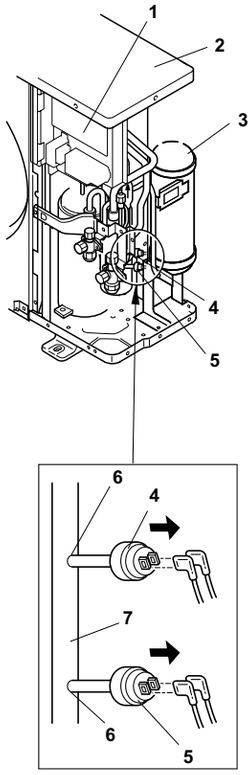
1. Suction pipe.
2. Discharge pipe.
3. Cover pipes with wet cloth.
4. See compressor position table below.
5. Vibration-Proof rubber 2.
6. Nut and washer.
7. Vibration-Proof rubber 1.

Fixation of the compressor to the bottom plate				
Compressor position	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**
Vibration-proof rubber 1	x	x	x	x
Vibration-proof rubber 2	x	x	—	—
Nut	x	x	—	—

◆ Removing the high pressure switch and pressure switch for control

1 Remove the service cover bottom service cover and rear cover following *Removing service cover* and *Removing bottom service cover and rear cover*.
2 Collect the refrigerant from the check joint according to *Removing the compressor*.
3 Remove the soundproof cover on the compressor.
4 Disconnect the Faston Terminals.
Remove the high pressure switch and the pressure switch for control from the brazed part of discharge piping.

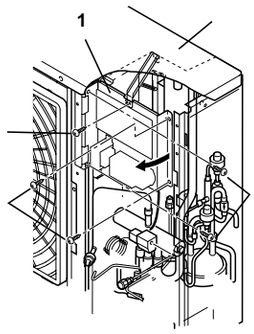
1. Electrical box.
2. Upper cover.
3. Refrigerant amount controller.
4. Pressure switch for control.
5. High pressure switch.
6. Blazing.
7. Discharge pipe.



◆ Opening electrical box (P plate)

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Remove six (5) screws which fix the electrical box and open the P plate turning counter clockwise approximately 90°.
- Check that the LED201 (red) on the inverter PCB (PCB2) is OFF when opening P-mounting plate.

1. P Plate.
2. Upper cover.
3. Screw.
4. Two (2) screws.



DANGER

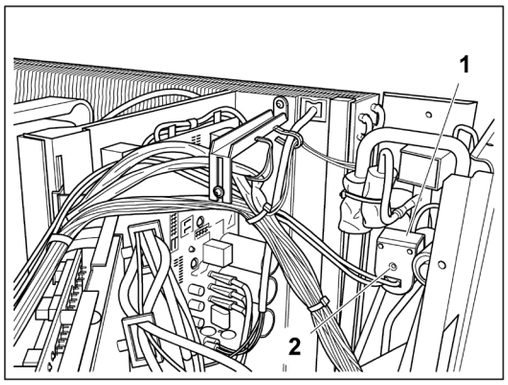
- ***DO NOT touch electrical components while the LED201 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock. Wait until the LED turns off.***

◆ Removing four-way valve coil

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Open the P plate following *Opening electrical box (P plate)*.
3 Disconnect the PCN6 connector on the control PCB of the electrical box.
4 Remove one (1) fixing screw to remove the 4-way valve coil.

1. 4-way valve coil.

2. 4-way valve coil screw.



◆ Removing electronic expansion valve coil

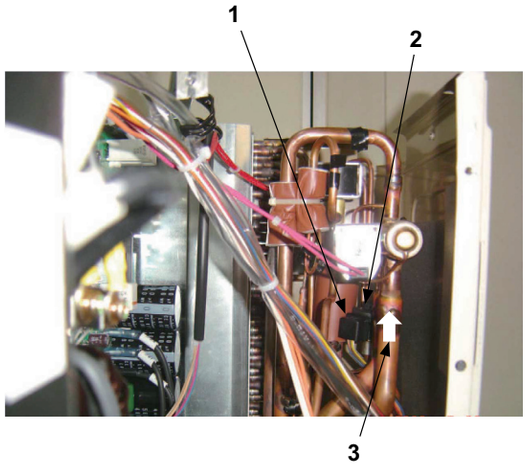
1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Open the P plate following *Opening electrical box (P plate)*.
- Check that the LED201 (red) on DIP-IPM is OFF when the P plate is opened.

3 Disconnect the CN5A connector on the control PCB of the electrical box.
4 Hold the coil of the expansion valve and pull out upward.
The expansion valve coil is equipped with a lock mechanism. Ensure that the coil is locked when replacing.

1. Expansion valve coil.

2. Unlock.

3. Pull out upward.



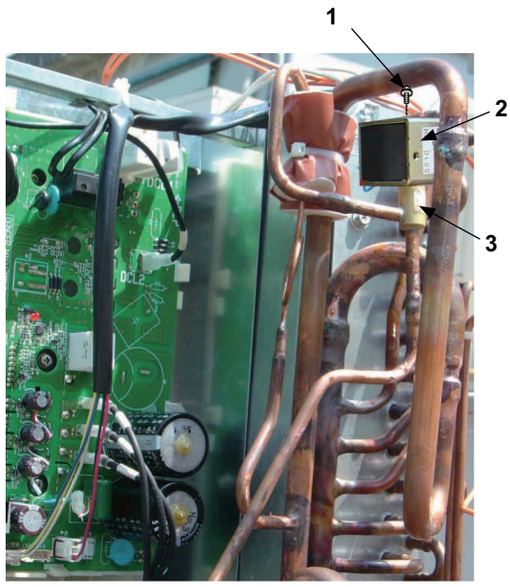
DANGER

DO NOT touch electrical components while the LED1 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock. Wait until the LED turns off.

◆ Removing solenoid valve coil (20A)

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Remove one (1) screw and remove the solenoid valve upward.

1. Solenoid valve coil screw.
2. Solenoid valve coil.
3. Solenoid valve.

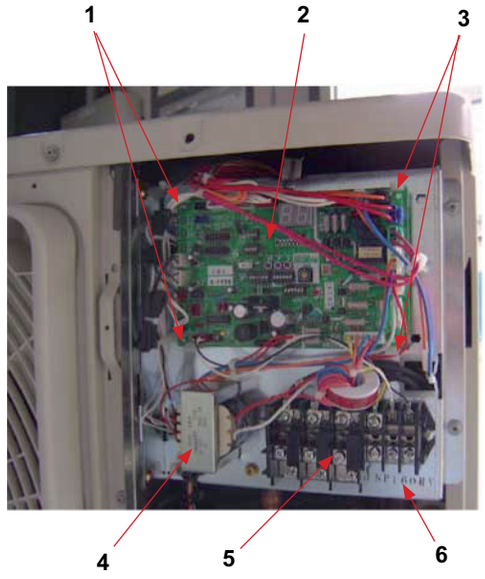


◆ Removing electrical components

Removing control PCB

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Remove all the wiring connected to the control PCB.
3 Move the four (4) holders to the direction marked with the arrow and remove the PCB.

1. Holder.
2. Control PCB.
3. Transformer.
4. Terminal board.
5. P Plate.



DANGER

DO NOT touch the electrical components on the PCB. Pay attention not to bend or apply much force onto PCB in order to avoid PCB failure.

Removing DIP-IPM

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Open the P plate turning counter clockwise approximately 90° following *Opening electrical box (P plate)*.
   - Check that the LED201 (red) on DIP-IPM is OFF when the P plate is opened.

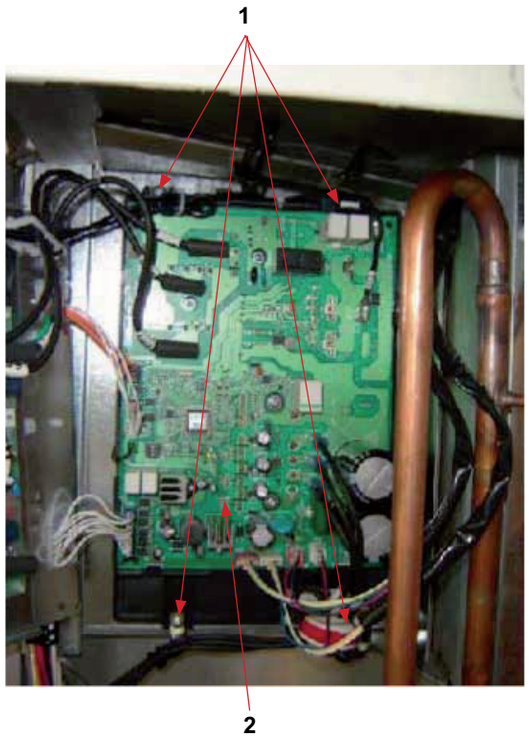
DANGER

- ***DO NOT touch electrical components while the LED1 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock. Wait until the LED turns off.***

3 Remove all the wiring connected on the DIP-IPM.
4 Remove four (4) screws which fix the DIP-IPM.
5 Pull the DIP-IPM to the right viewed from the front of the product. (Remove along with the plastic case and the radiation fin).

1. Four (4) screws.

2. DIP-IPM.



◆ Removing other electrical components

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Open the P plate turning counter clockwise approximately 90° following *Opening electrical box (P plate).*

Check that the LED201 (red) on DIP-IPM is OFF when the P plate is opened.

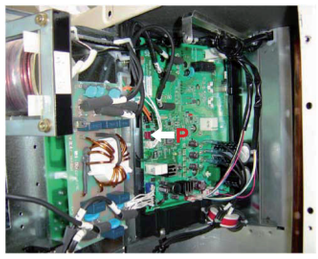
DANGER

- ***DO NOT touch electrical components while the LED1 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock. Wait until the LED turns off***

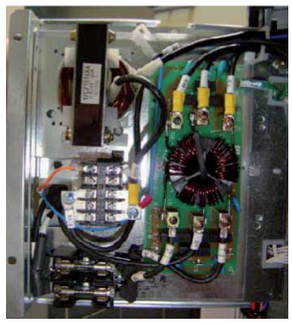
3 Removing Each Electrical Component

- Remove the wiring connected to the electromagnetic contactor.
  (Use a Phillips screwdriver of size #3).
- Remove two (2) fixing screws and remove the electromagnetic contactor.
- Remove four (4) fixing screws and remove the reactor.
- Remove all the wiring connected to the noise filter.
- Hold the upper part of six (6) holders with long nose pliers and remove the noise filter.

To mount components be sure to match the wiring connection with the mark band codes.



View from P



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 235 04/06/2013 18:14:36

10.3.2 Outdoor Units RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

◆ Removing service cover

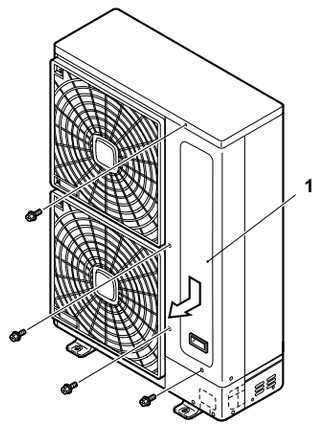
NOTE

- *Follow the procedure below to remove main parts and components. For mounting follow the reverse procedure of removal.*
- *Do not expose the refrigerant cycle to the atmosphere for a long period to avoid moisture or dust entering into the cycle. Be sure to replace parts immediately after removing. Seal the refrigerant cycle when left unattached for a long period.*

1 Remove the four (4) fixing screws slide the service cover downward and remove.

- Pay attention not to fall of the service cover.

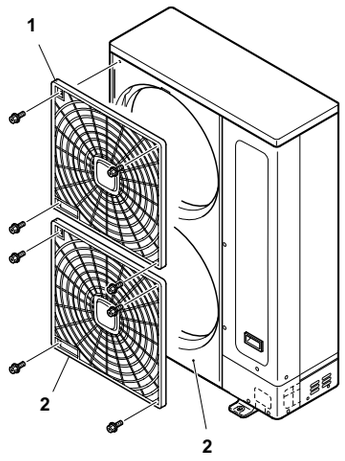
1. Service cover.



◆ Removing air outlet grille

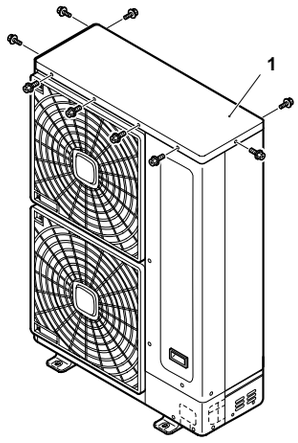
1 Remove the eight (8) fixing screws of the shroud.

1. Air outlet grille.
2. Shroud.



◆ Removing upper cover

1 Remove nine (9) screws fixing the upper cover and remove the upper cover upward.

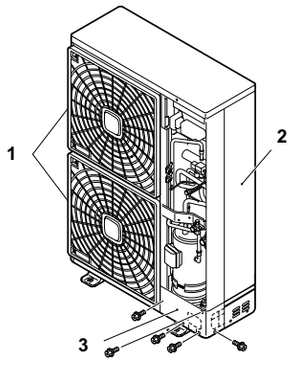


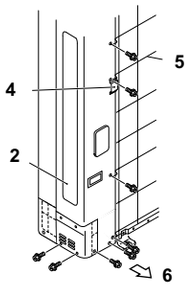
1. Upper cover.

◆ Removing the bottom service cover and rear cover

1 Remove five (5) screws fixing the lower part of service cover and remove the lower part of service cover by pulling towards front side.
2 Remove the upper cover according to the item *Removing upper cover*.
3 Remove eight (8) screws fixing panel and remove the rear panel by pulling in the arrow direction.

1. Air outlet grille.
2. Rear cover.
3. Lower part of service cover.
4. Fixing portion for outdoor temperature thermistor.
5. Air inlet grille (rear side).
6. Pull



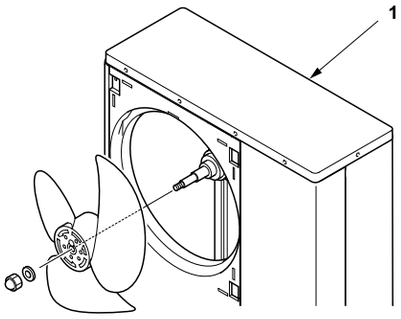


NOTE

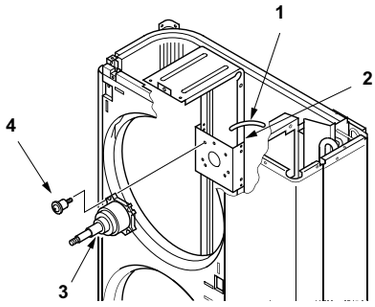
- *DO NOT touch electrical components while the LED1 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock. Wait until the LED turns off.*

◆ Removing outdoor fan motor

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Remove the outlet grille following *Removing air outlet grille*.
3 Remove the upper cover following *Removing upper cover*.
4 To remove the propeller fan remove the cap nut and washer which fix the propeller fan onto the motor shaft. (Use a puller when the propeller fan and motor shaft are fixed too tightly).

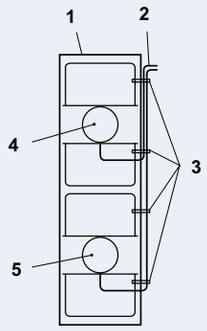


1. Upper cover.



1. Fan motor lead wire.
2. Motor clamp.
3. Fan motor.
4. Screw with spacer.

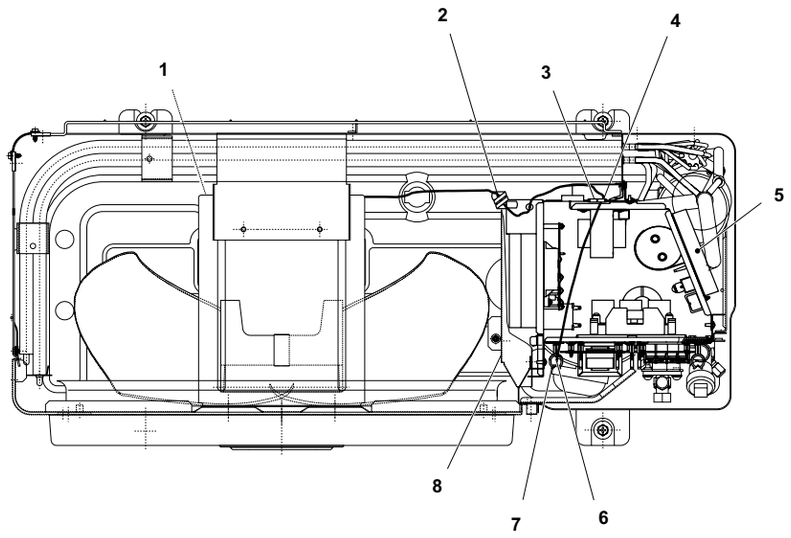
5 Remove the fan motor connector from the PCB3 and PCB5 at the electrical box.
Cut the plastic tie with nippers which fixes the fan motor lead wire onto the motor clamp.
Remove four (4) screws which fix the motor.
6 Reassemble the parts in the reverse order of removing procedures.

Model		RAS-8/10HRNSE
Fan Motor Comp. Nº	DC Fan Motor	PCB5 PCN203 (White) CN201 (White)
	AC Fan Motor	PCB3 PCN404 (White)
Screw for motor fixing.	DC Fan Motor	4 x M6 screw (with spacer)
	AC Fan Motor	4x M6 screws
Motor clamp and wiring fixing position		 1. Motor clamp. 2. Fan motor lead wire. 3. Plastic tie. 4. DC Fan Motor. 5. AC Fan Motor.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 238 04/06/2013 18:14:37

NOTE

1. *The motor lead wires must be through the route as shown in the figure. If not it may cause the disconnection to the fan motor lead wires.*
2. *When mounting the motor ensure the cables point directly downward. Fix the protection tube edge downward to ensure the water may not keep in it.(Adjust the clearance between shroud and propeller fan so that they do not contact.)*
3. *Fix the motor wires onto the motor clamp with a plastic tie to prevent them from obstructing the propeller fans.*
4. *Mounting Propeller Fan.Insert the skidding protection part of fan boss in accordance with the cutting part of the motor shaft and fix the screw after exserting screw part of the shaft. (Tightening Torque of 20 Nm).*
5. *When connecting the motor wire check to ensure that the colors of the connectors on the PCB3 and PCB5 are matched with wires.*

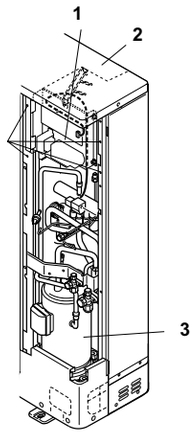


1. Motor clamp.
2. Fix the motor lead wires by the cord clamp.
3. Rubber Bush.
4. Pass the motor lead wires through the square hole of the electrical box.
5. Electrical Box.
6. Pass the motor lead wires through the harness lifter and connect them to the PCB3 (for MOF1) and PCB5 (for MOF2).
7. Harness Lifter.
8. Partition plate.

◆ Removing electrical box

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Remove the upper cover following *Removing upper cover*.
3 Remove four (4) screws which fix the electrical box.
4 Pull up and remove the electrical box.

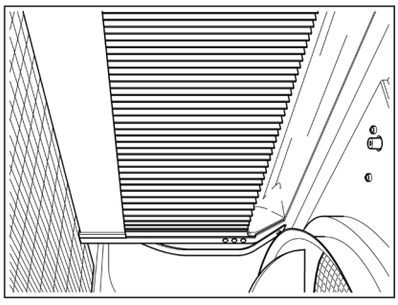
1. Electrical box.
2. Upper cover.
3. Compressor.

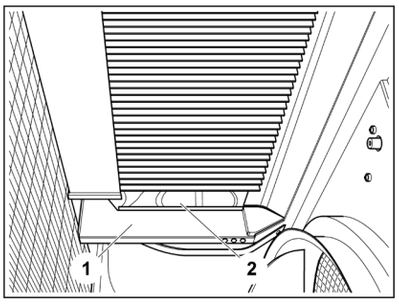


NOTE

- *Wiring must be removed to dismount the electrical box.*
  1. *Remove the 4-way valve coil from the 4-way valve. : Removing four-way valve coil.*
  2. *Remove the expansion valve coil from the expansion valve. : Removing electronic expansion valve coil.*
  3. *Remove the solenoid valve coil from the solenoid valve. : Removing Electronic expansion Valve and Solenoid Valve.*
  4. *Remove the Faston terminals of high pressure switch and the pressure switch for control from the switch body.*
  5. *Remove connectors on the control PCB.*
     - *THM7 (Outdoor Air)*
     - *THM8 (Piping)*
     - *THM9(Compressor-top)*
     - *PCN5(Crankcase Heater)*
  6. *Remove connectors on the DIP-IPM CN202*
  7. *Remove the compressor power wire from the compressor.*
  8. *To remount the electrical box attach the electrical box fitting with the partition plate. (Insert the radiation fin into the U-notch on the partition plate and place the fin on the fan box side. Then attach the electrical box hooking onto the partition plate).*

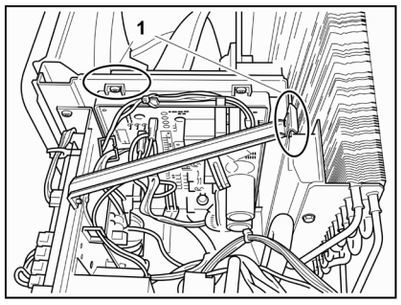
Correct installation





1. Partition Plate.
2. Place the electrical box onto the front fold of the partition plate (see correct installation).

Fan Box



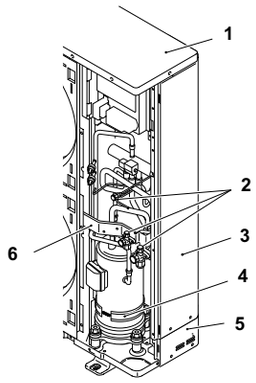
1. Place to hook the part onto the partition plate.

◆ Removing the compressor

1 Remove the service cover upper cover bottom service cover and rear cover following *Removing service cover, Removing upper cover* and *Removing the bottom service cover and rear cover*. When the outdoor unit is installed close to a wall remove the refrigerant piping and move the unit from the wall.
2 Remove the electrical box following *Removing electrical box*.
3 Collect the refrigerant from the check joint.

4 Remove the valve stay.

1. Upper Cover.
2. Check joint.
3. Rear panel.
4. Crankcase heater.
5. Rear pipe cover.
6. Valve stay



5 Open the soundproof cover wrapped around the compressor and remove the terminal box cover of the compressor body. Disconnect the compressor wires in the terminal box and remove the thermistor on top of the compressor. Remove the soundproof cover.

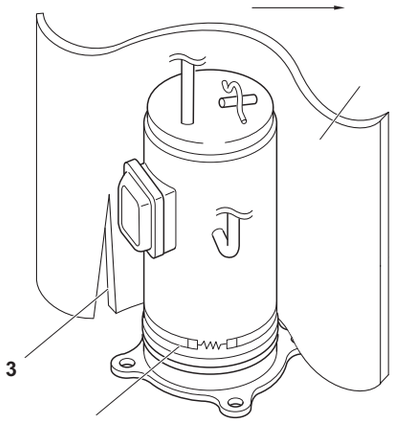
- Check the terminal codes and mark bands when disconnecting the wires. Connecting wires in wrong order at reassembling may result in compressor damage.

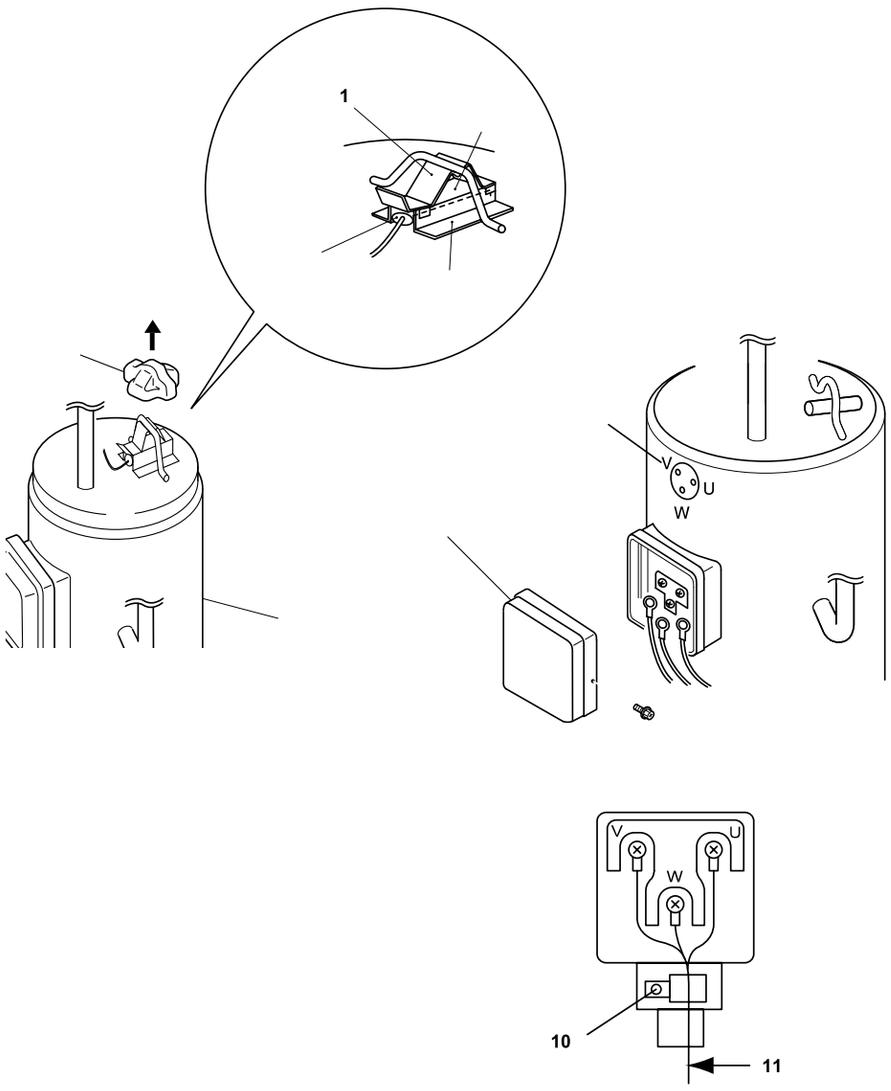
6 Remove the rubber cap and the thermistor attached on top of the compressor.

7 Remove the crankcase heater.

1. Sound-proof cover.
2. Oil heater.
3. Cut part.

A. Direction to remove the cover.





1. Thermistor holder
2. Holder
3. Td Thermistor
4. Thermistor fixing plate
5. Rubber cap Th Thermistor
6. Indication of terminal number
7. Terminal box cover
8. Compressor
9. Compressor wires
10. Fix it with screw
11. Compressor wires (3 wires)

A. Details for compressor terminals

NOTE

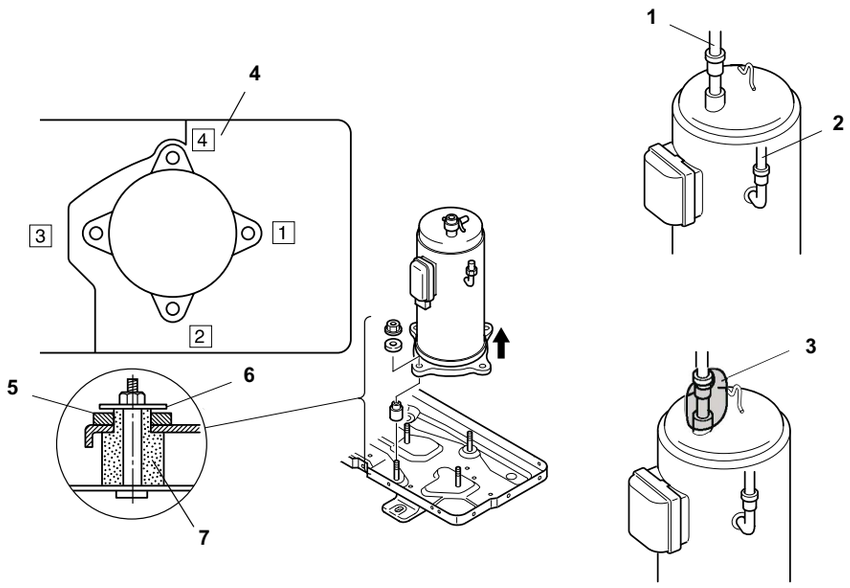
- *Compressor piping must be connected by brazing. MAKE SURE that any flammable material is not around before heating with burner for the oil inside the piping may flame up.*
- *Do not expose the refrigerant cycle to the atmosphere for a long period to avoid moisture or dust into the cycle. Be sure to replace the compressor immediately after removing. Seal the suction and discharge pipes when the refrigerant cycle is left unattached for a long period.*
- *Remove the cap of new compressor right before the replacement. Before mounting the compressor seal the suction and discharge pipes with a tape to protect the compressor from dust. Remove the tape when blazing the pipe.*
- *For piping at reassembling ensure that the compressor terminal numbers and wiring mark band codes are matched. Incorrect wiring numbers may result in inverse rotation and damage of the compressor.*

8 Remove the suction pipe and discharge pipe from the compressor.
- Isolate the wires and electrical components to protect from the burner flame at brazing.

9 Remove two (2) nuts fixing the compressor and remove the compressor from the unit by lifting in the condition of slightly inclining forward.

10 When brazing the replaced compressor quickly perform the brazing while the compressor side piping is cooled with wet cloth in order to avoid the brazing material from entering the compressor. If the brazing material enters the compressor it will lead to compressor failure.

11 Reassemble the parts in the reverse order of removing procedures.
- Tighten the screws (U V and W) for compressor wires with 2.5 Nm.
- Fix the lead wire firmly.



1. Suction pipe.
2. Discharge pipe.
3. Cover pipes with wet cloth.
4. See compressor position table below.
5. Vibration-Proof rubber 2.
6. Nut and washer.
7. Vibration-Proof rubber 1.

NOTE

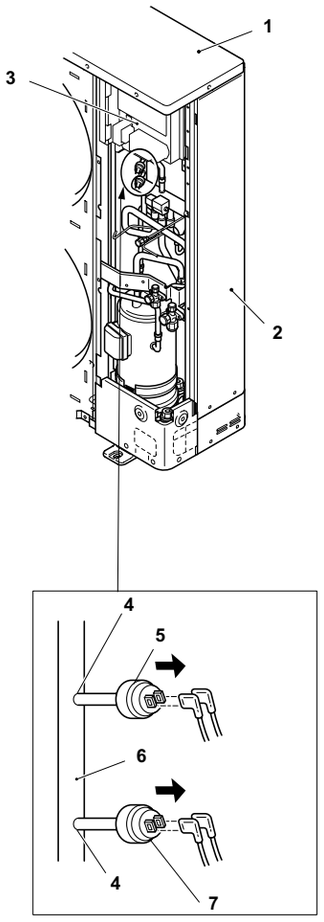
- *Fix the lead wire for the compressor firmly not to contact with metal sheet edge and high temperature piping.*

Fixation of the compressor to the bottom plate				
Compressor position	1	2	3	4
Vibration-proof rubber 1	x	x	x	x
Vibration-proof rubber 2	x	x	—	—
Nut	x	x	—	—

◆ Removing High pressure switch and pressure switch for control

1 Remove the service cover according to the section *Removing service cover*.
2 Collect the refrigerant from the check joint according to the section *Removing the compressor*.
  a. Pull out the Faston terminals.
  b. Remove the high pressure switch (PSH) and pressure switch for control (PSC) from the brazing part of the discharge pipe.

1. Upper cover.
2. Rear cover.
3. Electrical box.
4. Brazing part.
5. Pressure switch for control (PSC).
6. Discharge pipe.
7. High pressure switch (PSH).



NOTE

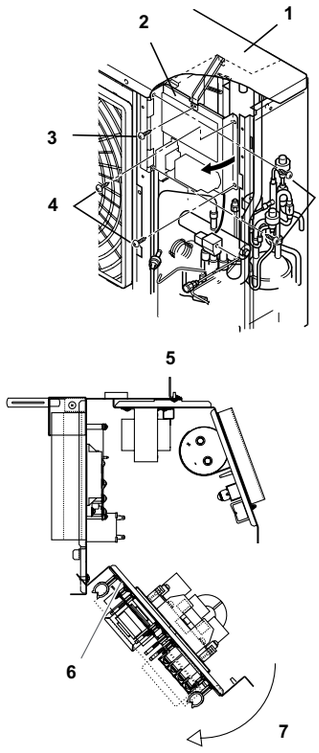
- *The capacitors (CB1 and CB2) are located on the pressure switch.*
- *Pay attention not to touch the capacitors when removing work is performed. If not electrical shock may occur.*

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 244 04/06/2013 18:14:39

◆ Opening electrical box (P-Mounting Plate)

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Remove six (6) screws which fix the electrical box and open the P plate turning counter clockwise approximately 90°.
- Check that the LED201 (red) on the inverter PCB (PCB2) is OFF when opening P-mounting plate.

1. Upper cover.
2. P Plate.
3. Screw.
4. Two (2) screws.
5. Electrical box (view from top).
6. P-Mounting plate.
7. Opening direction of P-Mounting Plate.



DANGER

- ***DO NOT touch electrical components while the LED201 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock. Wait until the LED turns off.***

◆ Removing reversing valve coil

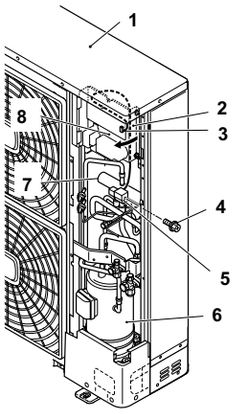
1 Remove the service cover according to the item *Removing service cover*.
2 Check to ensure the LED201 (Red) of the inverter PCB (PCB2) is OFF.

NOTE

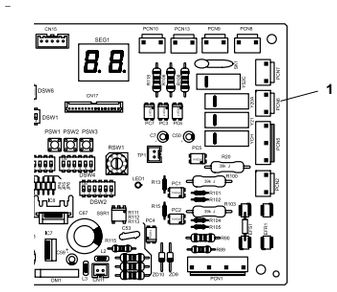
- *DO NOT touch electrical components while the LED201 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock. Wait until the LED turns off.*

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 245 04/06/2013 18:14:39

3 Remove the connector (PCN6) on the control PCB (PCB1) of the electrical box.
4 Remove the reversing valve coil by removing one (1) screw fixing the coil.



1. Upper cover.
2. Power Plate.
3. PCN6.
4. Fixing screw for reversing valve coil.
5. Reversing valve coil.
6. Compressor.
7. Reversing valve.
8. Electrical Box.



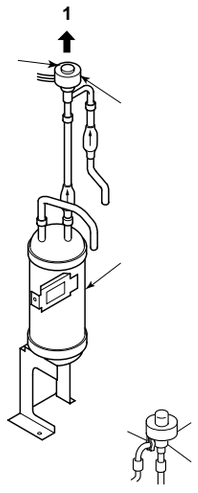
1. PCN6.

◆ Removing electronic expansion valve coil

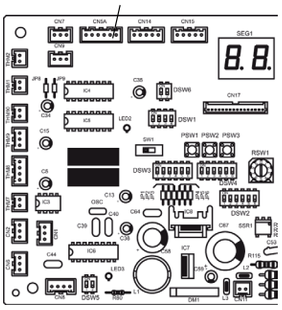
1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Open the P plate following *Opening electrical box (P-Mounting Plate)*.
- Check that the LED201 (red) on DIP-IPM is OFF when the P plate is opened.

3 Disconnect the CN5A connector on the control PCB of the electrical box.
4 Hold the coil of the expansion valve and pull out upward.
The expansion valve coil is equipped with a lock mechanism. Ensure that the coil is locked when replacing.

1. Pull out the electronic expansion valve coil upwards.
2. Release lock.
3. Electronic Expansion Valve Coil.
4. Liquid Tank.
5. Lock Part.
6. Electronic Expansion Valve.



A 1



1. CN5A.

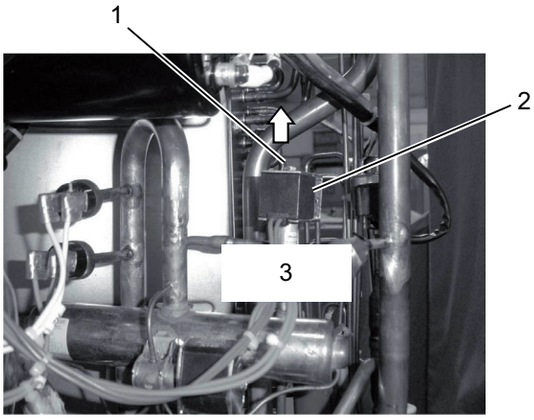
A. PCB1.

NOTE

- *DO NOT touch electrical components while LED1 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock. Wait until the LED turns off.*

◆ Removing solenoid valve coil (20A)

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Open the P-mounting plate. Check to ensure the LED201 (Red) of the inverter PCB (PCB2) is OFF.
3 Pull the solenoid valve coil upwards by removing one (1) screw fixing the coil.



1. Fixing Screw for Solenoid Valve Coil.

2. Solenoid Valve (SVA).

3. Pull it upwards.

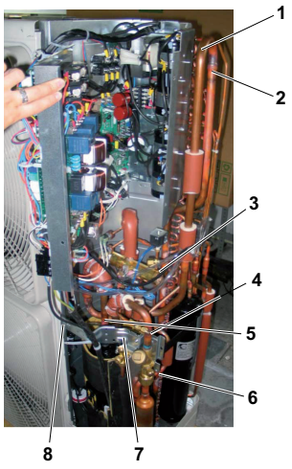
◆ Removing four-way valve coil

1 Remove the service cover and rear service cover according following the *Removing service cover* and the *Removing the bottom service cover and rear cover*.
2 Collect the refrigerant from the check joint following the *Removing the compressor*.
3 Remove the reversing valve coil following the *Removing reversing valve coil*.
4 Remove one (1) fixing screw and a band (RAS-8HRNSE only) for reversing valve assemblies.
5 Remove the valve stay.
6 Remove the reversing valve assemblies from the designated positions. (4 brazing parts)
- Remove the brazing of the reversing valve and the stop valve at gas side by cooling with wet cloth.
- Protect the connecting wires and pipe insulation from brazing frame.

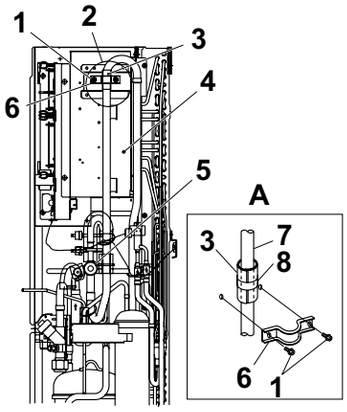
7 Remove the reversing valve from the assemblies.
- Perform the brazing to remove and reassemble the reversing valve by cooling with wet cloth.

8 Reassemble the parts in the reverse order of removing procedures.

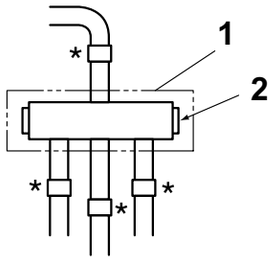
Details for Removing Band



1. Band (RAS-8HRNSE Only)
2. Removing brazing part (Outdoor heat exchange).
3. Reversing Valve.
4. Removing Brazing part (Gas stop valve).
5. Removing Brazing part (Compressor suction pipe).
6. Removing Brazing part (Compressor discharge pipe).
7. Valve stay.
8. Screw.



1. Screw.
2. P.
3. Silicon Plate.
4. Electrical box.
5. Reversing Valve.
6. Band.
7. Pipe.
8. F-Tape.

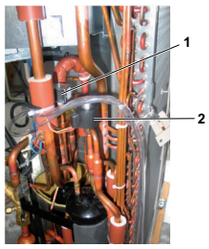


1. Cover by wet cloth.
2. Reversing valve.

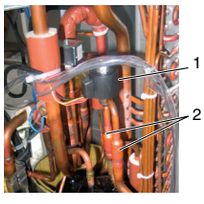
◆ Removing Electronic expansion Valve and Solenoid Valve

1 Remove the service cover and rear cover following the *Removing service cover* and the *Removing the bottom service cover and rear cover*.
2 Collect the refrigerant from the check joint following the *Removing the compressor*.
3 Remove the coil following the *Removing reversing valve coil*.
4 Remove the brazing as show in the figure below.
- Electronic Expansion Valve (MV1): 2 brazing parts.
- Solenoid Valve (SVA): 2 brazing parts.
- Perform the brazing to remove and reassemble the electronic expansion valve by cooling with wet cloth.
- Protect the connecting wires and pipe insulation from brazing flame.

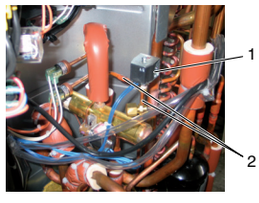
5 Reassemble the parts in the reserve order of removing procedures.



1. Solenoid Valve.
2. Expansion Valve.



1. Expansion valve (MV1)
2. Removing brazing part



1. Solenoid valve (SVA)
2. Removing brazing part

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 248 04/06/2013 18:14:41

◆ Removing electrical components

Removing control PCB (PCB1) and Relay (PCB3 PCB5)

1 Remove the service cover following *Removing service cover*.
2 Remove all the wiring connected to the control PCB.
3 Move the four (4) holders to the direction marked with the arrow and remove the PCB.

Removing Relay PCB (PCB3 PCB5)

1 Remove the service cover following the *Removing service cover*.
2 Disconnect all the wires connected with the relay PCB (PCB3 PCB5).
3 Clamp the middle part of the spacers (4 portions for each relay PCB) with long-nose pliers and remove PCB3 and PCB5 by pulling them out toward front side.

NOTE

- *DO NOT touch the electrical components on the PCB. Pay attention not to bend or apply much force onto PCB in order to avoid PCB failure.*

1: Spacer

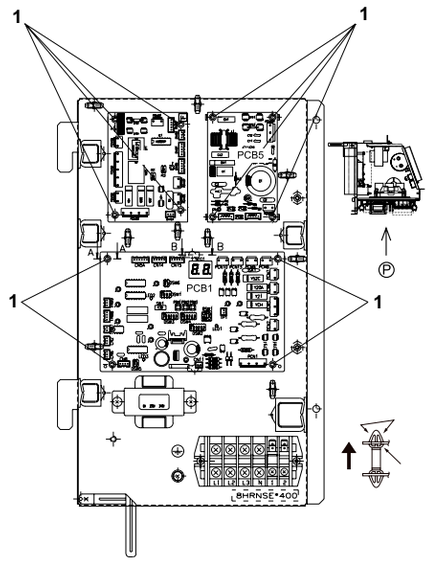
2: Middle Part of Spacer

3: PCB (1 3 5)

A: Enlarged View of P

B: Electrical Box (View from Top)

C: Spacer for PCB (1 3 5)



Removing Inverter Components and Capacitor for AC Fan Motor

1 Remove the service cover following the *Removing service cover*.
2 Open the P-mounting plate by rotating 90 degrees to the left following the *Opening electrical box (P-Mounting Plate)*.
   - Check that the LED201 (red) on DIP-IPM is OFF when the P plate is opened.

DANGER

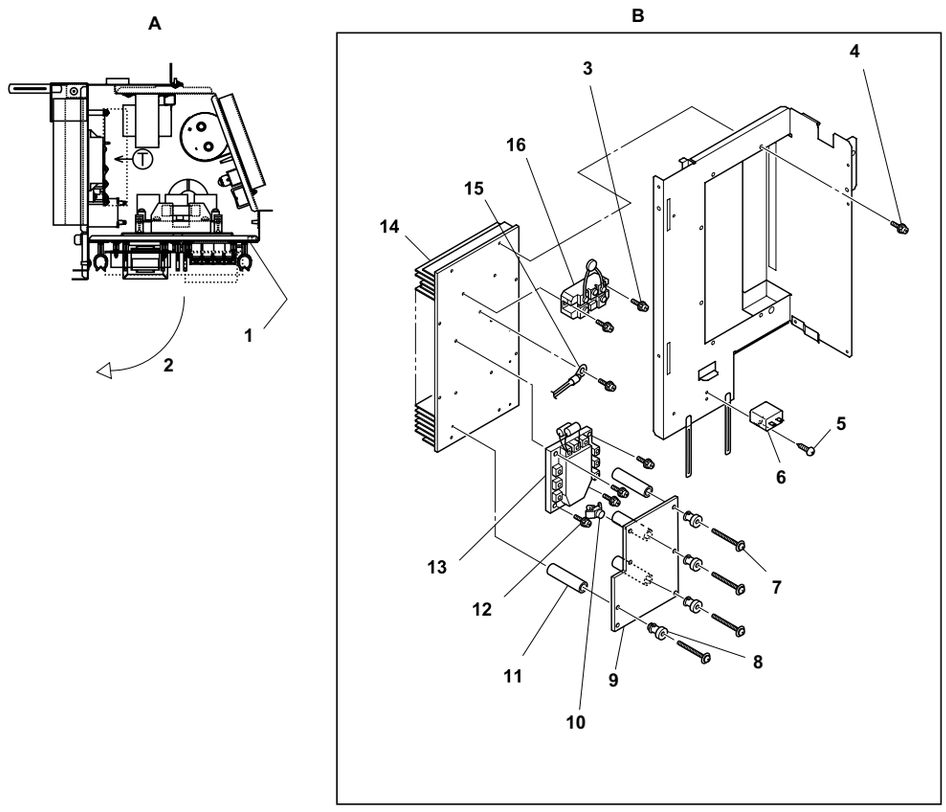
- ***DO NOT touch electrical components while the LED1 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock. Wait until the LED turns off.***

3 Remove inverter components and capacitor for AC fan motor (CA) according to the procedure below and the following figures.

Removing Inverter PCB (PCB2)

1 Disconnect the wirings of connector on the PCB2 as follows.
   - CN2
   - CN206
   - PCN301
   - C

2 Disconnect the wirings of U V and W on the transistor module (IPM).
3 Remove the four (4) M3 screws for the PCB2 and then remove the PCB2 from the transistor module.
4 Remove the bushes and the collars from the PCB2. When remounting attach those bushes and collars.



No.	Part	Quantity
1	P-Mounting Plate	—
2	Opening Direction of P-Mounting Plate	—
3	M5 Screw for Diode Module	2
4	M4 Screw for Radiation Fin	8
5	M4 Screw for CA	1
6	CA	—
7	M3 Screw for PCB2	4
8	Bush for PCB2	4
9	PCB2	—
10	Spacer for PCB2M4	1
11	Collar for PCB2 Transistor	4
12	Screw for IPM	4
13	Module (IPM)	—
14	Radiation Fins	—
15	Fin Thermistor	—
16	Diode Module	—

A: Electrical box (View from Top).

B: Details for view from Top.

Removing Diode Module (DM)

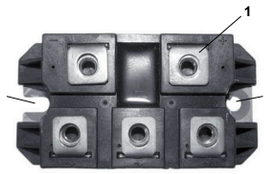
Disconnect all the wirings connected to the diode module as shown below.

1 Disconnect the wirings of terminal + - U V W on the diode module.
2 Remove two (2) M5 fixing screws on the diode module.
3 Remove the diode module from the electrical box.

Check to ensure that the LED201 (Red) of the PCB2 is off.

1: 5 Screws (M5)

2: Fixing screw (M5)



Removing Transistor Module (IPM)

Disconnect all the wirings connected to the transistor module as shown below.

1 Remove PCB2 from IPM according to the procedure of “Removing Inverter PCB (PCB2)”.
2 Disconnect the wirings of P N U V W on the transistor module.
3 Remove four (4) M4 fixing screws on the transistor module.
4 Remove the transistor module from the electrical box.
5 Reassemble the parts in the reverse order of removing order.

1. Screws for PCB2 (M3)

2. Screw (M5)

3. Fixing screws for transistor module (M4)

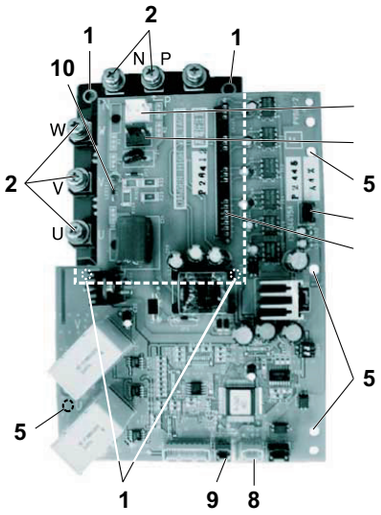
4. Led201

5. Screws for PCB (M3)

6. CN207

7. CN026

8. CN2



Removing Capacitor for AC Fan Motor (CA)

1 Disconnect the wirings of capacitor for AC fan motor (CA).
2 Remove one (1) screw for fixing the capacitor and remove the capacitor

◆ Removing other electrical components

1 Remove the service cover following the *Removing service cover*.
2 Open the P-mounting plate by rotating 90 degrees to the left as show in the *Opening electrical box (P-Mounting Plate)*.
Check to ensure the LED201 (Red) of the inverter PCB (PCB2) is OFF when opening P-mounting plate.

NOTE

- *Do NOT touch the electrical components when the LED201 (Red) is ON to avoid electrical shock.*

3 Remove other electrical components according to the procedure below and the figures are on the next page.

Removing Capacitors (CB1 CB2)

Disconnect all the wirings connected to the capacitors (CB1 CB2).

1 The wire has the polar characters. Identify the wire mark band and the indication on the capacitor when wire connecting.
2 Remove two (2) screws and two (2) saddles fixing the capacitor and remove each capacitor.

Removing Magnetic Contactor (CMC1)

1 Disconnect all the wirings connected to the magnetic contactor (CMC1).
2 Remove two (2) screws fixing the magnetic contactor and remove the magnetic contactor.

Removing Reactor (DCL)

1 Remove four (4) screws fixing the reactor and remove the reactor (DCL).

Removing Resistors (RS1 RS2 R1 R2)

1 Remove one (1) screw fixing the resistor and remove each resistor.

Removing Reverse Phase Relay PCB (PCB4).

1 Remove the four (4) spacers and remove the PCB4.

Removing Noise Filter (NF1)

1 Remove the noise filter by unhooking the top of the holder (6 portions).

Removing Fuse Holders for EF1 and EF2

1 Remove two (2) screws fixing the fuse holders and remove the fuse holders.

NOTE

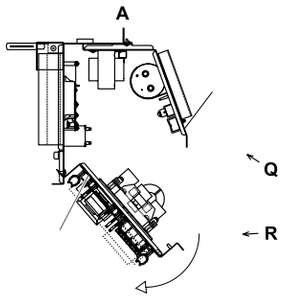
- *Identify terminal Nos. with the mark band Nos. when reassembling to avoid incorrect wiring.*

1: CB-Mounting Plate

2: P-Mounting Plate

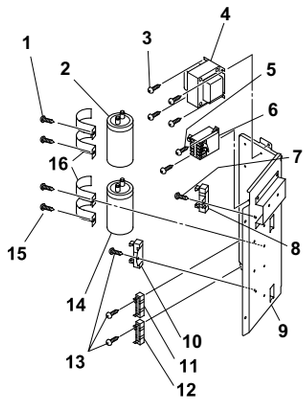
3: Opening Direction of P-Mounting Plate

A: Electrical Box (View from Top)



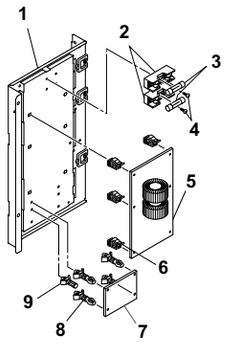
No.	Part	Quantity
1	M4 Screw for CB1	2
2	CB1	—
3	M4 Screw for DLC	4
4	DCL	—
5	M4 Screw for CMC1	2
6	CMC1	—
7	M4 Screw for Resistor	—
8	R1	—
9	CB-Mounting Plate	—
10	R2	—
11	RS1	—
12	RS2	—
13	M4 Screw for Resistor	—
14	CB2	—
15	M4 Screw for CB2	2
16	Saddle	—

Q

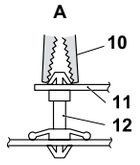


No.	Part	Quantity
1	P-Mounting Plate	—
2	Fuse Holder	—
3	EF1 EF2	—
4	M4 Screw for Fuse Holder	—
5	NF1	—
6	Holder for NF1	6
7	PCB4	—
8	Spacer for PCB4	4
9	Spacer for PCB4	2
10	Long-nose Pliers	—
11	PCB4	—
12	Spacer	—

R



A:



NOTE

- *The removing method for spacer of PCB4 is as follows.*

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 254 04/06/2013 18:14:43

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

11. Troubleshooting

Index

11.1. Initial troubleshooting 256

11.1.1. Checking by means of the 7-segment display 256

11.1.2. Failure of the power supply to the indoor unit and the remote control switch 257

11.1.3. Abnormal transmission between the remote control switch and the indoor unit 258

11.1.4. Abnormal operation of the devices 258

11.2. Troubleshooting procedure 264

11.2.1. On-screen displays during abnormal operation 264

11.2.2. Alarm codes 265

11.2.3. Troubleshooting by alarm code 267

11.2.4. Alarm codes for the KPI (E/H/X)3E Series and DX Interface 332

11.3. Troubleshooting in check mode 333

11.3.1. Troubleshooting using the remote controller PC-ART 333

11.3.2. Troubleshooting using the remote controller PC-ARF 343

11.3.3. Troubleshooting using the 7-segment display for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 348

11.3.4. Troubleshooting using the 7-segment display for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 356

11.3.5. Troubleshooting by means of the flashing alarm LEDs for RPK-FSN2M (only for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 360

11.3.6. Cause of inverter stoppage for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 361

11.4. Checking procedure for main parts for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E 365

11.4.1. Procedure for checking the DIP-IPM inverter for indoor and outdoor units 365

11.4.2. Checking capacitors CB1 & CB2. 368

11.4.3. Fault diagnosis of DC fan motor. 370

11.4.4. Checking procedure for the electronic expansion valve for indoor and outdoor units 371

11.4.5. Checking procedure for other parts 371

11.5. Checking procedure for main parts for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE 374

11.5.1. Self-checking procedure of PCB by means of the Remote Control Switch 374

11.5.2. Self-checking of the remote control switch 376

11.5.3. Self-Checking procedure of the Indoor Unit PCB (only for RPK) 378

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 255 04/06/2013 18:14:43

11.1 Initial troubleshooting

11.1.1 Checking by means of the 7-segment display

◆ Simple checking procedure by means of the 7-segment display

1 Turn on all the indoor units which are connected to the outdoor unit.
2 Turn on the outdoor unit
3 Auto-addressing starts. (Outdoor unit printed circuit board PCB1).

During the auto-addressing, you can check the following items by means of the 7-segment display of the outdoor unit.

- Disconnection of the power supply to the Indoor Unit.
- Disconnection of the operating line between the outdoor and the indoor units.
- Duplication of the Indoor Unit number.
- **Normal case:**
  The 7-segment display of the outdoor unit is not indicated.
- **Abnormal case:**
  If there is something wrong, the 7-segment display of the outdoor unit displays the following indications:

Cause	Indication	Remarks
A. The indoor units are not supplied with power.	03	continues to flash after 30 seconds.
B. Disconnection of the operating line between the outdoor units and the indoor units.	03	continues to flash after 30 seconds.
C. Duplicated settings of the indoor unit number on the rotary switch RSW (Refer to the section *Troubleshooting by alarm code*, for the description of the alarm code “35”).	35	—

11.1.2 Failure of the power supply to the indoor unit and the remote control switch

- **The LED and the LCD are not indicated.**
- **Not operated**

If the fuses are blown out or a breaker is activated, investigate the cause of the overcurrent and take the necessary action.

Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Power failure or power is not ON		Measure the voltage by means of the voltmeter	Supply the power
Blown out fuse or activation of the breaker at the power source	Short circuit supplied between the wires	Check for any uncovered part of the wires	Remove the cause of the short circuit and replace the fuse
	Short circuit of the wires to earth	Measure the insulation resistance	Remove the cause of the short circuit and replace the fuse
	Failure of indoor unit fan motor	Measure resistance between wires and insulation resistance	Replace the fan motor and fuse
Blown out fuse at the control circuit	Short circuit supplied between the wires	Check for any uncovered part of the wires	Remove the cause of the short circuit and replace the fuse
	Short circuit of the control circuit to earth	Measure the insulation resistance	Remove the cause of the short circuit and replace the fuse
	Failure of indoor unit fan motor	Measure the insulation resistance	Remove the cause of the short circuit and replace the fuse
Failure of the transformer at the indoor unit side		Measure the voltage at the secondary side	Replace the transformer
Disconnected cable of the remote control switch		Connect the cable	Replace the cable or repair the cable
Insufficient contacting at the connectors of the remote control switch	Insufficient connection or incorrect connection of the indoor unit PCB	Check the connectors	Correctly connect the connector
	Insufficient connection or incorrect connection of the indoor unit PCB in the remote control switch		
Failure of the remote control switch		Check the remote control switch by means of the self-check mode *1)	Replace the remote control switch if it failed
Failure of PCB	Unconnected wires to PCB	Check the connectors	Correctly connect the wires
	Failure of PCB	Check PCB by means of the self-check mode *2)	Replace PCB if it failed
Incorrect wiring connection		Take action according to the procedure that is displayed in “TEST RUN”	

NOTE

- **1): Refer to section Self-checking of the remote control switch.*
- **2): Refer to section Self-checking procedure of PCB by means of the Remote Control Switch.*

11.1.3 Abnormal transmission between the remote control switch and the indoor unit

- **RUN LED on the remote control switch:**

Flickering every 2 seconds.

Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Disconnection or insufficient contacting of the remote control cable		Check the cable and the connections	Repair the cable or connect the cable
Failure of the remote control switch		Check the remote control switch by means of the self-check mode *1)	Replace the remote control switch if the remote control switch is faulty
Failure of PCB (in the indoor unit and the remote control switch)	Disconnected wire to PCB	Check the connectors	Correctly connect the wires
	Failure of PCB	Check PCB by means of the self-check mode *2)	Replace PCB if it failed

NOTE

- **1): Refer to section Self-checking of the remote control switch.*
- **2): Refer to section Self-checking procedure of PCB by means of the Remote Control Switch.*

11.1.4 Abnormal operation of the devices

Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
RUN LED is ON and the LCD is indicated. However, the system does not operate (For example, the indoor fan, the outdoor fan or the compressor does not operate)	Failure of the indoor unit fan motor	Disconnected coil	Measure the coil resistance by means of the tester	Replace the Indoor unit fan motor
		Burnt-out coil	Measure the insulation resistance	
	Failure of the outdoor unit fan motor	Disconnected coil	Measure the coil resistance by means of the tester	Replace the outdoor unit fan motor
		Burnt-out coil	Measure the insulation resistance	
	Failure of the magnetic switch for the outdoor unit fan motor	Insufficient contacting	Measure the voltage between the contacting parts	Replace PCB for the outdoor unit
	Failure of the comp. motor		Measure the resistance between two wires	Replace the compressor
	Failure of the comp.		Check for an abnormal sound from the Comp.	
	Failure of the magnetic switch for comp.	Insufficient contacting	Check that the magnetic switch activates correctly or not	Replace the magnetic switch
	Failure of one of PCBs	Disconnected wiring to PCB	Check the connections	Correctly connect the wiring
		Failure of PCB	Check PCB by means of the self-check mode *1)	Replace PCB if it failed

Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
The Comp. does not stop or start even if the setting temperature on the LCD changes to *3)	Failure of air inlet thermistor	Failure of thermistor	Check it by self-checking *2)	Replace or correctly connect the wires if Abnormal Operation exists
		Disconnection of thermistor		
	Abnormal operation of the remote control switch cord			
	Failure of the indoor unit PCB		Check PCB by means of the self-check mode *1)	Replace PCB if it failed
	Incorrect optional setting		Check the setting condition of "remote control thermostat" by means of the optional setting Setting and control: "00": Control by means of the indoor thermistor for the suction air "01": Control by means of the thermostat of the remote control switch "02": Control by means of the average value of the indoor thermistor for the suction air and the thermostat of the remote control switch	If the thermostat of the remote control switch is not used, set at "00"
	Incorrect Input/Output setting		Check setting condition of "i1" and "i2" by Input/Output setting. * Setting and Control: "01": Room thermostat (Cooling) "02": Room thermostat (Heating)	In case that room thermostat is not used, set for input signal actually used. If no signal is used, set at "00"
Indoor fan speed does not change	Failure of the Discharge Air Temp. Thermistor	Failure of the Thermistor	Check the Thermistor by means of the self-check mode *2)	Replace or Correctly connect the wiring when it is abnormal
		Disconnected Wire of the Thermistor		
	Failure of the Remote Control Switch		Check it by means of the self-check mode *1)	Replace if it failed
	Failure of PCB for the indoor unit			Replace if PCB fails
No defrost operation mode is available during the heating process or the defrost operation continues	Failure of thermistor for outdoor evaporating temp. during heating	Failure of thermistor	Replace or correctly connect when it is abnormal	
		Disconnected wire of thermistor		
	Failure of 4-way valve	Disconnected 4-way valve coil	Measure the resistance of coil	Replace the 4-way valve
		Incorrect activation of 4-way valve	Enforced power supply	
	Disconnected control wires between indoor unit and outdoor unit		Check the connectors	Correctly connect the wiring
	Failure of the outdoor units of PCB	Disconnected wiring to PCB	Check the connectors	Correctly connect the wiring
		Failure of PCB	Check PCB by means of the self-check mode *1)	Replace PCB when the check mode is not available
	Failure of the Indoor Unit of PCB	Disconnected wiring to PCB	Check the connectors	Correctly connect the wiring
		Failure of the PCB	Check PCB by means of the self-check mode *1)	Replace if PCB fails
The LED and the LCD on the remote control switch remain ON	Failure of PCB in the indoor unit or the remote control switch			

Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Insufficient cooling process	Indoor cool load is greater than the cooling capacity		Calculate the cool load	Use a bigger unit
	Excessively low suction pressure	Gas leakage or shortage of refrigerant	Measure superheat	Correctly charge the refrigerant after repairing the gas leakage
		Excessively small diameter tube or long piping	Measure and check the field-supplied pipes	Use the correct pipes
		Incorrect activation of the check valve of the outdoor unit	Check whether or not the temp. difference exists before/after the check valve	Replace the check valve for the outdoor unit
		Failure or malfunction of the expansion valve	Check for clogging	Remove the clogging
			Check the connection cord and the connector	Replace the connector
			Is there an operation sound from the coil?	Replace the coil
			Is the thermistor on the compressor normal?	Replace the thermistor
			Is the thermistor installed correctly on compressor?	Correctly install the thermistor
		Clogged strainer in the indoor unit; clogging at the low pressure piping	Check the temp. difference at the inlet and the outlet of the strainer	Replace the strainer in the indoor unit
		Clogging at the low pressure piping	Check the temp. difference	Remove the clogging
		Insufficient air flow to the indoor unit heat exchanger	Check for clogged air filter	Clean the air filter
			Check for an obstacle at the inlet or the outlet	Remove the obstacles
		Excessively low air temp. to the indoor unit heat exchanger	Insufficient speed of the indoor unit fan motor?	Replace the fan motor
			Short-circuited indoor unit air?	Remove the cause of the short-circuited air

Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Insufficient cooling process	Excessively high discharge pressure	Insufficient air flow to the outdoor unit heat exchanger	Clogging of the outdoor unit heat exchanger?	Remove the clogging
			Obstacles at the inlet or the outlet of the outdoor unit heat exchanger	Remove the obstacles
			Is the service area for the outdoor unit sufficient?	Secure the service area
			Correct fan speed?	Replace the fan motor
		Excessively high air temp. to the outdoor unit heat exchanger	Short-circuited air to the outdoor unit?	Remove the cause of the short-circuited air
			Any other heat load near the outdoor unit?	Remove the heat source
		Excessively charged refrigerant	Expansion valve opening	Correctly charge the refrigerant
		Non-condensate gas in cycle	Check each temp. and each pressure	Charge the refrigerant after the vacuum pumping
		Clogging of the discharge piping	Check for clogging	Remove the clogging
		Failure or malfunction of the expansion valve	Check for clogging	Remove the clogging
			Check the connection cord and the connector	Replace the connector
			Is there an operation sound from the coil?	Replace the coil
			Is the thermistor on the compressor normal?	Replace the thermistor
			Is the thermistor installed correctly on the compressor?	Correctly install the thermistor
	Malfunction or internal leakage of the 4-way valve		Check the temp. difference at the inlet and the outlet of the 4-way valve	Replace the 4-way valve
	Excessively low suction pressure	Malfunction or internal leakage of the 4-way valve	Check the Temp. Difference between the Inlet and the Outlet of 4-Way Valve	Replace the 4-way valve
		Failure of solenoid valve for bypass	Check refrigerant leakage of solenoid valve	Replace solenoid valve
	Discharge temp. of the indoor unit is unstable		Check the expansion valve of the indoor unit in the same system	Replace the failed expansion valve of the indoor unit

Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Insufficient heating process	Indoor heat load is greater than the heating capacity		Calculate the heat load	Replace the unit with a bigger unit
	Excessively low suction pressure	Gas leakage or insufficient refrigerant charge	Measure superheat	Correctly charge the refrigerant after the gas leakage check and repairing
		Excessively small diameter or long piping	Measure the field supplied piping	Use the specified pipes
		Failure or malfunction of the expansion valve	Check for clogging	Remove the clogging
			Check the connection cord and the connector	Replace the connector
			Is there an operation sound from the coil?	Replace the coil
			Is the thermistor on the compressor normal?	Replace the thermistor
			Is the thermistor installed correctly on compressor?	Correctly install the thermistor
		Clogging of I.U./O.U. strainer	Check the temp. difference between the inlet and the outlet of strainer	Replace the strainer for the outdoor unit or the indoor unit
		Clogging of suction piping	Check the temp. difference of each part	Remove the clogging
		Insufficient air flow through the outdoor unit heat exchanger	Is the outdoor unit heat exchanger clogged?	Remove the clogging
			Are there any obstacles at the inlet or the outlet of outdoor unit?	Remove the obstacles
			Is the service area for the outdoor unit sufficient?	Secure a sufficient service area
			Check the speed of the outdoor unit fan	Replace the fan motor
		Excessively low air temp. through the outdoor unit heat exchanger	Check for any short-circuited air to the outdoor unit	Remove the cause of the short-circuited air
		Defrosting is insufficiently completed	Check the thermistor for the defrost operation	Replace the thermistor for the defrost operation
	Excessively high discharge pressure	Insufficient air flow to the indoor unit heat exchanger	Check the filter for a clogging	Remove the clogging
			Check for any obstacles at the inlet or the outlet of the indoor unit	Remove the obstacles
			Check the indoor fan speed	Replace the fan motor
		Excessively high air temp. to the indoor unit heat exchanger	Check whether or not the short-circuited air exists	Remove the cause of the short-circuited air
		Excessively charged refrigerant	Check the refrigerant quantity *4)	Correctly charge the refrigerant
		Non-condensate gas in ref. cycle	Check the refrigerant quantity *4)	Recharge the refrigerant after the vacuum pumping
		Clogging of the discharge pr. piping	Check for clogging	Remove the clogging
	Malfunction or internal leakage of the 4-way valve		Check the temp. difference at the inlet and the outlet of the 4-way valve	Replace the 4-way valve
	Malfunction of the check valve of the outdoor unit		Check the temp. difference at the inlet and the outlet of the check valve	Replace the check valve
	Excessively high suction pressure	Malfunction or internal leakage of 4-way valve	Check the temp. difference at the inlet and the outlet of the 4-way valve	Replace the 4-way valve
	Discharge temp. of the indoor unit is unstable		Check the expansion valve of the indoor unit in the same system	Replace the failed expansion valve of the indoor unit

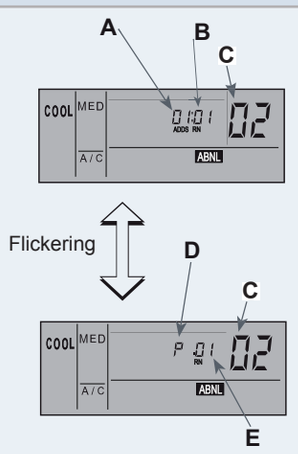
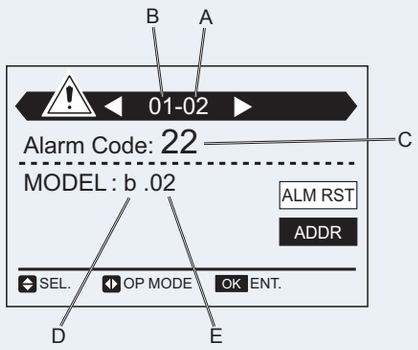
Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Cooling or heating process with an abnormal sound	Foreign particles inside of the fan casing		Visually inspect it	Remove the foreign particles
	Indoor unit fan runner is hitting the casing		Visually inspect it	Adjust the position of the fan runner
	Outdoor unit propeller fan is hitting the shroud		Visually inspect it	Adjust the position of the propeller fan
	Abnormal sound from the compressor	Faulty Installation	Check that each part is tightly fixed	Tightly fix each part
		Liquid ref. compression	Adjust the suction gas temp. and pressure	Ensure superheat
		Wear or breakage of the internal comp. parts	Abnormal Sound from the Inside of the Compressor	Replace the compressor
		No heating by the oil heater	Check the Resistance (Oil Heater, Fuse)	Replace the oil heater or the fuse
	Humming sound from the magnetic conductor		Check the surface of the contacts	Replace the magnetic switch
	Abnormal vibration of the cabinets		Check each fixing screw	Tightly fix each screw
Outdoor fan does not operate when the compressor operates	Obstacle at the outdoor fan		Check the obstacles	Remove the obstacles
	Watching condition for the heating process		Wait for the switching of the 4-Way Valve (1 ~ 3 minutes)	If the 4-Way Valve does not switch, check for insufficient refrigerant
Indoor fan does not operate when the compressor operates	Discharge pressure does not increase higher than 1.5 Mpa due to the insufficient refrigerant		Check the operation pressure *5)	Add the refrigerant
	Disconnected Wiring for the Indoor Fan		Check the wiring	Connect the wiring correctly

NOTE

- **1): Refer to section Self-checking of the remote control switch.*
- **2): Refer to section Self-checking procedure of PCB by means of the Remote Control Switch.*
- **3): Even if the remote control switches are normal, the compressor does not operate under the following conditions:*
  1. *Indoor temp. is lower than 21 °C or outdoor temp. Is lower than -5 °C during the cooling process (DB).*
  2. *Indoor temp. is higher than 27 °C (DB) or outdoor temp. is higher than 15 °C (WB) during the heating process.*
  3. *When a cooling (or heating) process signal is given to the outdoor unit and a different mode as heating (or cooling) process signal is given to the indoor units.*
  4. *When an emergency stop signal is given to outdoor unit.*
- **4): Refer to chapter Piping work and refrigerant charge.*
- **5): Refer to chapter Test run.*

11.2 Troubleshooting procedure

11.2.1 On-screen displays during abnormal operation

PC-ART	PC-ARF
	

Abnormal operation can be produced due to the following reasons:

◆ **Malfunction**

The RUN (red) indicator flashes.

The ALARM indicator appears on the liquid crystal display.

The screen also displays the following items:

- A: indoor unit address.
- B: Refrigerant cycle number.
- C: Alarm code.
- D: Model code.

Model code	
Indication	**Model**
H	Heat pump
P	Inverter
F	Multi (SET-FREE)
C	Cooling only
E	Other
b	IVX, individual operation
L	KPI

- E: If there are various indoor units connected, the above mentioned information is shown for each one of them.

◆ **Power supply failure.**

All displays disappear.

If the unit stops due to a power shortage, it will not start again, even though the power comes back on. Carry out the start-up operations again.

If the power failure lasts less than 2 seconds, the unit will start again automatically.

◆ **Electrical noise**

The displays can disappear from the screen and the unit can stop. This is because the microcomputer has been activated to protect the unit from electrical noise.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 264 04/06/2013 18:14:44

11.2.2 Alarm codes

Code No.	Category	Type of Abnormality	Main cause
01	Indoor unit	Activation of protection device (float switch)	Failure of fan motor, drain discharge, PCB, relay, float switch activated.
02	Outdoor unit	Activation of protection device (high pressure cut)	Activation of PSH, locked motor, abnormal operation in the power supply phase.
03	Transmission	Abnormality between indoor (or outdoor) and outdoor (or indoor) units	Incorrect wiring. Loose terminals, Failure of PCB. Tripping of fuse. Power supply OFF.
04		Abnormal operation between inverter and control PCB	Transmission failure between inverter PCBs
05	Power supply	Abnormal power supply	Power source with abnormal wave pattern.
06	Voltage drop	Voltage drop due to excessively low or high voltage in outdoor unit	Voltage drop in power supply. Incorrect wiring or insufficient capacity of power supply wiring.
07	Cycle	Drop in discharge gas overheating	Excessive refrigerant charge. Expansion valve lock open.
08		Increase in discharge gas temperature	Insufficient refrigerant charge, refrigerant leakage. Expansion valve closed or clogged.
11	Sensor in indoor unit	Inlet air thermistor	Failure of thermistor, sensor, connection.
12		Outlet air thermistor	
13		Anti-freeze thermistor	
14		Gas pipe thermistor	
16		Remote thermistor	
17		Remote control switch thermistor	
19		Protection device for fan motor is triggered	Failure of fan motor
20	Outdoor unit sensor	Compressor thermistor	Failure of thermistor, sensor, connection.
22		Outside air thermistor	
24		Evaporation thermistor	
31	System	Incorrect setting of outdoor and indoor units	Incorrect setting of capacity code.
35		Incorrect setting of indoor unit number	Duplication of indoor unit number.
38		Abnormality of protective circuit in outdoor unit	Failure of indoor unit PCB; incorrect wiring; connection to indoor unit PCB.
41	Pressure	Cooling overload (possible activation of high pressure device)	O.U. pipe thermistor temp. is higher than 55 ºC and the compressor top temp. is higher than 95 ºC, O.U. protection device is activated.
42		Heating overload (high-pressure device may be activated)	If I.U. freeze protection thermistor temp. is higher than 55 ºC and compressor top temp. is higher than 95 ºC, O.U. protection device is activated.
47		Activation of protection device for low pressure drop	Stoppage due to excessive decrease of evaporating temperature (Temp < -37 ºC) is activated 3 times in one hour, motor locked in heating mode.
48	Inverter	Activation of overcurrent protection	Overload, overcurrent. Failure of DIP IPM, IPM or PCB2, heat exchanger clogged, locked compressor.
51		Abnormality in inverter current sensor	Incorrect wiring of current sensor. Failure of control PCB or Inverter PCB.
53		Activation for protection of Inverter	Inverter PCB abnormality. Compressor failure, heat exchanger clogged.
54		Abnormality of inverter fin temperature	Abnormal inverter fin thermistor Heat exchanger clogged. Abnormal outdoor fan.
55		Abnormality of inverter module	Failure of Inverter PCB.
57	Outdoor fan	Fan motor abnormality	Disconnected wire or incorrect wiring between control PCB and inverter PCB. Incorrect wiring or abnormality in fan motor.

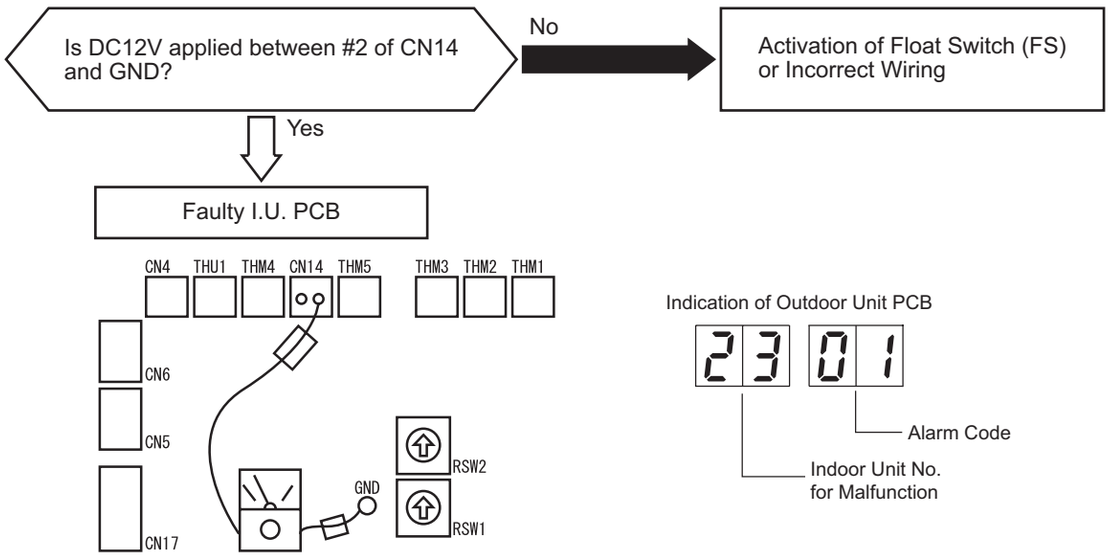
Code No.	Category	Type of Abnormality	Main cause
EE	Compressor	Compressor protection alarm	Compressor failure.
b0	IU capacity setting	Incorrect setting of unit capacity	No setting of unit capacity or incorrect setting of unit capacity
b1	IU No.Setting	Incorrect unit no. setting	Over 64 indoor units, setting by no. or indoor unit address.
b5		Incorrect setting of indoor unit number for H-LINK type	Connected indoor units not supporting H-LINK II ≥ 17.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 266 04/06/2013 18:14:44

11.2.3 Troubleshooting by alarm code

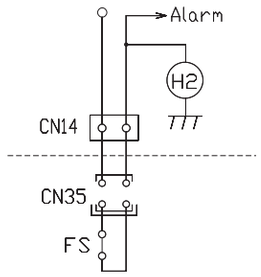
Alarm code	01	Activation of the safety device in the indoor unit

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
- The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the contact between #1 and #2 of CN14 is not closed over 120 seconds during the cooling process, the heating process or the fan operation.



If all the above checks have been overcome, see the status of the following item:

- Check if float switch (FS) connected to the CN14 is open/activated by using a tester.



CN14: Safety devices line scheme

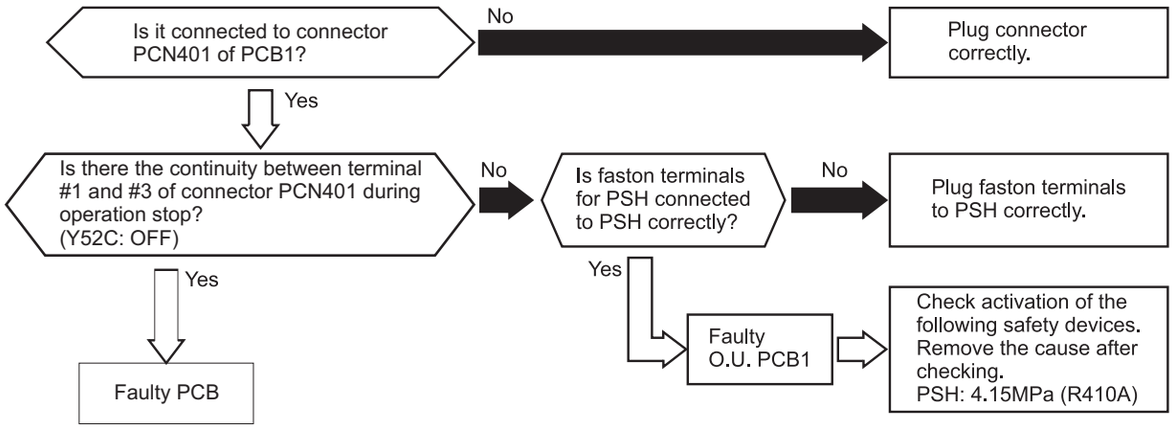
Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Activation of the float switch	High Drain Level	Clogging of the drainage	Check the drain pan	Remove the clogged foreign particles
	Faulty float switch	Fault	Check the continuity when the drain level is low	Replace the float switch if faulty
		Faulty contacting	Measure the resistance by means of the tester	Fix the looseness and Replace the connector
		Faulty connection	Check the connections	Repair the connection
Faulty indoor unit PCB			Check PCB by means of the self-check mode *1)	Replace PCB if faulty

NOTE

- **1): Refer to section Self-checking procedure of PCB by means of the Remote Control Switch.*
- *Alarm code “01” is not displayed at the RPK series.*

Alarm code	02	Activation of the safety device (high pressure switch) in the outdoor unit (Except Alarm codes 41 and 42) (For 3HP)

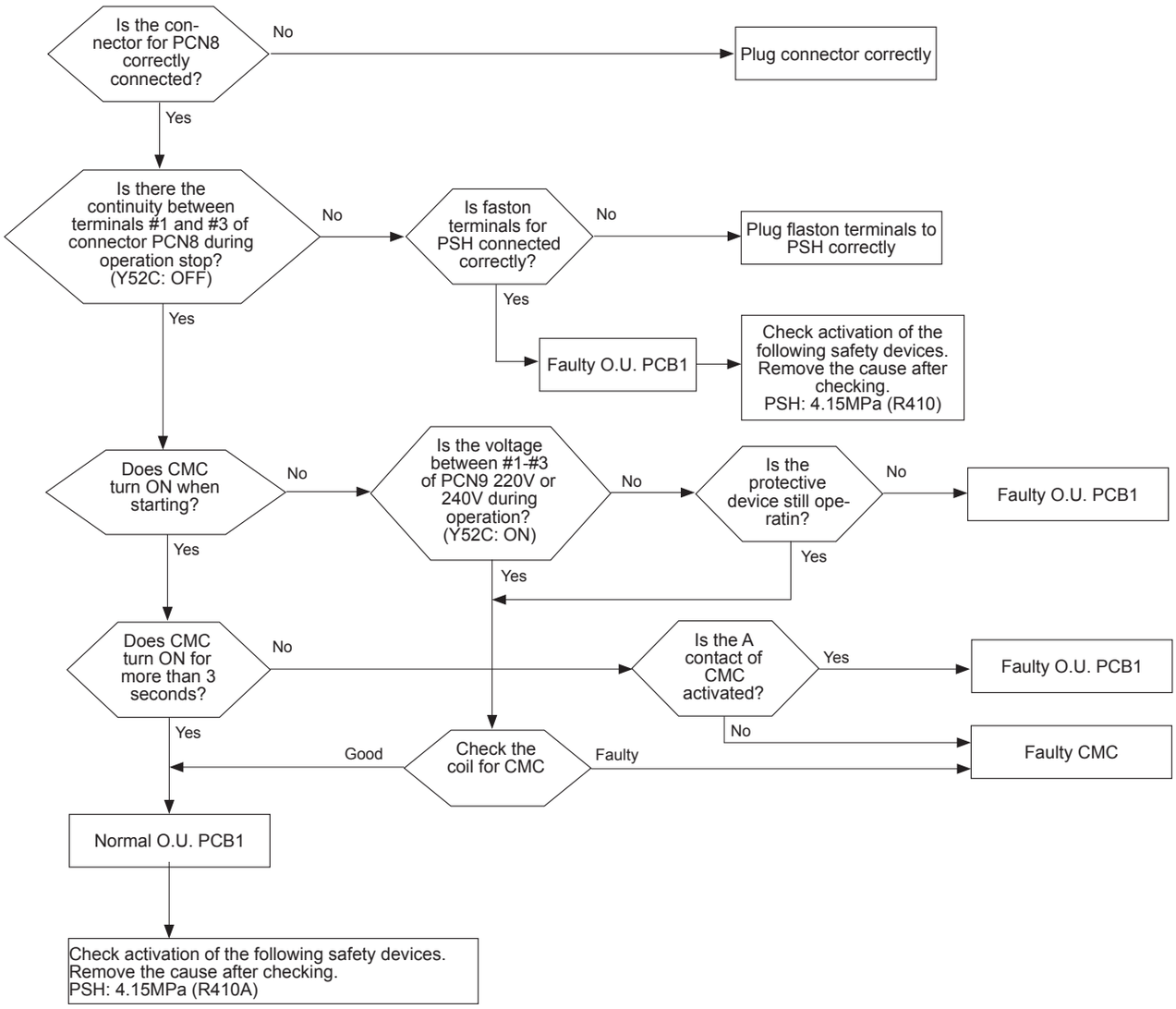
- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm is indicated when one of safety devices is activated during compressor running.



Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Activation of the high-pressure switch due to the excessively high discharge pressure (PSH)	Insufficient Air Flow to the Heat Exchanger (Outdoor Heat Exchanger during the Cooling Process or Indoor Heat Exchanger during the Heating Process)		Check the heat exchanger for dust or for clogging	Remove the dust or the clogging
			Check the air filter for dust	Remove the dust
			Check for any obstacles at the inlet or the outlet of the heat exchanger	Remove the obstacles
			Check the service area	Secure service area
			Check the speed (Outdoor Fan: Cooling / Indoor Fan: Heating)	Replace the fan motor if faulty
	Excessively High Temp. Air to the Indoor Unit		Calculate the heat load	Reduce the heat load or use a bigger unit
			Check for hot air near the ceiling (Heating)	Provide good circulation
			Check for short-circuited air (Heating)	Remove the short-circuited air
			Check for other heat source	Remove the heat source
	Faulty High-Pressure Switch	Faulty Pressure Switch	Measure the discharge pressure. Check the continuity after the decrease of the pressure	Replace the pressure switch if faulty
		Insufficient Contacting	Measure the resistance by means of the tester	Fix the looseness. Replace the connector
		Incorrect Connection	Check the connections	Repair the connections
	Overcharged refrigerant		Check the cycle operation temp.	Charge the refrigerant correctly
	Mixture of the non-condensate gas in the refrigerant cycle		Check the air temp. and the pressure	Recharge the refrigerant after the vacuum pumping
	Clogging of the discharge piping		Check for clogging	Remove the clogging
	Liquid line stop valve or gas line stop valve is not in operation		Check the stop valves	Fully Open the stop valves
Faulty magnetic contactor switch	No power is supplied to the coil		Check connections	Set the connections properly.
	No power at the A contact		Measure the resistance using a tester	Replace the magnetic switch if it is broken

Alarm code	02	Activation of the safety device in the outdoor unit (For 4HP)

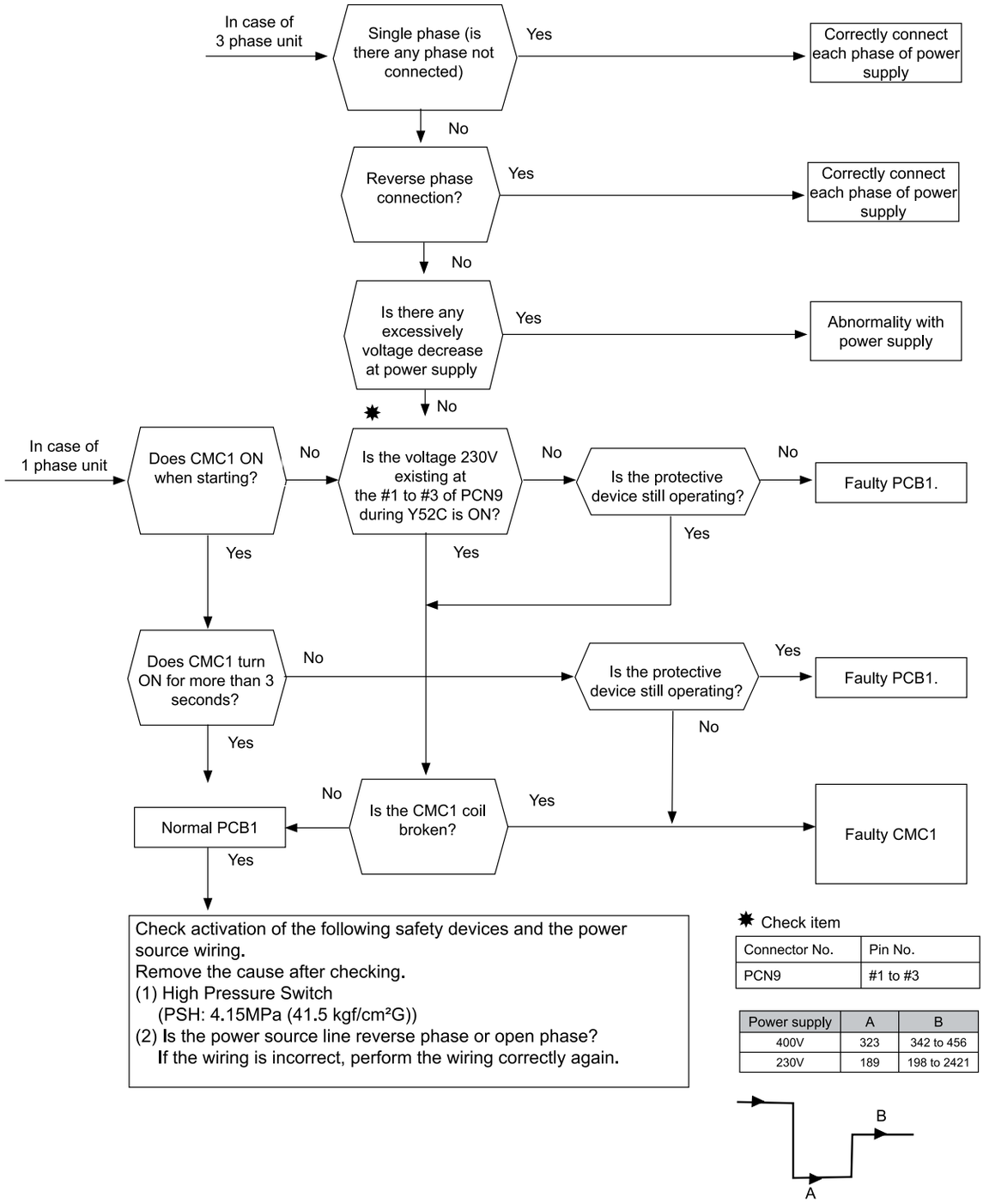
- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm is indicated when one of safety devices is activated during compressor running.



Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Activation of the high-pressure switch due to the excessively high discharge pressure (PSH)	Insufficient Air Flow to the Heat Exchanger (Outdoor Heat Exchanger during the Cooling Process or Indoor Heat Exchanger during the Heating Process)		Check the heat exchanger for dust or for clogging	Remove the dust or the clogging
			Check the air filter for dust	Remove the dust
			Check for any obstacles at the inlet or the outlet of the heat exchanger	Remove the obstacles
			Check the service area	Secure service area
			Check the speed (Outdoor Fan: Cooling / Indoor Fan: Heating)	Replace the fan motor if faulty
	Excessively High Temp. Air to the Indoor Unit		Calculate the heat load	Reduce the heat load or use a bigger unit
			Check for hot air near the ceiling (Heating)	Provide good circulation
			Check for short-circuited air (Heating)	Remove the short-circuited air
			Check for other heat source	Remove the heat source
	Faulty High-Pressure Switch	Faulty Pressure Switch	Measure the discharge pressure. Check the continuity after the decrease of the pressure	Replace the pressure switch if faulty
		Insufficient Contacting	Measure the resistance by means of the tester	Fix the looseness. Replace the connector
		Incorrect Connection	Check the connections	Repair the connections
	Overcharged refrigerant		Check the cycle operation temp.	Charge the refrigerant correctly
	Mixture of the non-condensate gas in the refrigerant cycle		Check the air temp. and the pressure	Recharge the refrigerant after the vacuum pumping
	Clogging of the discharge piping		Check for clogging	Remove the clogging
	Liquid line stop valve or gas line stop valve is not in operation		Check the stop valves	Fully Open the stop valves
Faulty magnetic contactor switch	No power is supplied to the coil		Check connections	Set the connections properly.
	No power at the A contact		Measure the resistance using a tester	Replace the magnetic switch if it is broken

Alarm code	02	Activation of the safety device in the outdoor unit (For 5-10HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm is indicated when one of safety devices is activated during compressor running.



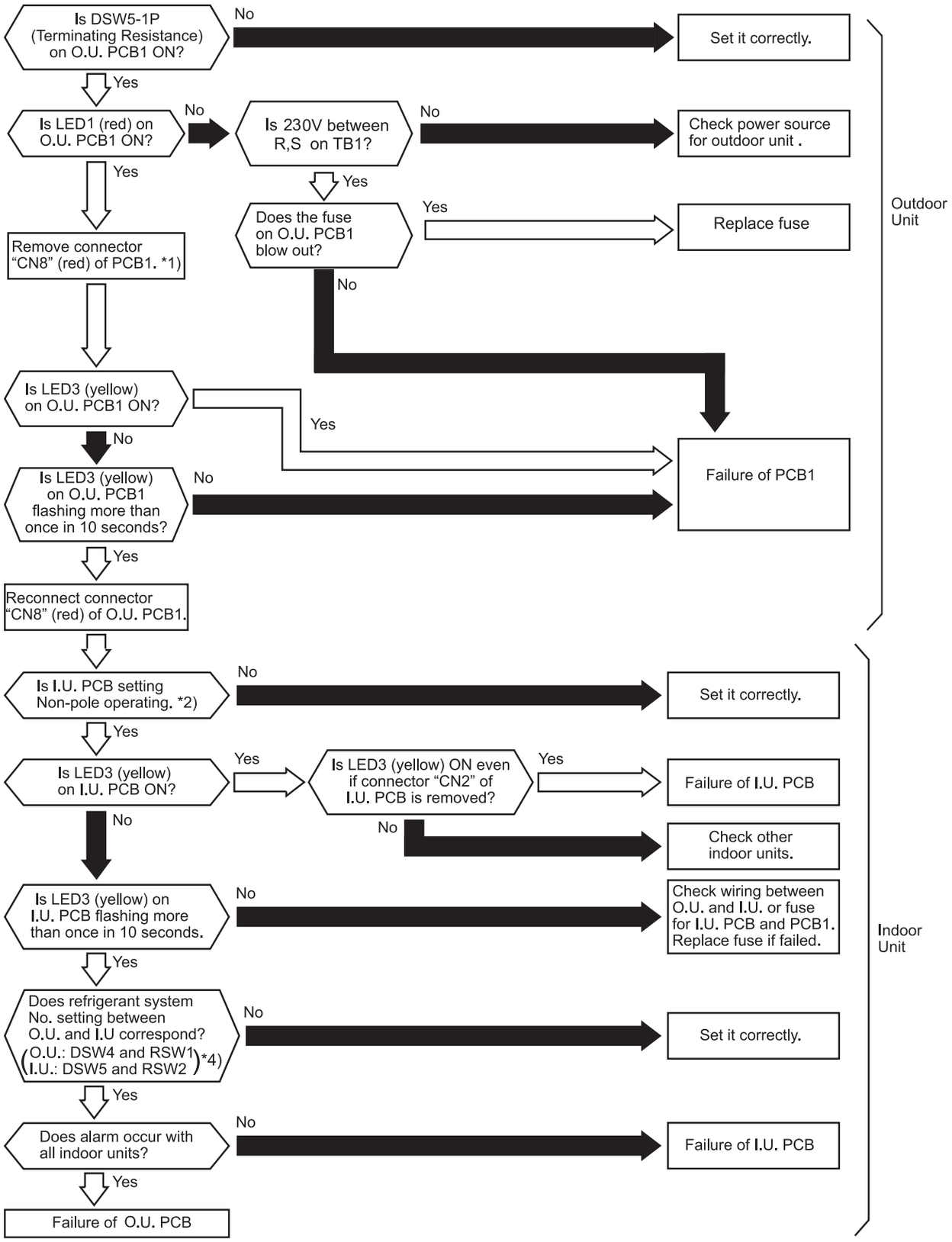
Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Activation of Reverse Phases Sensor in Outdoor Unit (RPR)	Reverse or open phase		Check it according to section “Electrical wiring”	Replacing wires, repair, tightening screws or correct the wiring connection
	Faulty PCB1		Replace PCB1 if faulty	
Activation of the high-pressure switch due to the excessively high discharge pressure	Insufficient Air Flow to the Heat Exchanger (Outdoor Heat Exchanger during the Cooling Process or Indoor Heat Exchanger during the Heating Process)		Check the heat exchanger for dust or for clogging	Remove the dust or the clogging
			Check the air filter for dust	Remove the dust
			Check for any obstacles at the inlet or the outlet of the heat exchanger	Remove the obstacles
			Check the service area	Secure service area
			Check the speed (Outdoor Fan: Cooling / Indoor Fan: Heating)	Replace the fan motor if faulty
	Malfunction of the Expansion Valve		Disconnected of the Connector	Fix the looseness or reconnect the connector
			Fully closed and locked	Replace the expansion valve
			Check for clogging	Remove the clogging
			Check the connect wiring and the connectors	Replace the connector
			Check the operation sound from the coil	Replace the coil
			Check the discharge gas thermistor	Replace the thermistor
			Check the attaching state of the discharge gas thermistor	Reattach the thermistor
	Excessively High Temp. Air to the Indoor Unit		Calculate the heat load	Reduce the heat load or use a bigger unit
			Check for hot air near the ceiling (Heating)	Provide good circulation
			Check for short-circuited air (Heating)	Remove the short-circuited air
			Check for other heat source	Remove the heat source
	Faulty High-Pressure Switch	Faulty Pressure Switch	Measure the discharge pressure. Check the continuity after the decrease of the pressure	Replace the pressure switch if faulty
		Insufficient Contacting	Measure the resistance by means of the tester	Fix the looseness. Replace the connector
		Incorrect Connection	Check the connections	Repair the connections
	Faulty gas bypass solenoid valve		Check for clogging	Replace the gas bypass solenoid valve
	Overcharged refrigerant		Check the cycle operation temp.	Charge the refrigerant correctly
	Mixture of the non-condensate gas in the refrigerant cycle		Check the air temp. and the pressure	Recharge the refrigerant after the vacuum pumping
	Clogging of the discharge piping		Check for clogging	Remove the clogging
	Liquid line stop valve or gas line stop valve is not in operation		Check the stop valves	Fully Open the stop valves
	Clogging of the check valve		Check for clogging	Replace the check valve
Faulty Magnet Switch	Incorrect Connection		Check wiring	Repair connections. Replace Magnet Switch
	Malfunction A Contact		Check connections	

Alarm code	03	Abnormal transmission between the indoor units and the outdoor unit (For 3HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
- The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm is displayed when an abnormal operation is maintained for three minutes after the normal transmission between the indoor units and the outdoor unit. Also, an abnormal operation is maintained for 30 seconds after the micro-computer is automatically reset.
  - The alarm is displayed when the abnormal transmission is maintained for 30 seconds from the starting of the outdoor unit.
  - Investigate the cause of the overcurrent and take the necessary action when the fuses are blown out or the breaker for the outdoor unit is activated.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 273 04/06/2013 18:14:45

O.U.: Outdoor Unit
I.U.: Indoor Unit



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 274 04/06/2013 18:14:45

Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Power failure or power is not ON		Measure the voltage by means of the tester	Supply the power
Blown out fuse for the power source or activation of the outdoor unit breaker	Short-circuit between the wires	Check the insulation material for breaks	Remove the short-circuit and replace the fuse
	Short-circuited wire to ground	Measure the insulation resistance	Remove short-circuit to ground and replace the fuse
	Faulty comp. motor	Measure the resistance between the wires and the insulation resistance	Replace the comp. and the fuse
	Failure of outdoor unit fan motor	Measure resistance between wires and insulation resistance	Replace the unit fan motor and the fuse
Blown out fuse for control circuit or activation of outdoor unit breaker	Short-circuit between the wires	Check the insulation material for breaks	Remove the short-circuit and replace the fuse
	Short-circuit of the control circuit (to ground)	Measure the insulation resistance	Remove the short-circuit and replace the fuse
	Faulty solenoid coil for the magnetic switch for the comp. motor	Measure the resistance of coil	Replace the magnetic switch and the fuse
	Failure of outdoor unit fan motor	Measure the resistance between the wires and the insulation resistance	Replace the outdoor unit fan motor and fuse
PCB1 Power circuit failure		PCB1 Measure output voltage *1)	Replace PCB1
Disconnected wires insufficient contacting or incorrect connection	Between outdoor unit and indoor unit	Check the continuity of the wires Check for looseness of the connection screws Check the terminal Nos.	Replacing wires repairing and tightening the Power source wiring for the screws and the correct wiring
	Power source wiring for the screws and the correct wiring outdoor unit		
Faulty PCB (outdoor unit, indoor unit)	Disconnected wires to PCB	Check the connections	Correctly connect the wires
	Faulty PCB	—	Replace PCB if faulty
Incorrect wiring	Disconnected wire; insufficient contacting	Check the continuity and the looseness of connection screws	Replacing wires, repairing and tightening the screws
	Incorrect wiring	Check the terminal Nos.	Correctly connect the wires

NOTE

- **1) In the case that the end terminal resistance (DSW5-1) is set to OFF for H-LINK connection, set the end terminal resistance to ON when CN8 is disconnected. Set the end terminal resistance to OFF when CN8 is reconnected.*
- **2) Transmission Setting (SW1)*

Item	Setting Position
SW1	Left Side (for H-LINK/H-LINK II)

- **3)*

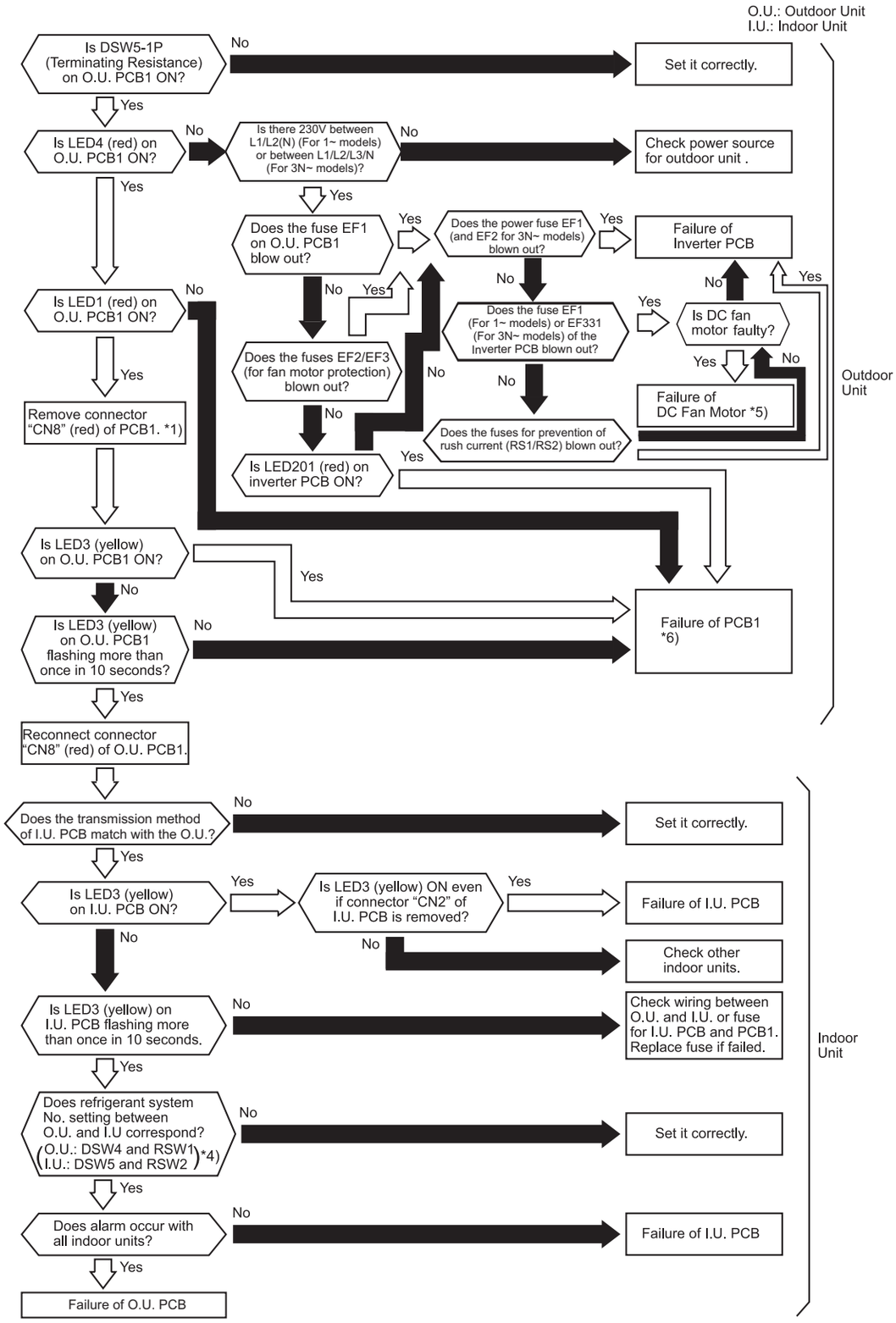
PCB1 output voltage	Voltage
Vcc 12 – GND2	12 VDC
Vcc 05 – GND1	5 VDC
Vcc 12 – GND1	12 VDC
Vcc 15 – GND1	15 VDC
Vcc 24 – GND1	24 VDC
Vcc 12T– GND1	12 VDC

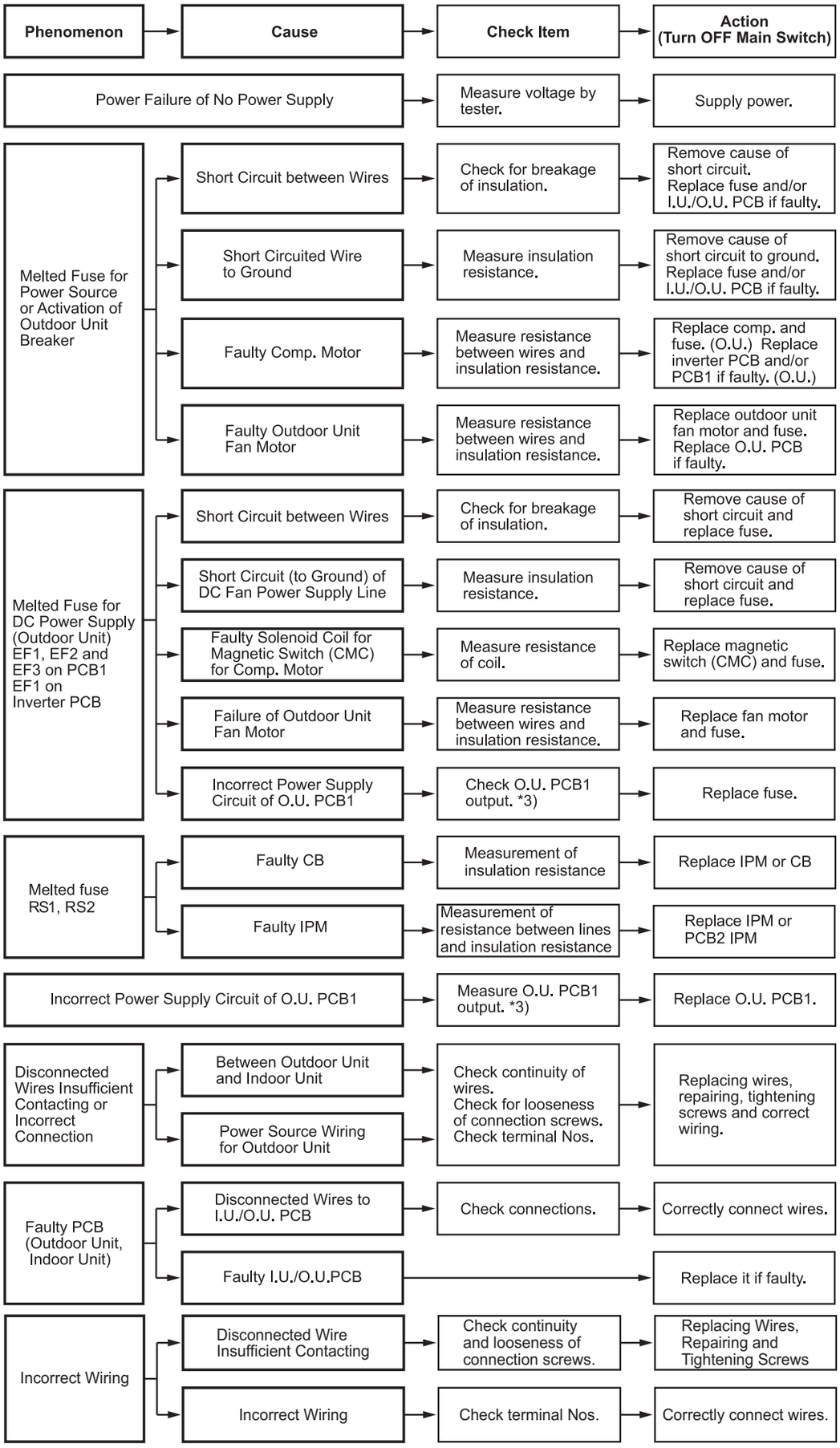
- **4) The rotary switch (RSW2) is not available depending on the indoor unit model.*

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 275 04/06/2013 18:14:45

Alarm code	03	Abnormal transmission between the indoor units and the outdoor unit (For 4HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
- The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm is displayed when an abnormal operation is maintained for three minutes after the normal transmission between the indoor units and the outdoor unit. Also, an abnormal operation is maintained for 30 seconds after the micro-computer is automatically reset.
  - The alarm is displayed when the abnormal transmission is maintained for 30 seconds from the starting of the outdoor unit.
  - Investigate the cause of the overcurrent and take the necessary action when the fuses are blown out or the breaker for the outdoor unit is activated.
  - This alarm code may be indicated when the inverter or the fan motor is malfunction and the outdoor unit can not be secure the power source (No indication on the 7-segment of outdoor unit PCB). In this case, surely check the inverter fan motor and the continuity of fuse on the circuit.


O.U.: Outdoor Unit
I.U.: Indoor Unit
Is DSW5-1P (Terminating Resistance) on O.U. PCB1 ON?
No
Set it correctly.
Yes
Is LED4 (red) on O.U. PCB1 ON?
No
Is there 230V between L1/L2(N) (For 1~ models) or between L1/L2/L3/N (For 3N~ models)?
No
Check power source for outdoor unit .
Yes
Yes
Does the fuse EF1 on O.U. PCB1 blow out?
Yes
Does the power fuse EF1 (and EF2 for 3N~ models) blown out?
Yes
Failure of Inverter PCB
No
No
Yes
Is LED1 (red) on O.U. PCB1 ON?
No
Does the fuse EF1 (For 1~ models) or EF331 (For 3N~ models) of the Inverter PCB blown out?
Yes
Is DC fan motor faulty?
Yes
No
Yes
Does the fuses EF2/EF3 (for fan motor protection) blown out?
No
No
Failure of DC Fan Motor *5)
Remove connector "CN8" (red) of PCB1. *1)
No
Does the fuses for prevention of rush current (RS1/RS2) blown out?
Yes
Is LED201 (red) on inverter PCB ON?
Yes
Outdoor Unit
Is LED3 (yellow) on O.U. PCB1 ON?
Yes
No
Is LED3 (yellow) on O.U. PCB1 flashing more than once in 10 seconds?
No
Failure of PCB1 *6)
Yes
Reconnect connector "CN8" (red) of O.U. PCB1.
Does the transmission method of I.U. PCB match with the O.U.?
No
Set it correctly.
Yes
Is LED3 (yellow) on I.U. PCB ON?
Yes
Is LED3 (yellow) ON even if connector "CN2" of I.U. PCB is removed?
Yes
Failure of I.U. PCB
No
No
Check other indoor units.
Is LED3 (yellow) on I.U. PCB flashing more than once in 10 seconds.
No
Check wiring between O.U. and I.U. or fuse for I.U. PCB and PCB1. Replace fuse if failed.
Yes
Does refrigerant system No. setting between O.U. and I.U correspond? (O.U.: DSW4 and RSW1 I.U.: DSW5 and RSW2)*4)
No
Set it correctly.
Yes
Does alarm occur with all indoor units?
No
Failure of I.U. PCB
Yes
Failure of O.U. PCB
Indoor Unit



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 278 04/06/2013 18:14:46

NOTE

- **1) In the case that the end terminal resistance (DSW5-1) is set to OFF for H-LINK connection, set the end terminal resistance to ON when CN8 is disconnected. Set the end terminal resistance to OFF when CN8 is reconnected.*
- **2) Transmission Setting (SW1)*

Item	Setting Position
SW1	Left Side (for H-LINK/H-LINK II)

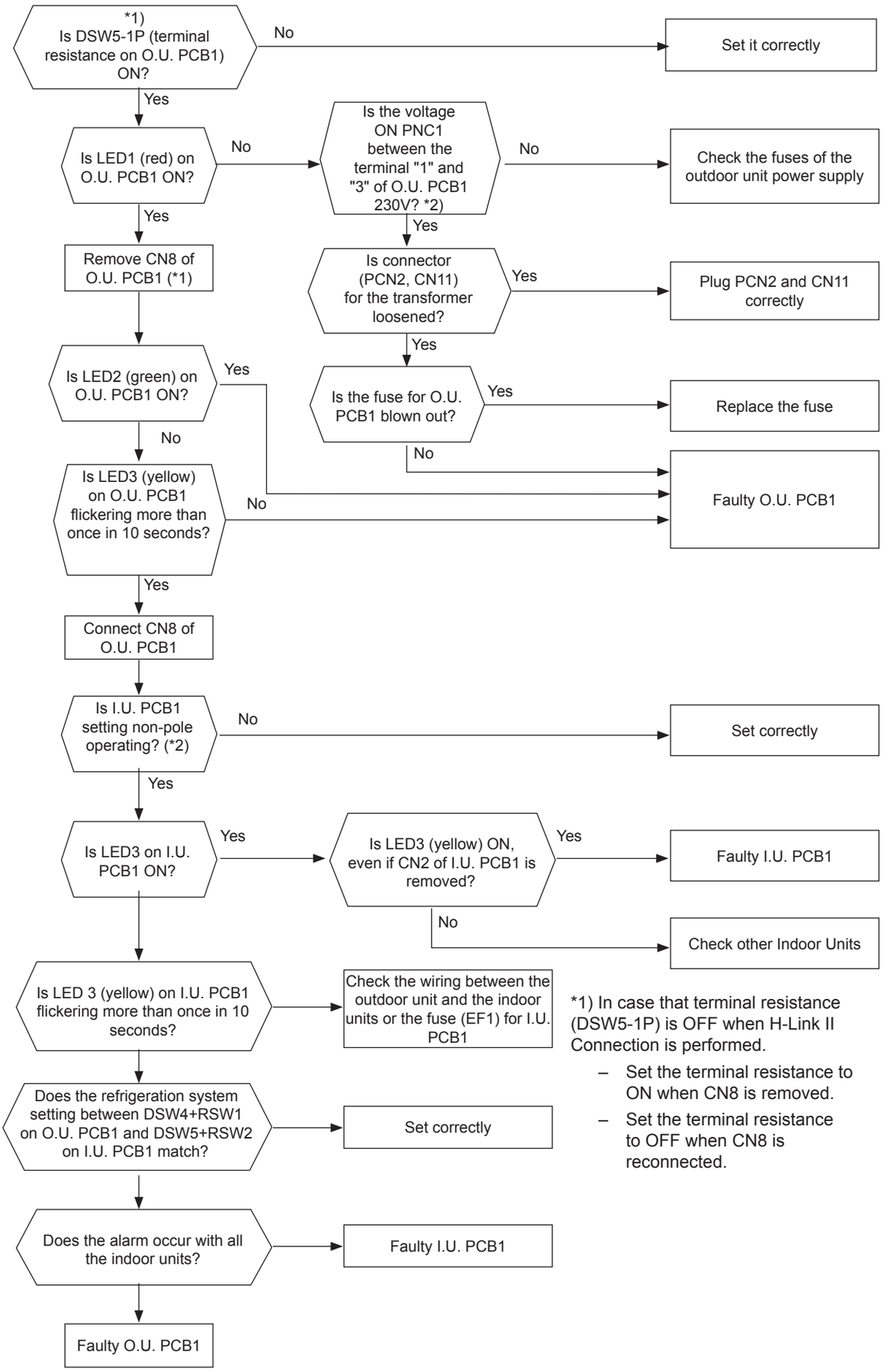
- **3)*

PCB1 output voltage	Voltage
Vcc 12 – GND2	12 VDC
Vcc 05 – GND1	5 VDC
Vcc 12 – GND1	12 VDC
Vcc 15 – GND1	15 VDC
Vcc 24 – GND1	24 VDC
Vcc 12T– GND1	12 VDC

- **4) The rotary switch (RSW2) is not available depending on the indoor unit model.*

Alarm code	03	Abnormal transmission between the indoor units and the outdoor unit (For 5-10HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
- The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
- This alarm is displayed when an abnormal operation is maintained for three minutes after the normal transmission between the indoor units and the outdoor unit. Also, an abnormal operation is maintained for 30 seconds after the microcomputer is automatically reset. The alarm is displayed when the abnormal transmission is maintained for 30 seconds from the starting of the outdoor unit.
  - Investigate the cause of the overcurrent and take the necessary action when the fuses are blown out or the breaker for the outdoor unit is activated.



*1) In case that terminal resistance (DSW5-1P) is OFF when H-Link II Connection is performed.

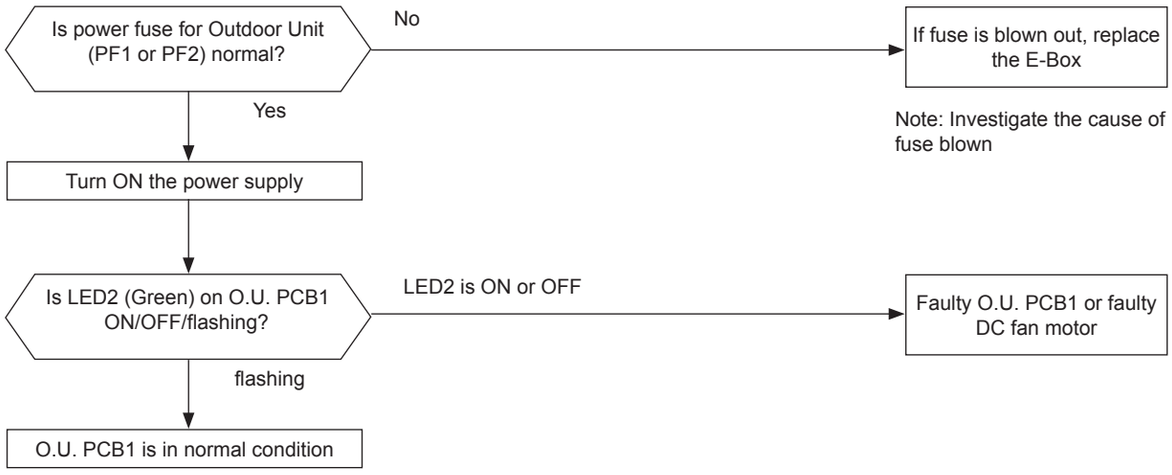
- Set the terminal resistance to ON when CN8 is removed.
- Set the terminal resistance to OFF when CN8 is reconnected.

Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Power failure or power is not ON		Measure the voltage by means of the tester	Supply the power
Blown out fuse for the power source or activation of the outdoor unit breaker	Short-circuit between the wires	Check the insulation material for breaks	Remove the short-circuit and replace the fuse
	Short-circuited wire to ground	Measure the insulation resistance	Remove short-circuit to ground and replace the fuse
	Faulty comp. motor	Measure the resistance between the wires and the insulation resistance	Replace the comp. and the fuse
	Failure of outdoor unit fan motor	Measure resistance between wires and insulation resistance	Replace the unit fan motor and the fuse
Blown out fuse for control circuit or activation of outdoor unit breaker	Short-circuit between the wires	Check the insulation material for breaks	Remove the short-circuit and replace the fuse
	Short-circuit of the control circuit (to ground)	Measure the insulation resistance	Remove the short-circuit and replace the fuse
	Faulty solenoid coil for the magnetic switch for the comp. motor	Measure the resistance of coil	Replace the magnetic switch and the fuse
	Failure of outdoor unit fan motor	Measure the resistance between the wires and the insulation resistance	Replace the outdoor unit fan motor and fuse
PCB1 Power circuit failure		PCB1 Measure output voltage *1)	Replace PCB1
Disconnected wires insufficient contacting or incorrect connection	Between outdoor unit and indoor unit	Check the continuity of the wires Check for looseness of the connection screws Check the terminal Nos.	Replacing wires repairing and tightening the Power source wiring for the screws and the correct wiring
	Power source wiring for the screws and the correct wiring outdoor unit		
Faulty PCB (outdoor unit, indoor unit)	Disconnected wires to PCB	Check the connections	Correctly connect the wires
	Faulty PCB	—	Replace PCB if faulty
Incorrect wiring	Disconnected wire; insufficient contacting	Check the continuity and the looseness of connection screws	Replacing wires, repairing and tightening the screws
	Incorrect wiring	Check the terminal Nos.	Correctly connect the wires

PCB1 output voltage	Voltage
Vcc 12 – GND2	12 VDC
Vcc 05 – GND1	5 VDC
Vcc 12 – GND1	12 VDC
Vcc 15 – GND1	15 VDC
Vcc 24 – GND1	24 VDC
Vcc 12T– GND1	12 VDC

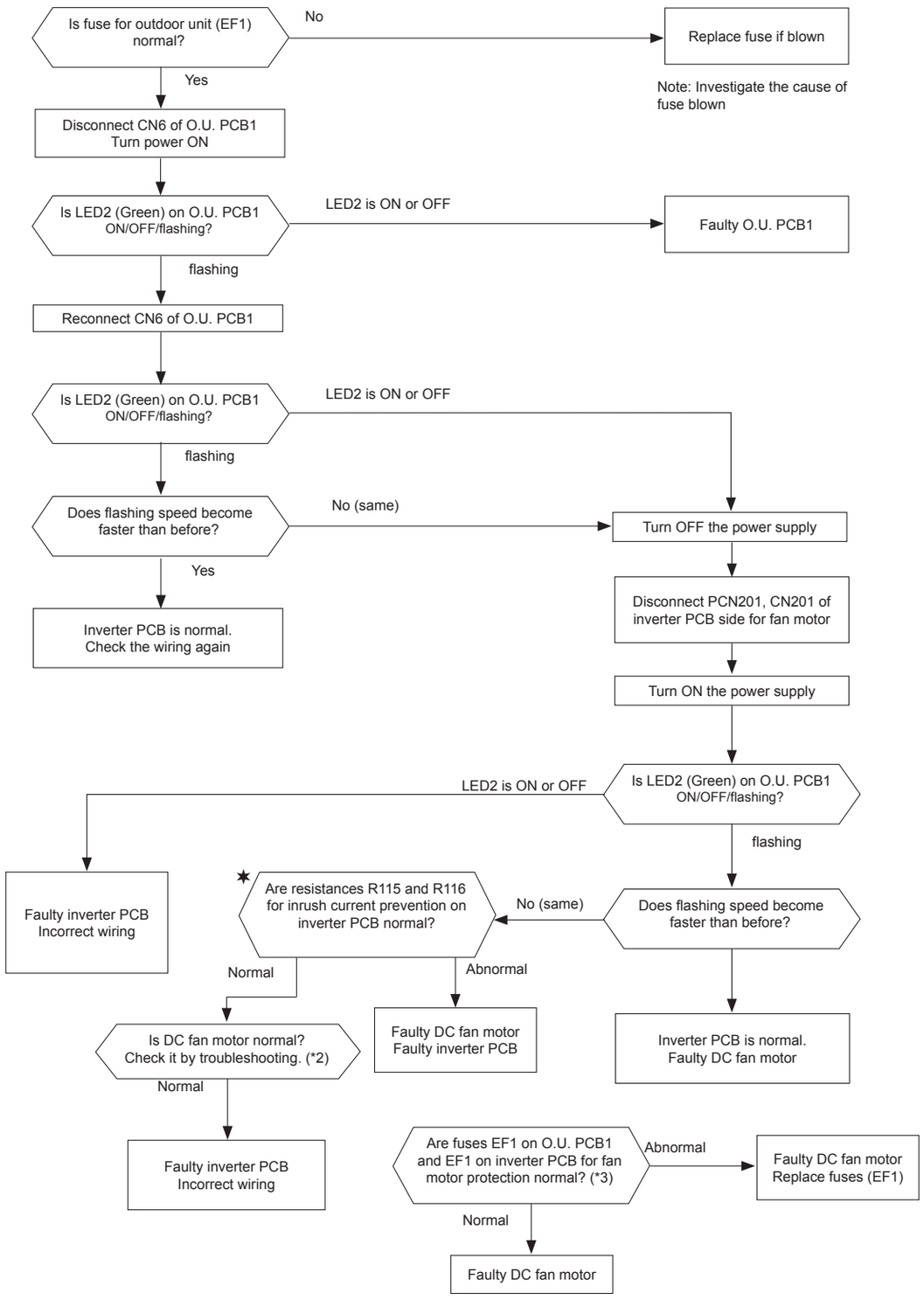
Alarm code	04	Abnormal transmission between Inverter PCB and Outdoor PCB1 (For 3HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm is displayed when the abnormal operation is maintained for 30 seconds after the normal transmission between the outdoor unit PCB1 and inverter PCB2. Also, the abnormal operation is maintained for 30 seconds after the micro-computer is automatically reset. The alarm is displayed when the abnormal transmission is maintained for 30 seconds from the starting of the outdoor unit.



Alarm code	04	Abnormal transmission between Inverter PCB and Outdoor PCB1 (For 4HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm is displayed when the abnormal operation is maintained for 30 seconds after the normal transmission between the outdoor unit PCB1 and inverter PCB2. Also, the abnormal operation is maintained for 30 seconds after the micro-computer is automatically reset. The alarm is displayed when the abnormal transmission is maintained for 30 seconds from the starting of the outdoor unit.



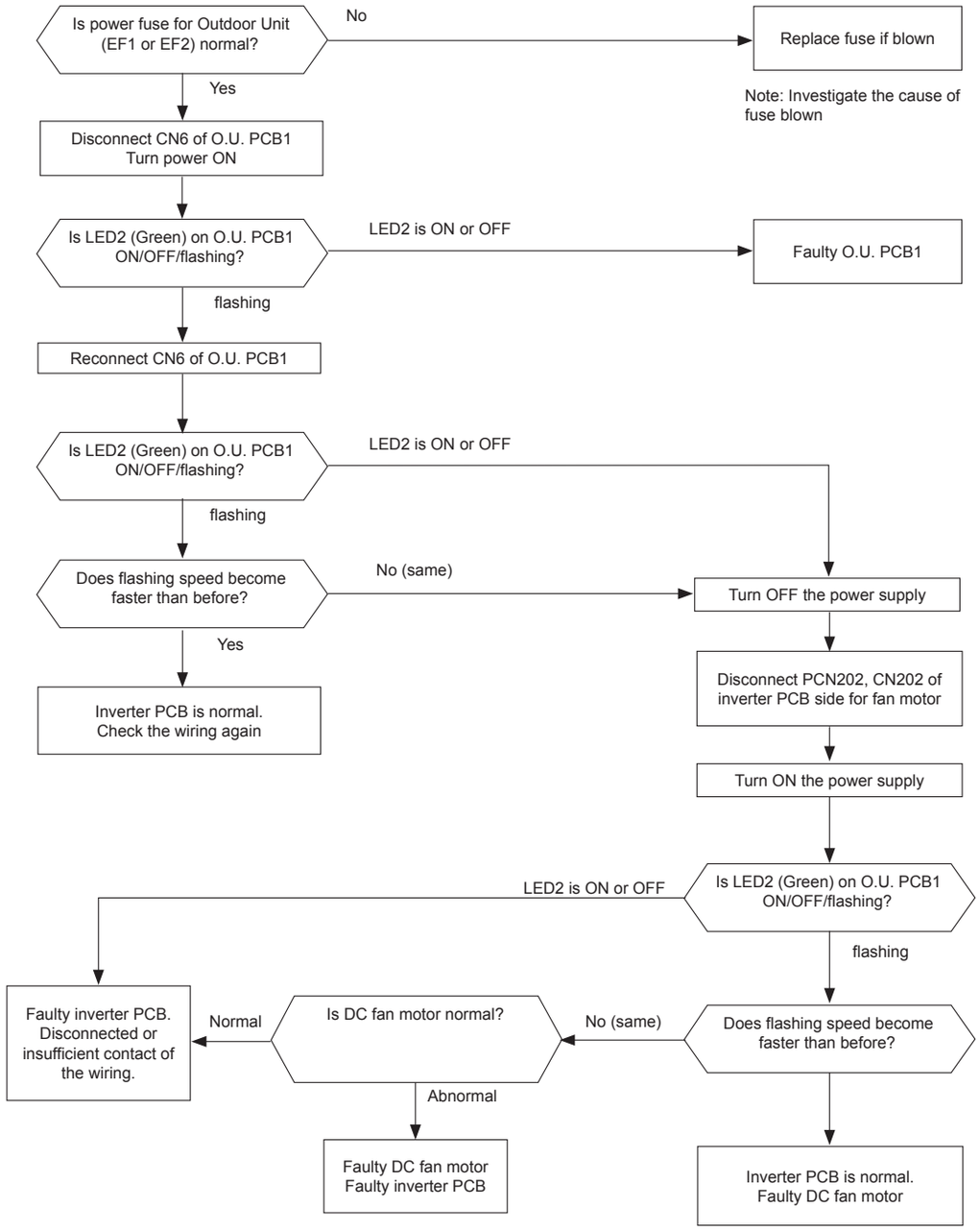
NOTE

- *(*1): Surely perform the troubleshooting of the resistance for inrush current prevention (R115/R116) on inverter PCB. If the resistance for inrush current prevention (R115/R116) fails, the abnormal transmitting occurs.*
- *(*2): Surely perform the troubleshooting of DC fan motor. If the DC fan motor fails, the normal inverter PCB may be damaged.*
- *(*3): Perform the troubleshooting of the fuses "EF1" on O.U. PCB1 and "EF1" on inverter PCB for fan motor protection. If the fuses for fan motor protection fail, DC fan motor is not operated normally.*

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 285 04/06/2013 18:14:46

Alarm code	04	Abnormal transmission between Inverter PCB2 and Outdoor PCB (For 5/6HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm is displayed when the abnormal operation is maintained for 30 seconds after the normal transmission between the outdoor unit PCB1 and inverter PCB2. Also, the abnormal operation is maintained for 30 seconds after the micro-computer is automatically reset. The alarm is displayed when the abnormal transmission is maintained for 30 seconds from the starting of the outdoor unit.

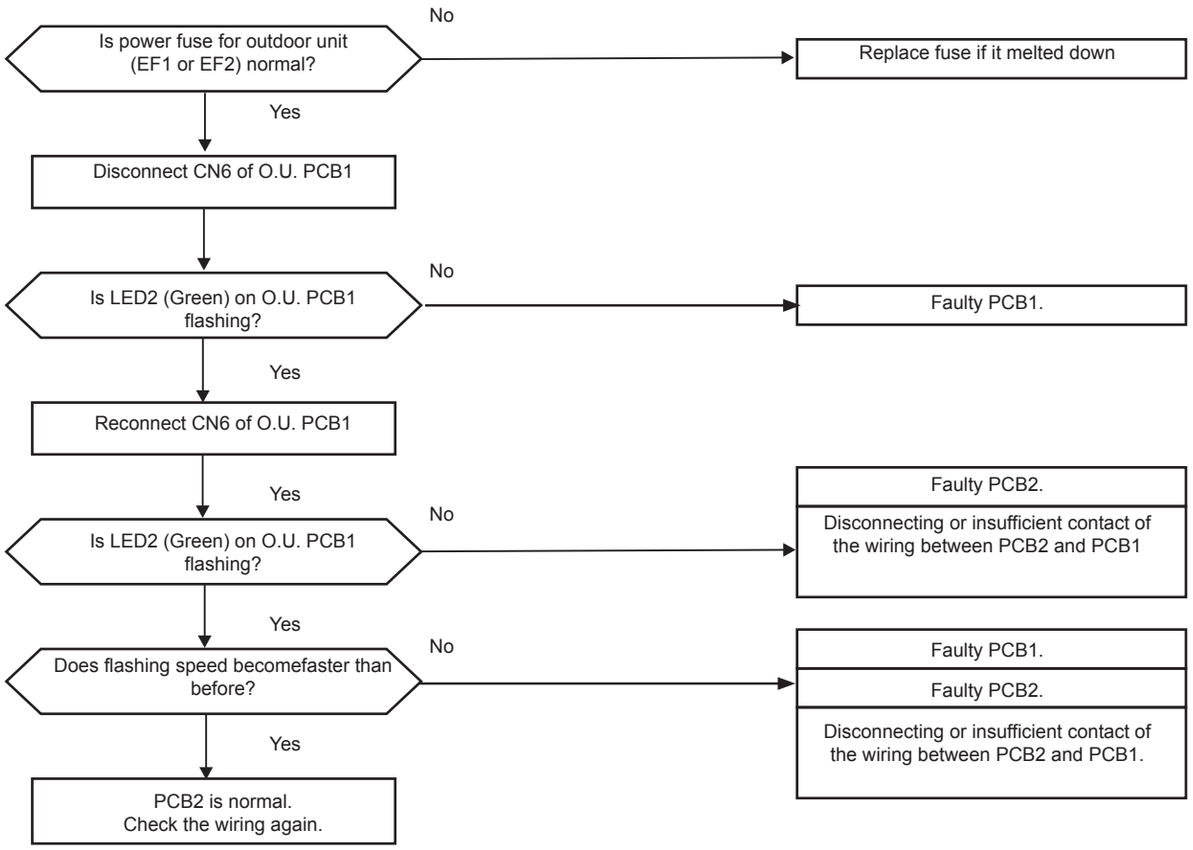


NOTE

Regarding the checking of DC fan motor, refer to section Procedure of checking other main parts.

Alarm code	04	Abnormal transmission between Inverter PCB2 and Outdoor PCB (For 8/10HP)

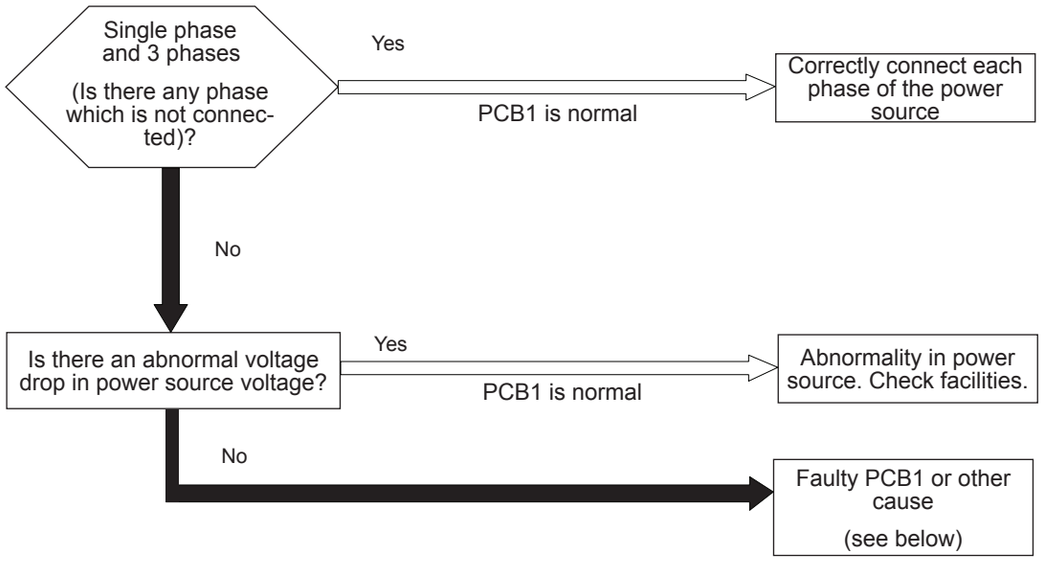
- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm is displayed when the abnormal operation is maintained for 30 seconds after the normal transmission between the outdoor unit PCB1 and inverter PCB2. Also, the abnormal operation is maintained for 30 seconds after the micro-computer is automatically reset. The alarm is displayed when the abnormal transmission is maintained for 30 seconds from the starting of the outdoor unit.

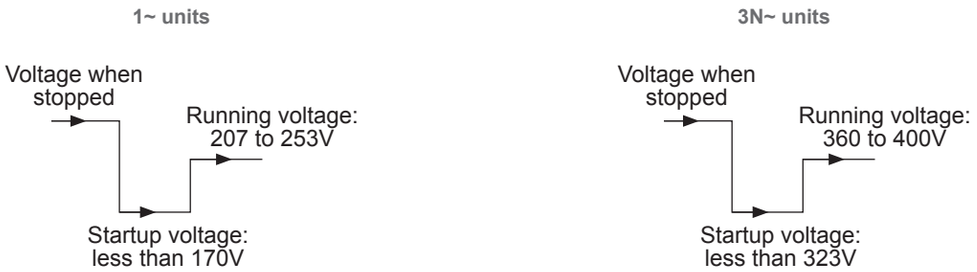


Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Disconnected wires, insufficient contacting or incorrect connection	Between control PCB, inverter PCB2	Check the continuity of wires. Check for looseness of the connection screws. Check the connection No.	Replacing wires, repairing, tightening screws and incorrect wiring
	Power source wiring for the outdoor unit		
Faulty PCB (PCB1 for the control, PCB2 for the inverter)	Disconnected wires to PCB	Check the connections	Repair the wiring connections
	Faulty PCB	-	Replace PCB if faulty
Incorrect wiring	Disconnected wires; insufficient contacting	Check the continuity. Check for looseness of connection screws	Replacing wires, repairing, tightening screws
	Incorrect wiring	Check the connection Nos.	Correctly connect the wires

Alarm code	05	Code abnormal operation of picking up phase signal

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm is displayed when the main power source phase is reversely connected or one phase is not connected.

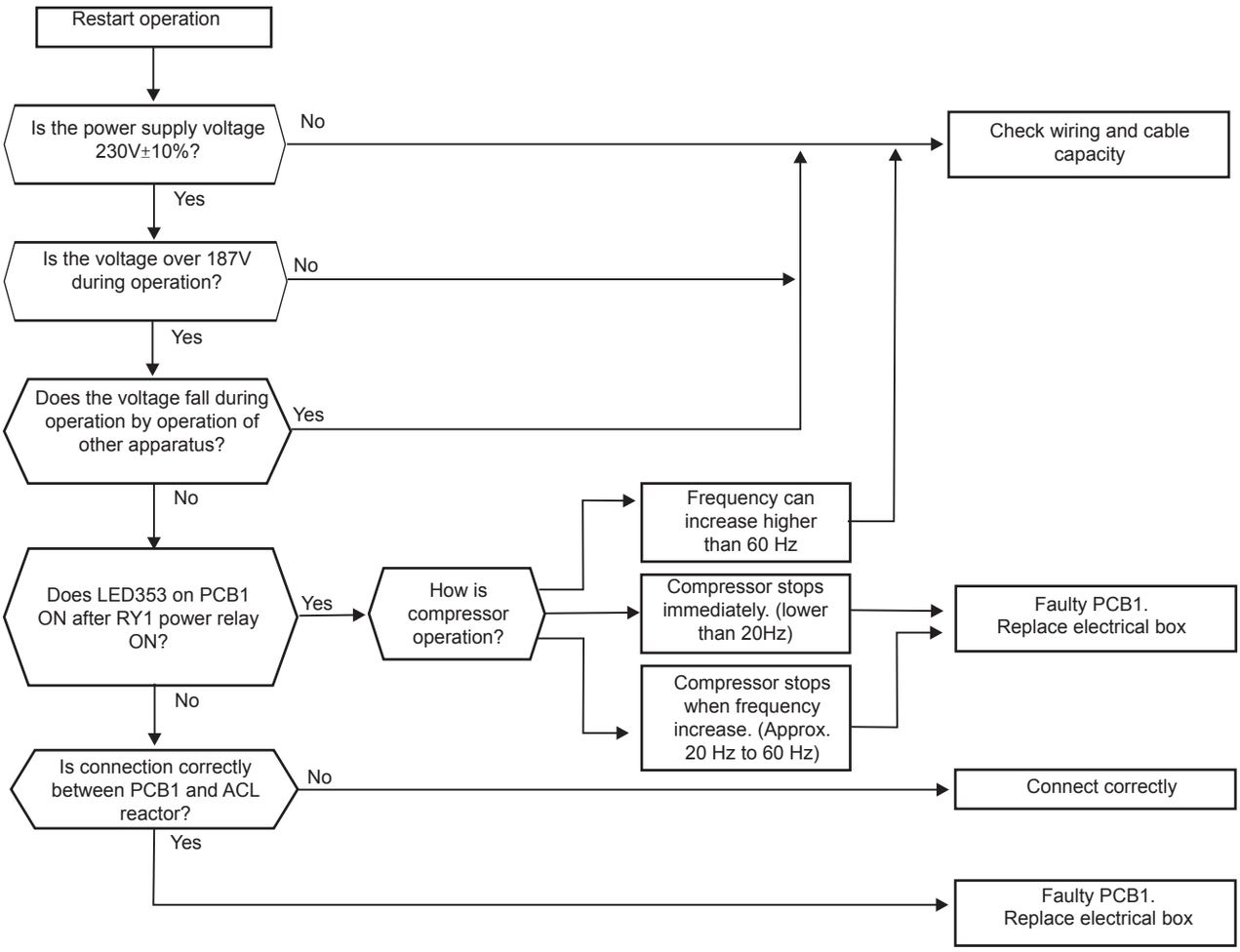




Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Activation of reverse phase sensor in the outdoor unit	Reverse or single phase	Check it according to the electrical wiring	Replacing wires, repair, tightening screws or correct wiring
	Faulty outdoor unit PCB	-	Replace PCB if faulty

Alarm code	06	Excessively low voltage or excessively high voltage for the inverter (For 3HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
- The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the voltage between terminal “P” and “N” of Inverter is insufficient and the alarm has three occurrences in 30 minutes. If the number of occurrences is smaller than two, the retry operation is performed. The alarm code “06.” Means fan controller Abnormal Operation.

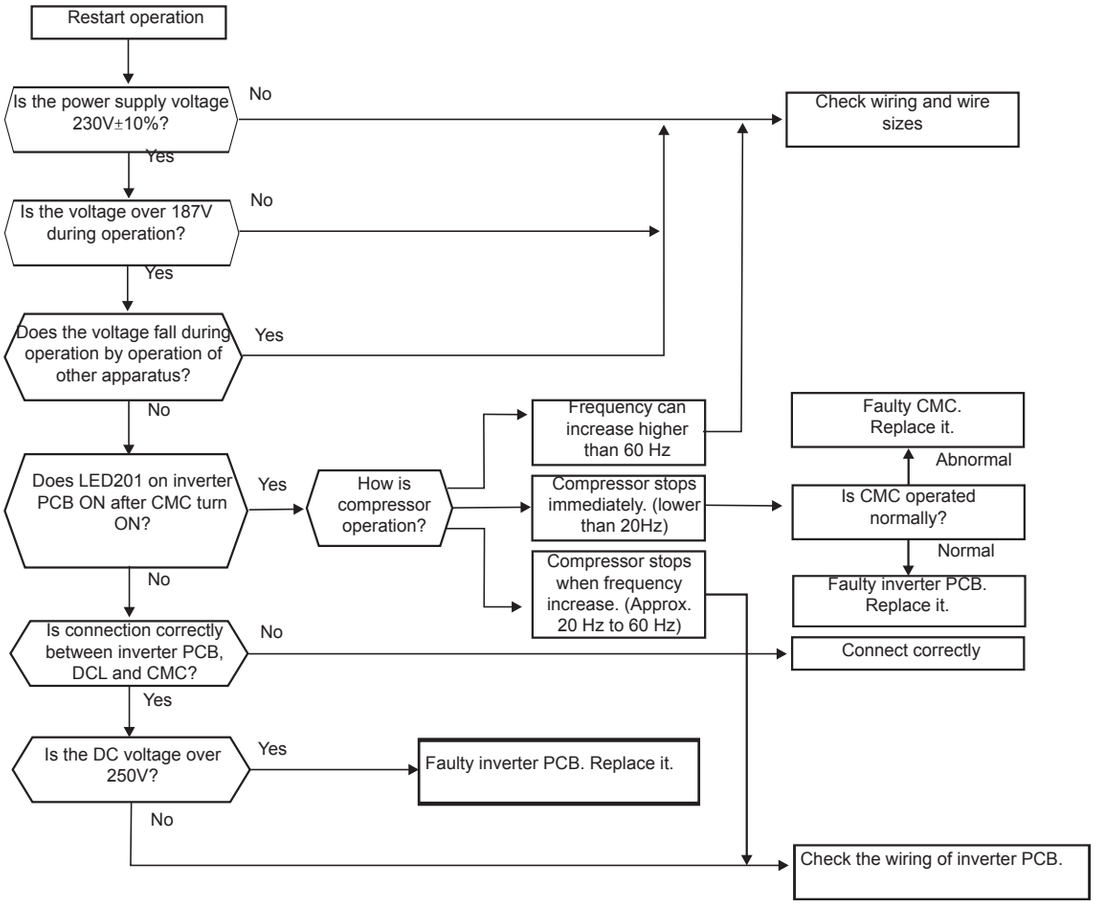


NOTE

Replace electrical box only when LED1 is OFF.

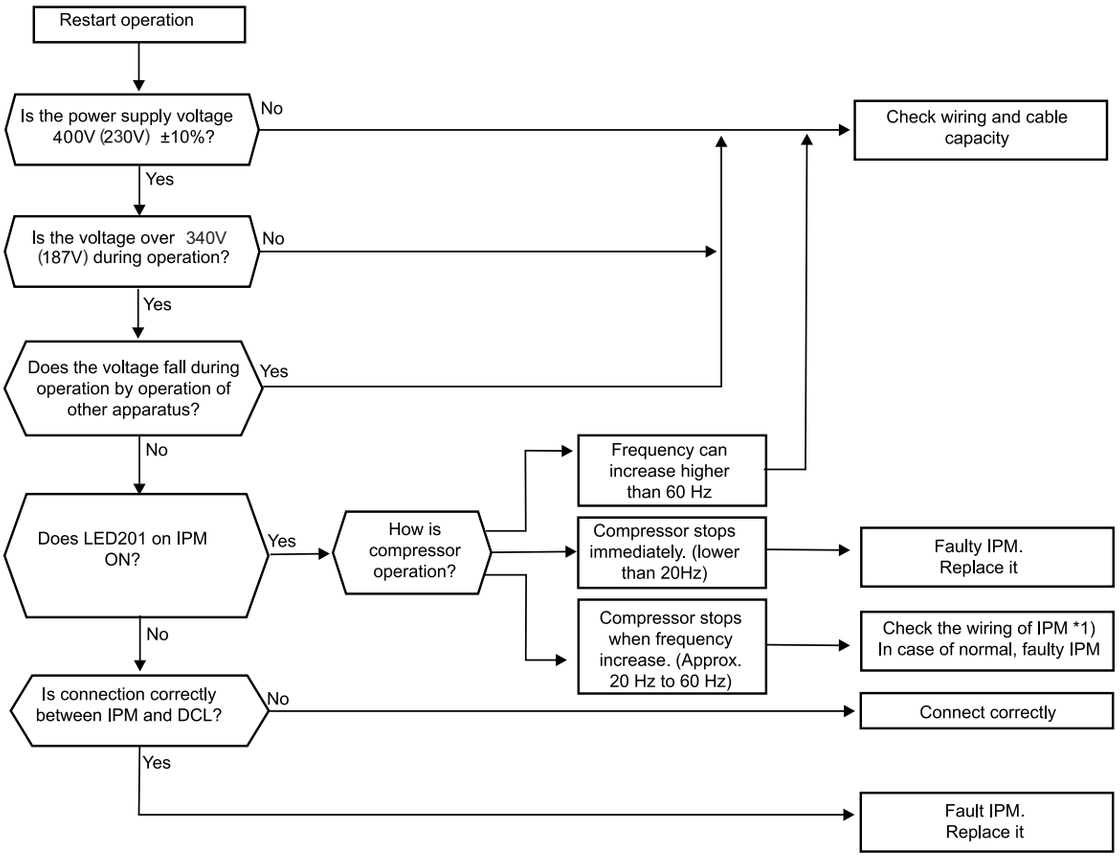
Alarm code	06	Excessively low voltage or excessively high voltage for the inverter (For 4HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
- The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the voltage between terminal “P” and “N” of Inverter is insufficient and the alarm has three occurrences in 30 minutes. If the number of occurrences is smaller than two, the retry operation is performed. The alarm code “06.” Means fan controller Abnormal Operation.



Alarm code	06	Excessively low voltage or excessively high voltage for the inverter (For 5/6HP)

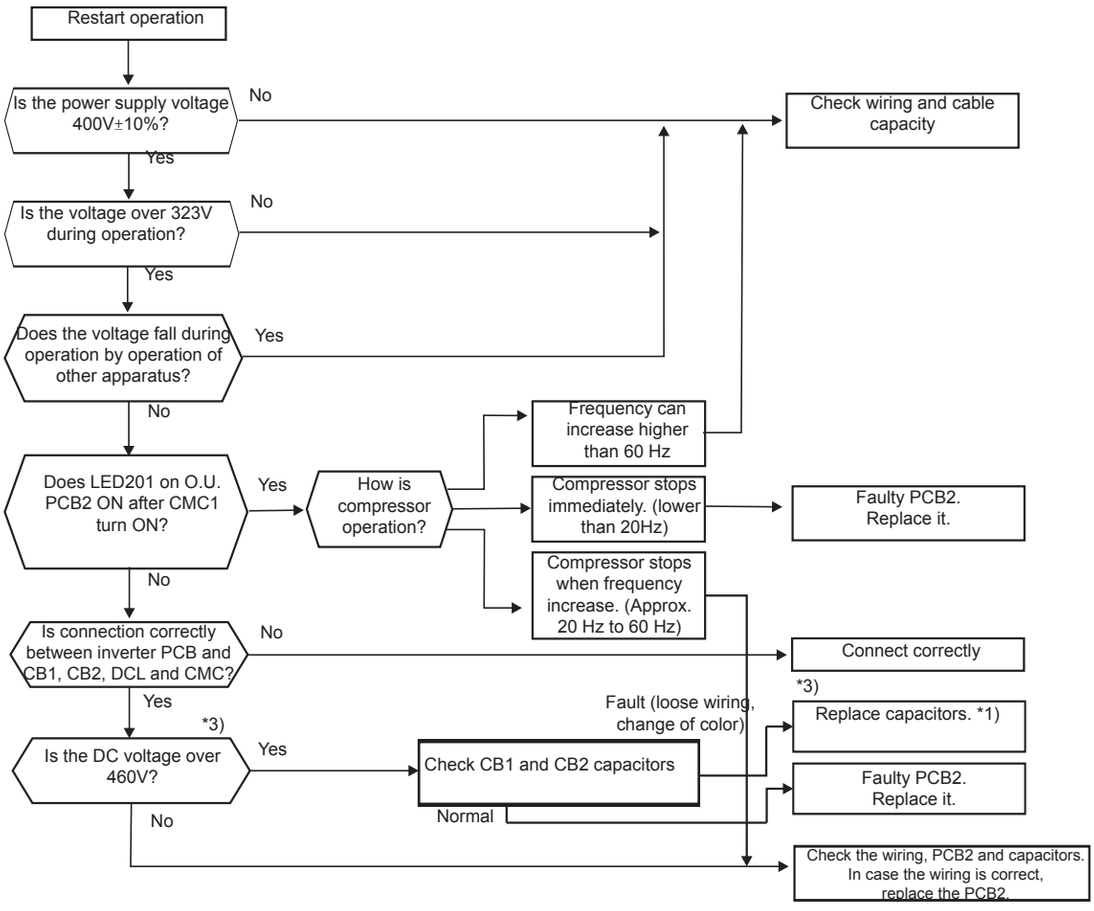
- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
- The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the voltage between terminal “P” and “N” of Inverter is insufficient and the alarm has three occurrences in 30 minutes. If the number of occurrences is smaller than two, the retry operation is performed. The alarm code “06.” Means fan controller Abnormal Operation.

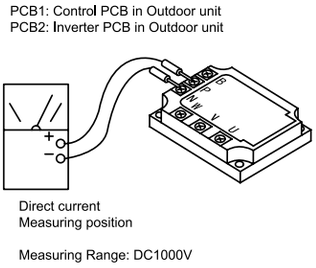


Alarm code	06	Excessively low voltage or excessively high voltage for the inverter (For 8/10HP)

The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.

- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
- The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the voltage between terminal “P” and “N” of Inverter is insufficient and the alarm has three occurrences in 30 minutes. If the number of occurrences is smaller than two, the retry operation is performed. The alarm code “06.” Means fan controller Abnormal Operation.



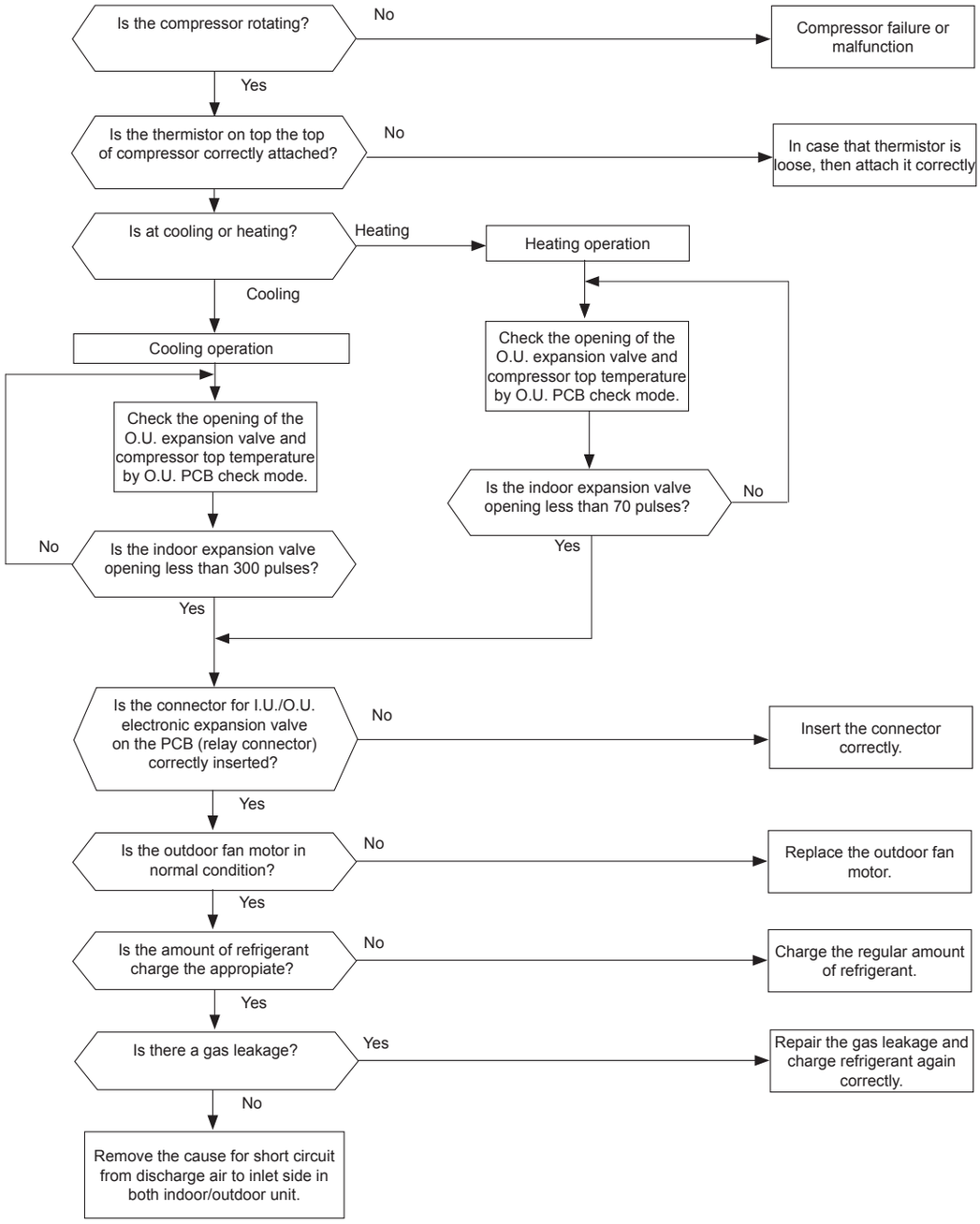


NOTE

- **1): If capacitor has high voltage, perform the high voltage discharge work refer to the item Procedure of checking other main parts.*
- **2): Regarding replacing or checking method for the inverter PCB, refer to the item Procedure of checking other main parts.*
- **3) Be careful especially because of high voltage.*

Alarm code	07	Decrease of Discharge Gas Superheat

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
- This alarm code is indicated as follows:
  - When the temperature at the top of the compressor is lower than the estimated condensing temperature continously for 30 minutes during operation. If this occurs twice in the following 120 minutes, then an alarm code wil be displayed.



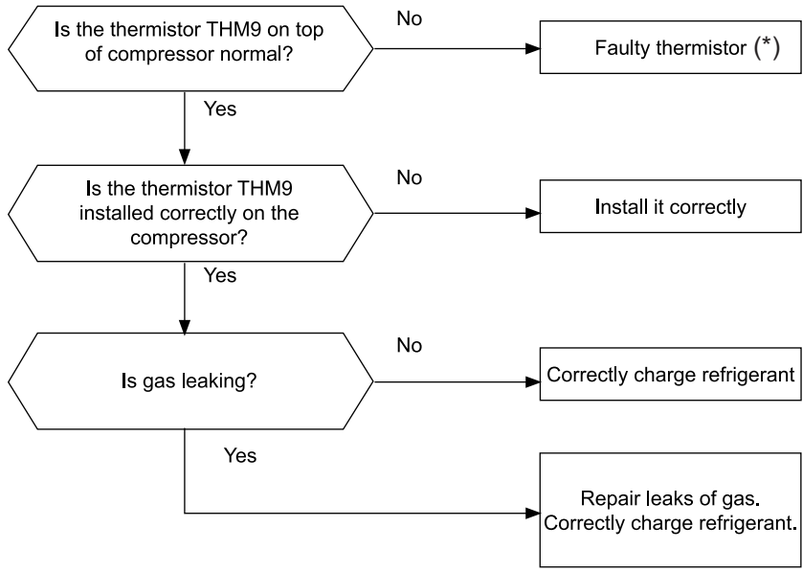
Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Decrease of Discharge Gas Superheat	Ref. cycle is different from the electrical system		Check ref. cycle and the electrical system	Repair wiring
	Overcharged Refrigerant		Measure pressure	Correctly charge refrigerant
	Faulty Expansion Valve		Check expansion valve *1)	Replace expansion valve if faulty
	Faulty PCB	Fault	Replace PCB and check operation	Replace PCB if faulty
		Disconnected Wires for Ex.Valve Control	Check connections.	Repair wiring connections
	Faulty Discharge Gas Thermistor	Fault	Measure resistance.	Replace thermistor if faulty
		Incorrect Mounting	Check mounting state .(See “Alarm Code 08”.)	Correctly mount thermistor.
		Incorrect Connection	Check connections.	Remove looseness, replace connector or repair connections.

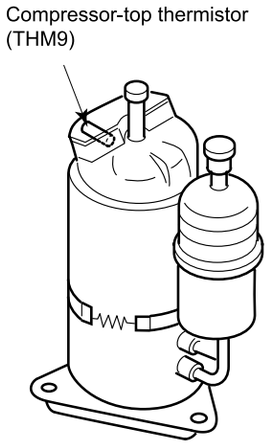
NOTE

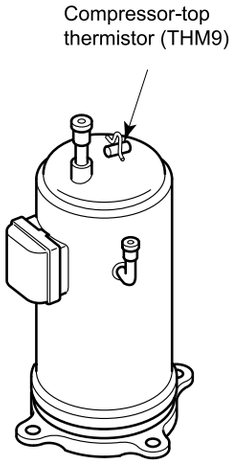
**1) Refer to section Procedure of checking other main parts, in part “Checking procedure for the electronic expansion valve”.*

Alarm code	08	Excessively High Discharge Gas Temperature at the Top of Compressor

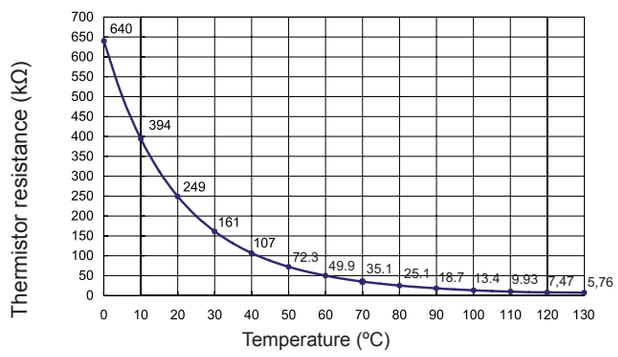
- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - The alarm appears during cooling operation when the compressor-top thermistor remains at Tdc 1 °C or above for 10 minutes, or at Tdc 2 °C or above for 5 seconds.
  - The alarm appears during heating operation when the compressor-top thermistor remains at Tdh 1 °C or above for 10 minutes, or at Tdh 2 °C or above for 5 seconds.







Thermistor resistance characteristics

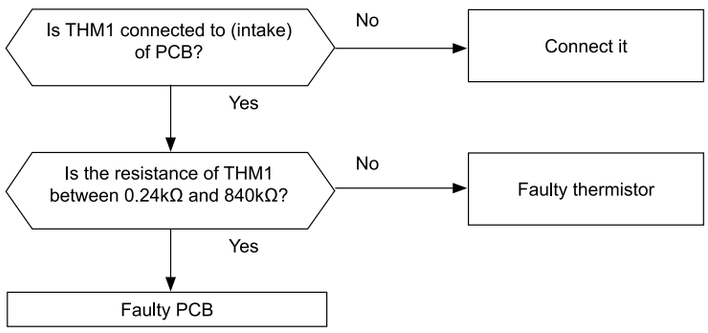


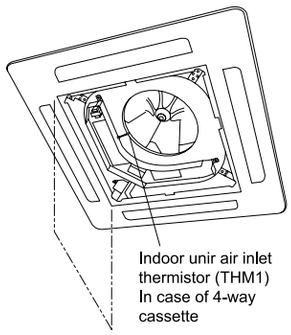
Outdoor capacity	Tdc1	Tdc2	Tdh1	Tdh2
(3/4)HP	115	125	115	125
(5-10)HP	127	140	120	140

11

Alarm code	11	Abnormal operation of thermistor for the indoor unit air inlet temperature (air inlet thermistor) (THM1)

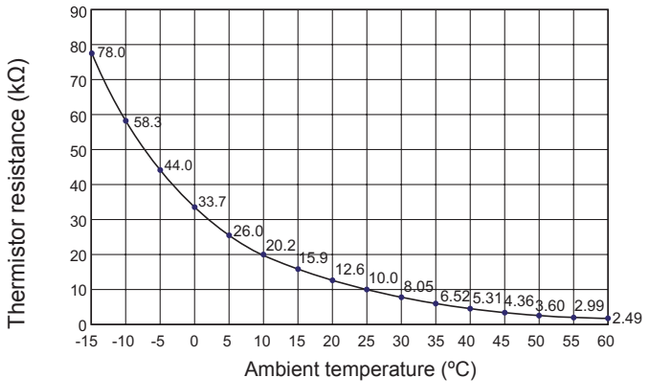
- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
  The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the thermistor is short-circuited (less than 0.24 kΩ) or cut (greater than 840 kΩ) during the cooling process or the heating process. The system is automatically restarted when the fault is removed.





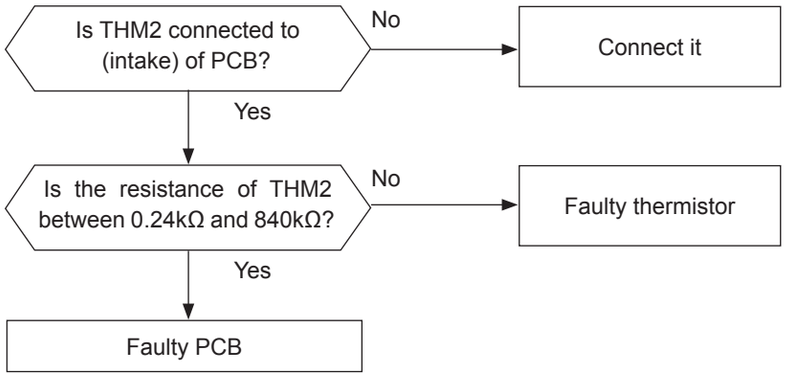
Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Faulty air inlet thermistor	Fault	Check the resistance	Replace the thermistor if faulty
	Incorrect connection	Check the connection	Repair the wiring and the connections
Faulty PCB		Replace PCB and check the operation	Replace PCB if faulty

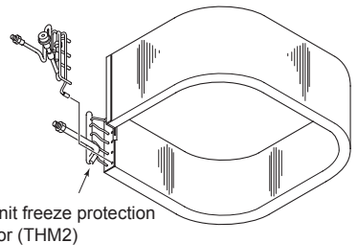
Thermistor resistance characteristics



Alarm code	12	Abnormal operation of the thermistor for the indoor discharge air temperature (air outlet thermistor) (THM2)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
  The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the thermistor is short-circuited (less than 0.24 kΩ) or cut (greater than 840 kΩ) during the cooling process or the heating process. The system is automatically restarted when the fault is removed.



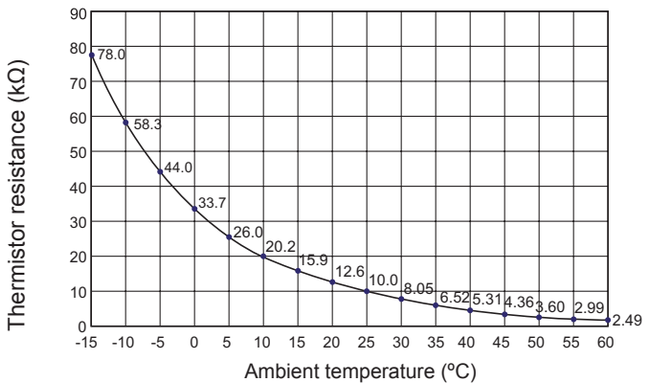


Indoor unit freeze protection thermistor (THM2)

In case of 4-way cassette

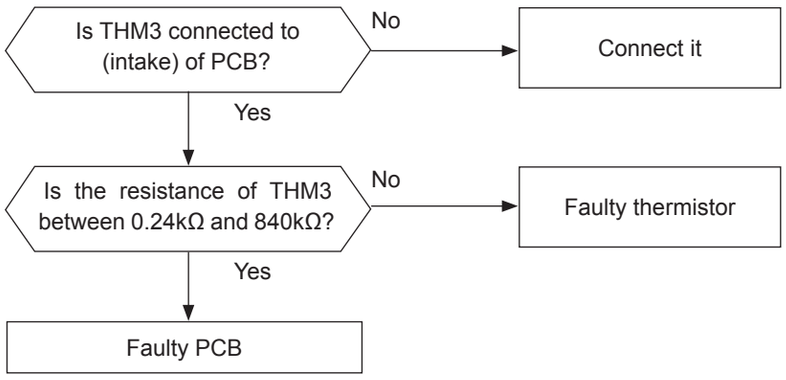
Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Faulty air outlet thermistor	Fault	Check the resistance	Replace the thermistor if faulty
	Incorrect connection	Check the connection	Repair the wiring and connections
Faulty PCB		Replace PCB and check the operation	Replace PCB if faulty

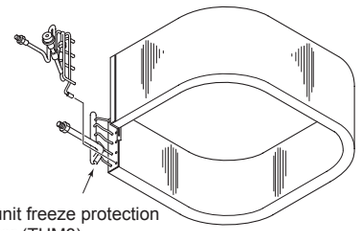
Thermistor resistance characteristics



Alarm code	13	Abnormal operation of the thermistor for the indoor unit heat exchanger liquid pipe temperature (freeze protection thermistor) (THM3)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the thermistor is short-circuited (less than 0.24 kΩ) or cut (greater than 840 kΩ) during the cooling process or the heating process. The system is automatically restarted when the fault is removed.



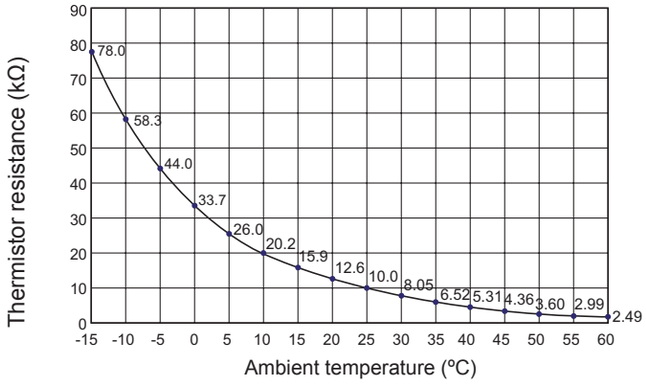


Indoor unit freeze protection thermistor (THM3)

In case of 4-way cassette

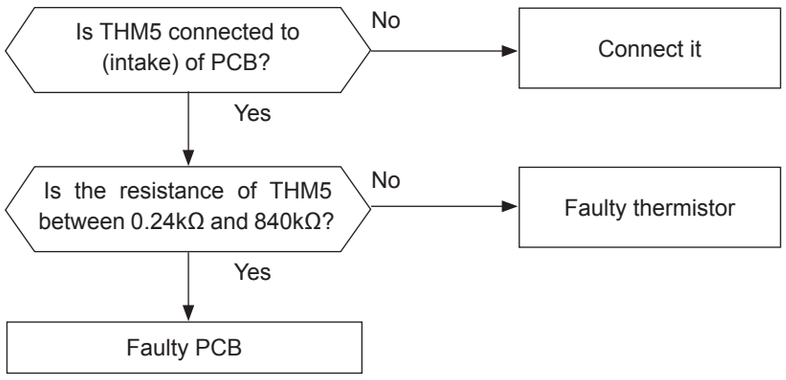
Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Faulty freeze protection thermistor	Fault	Check the resistance	Replace the thermistor if faulty
	Incorrect connection	Check the connection	Repair the wiring and connections
Faulty PCB		Replace PCB and check the operation	Replace PCB if faulty

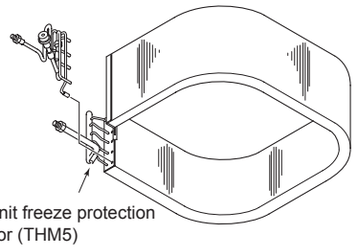
Thermistor resistance characteristics



Alarm code	14	Abnormal operation of the thermistor for the indoor unit heat exchanger gas pipe temperature (gas piping thermistor) (THM5)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
  The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the thermistor is short-circuited (less than 0.24 kΩ) or cut (greater than 840 kΩ) during the cooling process or the heating process. The system is automatically restarted when the fault is removed.



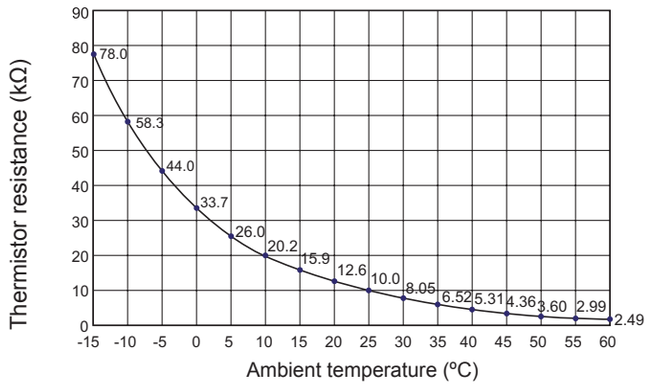


Indoor unit freeze protection thermistor (THM5)

In case of 4-way cassette

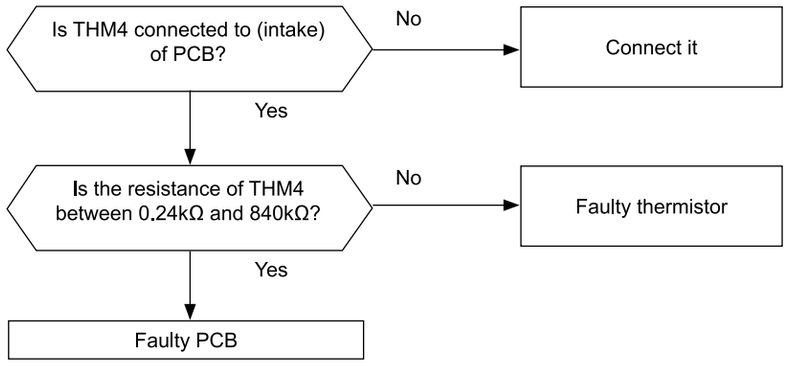
Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Faulty gas piping thermistor	Fault	Check the resistance	Replace the thermistor if faulty
	Incorrect connection	Check the connection	Repair the wiring and connections
Faulty PCB		Replace PCB and check the operation	Replace PCB if faulty

Thermistor resistance characteristics



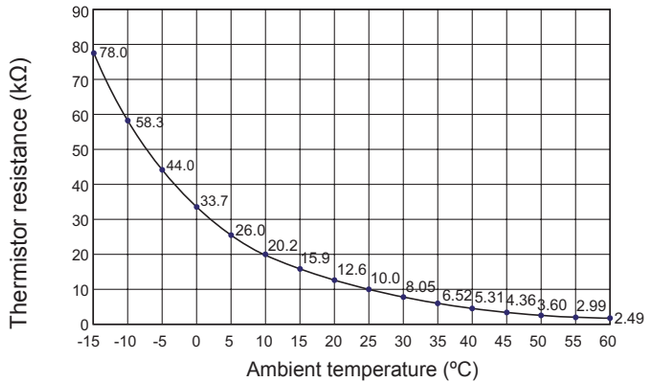
Alarm code	15	Abnormal operation of thermistor for fresh outdoor air (Econofresh) (THM4)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the thermistor is short-circuited (less than 0.24 kΩ) or cut (greater than 840 kΩ) during the cooling process or the heating process. The system is automatically restarted when the fault is removed.



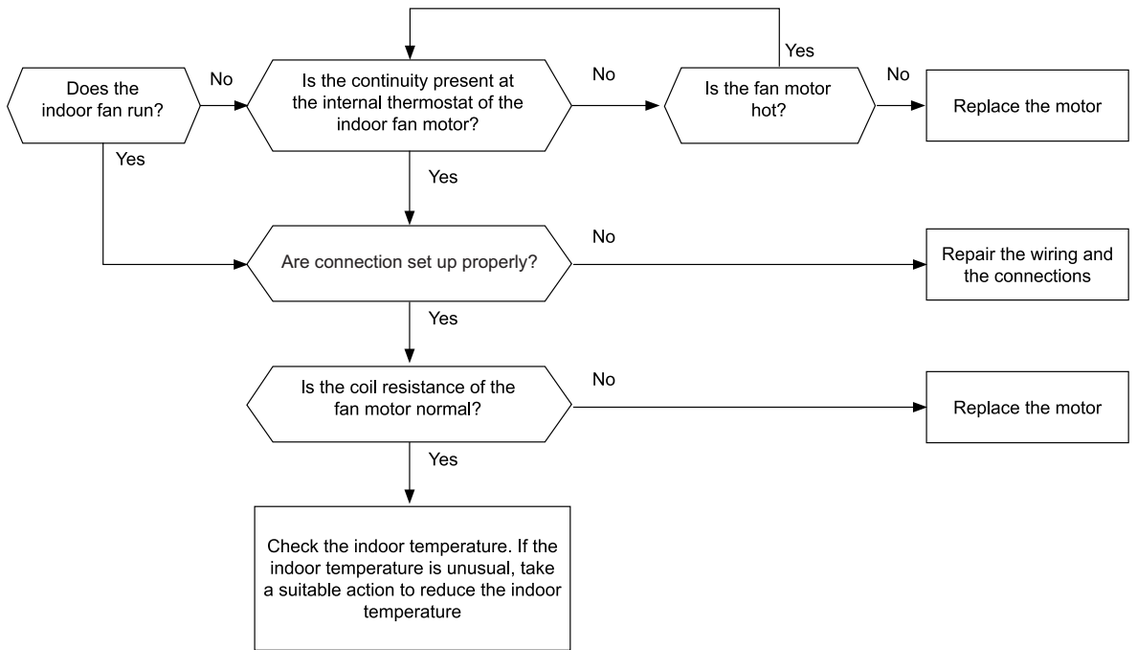
Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Faulty fresh outdoor air (Econofresh) thermistor	Fault	Check the resistance	Replace the thermistor if faulty
	Incorrect connection	Check the connection	Repair the wiring and the connections
Faulty PCB		Replace PCB and check the operation	Replace PCB if faulty

Thermistor resistance characteristics



Alarm code	19	Activation of the protection device for the indoor fan motor (except RCI, RCIM and RPK)

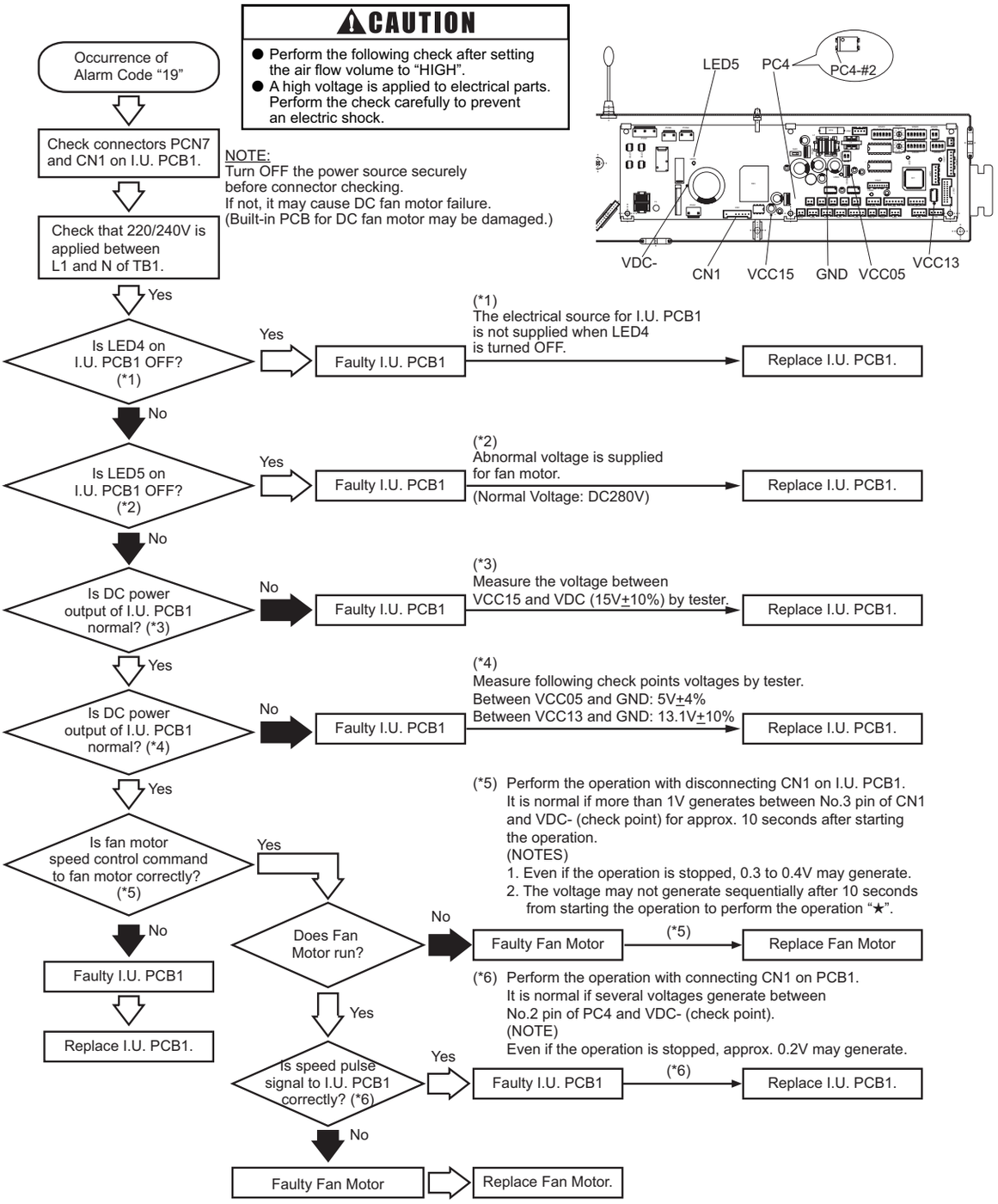
- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
  The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the temperature of the internal thermostat for the indoor fan motor is higher than 135 °C.



Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Activation of the internal thermostat for the indoor unit fan motor	Faulty indoor unit fan motor		Measure the coil resistance and the insulation resistance	Replace the motor if faulty
	Faulty internal thermostat	Fault	Check the continuity after the fan motor temperature decreases to room temp	Replace the fan motor if there is no continuity
		Insufficient contacting	Measure the resistance by means of the tester	Correct looseness. Replace the connectors
		Incorrect connection	Check the connections	Repair the connections

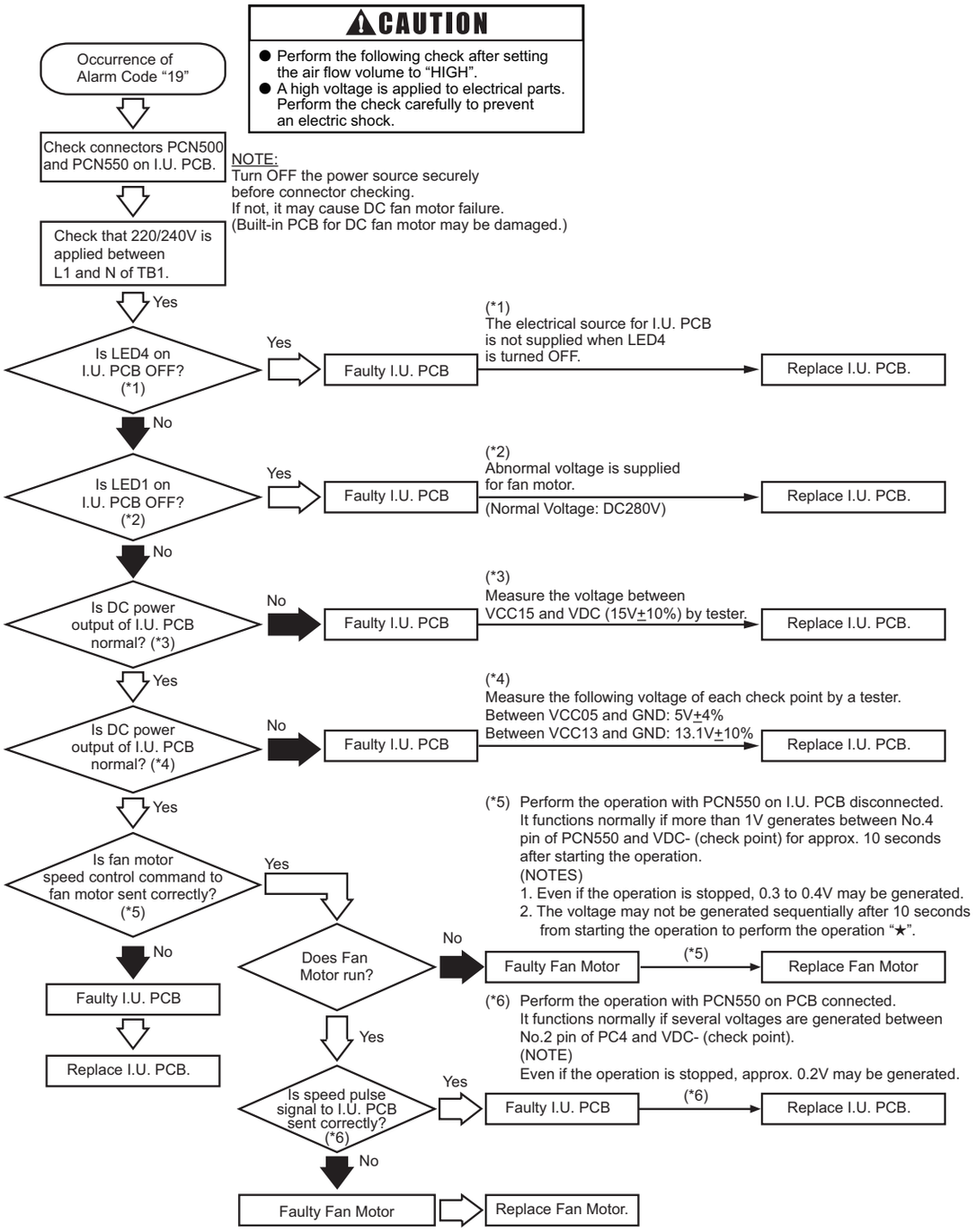
Alarm code	19	Activation of the protection device for the indoor fan motor (RCI, RCIM)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
- The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB1.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the following conditions occurs three times in 30 minutes. Indoor fan rotates less than 70 rpm for 5 seconds during operation.
- When the cause is checked by means of this flow chart, confirm that fan speed setting is Hi



Alarm code	19	Activation of the protection device for the indoor fan motor (RPK)

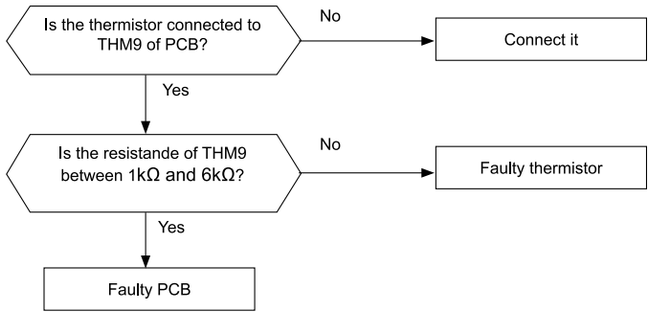
- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB1.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the following conditions occurs three times in 30 minutes. Indoor fan rotates less than 70 rpm for 5 seconds during operation.
- Set air flow volume “Hi” before starting this check.

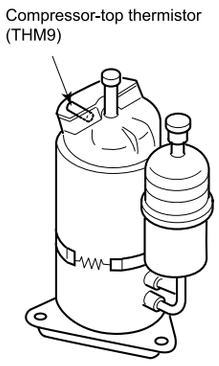


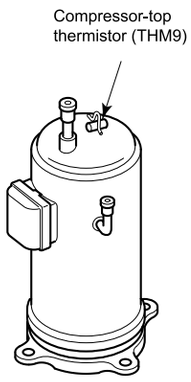
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 303 04/06/2013 18:14:48

Alarm code	20	Abnormality of Thermistor for Discharge Gas Temperature (Compressor Thermistor) (THM9)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is indicated when the thermistor is short-circuited (less than 1 kΩ) or cut (greater than 6 MΩ) during the cooling or heating operation.

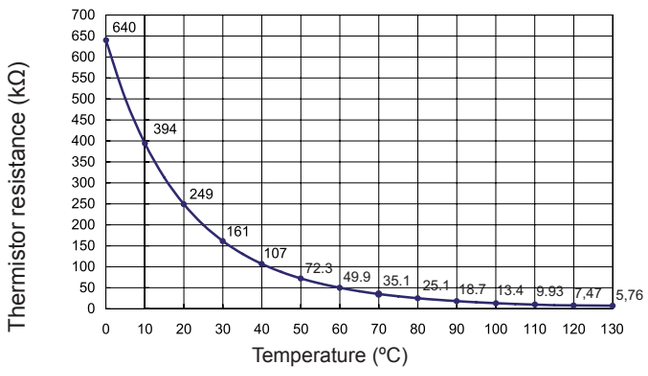






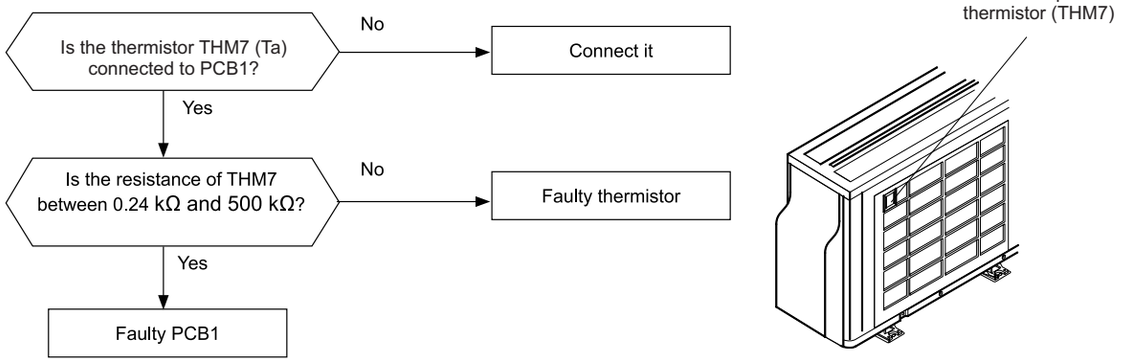
Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF Main Switch)
Faulty top of compressor thermistor	Fault	Check resistance	Replace thermistor if faulty
	Incorrect connection	Check wiring to PCB1	Repair wiring and connections
Faulty PCB1		Replace PCB1 and check operation	Replace PCB1 if faulty

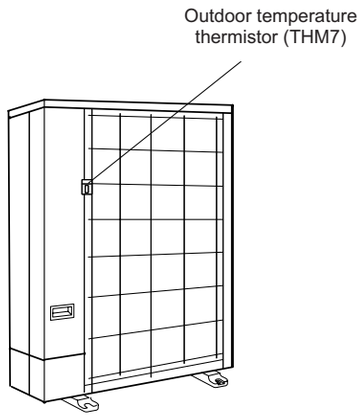
Thermistor resistance characteristics



Alarm code	22	Abnormal operation of the thermistor for the outdoor temperature (outdoor unit ambient thermistor) (THM7)

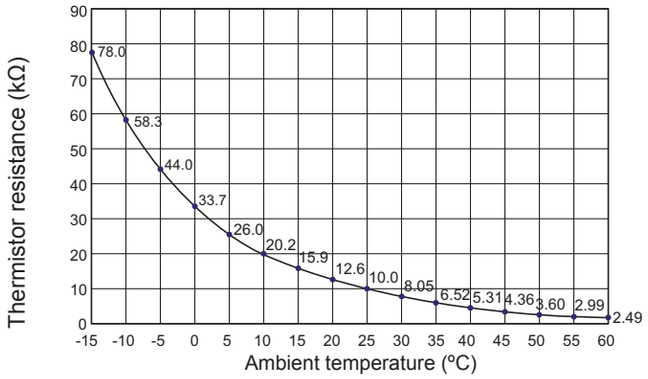
- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
  The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the thermistor is short-circuited (less than 0.2 kΩ) or cut (greater than 500 kΩ) during the operation.





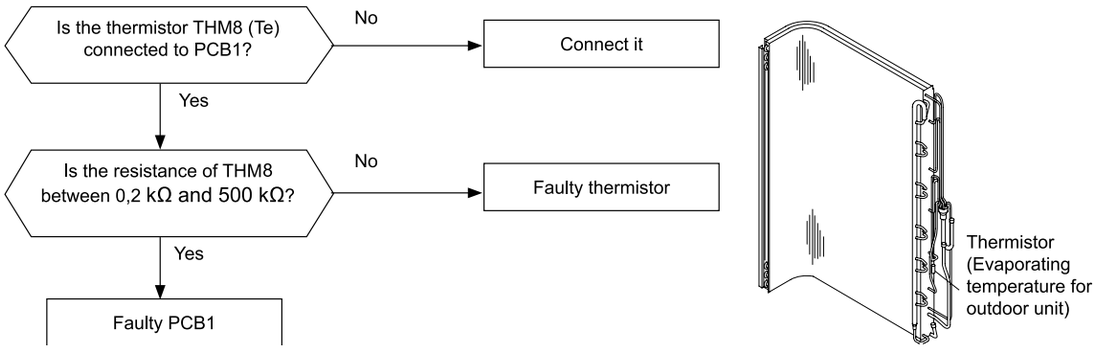
Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF Main Switch)
Faulty thermistor for the outdoor unit ambient	Fault	Check resistance	Replace thermistor if faulty
	Incorrect connection	Check wiring to PCB	Repair wiring and connections
Faulty PCB1		Replace PCB1 and check operation	Replace PCB if faulty

Thermistor resistance characteristics



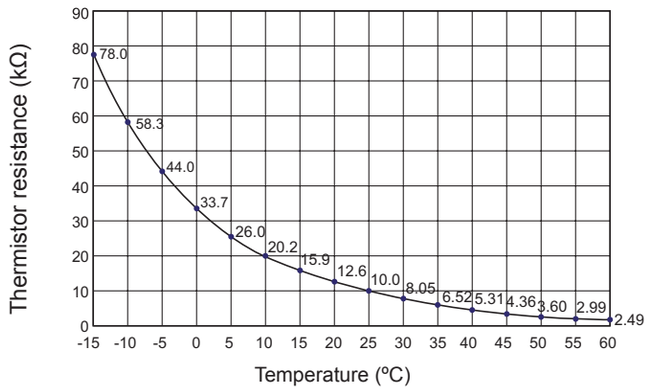
Alarm code	24	Abnormal operation of the thermistor for the evaporating temperature during the heating process (O.U. evaporatin temperature thermistor) (THM8)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB. (*1)
  If you find an abnormal operation of the thermistor, check all the thermistors as shown below.
  - The evaporating thermistor during the heating process is attached to the heat exchanger as shown in the figure below. If this the thermistor is faulty, such as short-circuit (less than 0,2kΩ) or cut (more than 500kΩ) during operation, this alarm is displayed. The position is indicated below.



Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF the main switch)
Faulty thermistor for the evaporating temperature during heating	Fault	Check the resistance	Replace the thermistor if faulty
	Incorrect Connection	Check the wiring to PCB	Repair the wiring and the connections
Faulty PCB		Replace PCB and check the operation	Replace PCB if faulty

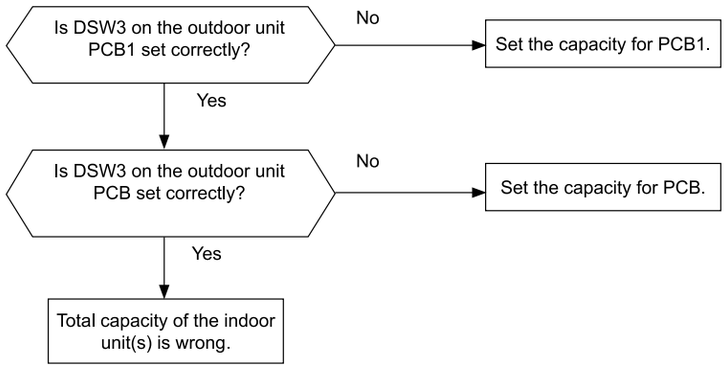
Thermistor resistance characteristics



Alarm code	31	Incorrect Capacity Setting or Combined Capacity between Indoor Units and Outdoor Unit

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is indicated when the undefined setting is set to DSW3 on the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is indicated when the total indoor unit capacity is not equal to the combined outdoor unit capacity. Outdoor unit capacity setting is not correct

Conditions:



Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF Main Switch)
Incorrect Capacity Setting of Indoor Unit		Check combination of indoor units and capacity setting on PCB.	Correctly set dip switch, DSW3.
Incorrect Capacity Setting of Outdoor Unit		Check capacity setting on outdoor unit PCB.	Correctly set dip switch, DSW3.
Total Indoor Unit Capacity Connected to the Outdoor Unit is Beyond Permissible Range		Check outdoor unit model by calculating total indoor units capacity.	Ensure that total indoor unit capacity agrees with the above capacity conditions.

NOTE

- *In case of H-LINK system, this alarm code is indicated when DSW4, RSW1 (for refrigerant system setting) on the outdoor unit PCB and DSW5, RSW2 (for refrigerant system setting) on the indoor unit PCB are incorrectly set.*
- *In this case, set correctly DSW4, RSW1, DSW5 and RSW2 after turning OFF main switch.*
- *(RSW2 is not equipped with some models).*

Alarm code	35	Incorrect Indoor number setting

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, alarm code and unit model code appear alternately on the Set Temperature display of the remote control switch. The alarm code also appears on the outdoor unit PCB display.
  - The alarm code appears three minutes after the outdoor unit power activation if duplication is detected in indoor unit numbers connected to an outdoor unit (one refrigerant system). This applies when indoor unit numbers are configured using the rotary switch (RSW1).
  - The alarm code appears when the number of indoor units connected to one outdoor unit is incorrect.
  - The alarm code appears when the indoor and outdoor unit refrigerant system and address are set to 64 or above. (In such a case, the alarm code “b1” appears on the remote control switch.)

NOTE

The alarm code may appear when H-LINK system is employed for indoor–outdoor unit transmission, if there is any incorrect setting in DSW4/RSW1 on the outdoor unit PCB and DSW5/RSW2 on the indoor unit PCB; which are dip switches used for refrigerant system setting. In such a case, turn OFF the power and correctly set DSW4/RSW1 on the outdoor unit PCB and DSW5/RSW2 on the indoor unit PCB before reactivating the power.

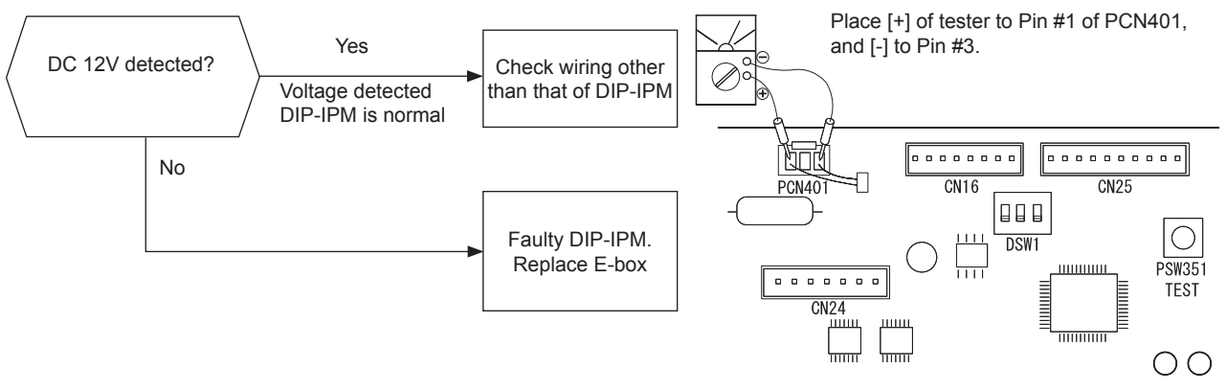
(Some indoor unit models do not have RSW2.)

Alarm code	38	Abnormality of protective circuit for protection (Outdoor unit) (For 3HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.

The alarm code appears if approx. DC12V is supplied to the DIP-IPM connector (see table below) when the inverter operation is commanded (after five seconds following activation of the remote control switch).

Place the tester as shown in the diagram below to check the connector of PCN401. The connector shall remain inserted. DC12V will constantly be detected and disturb the diagnosis if the connector of PCN401 is pulled out.



NOTE

This alarm may appear if the Faston terminal of the high pressure switch (63H1) is improperly connected or damaged (open-circuit fault) when the operation is started. Besides this, check also “Alarm Code: 02 Activation of Outdoor Unit Protection Device”.

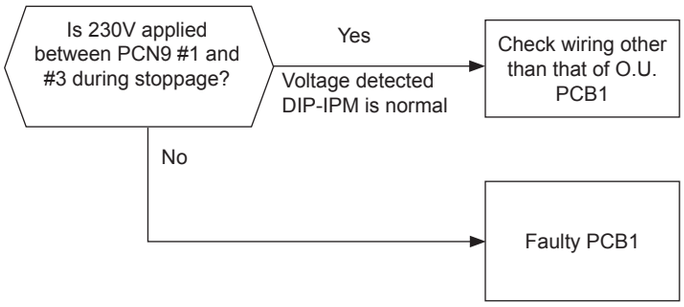
Alarm code	38	Abnormality of protective circuit for protection (Outdoor unit) (For 4-10HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.

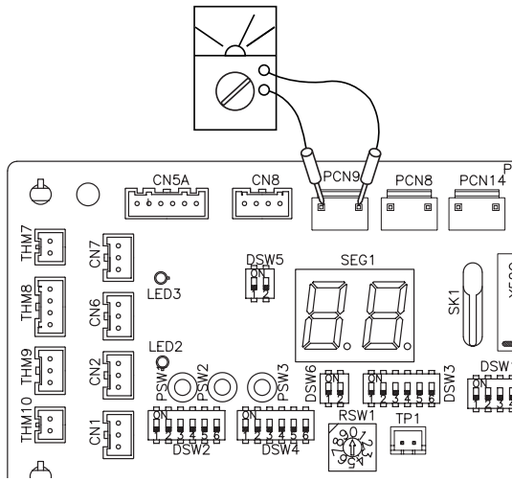
The alarm code is displayed when:

1 There is no input signal of Y52C (Compressor relay opened) or CMC1 (Magnetic contactor for compressor) after to switch-OFF.

2 When abnormality of protective circuit for protection is received from microprocessor of Inverter PCB.



(Example for RAS-4HP)



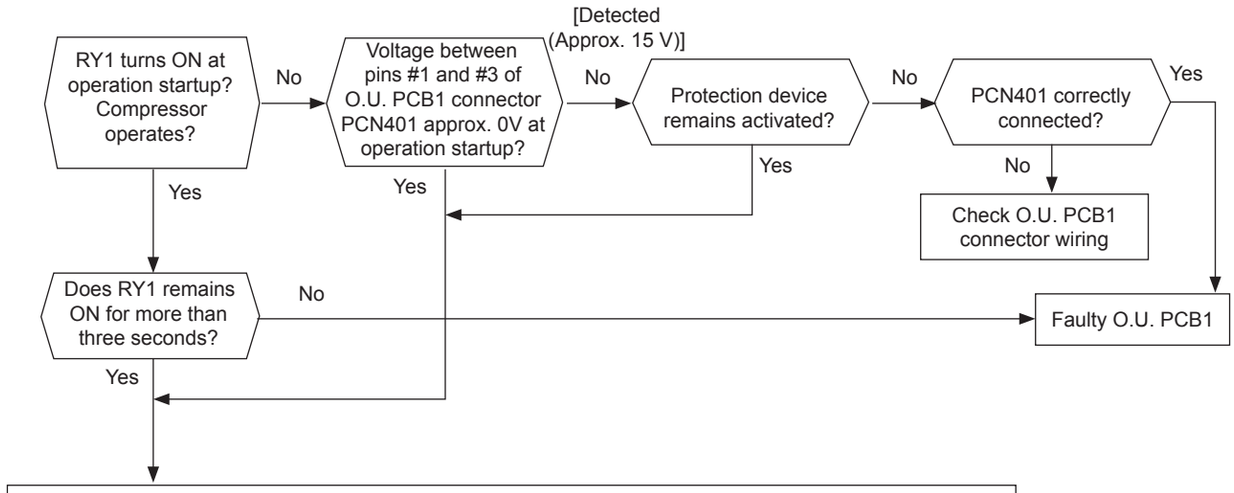
Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF Main Switch)
Faulty outdoor unit PCB1		Check outdoor unit PCB1 by self-checking	Replace outdoor unit PCB1

NOTE

This alarm may appear if the Faston terminal of the high pressure switch (63H1) is improperly connected or damaged (open-circuit fault) when the operation is started. Besides this, check also “Alarm Code: 02 Activation of Outdoor Unit Protection Device”.

Alarm code	41	Cooling Overload (High pressure switch will be activated) (For 3HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - Abnormality indication will appear when the protection device is activated during compressor operation at cooling, with the outdoor unit evaporation temperature higher than 55 °C and the compressor-top temperature higher than 95 °C.



Check the temperature of the following places with the remote control switch in checking mode.

1 Compressor-top temperature = 95°C or less.

2 Evaporating piping temperature of outdoor unit = 55°C or less.

Inspect the cause and address the problem if the measurements surpass the temperatures.

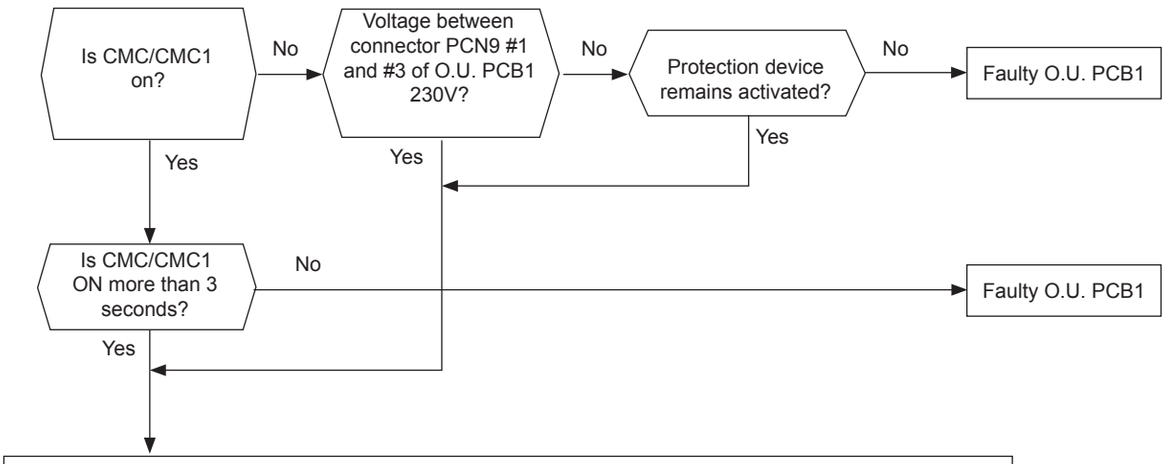
Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF main switch)
Activation of High Pressure Switch due to Excessively High Discharge Pressure during Cooling Operation	Insufficient Air Flow to Heat Exchanger of Outdoor Unit		Clogging of Heat Exchanger?	Remover clogging
			Check for dust on air filter	Remove dust
			Check the service space	Secure service space
			Check for outdoor fan speed	Replace fan motor if faulty
	Excessively High Temp. Air to Outdoor Unit Heat Exchanger		Check for hot air near the ceiling	Make good circulation
			Check for short circuited air	Remove short-circuited air
			Check for other heat source	Remove heat source
	Faulty High Pressure Switch	Faulty Pressure Switch	Measure discharge pressure. Check continuity after decreasing of pressure	Replace it if faulty
		Insufficient Contacting	Measure resistance by tester	Repair looseness. Replace connector
		Incorrect Connection	Check connections	Repair connections
	Overcharged Refrigerant		Check cycle operating temp.	Charge refrigerant correctly
	Mixture of Non-Condensable Gas in Refrigerant Cycle		Check ambient temp. and pressure	Recharge refrigerant after vacuum pumping
	Clogging of Discharge Piping		Check for clogging	Remove clogging
	Faulty or Malfunction of Expansion Valve		Check for clogging	Remove clogging
			Check connecting wiring and connectors	Replace connector
			Check operating sound from coil	Replace coil
			Check discharge gas thermistor	Replace thermistor
			Check attaching state of discharge gas thermistor	Reattach thermistor
	Liquid Line Stop Valve or Gas Line Stop Valve are not in Operation		Check stop valves	Fully open stop valve
	Locking up Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve Closure		Check expansion valve actuation	Replace outdoor expansion valve

NOTE

This alarm code is indicated when the outdoor unit protective device is activated by high discharge pressure during cooling operation. Accordingly, when this alarm code is indicated, there is high possibility of high pressure switch actuation and the above troubleshooting actions are based on such cases.

Alarm code	41	Cooling Overload (High pressure switch will be activated) (For 4-10HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - Abnormality indication will appear when the protection device is activated during compressor operation at cooling, with the outdoor unit evaporation temperature higher than 55 °C and the compressor-top temperature higher than 95 °C.



Check the temperature of the following places with the remote control switch in checking mode.

1 Compressor-top temperature = 95°C or less.

2 Evaporating piping temperature of outdoor unit = 55°C or less.

Inspect the cause and address the problem if the measurements surpass the temperatures.

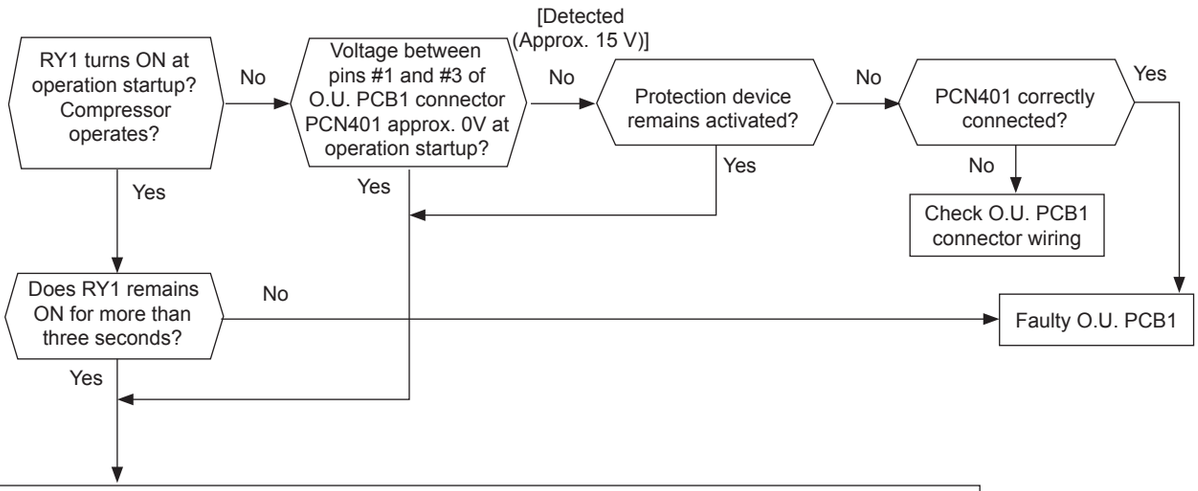
Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF main switch)
Activation of High Pressure Switch due to Excessively High Discharge Pressure during Cooling Operation	Insufficient Air Flow to Heat Exchanger of Outdoor Unit		Clogging of Heat Exchanger?	Remover clogging
			Check for dust on air filter	Remove dust
			Check the service space	Secure service space
			Check for outdoor fan speed	Replace fan motor if faulty
	Excessively High Temp. Air to Outdoor Unit Heat Exchanger		Check for hot air near the ceiling	Make good circulation
			Check for short circuited air	Remove short-circuited air
			Check for other heat source	Remove heat source
	Faulty High Pressure Switch	Faulty Pressure Switch	Measure discharge pressure. Check continuity after decreasing of pressure	Replace it if faulty
		Insufficient Contacting	Measure resistance by tester	Repair looseness. Replace connector
		Incorrect Connection	Check connections	Repair connections
	Overcharged Refrigerant		Check cycle operating temp.	Charge refrigerant correctly
	Mixture of Non-Condensable Gas in Refrigerant Cycle		Check ambient temp. and pressure	Recharge refrigerant after vacuum pumping
	Clogging of Discharge Piping		Check for clogging	Remove clogging
	Faulty or Malfunction of Expansion Valve		Check for clogging	Remove clogging
			Check connecting wiring and connectors	Replace connector
			Check operating sound from coil	Replace coil
			Check discharge gas thermistor	Replace thermistor
			Check attaching state of discharge gas thermistor	Reattach thermistor
	Liquid Line Stop Valve or Gas Line Stop Valve are not in Operation		Check stop valves	Fully open stop valve
	Locking up Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve Closure		Check expansion valve actuation	Replace outdoor expansion valve

NOTE

This alarm code is indicated when the outdoor unit protective device is activated by high discharge pressure during cooling operation. Accordingly, when this alarm code is indicated, there is high possibility of high pressure switch actuation and the above troubleshooting actions are based on such cases.

Alarm code	42	Heating Overload (High pressure switch will be activated) (For 3HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - Abnormality indication will appear when the protection device is activated during compressor operation at heating, with the liquid refrigerant piping temperature of indoor unit higher than 55 °C and the compressor-top temperature higher than 95 °C.



Check the temperature of the following places with the remote control switch in checking mode.

1 Compressor-top temperature = 95°C or less.

2 Liquid refrigerant piping temperature of indoor unit = 55°C or less.

Inspect the cause and address the problem if the measurements surpass the temperatures.

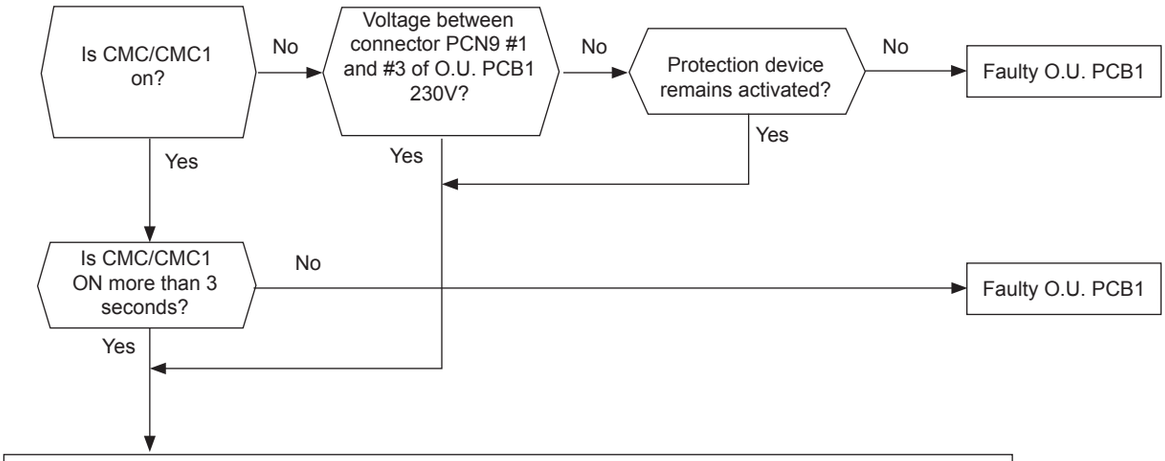
Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF Main Switch)
Activation of High Pressure Switch due to Excessively High Discharge Pressure during Heating Operation	Insufficient Air Flow to Heat Exchanger of Indoor Unit		Clogging of Heat Exchanger	Remove it
			Check for dust on air filter	
			Check for any obstacle at inlet or outlet of heat exchanger	
			Check the service space	Secure service space
			Check for indoor fan speed	Replace fan motor if faulty
Activation of High Pressure Switch due to Excessively High Discharge Pressure during Heating Operation	Excessively High Temp. Air to Indoor Unit Heat Exchanger		Calculate heat load.	Reduce heat load or use a bigger unit
			Check for hot air near the ceiling	Make good circulation
			Check for short circuited air	Remove short-circuited air
			Check for other heat source	Remove heat source
	Faulty High Pressure Switch	Faulty Pressure Switch	Measure discharge pressure. Check continuity after decreasing of pressure	Replace it if faulty
		Insufficient Contacting	Measure resistance by tester	Repair looseness. Replace connector
		Incorrect Connection	Check connections	Repair connections
	Faulty of Outdoor Fan Control		Check decreasing air flow volume at pressure switch for control activative	Replace thermistor for evaporating temp. if faulty
	Faulty of Pressure Switch for Control		Check activated pressure and connecting wire	Replace it if pressure switch for control is faulty
	Overcharged Refrigerant		Check cycle operating temp.	Charge refrigerant correctly
	Mixture of Non-Condensable Gas in Refrigerant Cycle		Check ambient temp. and pressure	Recharge refrigerant after vacuum pumping
	Clogging of Discharge Piping		Check for clogging	Remove clogging
	Faulty or Malfunction of Expansion Valve		Check for clogging	Remove clogging
			Check connecting wiring and connectors	Replace connector
			Check operating sound from coil	Replace coil
			Check discharge gas thermistor	Replace thermistor
			Check attaching state of discharge gas thermistor	Reattach thermistor
	Liquid Line Stop Valve or Gas Line Stop Valve are not in Operation		Check stop valves	Fully open stop valve

NOTE

This alarm code is indicated when the outdoor unit protective device is activated by high discharge pressure during heating operation. Accordingly, when this alarm code is indicated, there is high possibility of high pressure switch actuation and the above troubleshooting actions are based on such cases.

Alarm code	42	Heating Overload (High pressure switch will be activated) (For 4-10HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - Abnormality indication will appear when the protection device is activated during compressor operation at heating, with the liquid refrigerant piping temperature of indoor unit higher than 55 °C and the compressor-top temperature higher than 95 °C.



Check the temperature of the following places with the remote control switch in checking mode.

1 Compressor-top temperature = 95°C or less.

2 Liquid refrigerant piping temperature of indoor unit = 55°C or less.

Inspect the cause and address the problem if the measurements surpass the temperatures.

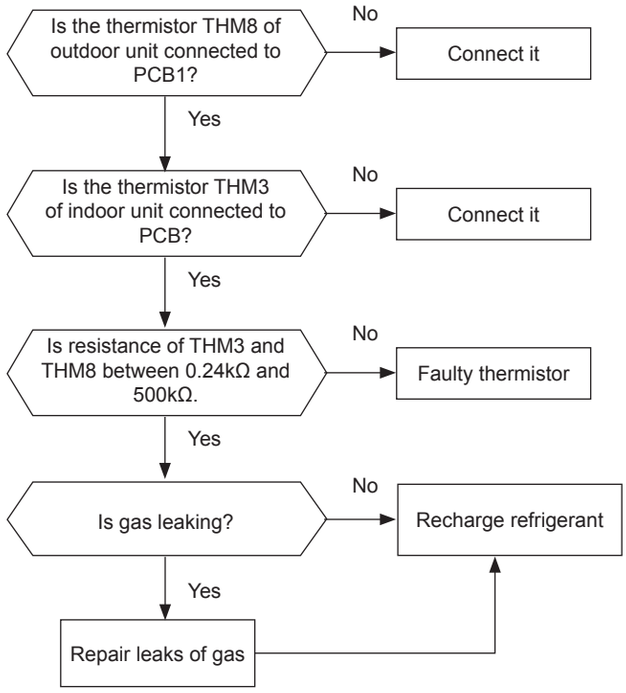
Phenomenon	Cause		Check item	Action (Turn OFF Main Switch)
Activation of High Pressure Switch due to Excessively High Discharge Pressure during Heating Operation	Insufficient Air Flow to Heat Exchanger of Indoor Unit		Clogging of Heat Exchanger	Remove it
			Check for dust on air filter	
			Check for any obstacle at inlet or outlet of heat exchanger	
			Check the service space	Secure service space
			Check for fan speed. (Cooling: Outdoor Fan Heating: Indoor Fan)	Replace fan motor if faulty
Activation of High Pressure Switch due to Excessively High Discharge Pressure during Heating Operation	Excessively High Temp. Air to Indoor Unit Heat Exchanger		Calculate heat load.	Reduce heat load or use a bigger unit
			Check for hot air near the ceiling	Make good circulation
			Check for short circuited air	Remove short-circuited air
			Check for other heat source	Remove heat source
	Faulty High Pressure Switch	Faulty Pressure Switch	Measure discharge pressure. Check continuity after decreasing of pressure	Replace it if faulty
		Insufficient Contacting	Measure resistance by tester	Repair looseness. Replace connector
		Incorrect Connection	Check connections	Repair connections
	Faulty of Outdoor Fan Control		Check decreasing air flow volume at pressure switch for control activative	Replace thermistor for evaporating temp. if faulty
	Faulty of Pressure Switch for Control		Check activated pressure and connecting wire	Replace it if pressure switch for control is faulty
	Overcharged Refrigerant		Check cycle operating temp.	Charge refrigerant correctly
	Mixture of Non-Condensable Gas in Refrigerant Cycle		Check ambient temp. and pressure	Recharge refrigerant after vacuum pumping
	Clogging of Discharge Piping		Check for clogging	Remove clogging
	Faulty or Malfunction of Expansion Valve		Check for clogging	Remove clogging
			Check connecting wiring and connectors	Replace connector
			Check operating sound from coil	Replace coil
			Check discharge gas thermistor	Replace thermistor
			Check attaching state of discharge gas thermistor	Reattach thermistor
	Liquid Line Stop Valve or Gas Line Stop Valve are not in Operation		Check stop valves	Fully open stop valve

NOTE

This alarm code is indicated when the outdoor unit protective device is activated by high discharge pressure during heating operation. Accordingly, when this alarm code is indicated, there is high possibility of high pressure switch actuation and the above troubleshooting actions are based on such cases.

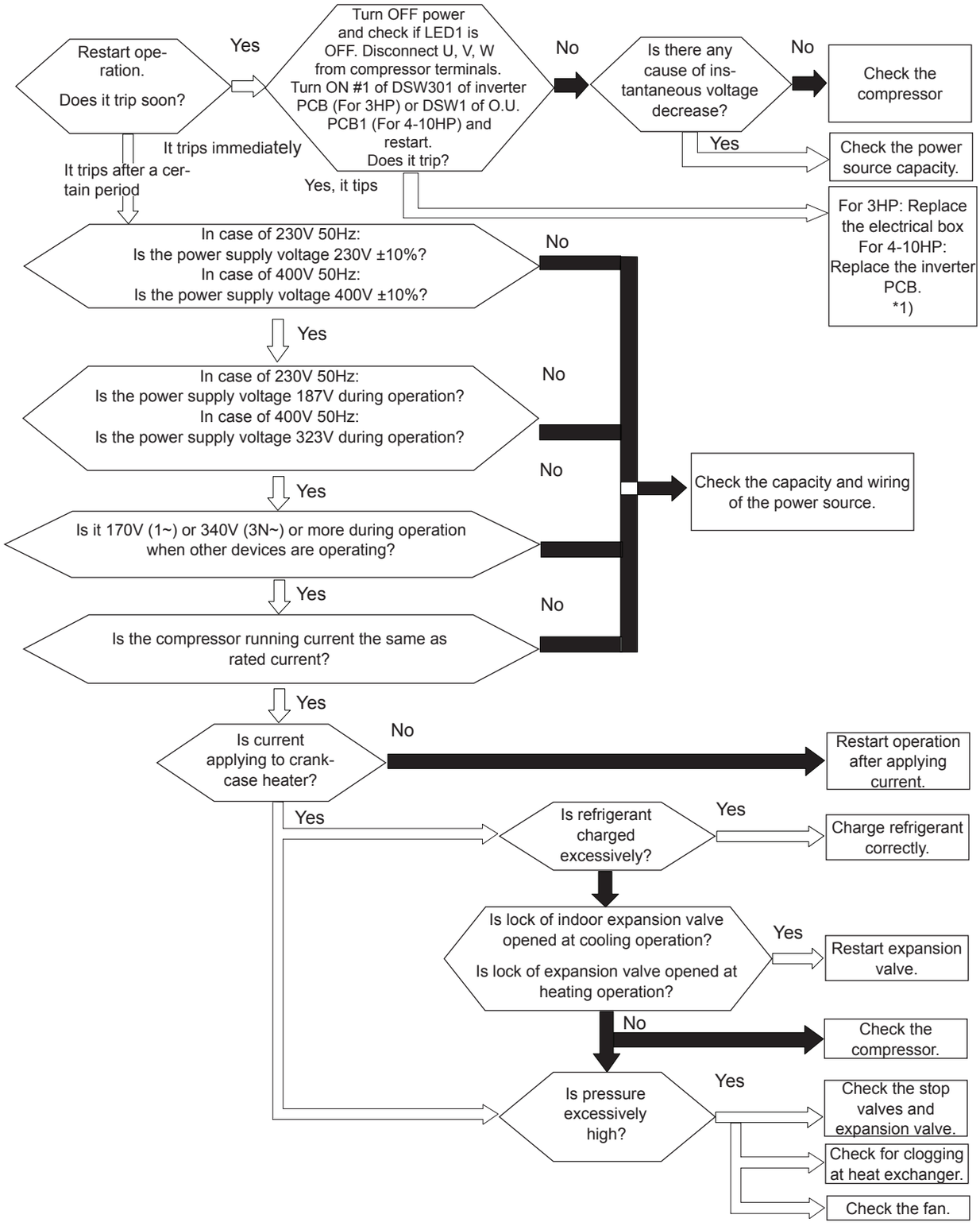
Alarm code	47	Activation to Protect System from Excessively Low Suction Pressure (Protection from Vacuum Operation)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - In the case that the evaporating temperature (Cooling: Liquid Refrigerant Piping Temp. of Indoor Unit, Heating: Evaporating Temp. of Outdoor Unit) is lower than -37 °C (250~350 kΩ) and the thermistor on top of compressor is higher than 90 °C. for 10 minutes, retry operation is performed 3 minutes after compressor stoppage. However, when the state occurs more than 3 times including 3 in one hour, this alarm code is indicated.



Phenomenon	Cause	Check item	Action (Turn OFF Main Switch).
Faulty indoor unit liquid refrigerant temp. thermistor Faulty outdoor unit evaporating temp. thermistor	Fault	Check resistance.	Replace thermistor if faulty.
	Incorrect Connection	Check wiring to PCB.	Repair wiring and connections.
Faulty PCB (Outdoor Unit, Indoor Unit)		Replace PCB and check operation.	Replace PCB if faulty.
Excessively Low Suction Pressure (in Vacuum)	Liquid Line Stop Valve is not open before Operation	Check stop valve.	Fully open stop valve.
	Faulty or Malfunction of Expansion Valve	Check for clogging.	Remove clogging.
		Check connecting wiring and connectors.	Replace connector.
		Check operating sound from coil.	Replace coil.
		Check discharge gas thermistor.	Replace thermistor.
		Check attaching state of discharge gas thermistor.	Reattach thermistor.
	Refrigerant Leakage	Check each temperature and pressure.	Charge refrigerant after vacuum pumping.
		Check gas leakage part.	Correctly charge refrigerant after repairing gas leakage.
Faulty Outdoor Fan at heating Operation	Faulty Outdoor Fan Motor	Measure coil resistance and insulating resistance.	Replace outdoor fan motor if faulty.

Alarm code	48	Overcurrent protection activation

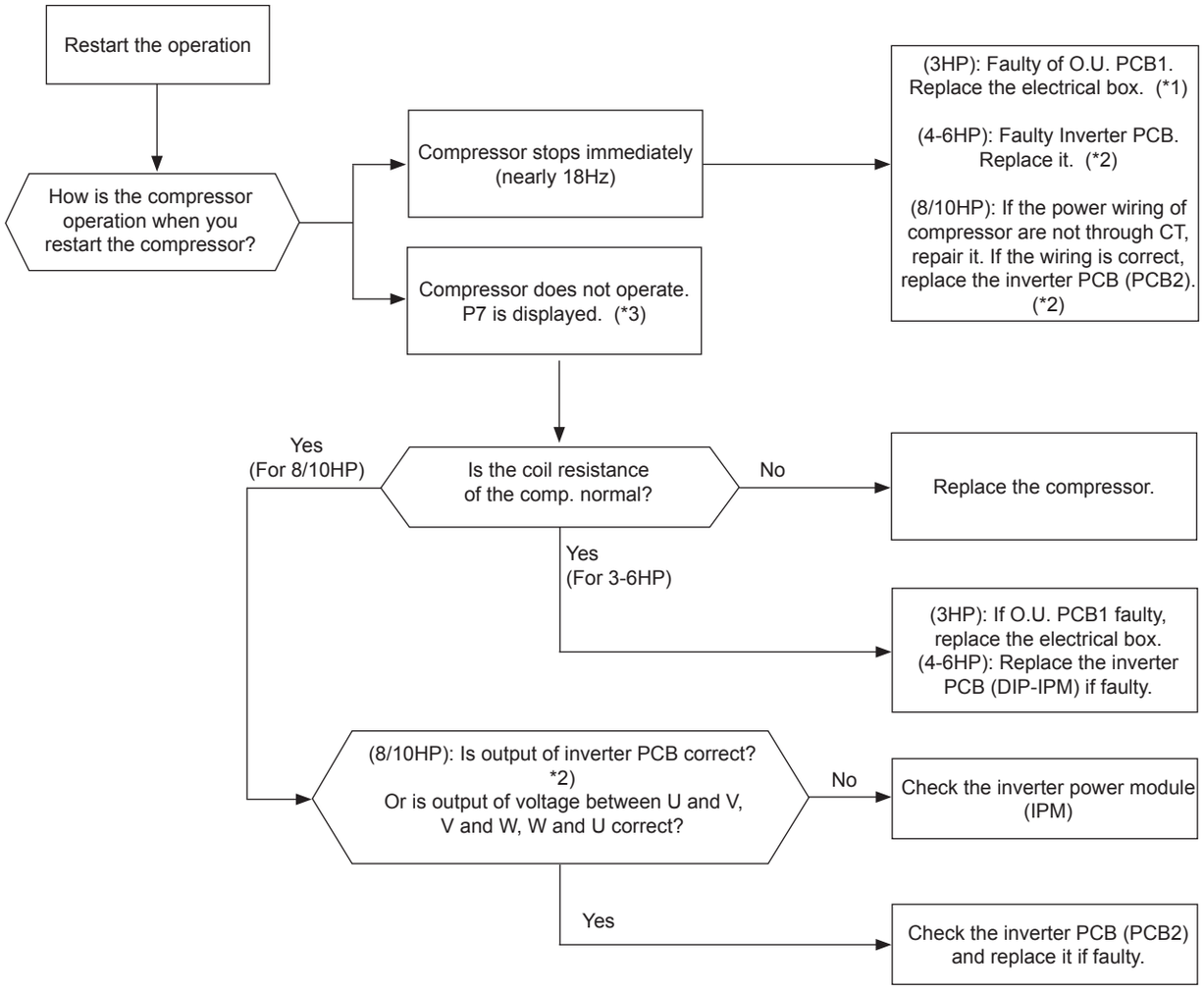


NOTE

**1) Perform the high voltage discharge work by referring to section Procedure of checking other main parts before checking and replacing the inverter PCB.*

Alarm code	51	Abnormal operation of the current sensor

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section.
  The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is displayed when the current transformer is abnormal (0 A detection or 3 A alarm condition) and the alarm has more than three occurrences in 30 minutes.
  - Condition of Activation:
    - When the frequency of the compressor is maintained at 6~10 Hz (3HP) or 15~18Hz (4-10HP) after the compressor is started, one of the absolute values of the running current at each phase U+, U-, V+ and V- is less than 1.5 A (including 1.5A)
    - Before the compressor is operated (at the end of position control), the current wave value is less than 5.0 A

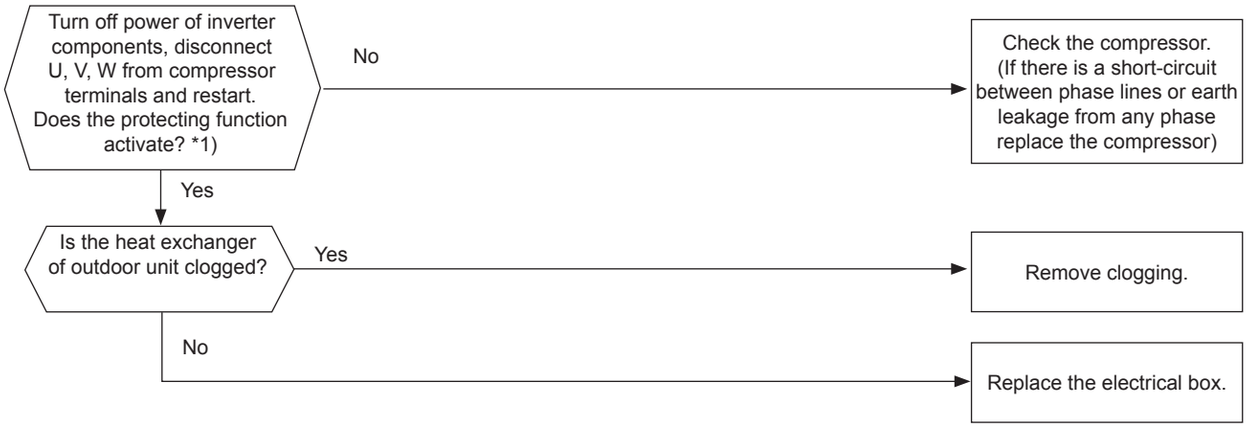


NOTE

- *(*1) Make sure LED1 is OFF.*
- *(*2) Perform the high voltage discharge work by referring to section Procedure of checking other main parts before checking and replacing the inverter PCB.*
- *(*3) P7 is shown at 7-segment on the outdoor unit PCB1.*

Alarm code	53	Activation of transistor module (For 3HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - The inverter module has a detection function of the abnormal operation. This alarm is displayed when the inverter module detects the abnormal operation 7 times or more in 30 minutes. The retry operation is performed the first six times.
  - Condition of Activation:
    - The abnormal current to the inverter module, such as short-circuited, earth leakage, overcurrent or control voltage decrease.

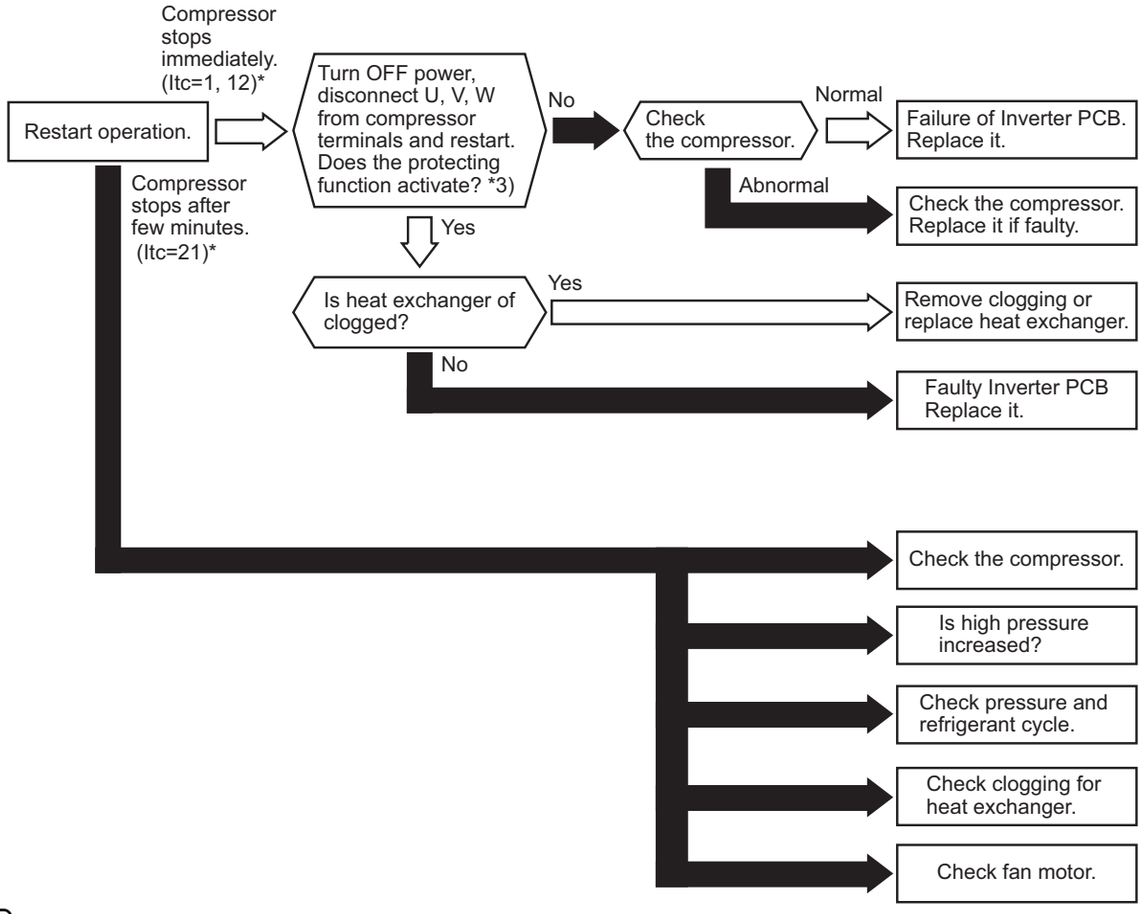


NOTE

- **1) Ensure that the LED1 of inverter PCB (PCB2) is OFF. Then, set the DSW1 pin #1 on inverter PCB (PCB2) to ON when you are restarting with the terminals of the compressor disconnected. After the troubleshooting, set the DSW1 pin #1 to OFF.*
- *When the alarm code “53” is indicated, the outdoor fan motor (DC motor) ensure that DC fan motor is checked according to the item Procedure of checking other main parts. Check other main parts in all cases. If there is a malfunction in DC fan motor, it may cause damage to the inverter PCB.*

Alarm code	53	Activation of transistor module (For 4HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - The inverter module has a detection function of the abnormal operation. This alarm is displayed when the inverter module detects the abnormal operation 7 times or more in 30 minutes. The retry operation is performed the first six times.
  - Condition of Activation:
    - The abnormal current such as short circuited, grounded or the overcurrent occurs at the transistor module.
    - The temperature at transistor module increases abnormally.
    - The control voltage decreases.

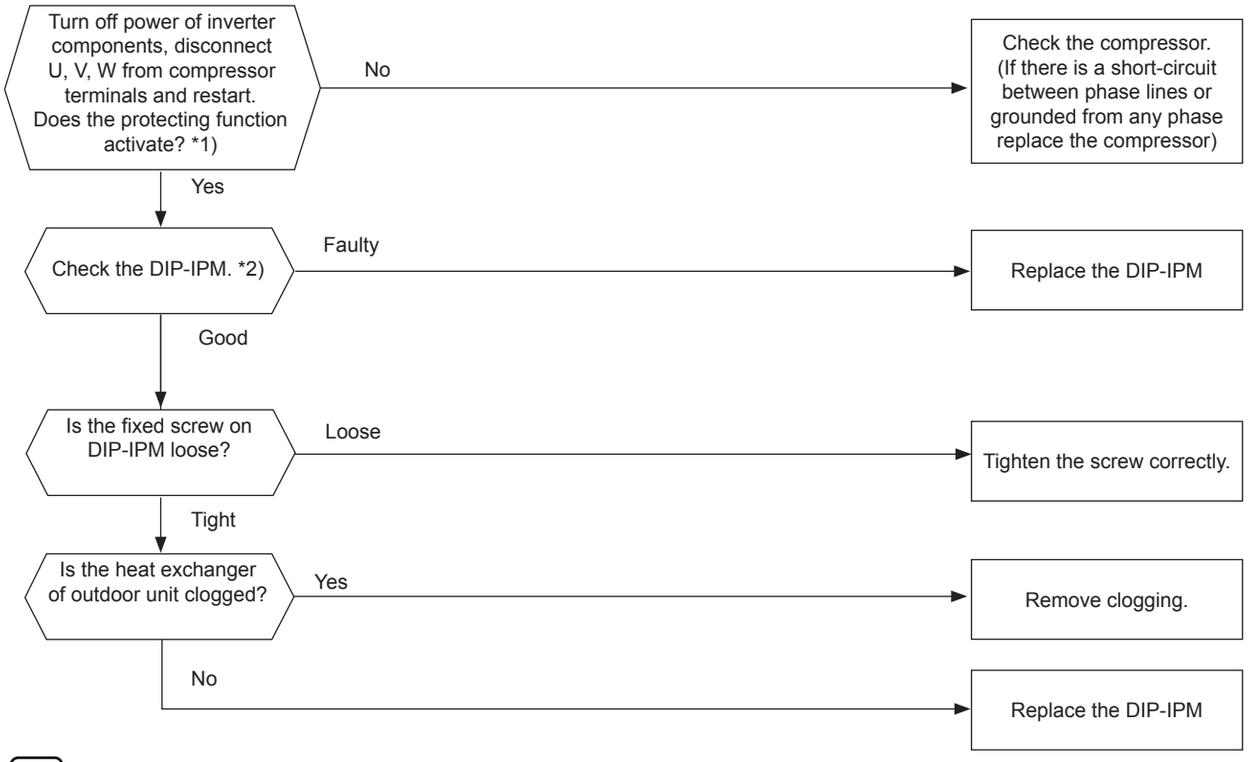


NOTE

- **3) Ensure that the LED1 of inverter PCB (DIP-IPM) is OFF. Then, set the DSW1 pin #1 on inverter PCB (DIP-IPM) to ON when you are restarting with the terminals of the compressor disconnected. After the troubleshooting, set the DSW1 pin #1 to OFF.*
- *When the alarm code “53” is indicated, the outdoor fan motor (DC motor) ensure that DC fan motor is checked according to the item Procedure of checking other main parts. Check other main parts in all cases. If there is a malfunction in DC fan motor, it may cause damage to the inverter PCB.*

Alarm code	53	Activation of transistor module (For 4-10HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - The inverter module has a detection function of the abnormal operation. This alarm is displayed when the inverter module detects the abnormal operation 7 times or more in 30 minutes. The retry operation is performed the first six times.
  - Condition of Activation:
    - The abnormal current to the inverter module, such as short-circuited, earth leakage, overcurrent or control voltage decrease.



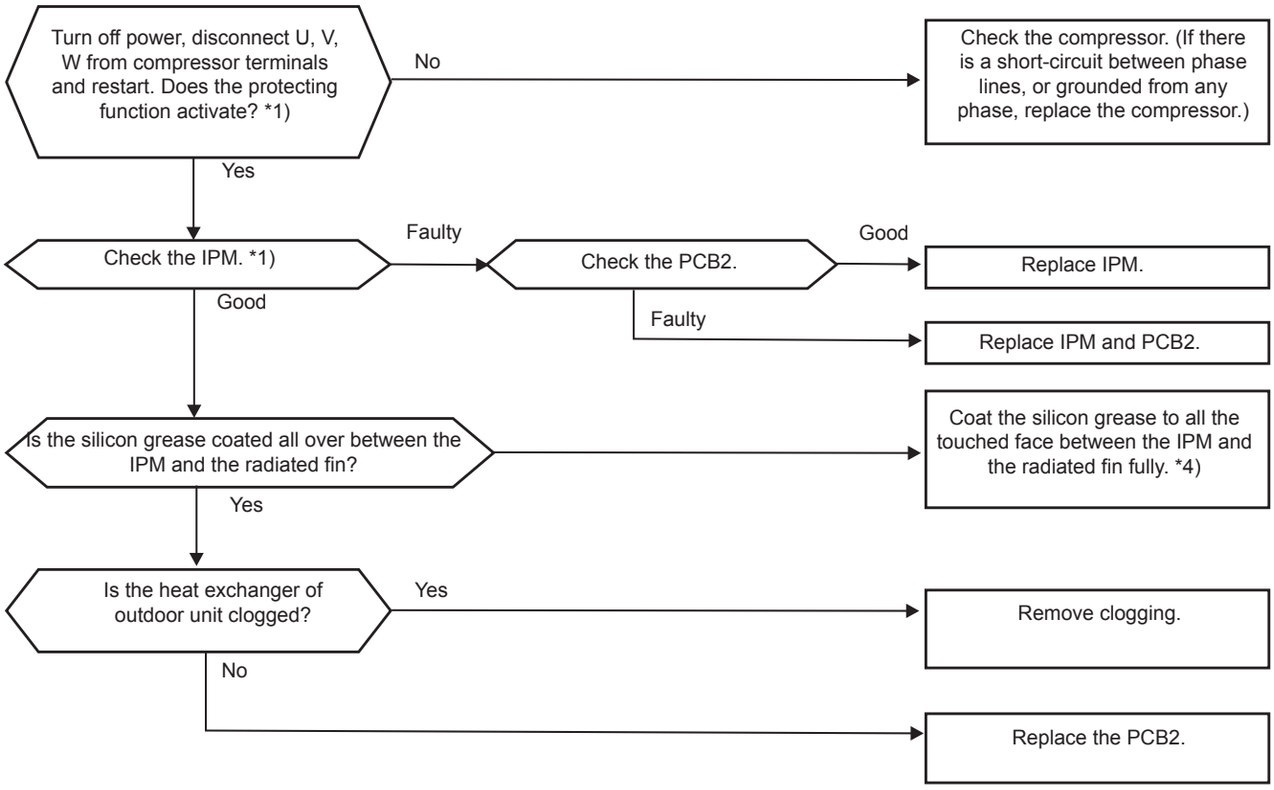
NOTE

- **1) Set the #1 pin of DIP switch DSW1 on inverter PCB or DIP-IMP to ON when you are restarting with the terminals of the compressor disconnected. After the troubleshooting, set the #1 pin of DIP switch DSW1 on Inverter PCB or DIP-IPM to OFF.*
- **2) Regarding replacing or checking method for the DIP-IPM refer to section Procedure of checking other main parts .*
- *When the alarm code “53” is indicated, the outdoor fan motor (DC motor) ensure that DC fan motor is checked according to the item Procedure of checking other main parts. Check other main parts in all cases. If there is a malfunction in DC fan motor, it may cause damage to the inverter PCB*

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 324 04/06/2013 18:14:51

Alarm code	53	Activation of transistor module (For 8/10HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB1.
  - The inverter module has a detection function of the abnormal operation. This alarm is displayed when the inverter module detects the abnormal operation 7 times or more in 30 minutes. The retry operation is performed the first six times.
  - Condition of Activation:
    - Short circuited or grounded
    - Abnormal temperature of the IPM and PCB2
    - Control voltage decrease



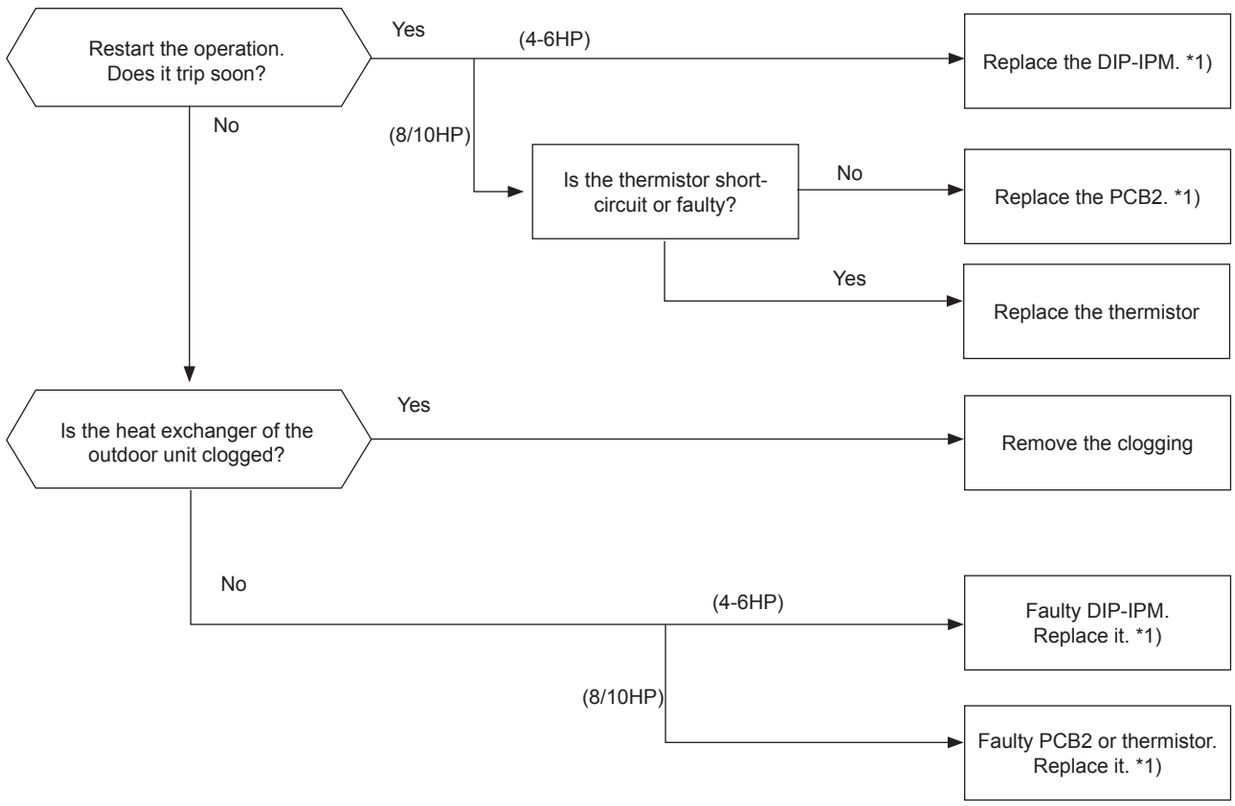
NOTE

- **1) Ensure that the LED1 of inverter PCB (PCB2) is OFF. Then, set the DSW1 pin #1 on inverter PCB (PCB2) to ON when you are restarting with the terminals of the compressor disconnected. After the troubleshooting, set the DSW1 pin #1 to OFF.*
- **2): Regarding replacing or checking method for inverter components, refer to the item Procedure of checking other main parts.*
- **3): Use the silicon grease provided as accessory (Service parts No. P22760).*
- *When the alarm code “53” is indicated, the outdoor fan motor (DC motor) ensure that DC fan motor is checked according to the item Procedure of checking other main parts. Check other main parts in all cases. If there is a malfunction in DC fan motor, it may cause damage to the inverter PCB.*

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 325 04/06/2013 18:14:51

Alarm code	54	Abnormality of inverter fin temperature (For 4-10HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is indicated after the operation is stopped when the following condition occurs three times within 30 minutes. The retry operation is performed twice.
  - Condition of Activation:
    - When the temperature of the thermistor for inverter fin excess 92°C (4HP) or 80ºC (5/6HP) or 100ºC (8/10HP).

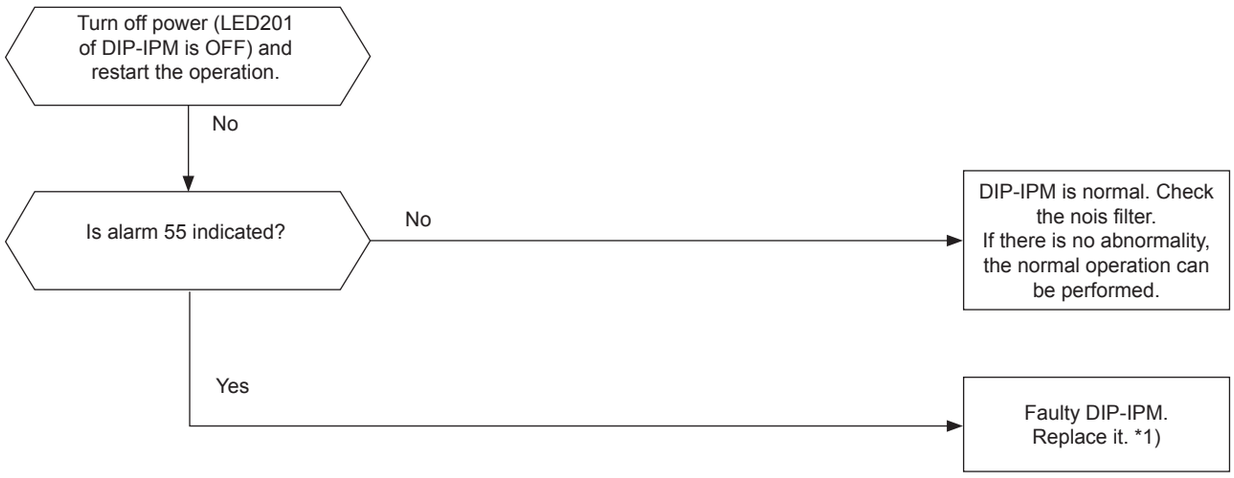


NOTE

1): Perform the high voltage discharge work by referring to the item Procedure of checking other main parts, before checking and replacing the inverter components.*

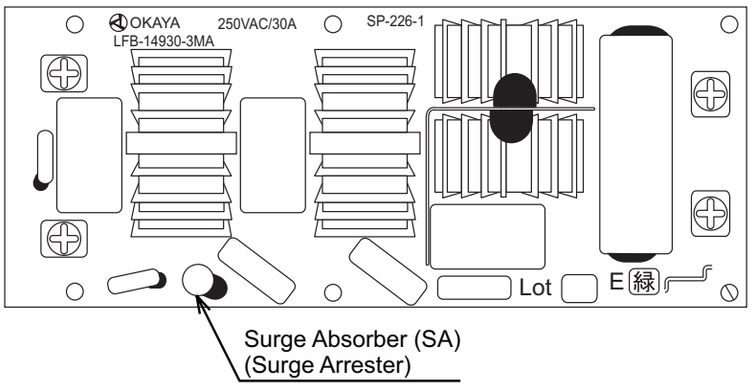
Alarm code	55	Abnormality of inverter module (For 4-6HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - Actual frequency from Inverter PCB is less than 10 Hz (after inverter frequency output form PCB1 to Inverter PCB).
  - This alarm is displayed when it occurs 3 times in 30 minutes. Retry operation is performed up to the occurrence of 2 times.
  - Condition of Activation:
    - This alarm is indicated when Inverter PCB is not performed normally.



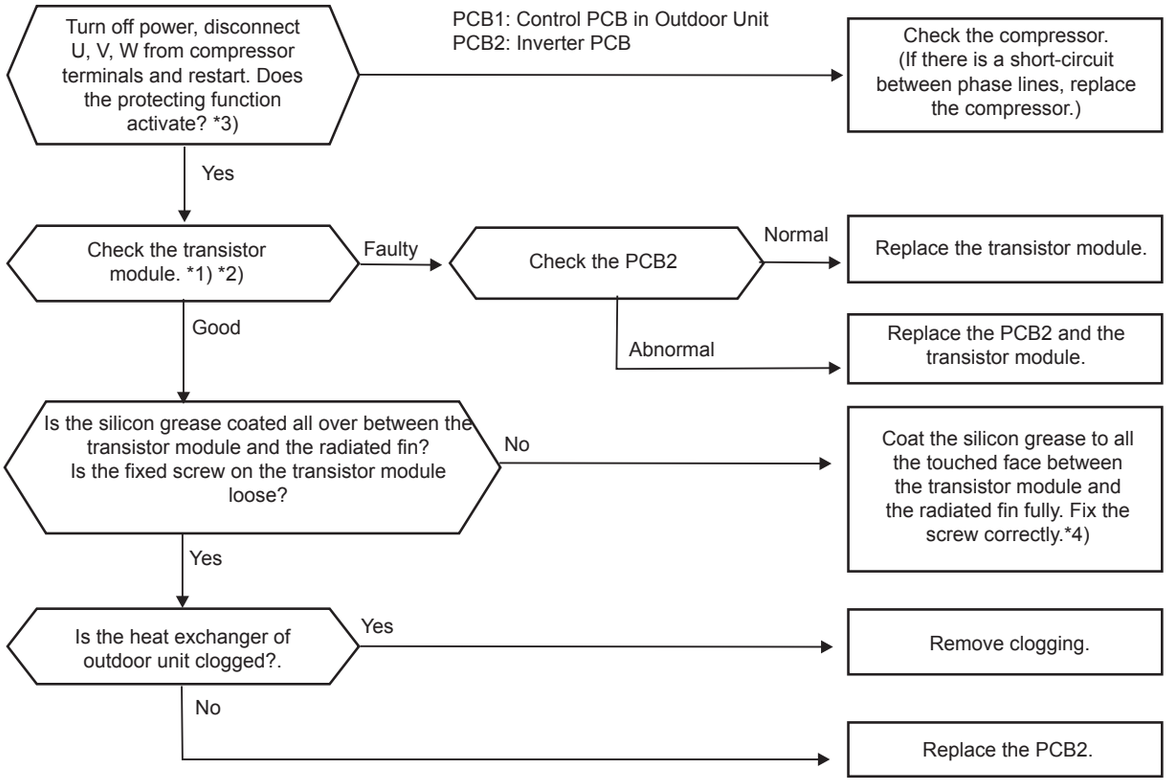
NOTE

- **1): Regarding replacing or checking method for inverter components, refer to the item Procedure of checking other main parts.*
- *When the excessive surge current is applied to the unit due to lighting or other causes, this alarm code or the cause code of inverter stoppage (Itc=11) will be indicated on the 7-segment display on O.U. PCB1 and the unit can not be operated. In this case, check to ensure the surge absorber (SA) on the noise filter (NF1). The surge absorber may be damaged if the inner surface of the surge absorber is changed to black. If the surge absorber is damaged, replace the noise filter. If the surge absorber does not have abnormality, turn OFF the power source once and wait until turning OFF LED201 (red) on inverter PCB for approx. 5 min. Then, turn ON again.*

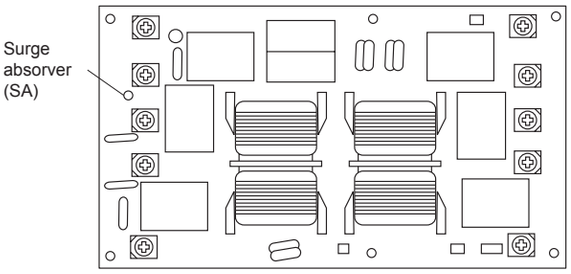


Alarm code	55	Abnormality of inverter module (For 8/10HP)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - Actual frequency from Inverter PCB is less than 10 Hz (after inverter frequency output form PCB1 to Inverter PCB).
  - This alarm is displayed when it occurs 3 times in 30 minutes. Retry operation is performed up to the occurrence of 2 times.
  - Condition of Activation:
    - This alarm is indicated when Inverter PCB is not performed normally.



Position of surge absorber



When the unit is applied the excessive surge current due to lighting or other causes, it is indicated this alarm code “04” or the inverter stoppage code (ITC) “11” and the unit can not be operated. In this case, check to ensure the surge absorber (SA) on the noise filter (NF1). If the inside of the surge absorber is normal, turn OFF the power once and wait for PCB2’s LED OFF and turn ON again.

NOTE

**1): Regarding replacing or checking method for the inverter components, refer to the item Procedure of checking other main parts.*

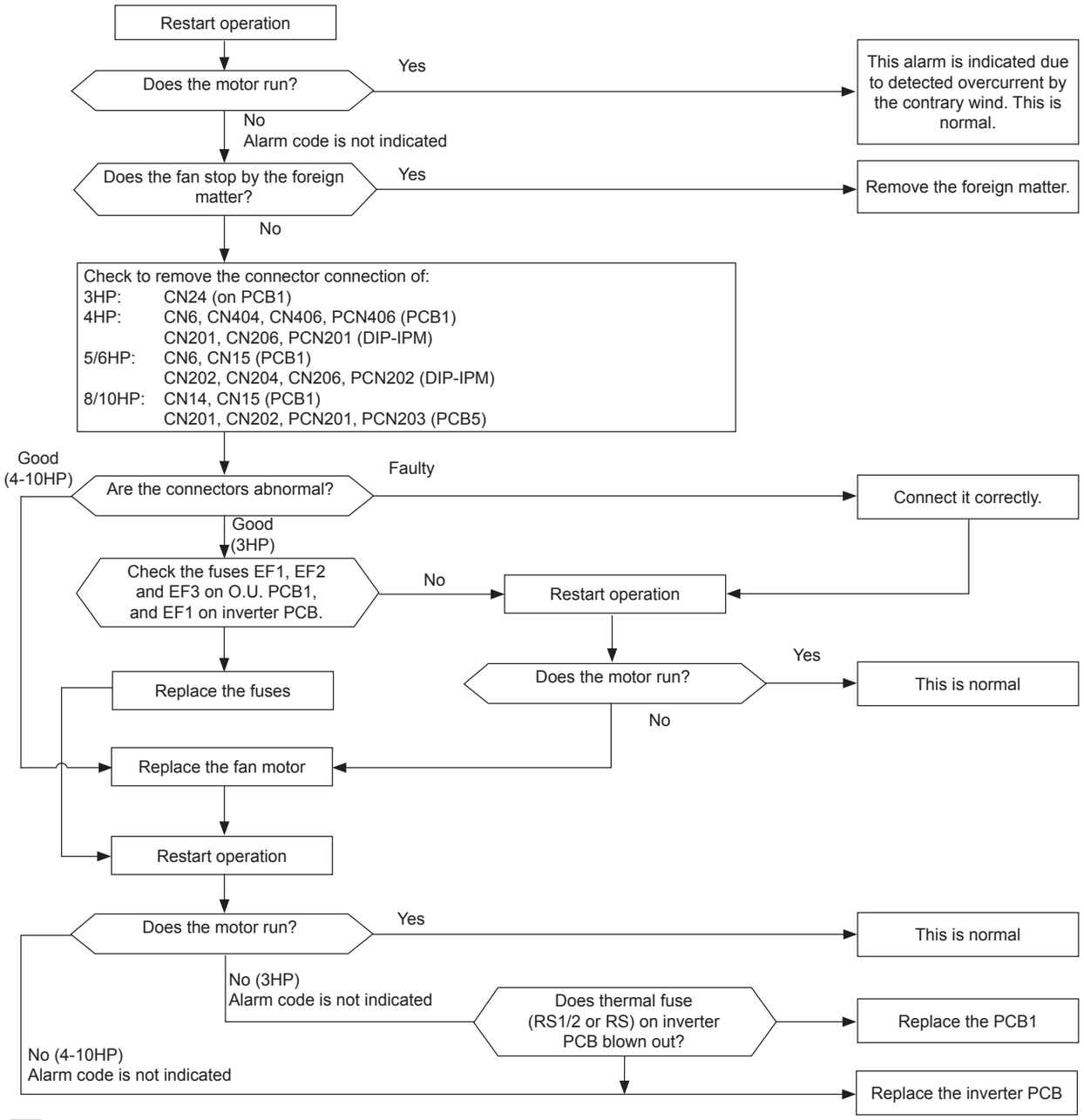
**2): Before the checking of transistor module, refer to the item regarding electrical discharge.*

**3): Turn ON the No.1 switch of the dip switch DSW1 on PCB2 when restarting with disconnecting the terminals of the compressor. After troubleshooting, turn OFF the No.1 switch of the dip switch DSW1 on PCB2.*

**4): Use the silicon grease provided as accessory (Service Parts No.: P22760).*

Alarm code	57	Abnormality of fan motor protection (DC fan motor)

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - 3HP: The fan motor stops when the revolution output from the fan motor is 20 rpm or lower during 30 seconds after the fan motor activation. The alarm is indicated when the abnormality is repeated 4 times within 5 minutes after the first detection.
  - 4-10HP: The fan motor stops when the revolution output from the fan motor is 10 rpm or lower during 30 seconds after the fan motor activation. The alarm is indicated when the abnormality is repeated 10 times within 5 minutes after the first detection.



NOTE

Check to ensure that DC Fan Motor and inverter components are checked according to the item Procedure of checking other main parts.

Alarm code	EE	Compressor protection

- This alarm code is displayed when one of the following alarms occurs three times within six hours. If the outdoor unit operates continuously without removing the cause of the alarm, the compressor may be seriously damaged

Alarm code	Content of abnormality
02	Tripping of protection device in outdoor unit
07	Decrease in discharge gas superheat
08	Increase in discharge gas temperature
45	Activation of high pressure increase protection device
47	Low pressure decrease protection activating

You can check these alarms using the check mode 1. Follow the action that is indicated in each alarm chart. You can clear these alarms only by turning OFF the main switch to the system. **However, you must pay careful attention before starting, because there is a possibility of causing serious damages to the compressors.**

Alarm code	b0	Incorrect Setting of Unit Model Code

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is indicated in the following condition. Check the unit model code setting (DSW4) of I.U. PCB after turning OFF the power source.

Condition	Action
The unit model code setting (DSW4) is not set (all pins are “OFF”), or is set for the incorrect indoor unit type.	Set DSW4 correctly according to the dip switch setting in “Installation and Maintenance Manual”.

Alarm code	b1	Incorrect Setting of Unit and Refrigerant Cycle No.

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.
  - This alarm code is indicated in the following condition. Check the settings of the dip switch (DSW) and the rotary switch (RSW) after turning OFF the power source.

Conditions	Action
The unit No. setting (DSW6 and RSW1) or the refrigerant cycle No. setting (DSW5 and RSW2) is set as “64” or more, or more than 2 pins of DSW5 or DSW6 are set.	a) Unit No. Setting / Ref. Cycle No. Setting Starting • from “1” (recommended) • Set the unit No. and the refrigerant cycle No. • from “1” to “63”. (Setting No. for the 64th unit • shall be “0”.) b) Unit No. Setting / Ref. Cycle No. Setting Starting • from “0” • Set the unit No. and the refrigerant cycle No. • from “0” to “63.” (Setting No. for the 64th unit • shall be “63”.)
The unit No. setting and the refrigerant cycle No. setting are set between “16” and “63,” and the indoor unit does not support H-LINK Ⅱ.	Set the unit No. and the refrigerant cycle No. between “0” and “15.”

Alarm code	b5	Incorrect Setting of Indoor Unit Number for H-LINK Type

- The RUN LED flickers and “ALARM” is displayed on the remote control switch.
- The unit number, the alarm code*) and the unit code are alternately displayed on the set temperature section. The unit number and the alarm code are displayed on the display of the outdoor unit PCB.

*): The alarm code indicated on the remote control switch is “35”.

Condition	Action
The number of the connected indoor units not supporting H-LINK II is 17 and after.	The number of the connected indoor units shall be 16 and before.

11.2.4 Alarm codes for the KPI (E/H/X)3E Series and DX Interface

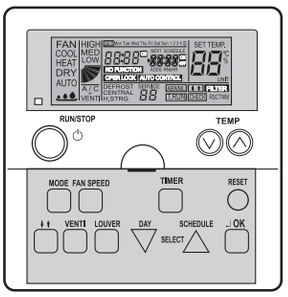
Code No.	DX-KIT2	KPI-S3	KPI-Active	Category	Type of Abnormality	Main cause
01	o	-	o	Indoor	Activation of protection device	Float switch activation (high water level in drain hose or abnormality in drain pipe, float switch or drain pan).
03	o	-	o	Transmission	Transmission Error	Outdoor fuse meltdown, Indoor/outdoor connection wiring (breaking, wiring error, etc.)
11	o	o	o	Indoor	Air inlet thermistor (RA for KPI)	Loose, disconnected, broken or short-circuited connector
12	o	o	o	Indoor	Air outlet thermistor (OA for KPI)	Loose, disconnected, broken or short-circuited connector
13	o	-	o	Indoor	Liquid pipe thermistor	Loose, disconnected, broken or short-circuited connector
14	o	-	o	Indoor	Gas pipe thermistor	Loose, disconnected, broken or short-circuited connector
15	-	-	-	Indoor	Fresh Outdoor Air Thermistor (Econofresh)	Loose, disconnected, broken or short-circuited connector
16	-	-	o	Indoor	Air inlet DX Coil thermistor (Tincoil)	Loose, disconnected, broken or short-circuited connector
17	-	-	o	Indoor	Air outlet DX Coil thermistor (Toutcoil)	Loose, disconnected, broken or short-circuited connector
18	(o)	o	o	Indoor	Indoor RA fan protection device activation for KP	Fan motor overheating, locking.
19	o	o	o	Indoor	Indoor OA fan protection device activation for KPI or DX-KIT2 Fan	Fan motor overheating, locking.,
31	o	-	o	System	Incorrect setting of outdoor and indoor units	Outdoor/Indoor Unit capacity setting error, Indoor total capacity excessively large/small
35	o	-	o	System	Indoor Unit Number Setting Error	Indoor units with the same number exist in a refrigerant piping system
70	o	o	o	Indoor	Abnormal transmission between PCB1 and PCB2	Loose, disconnected
71	o	o	o	Indoor	Incorrect PCBs setting	Wrong setting are performed in PCBs
EE	o	-	o	Compressor	Compressor protection alarm (cannot be reset from the remote controller)	This alarm code is displayed when the following alarms are triggered three times within six hours: 02,07,08,39,43 to 45, 47
74	-	-	-	Indoor	Remote sensor thermistor (Trem)	Loose, disconnected, broken or short-circuited connector

11.3 Troubleshooting in check mode

11.3.1 Troubleshooting using the remote controller PC-ART

Use the “OK” switch of the remote control in the following cases:

1. When the RUN LED is flickering.
2. To trace back the cause of the malfunction after restarting from the stoppage while the RUN LED is flickering.
3. To check during the normal operation or during the stoppage.
4. To monitor the inlet air temperature and the discharge air temperature.



Check mode

- Check mode 1: Current data will be displayed
- Check mode 2: The data which was held immediately before the failure will be displayed

Press “OK” for more than 3 seconds

- The indication will delay as the transmission between the remote control switch and the indoor unit takes about ten seconds.
- All the data may be displayed as "FF" or " 1" or "255". These transient data, which are produced temporarily by the software, do not affect the device functions at all. (The alarm code may also be displayed as "FF".)

Normal mode

Unit number and alarm code displayed



The alarm code that identifies the last fault that has occurred in the displayed unit.

The unit number of the connected unit or the unit number for which the checking mode was selected previously.

- ADDS: Number of the indoor unit in number ** cycle
- RN: Number ** refrigerant cycle

After seven seconds ← (A) Within seven seconds to check another unit

Forward:
Press the "⌃" switch to increase from 00 to 01 to 02 ⋯

Backward:
Press the "⌄" switch to decrease from 15 to 14 to 13 ⋯

Check mode 1



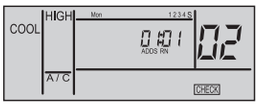
Press "⌄" to see the previous indication



Press "⌃" to see the next indication

Press “OK” for more than 3 seconds

Unit number and alarm code displayed

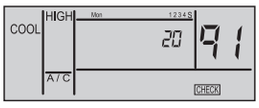


Press "⌃" to see the next data

Press "⌄" to see the previous data

After seven seconds ← See (A)

Check mode 2 (Refer to *Check mode 1* for details)



Press "⌃"



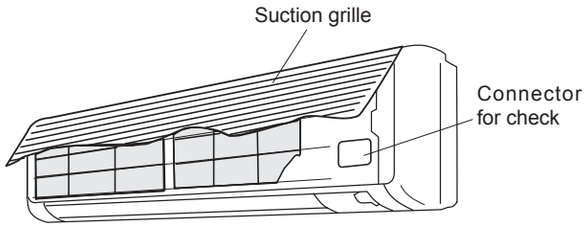
Press “OK” for more than 3 seconds

Check mode disabled

- In the check mode 2, the data of the first three units that are connected serially to a remote control switch are available.
- You can press the “OK” switch to disable the check mode 2. Check mode 1 cannot be disabled even if you press the “OK” switch.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 333 04/06/2013 18:14:52

Although the wireless controller is used for the wall type indoor unit with the built-in receiver part, you can check the alarm code by connecting the PC-P2HTE.



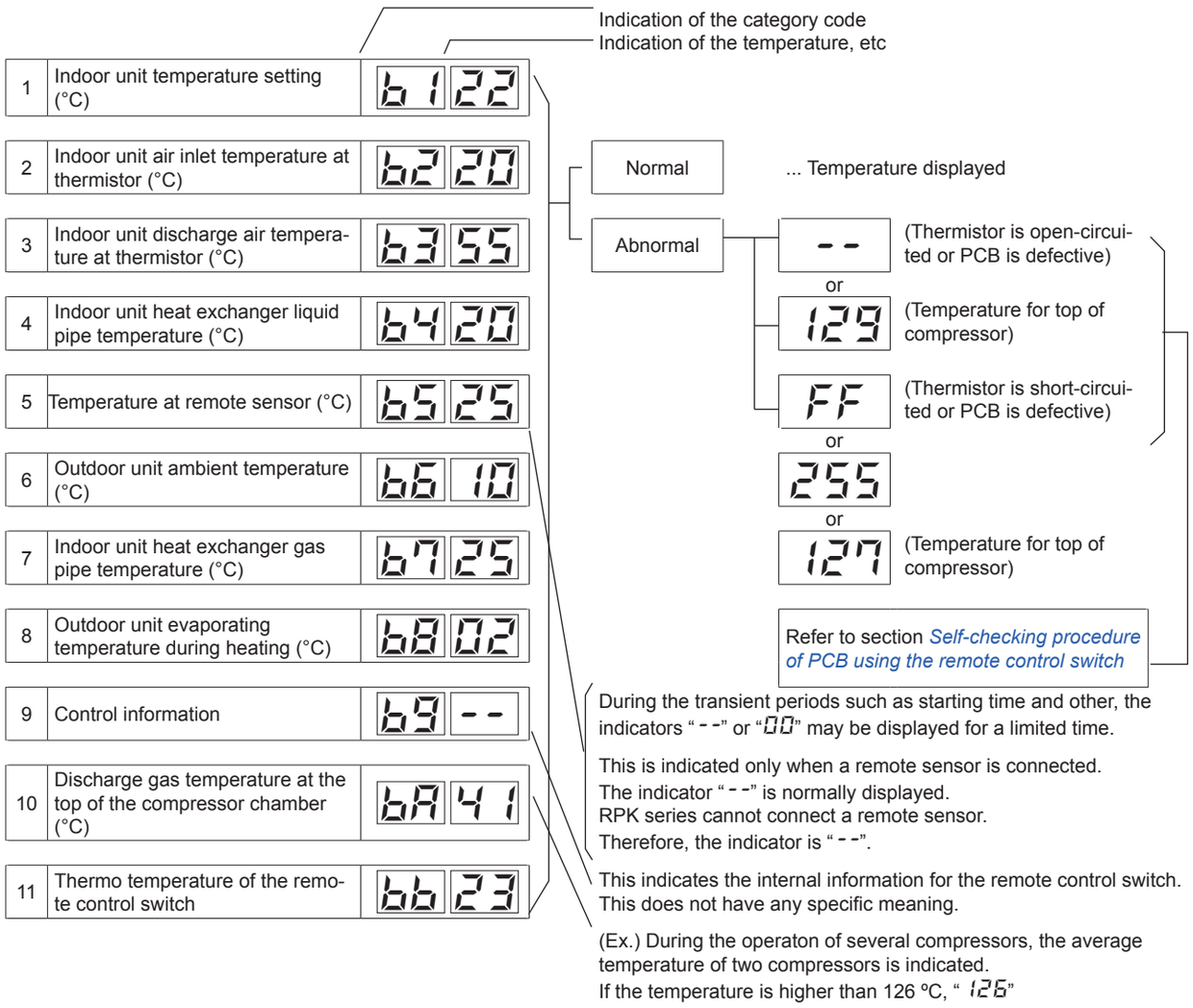
NOTE

- *The unit does not operate by pressing the operation switch.*
- *The above function is available only when the alarm occurs.*
- *The PCB check using the remote control switch is not available.*
- *The indication is the data when you are connecting PC-P2HTE. The indication is not the data before the alarm occurs.*

◆ Contents of the check mode 1

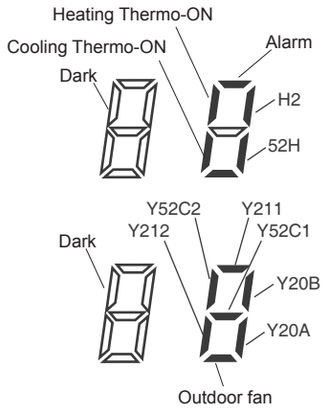
The next indication is shown if you press the part "△" of the TEMP switch. If you press the part "▽" of the TEMP switch, the previous indication is shown.

Temperature indication



Indication of micro-computer input/output

12	Micro-computer input/output in indoor unit	C14
13	Micro-computer input/output in outdoor unit	C2-



Indication of unit stoppage cause

14	Cause of stoppage	d101

00	Operation OFF, power OFF
01	Thermo - OFF (NOTE 1), activating float switch
02	Alarm (NOTE 2)
03	Freeze protection, overheating protection
05	Instantaneous power failure at outdoor unit, reset (NOTE 3)
06	Instantaneous power failure at indoor unit, reset (NOTE 4)
07	Outdoor temperature at cooling lower than -5ºC, outdoor air temperature and indoor suction temperature at heating (Overload condition), outdoor temperature at heating lower than -20ºC.
10	Demand, emergency stoppage (DSW 1-4 ON or forced stop)
11	Retry due to compression ratio decrease
12	Retry due to low pressure increase
13	Retry due to high pressure increase
15	Retry due to abnormal high temperature of discharge gas, excessive low suction pressure
16	Retry due to decrease of discharge gas superheat
17	Retry due to inverter tripping (Instantaneous overcurrent, electronic thermal acivation, current sensor abnormality)
18	Retry due to inverter tripping (Inverter undervoltage, overvoltage, transmission error, microcomputer reset, etc.)
19	Expansion valve opening change protection
21	Thermo OFF due to oil return control
22	Oudoor unit hot start control

NOTE 1

Explanation of term,

Thermo-ON: A condition that an indoor unit is requesting compressor to operate.

Thermo-OFF: A condition that an indoor unit is not requesting compressor to operate.

NOTE 2

Even if stoppage is caused by “Alarm”, “02” is not always indicated.

NOTE 3

If transmission between the inverter printed circuit board and the control printed circuit board is not performed during 30 seconds, the outdoor unit is stopped.

In this case, stoppage is d1-05 cause and the alarm code “04” may be indicated.

NOTE 4

If transmission between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit is not performed during 3 minutes, indoor units are stopped.

In this case, stoppage is d1-06 cause and the alarm code “03” may be indicated.

Abnormal operation occurrence counter

15	Abnormal operation occurrence counter	E101
16	Instantaneous power failure occurrence counter in indoor unit	E200
17	Transmission error occurrence counter between remote control switch and indoor unit	E300
18	Abnormal operation occurrence counter on inverter	E400

Countable up to 99.

Over 99 times, “99” is always displayed.

NOTE

- *If a transmission error continues for three minutes, one is added to the occurrence counter.*
- *The memorized data can be cancelled by the method which is explained in section Self-checking procedure of PCB using the remote control switch.*

Indication of automatic louver condition

19	Louver sensor	F100

00: Normal

FF: Abnormal

Compressor pressure/frequency indication

20	Discharge pressure (high) (x 0.1 MPa)	H118
21	Suction pressure (low) (x 0.01 MPa)	H204
22	Control information	H344
23	Operation frequency (Hz)	H444

This is an indication for internal information for the remote control switch. This does not have any specific meaning

This is an indication for frequency of inverter

Indoor unit capacity indication

24	Indoor unit capacity	J108
25	Outdoor unit code	J2Fn
26	Refrigerant cycle number (Indoor unit shipment DSW5+RSW2)	J301
27	Refrigerant cycle number (Indoor unit shipment DSW5+RSW2)	J400

The capacity of the indoor unit is indicated as shown in the table below.

Capacity code of indoor unit

Indication code	Equivalent capacity (HP)
06	0.8
08	1.0
10	1.3
13	1.5
14	1.8
16	2.0
18	2.3
20	2.5
22	2.8
26	3.0
32	4.0
40	5.0
48	6.0
64	8.0
80	10.0

“n” indicates the total number of Indoor Units:

1~9	A	b	C	d	E	F	U
1~9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16

J3: 01 ~ 64 (Decimal code)

J4: 00 ~ 3F (Hexadecimal code)

Expansion opening indication

28	Indoor unit expansion valve opening (%)	
29	Outdoor unit expansion valve MV1 opening (%)	
30	Outdoor unit expansion valve MV2 opening (%)	
31	Control information	

In case of models without the expansion valve (MV2), the same figure is displayed

Estimated electric current indication

32	Compressor running current (A)	

The total current is displayed when several compressors are running.

In case of the inverter compressor, the running current of the primary side of the inverter is displayed.

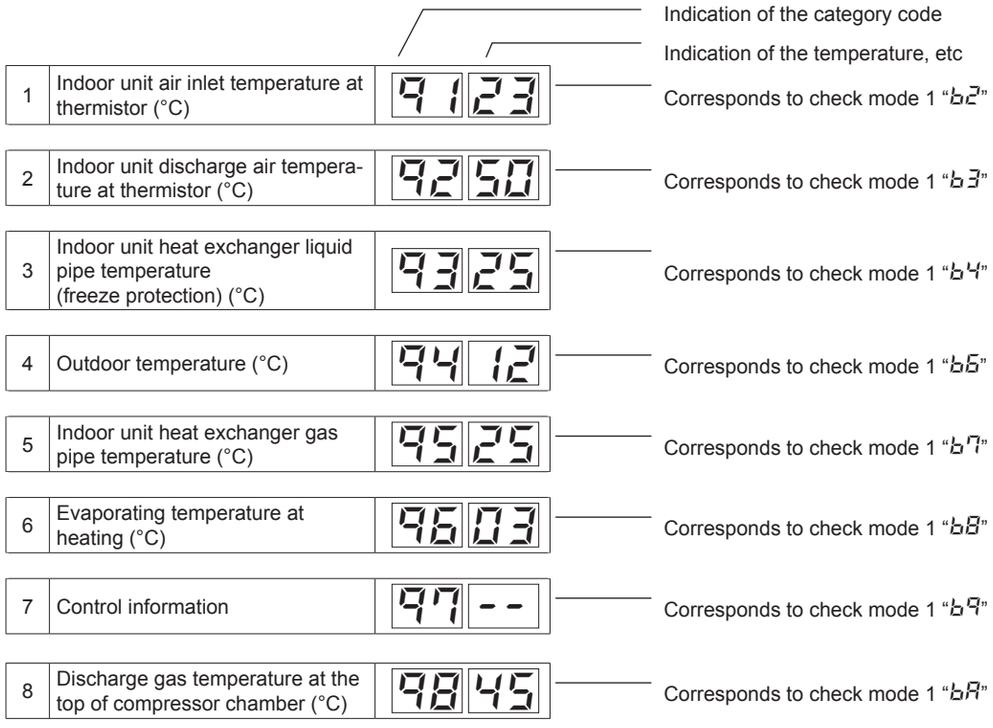
☛ Returns to **temperature indication**

◆ Contents of the check mode 2

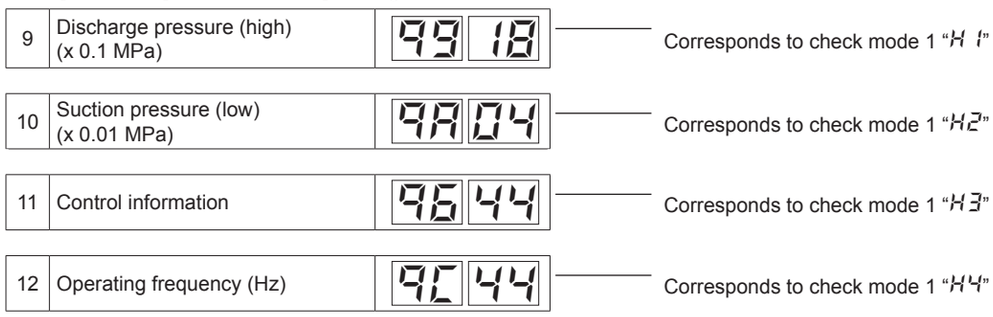
When more than three indoor units are connected to one remote control switch, the latest data of only the first three indoor units that are connected serially are displayed.

If you press the part "⌃" of the TEMP switch, the next display appears. If you press the part "⌄" of the TEMP switch, the previous display appears.

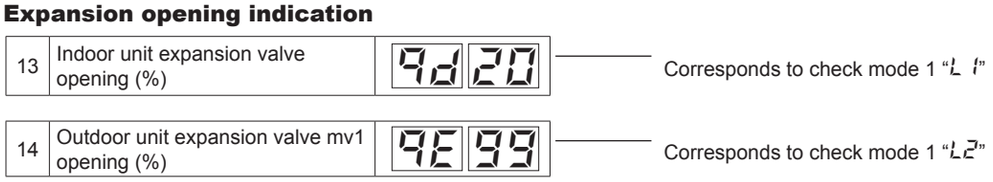
Temperature indication



Compressor pressure/frequency indication



Expansion opening indication



Estimated electric current indication

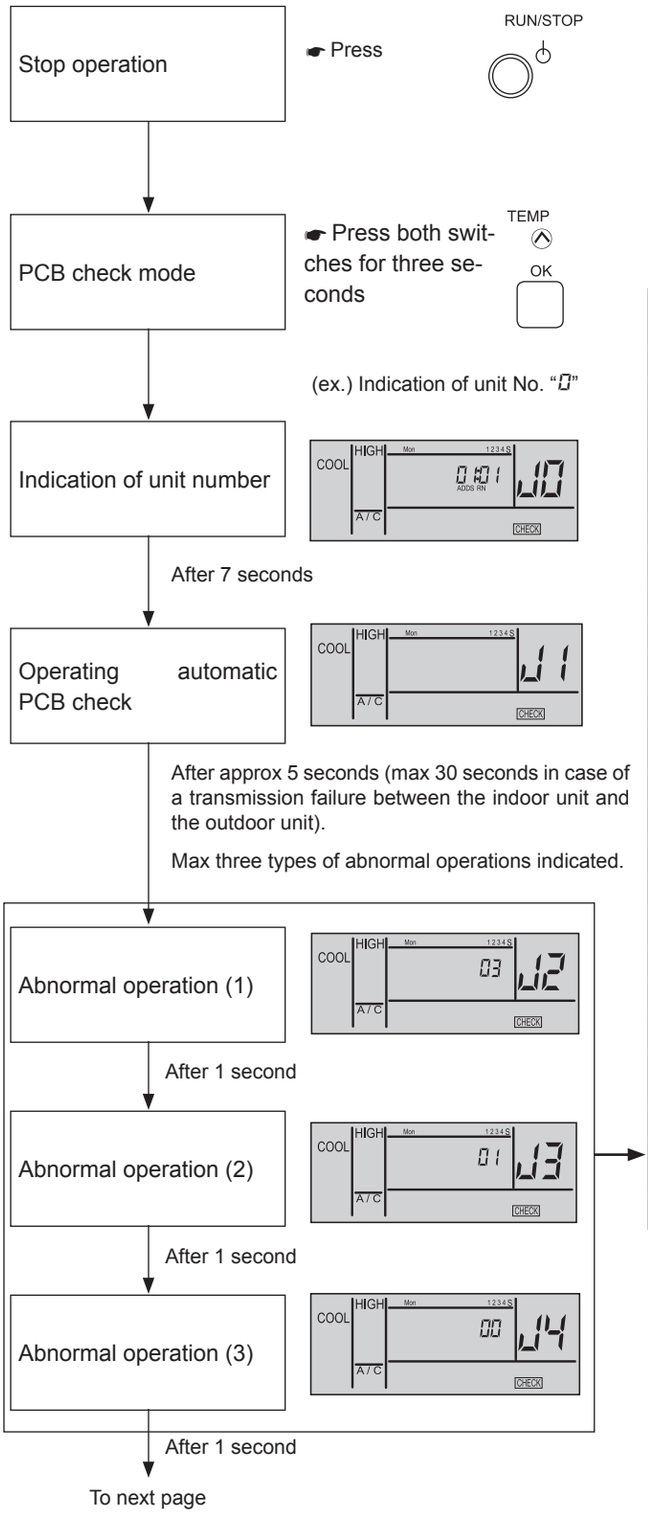


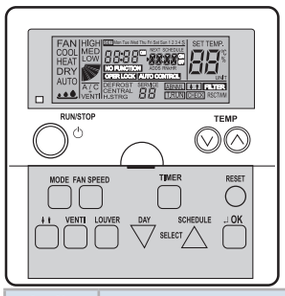
☛ Returns to **temperature indication**

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 338 04/06/2013 18:14:53

◆ Self-checking procedure of PCB by means of the Remote Control Switch

Use the following troubleshooting procedure for testing the PCB in the indoor unit and the outdoor unit:



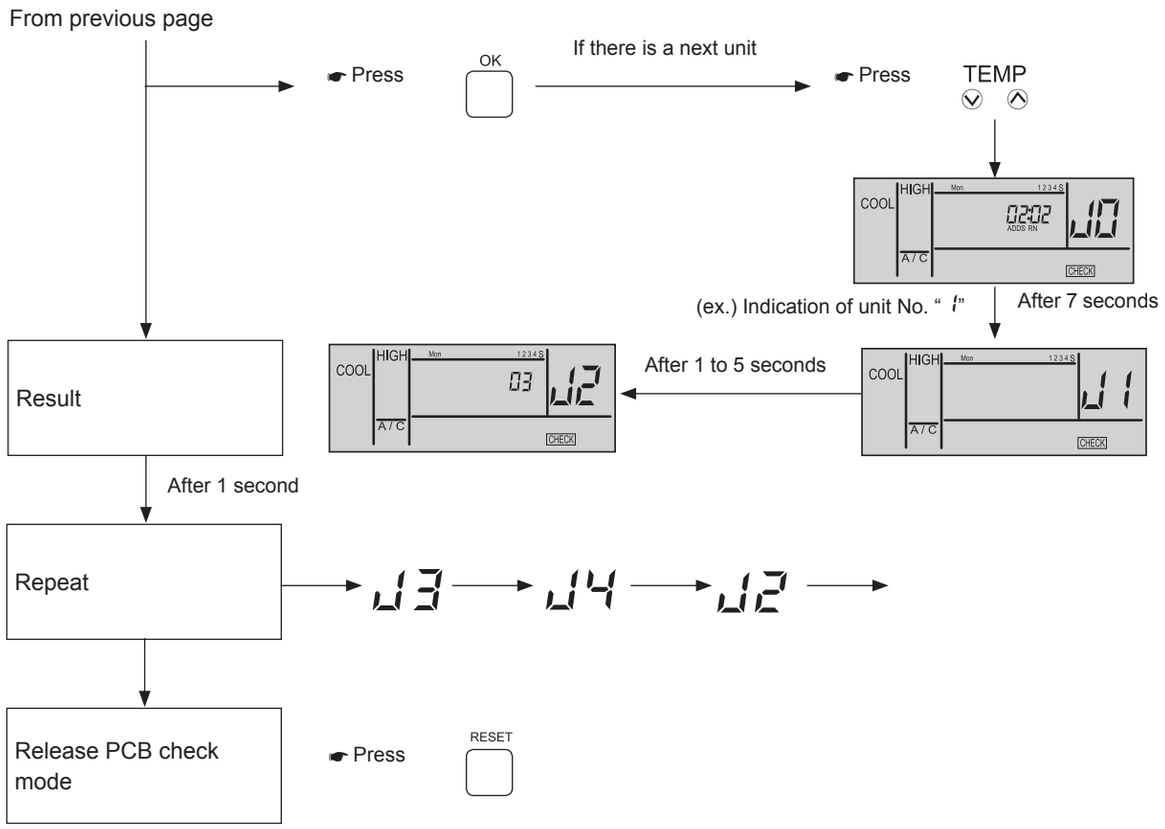


Indication	Contents	
00	Normal	
Abnormality (open-circuit, short-circuit, etc.) in circuit for:		
01	Air inlet temperature thermistor	Indoor unit PCB
02	Discharge air temperature thermistor	
03	Liquid pipe temperature thermistor	
04	Remote thermistor abnormality	
05	Gas pipe temperature thermistor	
06	Remote sensor	
08	Transmission of central station	
0A	EEPROM	
0b	Zero cross input failure	
EE	Transmission of indoor units during this checking operation	
07	Transmission of outdoor unit	Outdoor unit PCB
F4	Internal thermostat fan input failure	
F5	PSW input failure	
F6	PSH protection signal detection circuit	
F7	Phase detection	
F8	Transmission of inverter	
FA	High-pressure sensor	
Fb	Compressor discharge gas temperature thermistor	
FC	Low-pressure sensor	
Fd	Heat exchanger evaporation temperature thermistor	
FF	Ambient air temperature thermistor	

If you are using a wireless remote control switch with the built-in receiver part of the wall-type indoor unit and you need to perform the above checking, perform the following procedure:

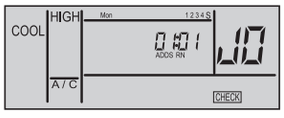
1 Turn OFF the power supply.
2 Disconnect the connector (CN25) on PWB(M).
3 Connect the PC-ART.
4 Turn ON the power supply.

After finishing the checking, turn OFF the power supply again and reconnect the connectors according to the previous situation before the checking.



NOTE

- *If this indication continues and the alarm code "U 1" is not displayed, this means that each one of indoor unit is not connected to the remote control switch. Check the wiring between the remote control switch and the indoor unit.*



- *In this troubleshooting procedure, checking of the following parts of the PCB is not available.*
  PCB in indoor unit: relay circuit, DIP switch, option circuit, fan circuit, protection circuit.
  PCB in outdoor unit: relay circuit, DIP switch, option circuit.
- *If this troubleshooting is performed in the system using the central station, the indication of the central station may change during this procedure. However, this is not abnormal.*
- *After this troubleshooting, the memory of the abnormal operation occurrence counter, which was described before, will be deleted.*

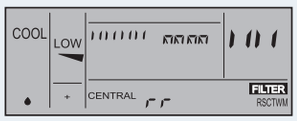
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 340 04/06/2013 18:14:53

◆ Self-checking procedure of the remote control switch

Cases where the OK switch is used:

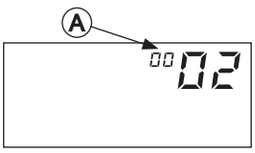
1 If the remote control switch displays a malfunction.
2 For the regular maintenance check.

1	Turn ON the power source
2	Simultaneously press the following three switches. (During the operation, you can press the switches.) TEMP MODE
3	The LCD changes as shown in the right figure.
4	After the LCD changes as shown in the right figure, the RUN indicator flickers twice. 

No.	LCD indication	Indicating period (sec.)
1		1
2		1
3		1
4		1
5		3

Only for the cancellation of EEPROM, press the following three switches simultaneously during the changes of the LCD.
TEMP MODE

To 11

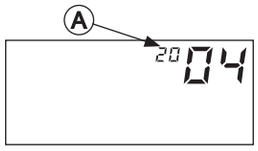
5	The LCD changes as shown below. Press all the switches (13 switches) one by one. Every time you press the switch, the number of the indication of the part (A) in the figure below increases one. 
6	The LCD changes as shown below. The remote control switch automatically starts to check the transmission circuit 

NOTE

- *Unless all the switches are pressed, the checking does not proceed to the next item.*
- *You can press the switches in any order.*
- *Pressing two or more switches simultaneously is invalid and not counted.*

NOTE

In case that the transmission circuit is abnormal, the LCD remains as shown in the left figure and the checking does not proceed to the next item.

7	The LCD changes as shown below. The detected temperature of the remote control thermostat is displayed at the (A) part in the figure below. 
8	The LCD changes as shown below. 
9	The LCD changes as shown below.  After several seconds have passed, the remote control switch is automatically activated again.
10	When the remote control switch is activated again, the RUN indicator is ON and the operation is started. Therefore, press the RUN/STOP switch and stop the operation.

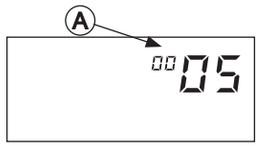
Cancellation of EEPROM
(from step 3)

11	The LCD changes as shown below and the remote control switch automatically cancels the EEPROM. 
12	The LCD changes as shown below  After several seconds have passed, the remote control switch is automatically activated again. In this case, the operation is not started automatically.

If the indicators "- -" or "FF" are displayed at the "A" part, the remote control thermostat is abnormal.

If you press the RESET switch or you leave the switches for 15 seconds, the data of EEPROM (storage cell inside of the remote control switch) is cleared.

At this time, the number is displayed at the (A) part, which is shown in the figure below. When the number "99" is displayed, EEPROM is abnormal.



If the number which is displayed at the (A) part is "99", the checking does not proceed to the next item.

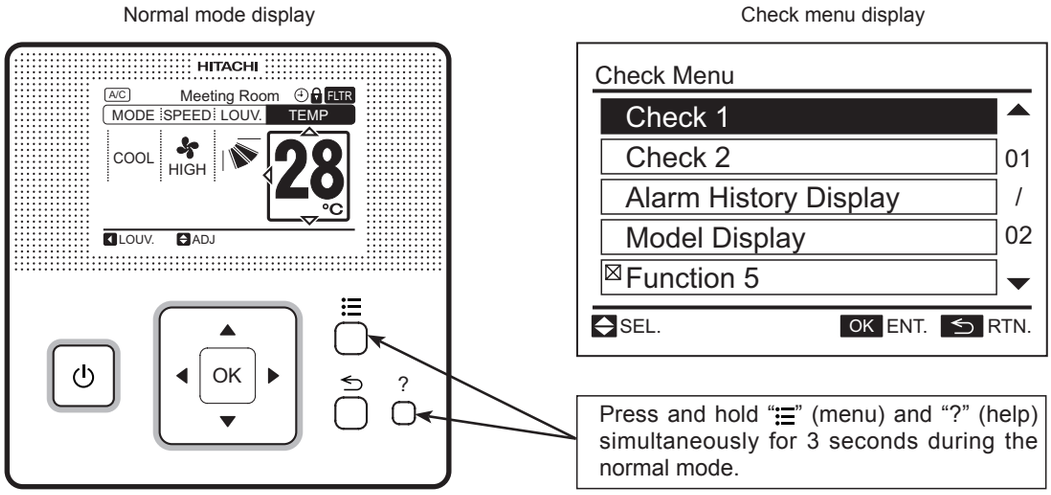
NOTE

- *In case that the operation is not automatically started when the remote control switch is activated again, the detection circuit for the momentary stoppage may be abnormal. However, the detection circuit will not interfere with the normal operation.*
- *There is a case where the operation is automatically stopped after the automatic operation when the remote control switch is activated again.*

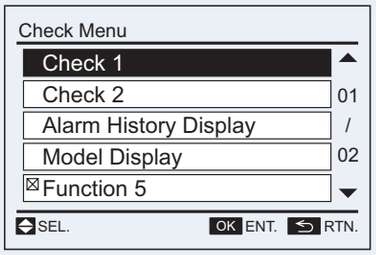
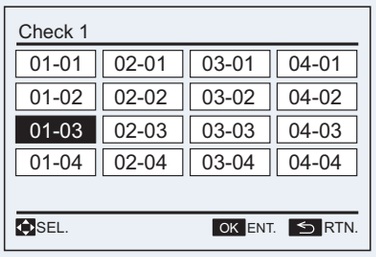
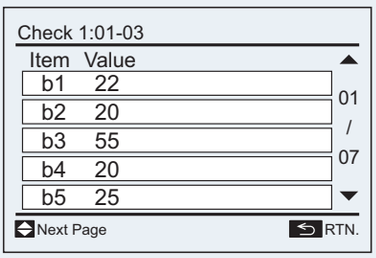
11.3.2 Troubleshooting using the remote controller PC-ARF

Each “Check Menu” item and its function are explained in the following table.

Check Menu Item	Function
Check 1	Sensor condition of air conditioner will be monitored and indicated.
Check 2	Sensor data of air conditioner prior to alarm occurrence will be indicated.
Alarm History Display	Previous alarm record (date, time, alarm code) will be indicated.
Model Display	Model name and manufacturing number will be indicated.
I.U./O.U. PCB Check	The result of PCB check will be indicated.
Self Checking	Checking of remote control switch will be carried out.



◆ Contents of the check mode 1 and 2

(1) Press and hold “” (menu) and “?” (help) simultaneously for 3 seconds during the normal mode. The check menu is displayed.	
(2) Select “Check 1” (or “Check 2”) from the check menu and press “OK”.	
(3) Select the set indoor unit by pressing “△ ▽ ◁▷” and press “OK”. (This screen is NOT displayed when the number of indoor units connected with the remote control switch is 1 (one). In this case, (4) will be displayed.)	
(4) Press “△“ or “▽“ to change the screen.	

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 343 04/06/2013 18:14:53

Check mode 1 items

No.	Item	Data Name
1	b1	Set Temp.
2	b2	Inlet Air Temp.
3	b3	Discharge Air Temp.
4	b4	Liquid Pipe Temp.
5	b5	Remote Thermistor Temp.
6	b6	Outdoor Air Temp.
7	b7	Gas Pipe Temp.
8	b8	Evaporating Temp. at Heating
9	b9	Condensing Temp. at Cooling
10	bA	Comp. Top Temp.
11	bb	Thermo Temp. of Remote Control Switch
12	bC	Not Prepared
13	C1	I.U. Micro-Computer
14	C2	O.U. Micro-Computer
15	d1	Stopping Cause State Indication
16	E1	Times of Abnormality
17	E2	Times of Power Failure

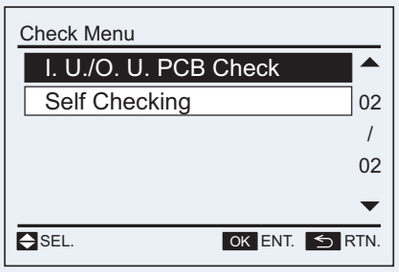
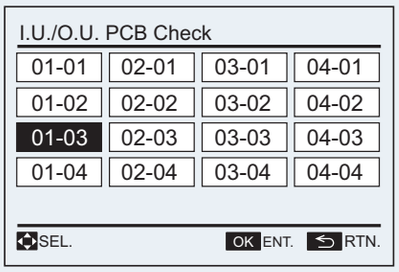
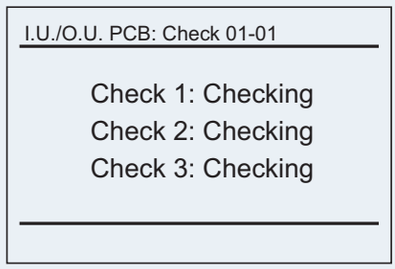
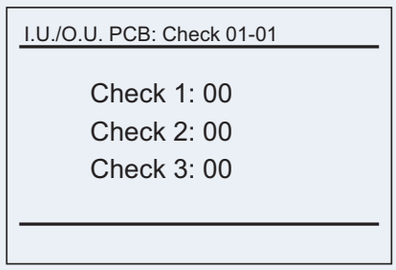
No.	Item	Data Name
18	E3	Times of Abnormal Transmitting
19	E4	Times of Inverter Tripping
20	F1	Louver Sensor State
21	H1	Discharge Pressure
22	H2	Suction Pressure
23	H3	Control Information
24	H4	Operating Frequency
25	J1	I.U. Capacity
26	J2	O.U. Code
27	J3	Refrigerant Cycle Number (1)
28	J4	Refrigerant Cycle Number (2)
29	L1	I.U. Expansion Valve
30	L2	O.U. Expansion Valve 1
31	L3	O.U. Expansion Valve 2
32	L4	O.U. Expansion Valve B
33	P1	Comp. Current
34	q1	Motion Sensor Reaction Rate (0 ~ 100%)

Check mode 2 items

No.	Item	Data Name
1	q1	Inlet Air Temp.
2	q2	Discharge Air Temp.
3	q3	Liquid Pipe Temp.
4	q4	Outdoor Air Temp.
5	q5	Gas Pipe Temp.
6	q6	Evaporating Temp. at Heating
7	q7	Condensing Temp. at Cooling
8	q8	Comp. Top Temp.

No.	Item	Data Name
9	q9	Discharge Pressure
10	qA	Suction Pressure
11	qb	Control Information
12	qC	Operating Frequency
13	qd	I.U. Expansion Valve
14	qE	O.U. Expansion Valve 1
15	qF	Comp. Current

◆ Checking procedure of PCB by means of the Remote Control Switch

(1) Press and hold "☰" (menu) and "?" (help) simultaneously for 3 seconds during the normal mode. The check menu is displayed.	
(2) Select "I.U./O.U. PCB Check" from the check menu and press "OK".	
(3) Select the set indoor unit by pressing "△ ▽ ◁ ▷" and press "OK". (This screen is NOT displayed when the number of indoor units connected with the remote control switch is 1 (one). In this case, (4) will be displayed.)	
(4) The indoor unit PCB and the outdoor unit PCB checks are started. * If "☰" (menu) is pressed during the check, the check is canceled and the screen will return to (2). * If "⮌" (return) is pressed during the check, the check is canceled and the screen will return to (3).	
(5) After completing the check, the result of PCB check will be indicated. Press "⮌" (return) and return to (3).	

Result of check table

Indoor Unit PCB	
00	Normal
01	Abnormality of Inlet Air Temp. Thermistor
02	Abnormality of Outlet Air Temp. Thermistor
03	Abnormality of Liquid Pipe Temp. Thermistor
04	Abnormality of Remote Thermistor
05	Abnormality of Gas Pipe Temp. Thermistor
08	Abnormality of Transmission of Central Station
0A	Abnormality of EEPROM
0b	Zero Cross Input Failure
EE	Abnormality of Transmission of I.U. during Check

Outdoor Unit PCB	
00	Normal
07	Abnormality of Transmission of Outdoor Unit
F4	ITO Input Failure
F5	PSH Input Failure
F6	Abnormality of Protection Signal Detection Circuit
F7	Abnormality of Phase Detection
F8	Abnormality of Transmission of Inverter
FA	Abnormality of High Pressure Sensor
Fb	Abnormality of Comp. Discharge Gas Temp. Thermistor
FC	Abnormality of Low Pressure Sensor
Fd	Abnormality of Evaporating Temp. Thermistor at Heating
FF	Abnormality of Ambient Air Temp. Thermistor

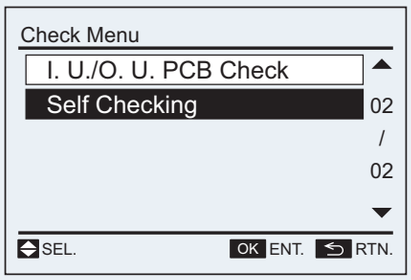
◆ Self-checking procedure of PCB by means of the Remote Control Switch

The self checking performs to check the remote control switch and to clear EEPROM (storage cell inside of the remote control switch).

(1) Press and hold "☰" (menu) and "?" (help) simultaneously for 3 seconds during the normal mode (when unit is not operated).

The check menu is displayed.

(2) Select "Self Checking" from the check menu and press "OK".

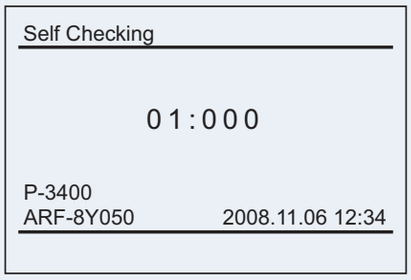


(3) Select the process for "Self Checking".

* To start self check, press "?" (help).

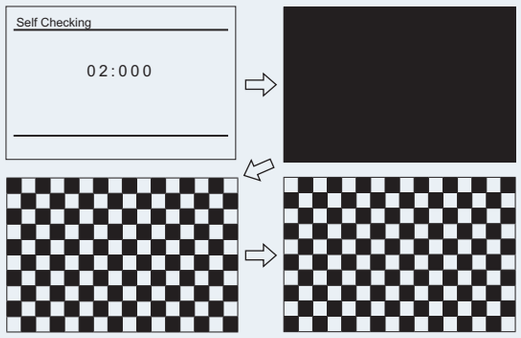
* To clear EEPROM, press "▽" and "?" (help) simultaneously.

→ See EEPROM clear process (15) (next page).



(4) LCD Test

Press "OK" and the screen will be switched as shown in the figure.



(5) Backlight Test

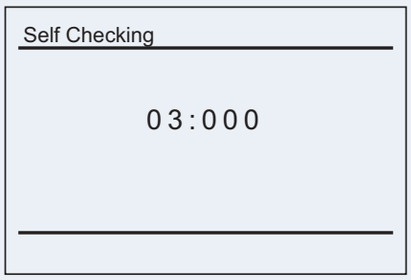
LCD brightness changes gradually by pressing "OK".

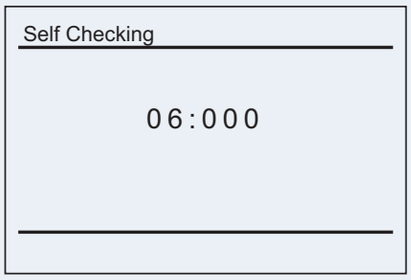
(6) Contrast Test

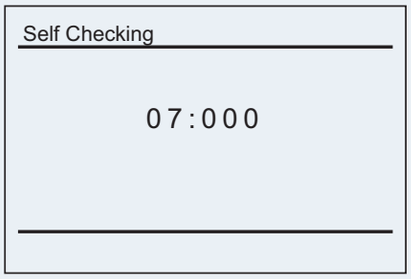
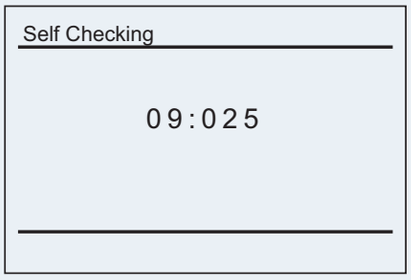
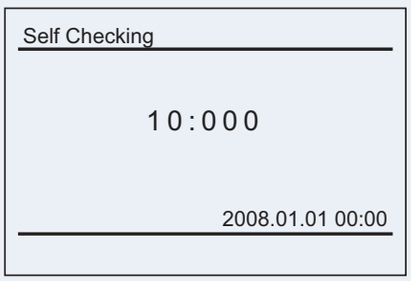
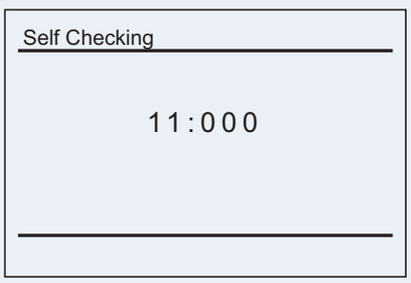
Contrast of the LCD gradually changes by pressing "OK".

(7) Run Indicator Test

Press "OK" and the run indicator will flash in red and green twice for each.



(8) Switch Input Test Press the 9 switches one by one. The number indicated with "Ⓐ" will be counted up as switch being pressed. * The order of pressing switch is at random. Do not press more than 1 (one) button, for it will not be counted.	

(9) No Function This function is not used. Press "OK" to proceed.	
(10) Transmission Circuit Test The remote control switch automatically starts to check the transmission circuit.	
(11)Remote Control Switch Thermistor Test The temperature detected by remote control switch thermistor is displayed at "Ⓐ" in the right figure.	
(12) Date/Time Test The date and time is switched from "2012.03.04 12:34" to "2008. 01. 01 00:00".	
(13) EEPROM Test < EEPROM Clearing Cancel > Press "?" (help). < EEPROM Clear > Press "OK" or wait 15 seconds. EEPROM data will be cleared. During the process, the numbers will be indicated on where "Ⓐ" is located. If Ⓐ indicates "999", EEPROM is in a faulty condition. *In case "Ⓐ" indicates "999", the process does not proceed to next step.	
(14) After the several seconds pass, the self checking is completed and the remote control switch automatically restarts.	

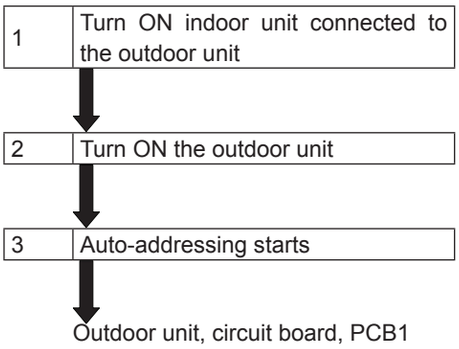
EEPROM process

(15) Clear EEPROM The remote control switch will automatically start EEPROM clearing process.	Self Checking 13:000
(16) After the several seconds pass, the self checking is completed and the remote control switch automatically restarts.	

11.3.3

11.3.4 Troubleshooting using the 7-segment display for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

◆ Simple checking by 7-segment display

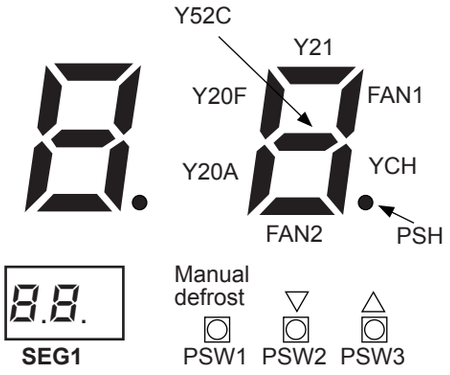


During auto-addressing, the following items can be checked using the outdoor unit's on-board 7-segment LED display:

1 Disconnection of power supply to the indoor unit.
2 Reverse connection of the operating line between the outdoor and indoor units.
3 Duplication of indoor unit number.

◆ Checking method by 7-segment display

Operating conditions and each part of refrigeration cycle can be checked by 7-segment and push switches (PSW) on the PCB in the outdoor unit. During checking data, do not touch the electric parts except for the indicated switches because 220-240V is applied to them. Pay attention not to contact the tools with electrical parts. If contacted, electrical parts will be damaged.



- To start checking, press PSW2 switch for more than three seconds.
- To proceed checking, press the PSW2 switch.
- To back to the previous item, press the PSW3 switch.
- To cancel this checking, press the PSW2 switch for more than 3 seconds.

◆ Check mode items

RAS-3HVRNS3

Item	Item		Indication data		
	Check No.	In-dic.	In-dic.	Contents	
Input/output state of outdoor micro-computer	01	SC	3	Indicates only for the segments corresponding to the equipment in the figure. (See figure above)	
Capacity of operating indoor unit	02	oP	11	00~199 In case that capacity is higher than 100, the last two digits flash	
Inverter order frequency to compressor	03	H1	74	0~115 (Hz) In case that frequency is higher than 100Hz, the last two digits flicker	
Indoor order frequency to compressor	04	H2	74	0~115 (Hz) In case that frequency is higher than 100Hz, last two digits flicker	
Air flow ratio	05	Fo	80	00~100 (%) In case that air flow ratio is 100%, "00" flashes	
Outdoor unit expansion valve opening	06	Eo	30	00~100 (%) In case that expansion valve opening is 100%, "00" flashes	
Temperature at the top of compressor	07	Td	02	00~142 (ºC) In case that temperature is higher than 100ºC, the last two digits flash	
Evaporating temperature at heating	08	TE	-2	-19~80ºC	
Ambient air temperature	09	To	-3	-19~80ºC	
Control PCB information	10	TF	20	Internal information of the PCB	
Control PCB information	11	A1	12	Internal information of the PCB	
Inverter secondary current	12	A2	20	00~199 (A) In case that current is higher than 100ºC, the last two digits flash	
Outdoor unit address	13	nA	00	00~63	In case of twin/triple/quad-type unit, the information of 2nd to the 4th indo-or units is indicated repeatedly. The right character of the indication represents the indoor unit setting No. Single: A Twin: A, b Triple: A, b, c Quad: A, b, c, d
Indoor unit expansion valve opening	14	EA	20	00~100 (%) In case that opening is 100%. "00" flashes	
Liquid pipe temperature of indoor unit (freeze protection)	15	LA	05	-19~127 (ºC)	
Indoor unit intake air temperature	16	iA	28	-19~127 (ºC)	
Indoor unit discharge air temperature	17	oA	20	-19~127 (ºC)	
Cause of indoor unit stoppage	18	dA	05	(See table at the next page)	
Accumulated Operating Time of Com-pressor	19	UJ	00	0 to 9,999 (x 10 hours) Alternately upper 2 digits and lower 2 digits are indicated every 0.5 sec.	
Accumulated Operating Time of Com-pressor	20	cU	00	0 to 9,999 (x 10 hours) Alternately upper 2 digits and lower 2 digits are indicated every 0.5 sec.	
Alarm code for abnormal stoppage of compressor	21	AC	08	Alarm code on compressor	
Cause of stoppage at inverter	22	iF	1	(See table at the next page)	
Abnormal data record	23	n1	00	One of the abnormal data record from latest (n1) to oldest (n9) is indicated. Alarm code or cause code is indicated.	
Total capacity of indoor unit connected	24	CP	22	00~96 In case that capacity is higher than 100, the last two digits flash	
Connected indoor unit number	25	AA	2	00~64	
Refrigerant adress	26	CA	0	00~63	

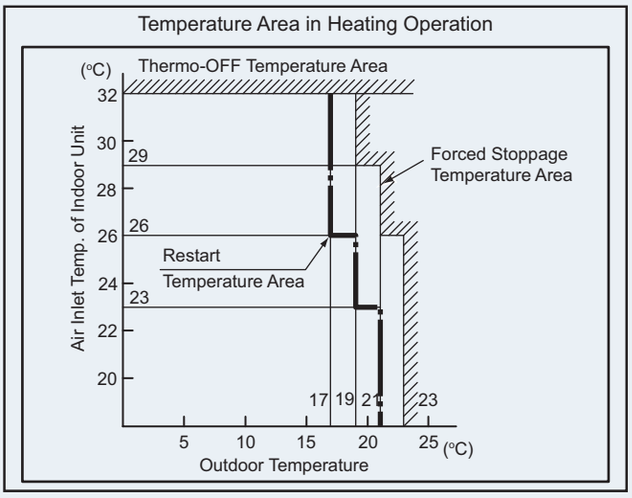
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

Item	Item		Indication data	
	Check No.	Indic.	Indic.	Contents
Input/output state of outdoor micro-computer	01	SC	3	Indicates only for the segments corresponding to the equipment in the figure. (See figure above)
Capacity of operating indoor unit	02	oP	11	00~199 In case that capacity is higher than 100, the last two digits flash
Control software No.	03	SP	11	Control Software No. in use is indicated. Alternately upper 2 digits and lower 2 digits are indicated every 0.5 sec.
Inverter software No.	04	iP	11	Control Software No. in use is indicated. Alternately upper 2 digits and lower 2 digits are indicated every 0.5 sec.
Inverter order frequency to compressor	05	H1	74	0~115 (Hz) In case that frequency is higher than 100Hz, the last two digits flicker
Air flow ratio	06	Fo	80	00~15
Outdoor unit expansion valve opening	07	Eo	30	00~100 (%) In case that expansion valve opening is 100%, "00" flashes
Temperature at the top of compressor	08	Td	02	00~142 (ºC) In case that temperature is higher than 100ºC, the last two digits flash
Evaporating temperature at heating	09	TE	-2	-19~80ºC
Ambient air temperature	10	To	-3	-19~80ºC
Condensing temperature	11	TC	-0	-19~80ºC
Inverter fin temperature	12	TF	20	-10~100 (ºC) In case that temperature is 100%, "00" flashes
Inverter firstly current	13	A1	12	00~199 (A) In case that current is higher than 100ºC, the last two digits flash
Inverter secondary current	14	A2	20	00~199 (A) In case that current is higher than 100ºC, the last two digits flash
Outdoor unit address	15	nA	00	00~63	In case of twin/triple/quad-type unit, the information of 2nd to the 4th indo-or units is indicated repeatedly. The right character of the indication represents the indoor unit setting No. Single: A Twin: A, b Triple: A, b, c Quad: A, b, c, d
Indoor unit expansion valve opening	16	EA	20	00~100 (%) In case that opening is 100%. "00" flashes	
Liquid pipe temperature of indoor unit (freeze protection)	17	LA	05	-19~127 (ºC)	
Indoor unit intake air temperature	18	iA	28	-19~127 (ºC)	
Indoor unit discharge air temperature	19	oA	20	-19~127 (ºC)	
Cause of indoor unit stoppage	20	dA	05	(See table at the next page)	
Accumulated Operating Time of Compressor	21	UJ	00	0 to 9,999 (x 10 hours) Alternately upper 2 digits and lower 2 digits are indicated every 0.5 sec.	
Accumulated Operating Time of Compressor	22	cU	00	0 to 9,999 (x 10 hours) Alternately upper 2 digits and lower 2 digits are indicated every 0.5 sec.	
Alarm code for abnormal stoppage of compressor	23	AC	08	Alarm code on compressor	
Cause of stoppage at inverter	24	iF	1	(See table at the next page)	
Abnormal data record	25	n1	00	One of the abnormal data record from latest (n1) to oldest (n9) is indicated. Alarm code or cause code is indicated.	
Total capacity of indoor unit connected	26	CP	22	00~199 In case that capacity is higher than 100, the last two digits flash	
Connected indoor unit number	27	AA	2	00~64	
Refrigerant adress	28	CA	0	00~63	

◆ Cause of indoor unit stoppage (dA)

Indication	Contents
00	Operation OFF, Power OFF
01	Thermo-OFF
02	Alarm
03	Freeze protection overheating protection
05	Instantaneous power failure at outdoor unit
06	Instantaneous power failure at indoor unit
07	Stoppage of heating operation due to high outdoor air temperature
10	Demand thermo OFF
13	Retry for Pd increase prevention
15	Vacuum/discharge gas temperature increase retry
16	Retry due to discharge gas SUPERHEAT decrease
17	IPM error retry, instantaneous over current of inverter retry, electronic thermal activation of inverter retry, abnormal current sensor of inverter retry
18	Retry due to inverter voltage decrease Retry due to Inverter Overvoltage Retry due to inverter transmission abnormality
19	Other retry
21	Forced Thermo-OFF
22	Outdoor hot start control
24	Thermo-OFF during energy saving operation mode
26	Retry due to high pressure decrease
28	Cooling air discharge temperature decrease
33	Forced Thermo-OFF
34	Forced Thermo-OFF
35	Retry due to abnormal operating mode (Reversing valve switching failure)

10 Demand thermo OFF:



NOTE

- *The cause code for indoor unit stoppage is not always "02" (Alarm) during stoppage by the abnormality. If the unit is under Thermo-OFF by other cause of stoppage before "02" (Alarm) occurs, the previous cause code for indoor unit stoppage remains.*
- *When the transmitting between the inverter PCB and the outdoor unit PCB1 is disconnected for 30 seconds, the outdoor micro-computer will be reset. Accordingly when the alarm code "04" (Abnormal Transmitting between Inverter PCB and Outdoor Unit PCB1) occurs, the cause code for indoor unit stoppage may be indicated "05".*
- *When the transmitting between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit is disconnected for 3 minutes, the indoor micro-computer will be reset. Accordingly when the alarm code "03" (Abnormal Transmitting between Indoor Unit and Outdoor Unit) occurs, the cause code for indoor unit stoppage may be indicated "06".*
- *For twin, triple and quad combination, if the cause code for indoor unit stoppage "21" is indicated, check the cause of stoppage for other indoor units.*

Cancellation of Forced Thermo OFF (21)

Turn ON the power source and wait for more than 30 seconds. Then press PSW1 and PSW3 simultaneously for more than 3 seconds. Forced thermo-OFF (indoor unit error code 21) will be cancelled.

However, this function may damage the compressor, use only on inevitable occasion.

- In case of using the remote control switch (PC-ART), the cancellation is also available with it.
- When “Operation Lock” indication flashes on the remote control LCD, press FAN SPEED and LOUVER switches simultaneously for more than 3 seconds.
- “Operation Lock” Indication is disappeared and operation is available.

◆ Cause of inverter stoppage (24)

Code	Cause	Cause of Stoppage for Corresponding Unit	Remark	
			Indication during Retry	Alarm Code
1	Automatic Stoppage of Transistor Module (DIP-IPM Error) (Overcurrent, Undercurrent, Temperature increase)	17	P7	53
2	Instantaneous Over Current	17	P7	48
3	Abnormal Inverter Fin Thermistor	17	P7	54
4	Electronic Thermal Activation (Inverter overcurrent)	17	P7	48
5	Inverter Voltage Decrease (Undervoltage)	18	P8	06
6	Over Voltage	18	P8	06
7	Abnormal Inverter Transmission	18	-	-
8	Abnormal Current Detection	17	P7	51
9	Instantaneous Power Failure Detection	18	-	-
11	Reset of Micro-Computer for Inverter	18	-	-
12	Earth Fault Detection from Compressor (Only Starting)	17	P7	53
13	Phase detection abnormality	18	P8	-
14	Inverter Non-Operation	18	-	55
15	Inverter Non-Operation	18	-	55
16	Inverter Non-Operation	18	-	55
17	Communication Abnormality	18	-	55
18	Protection Device Activation (PSH)	-	-	02
19	Protection Detection Device Abnormality	-	-	38
20	Early Return Protection Device	18	P7	53
21	Step-Out Detection	17	-	31

◆ Table of capacity codes of indoor unit

Code	Equivalent horsepower
06	0.8
08	1.0
10	1.3
11	1.5
13	1.8

Code	Equivalent horsepower
14	2.0
16	2.3
18	2.5
22	3.0
32	4.0

Code	Equivalent horsepower
40	5.0
48	6.0
64	8.0
80	10.0

◆ Protection control code on 7-segment display

1 Protection control code is displayed on 7-segment when a protection control is activated.
2 Protection control code is displayed while function is working, and goes out when released.
3 When several protection control are activated, code number with higher priority will be indicated (see below for the priority order).

a. Higher priority is given to protection control related to frequency control than the other. Priority order:

- High-pressure increase protection
- Over current protection
- Cold draft protection

b. In relation to retry control, the latest retrial will be indicated unless a protection control related to frequency control is indicated.

RAS-3HVRNS3

Priority	Protection control	Code
1	Low-Pressure Ratio Control at Cooling Operation	P00
2	High-pressure ratio control at heating operation	P01
3	High-pressure rise protection	P02
4	Current protection	P03
5	Inverter fin temperature rise prevention	P04
6	Discharge gas temperature rise protection	P05
7	Unbalance Power Source Detecting	P09
8	Demand current control	P0A
9	Low-Pressure Decrease Protection	P0b

RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

Priority	Protection control	Code
1	Pressure ratio control	P01
2	High-pressure rise protection	P02
3	Current protection	P03
4	Inverter fin temperature rise prevention	P04
5	Discharge gas temperature rise protection	P05
6	Demand current control (running current limit control)	P0A
7	High pressure decrease protection (only Premium series)	P09

NOTE

The protection control code being indicated on 7-segment display is changed to an alarm code when the abnormal operation occurs. Also, the same alarm code is indicated on the remote control switch.

◆ Activating condition of protection control code

To monitor the conditions such as the temperature change and others, the control of the frequency and other controls are performed by the protection control in order to prevent the abnormal operations. The activating conditions of protection control are shown in the table below:

RAS-3HVRNS3

Code	Protection Control	Activating Condition	Remarks
P0	Low-Pressure Ratio Control at Cooling Operation	If Compression Ratio ε exceeds a threshold value => Frequency Increase	—
P1	High-Pressure Ratio Control at Heating Operation	If Compression Ratio ε is lower than a threshold value => Frequency Decrease	—
P2	High-Pressure Increase Protection	High Pressure Switch for Control is activated => Frequency Decrease	—
P3	Over Current Protection	Inverter Output Current > (*1)A => Frequency Decrease	—
P4	Inverter Temperature Increase Protection	Inverter Fin Temperature RAS-3HVRNS3 ≥ 70 ºC => Frequency Decrease	—
P5	Discharge Gas Temperature Increase Protection	Temperature at the top of compressor is high => Frequency Decrease	—
P9	Unbalance Power Source Detecting	Inverter Output Current exceeds a threshold value => Frequency Decrease	—
PA	Current Demand Control	Inverter Output Current exceeds a threshold value => Frequency Decrease	In case of Demand Control Setting
Pb	Low-Pressure Decrease Protection	Low Pressure Switch for Control is activated. => Frequency Decrease	—

(1)*

Connection	220-240V		
HP	2	2.5	3
Current (A)	8.0	8.0	10.5

RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

Code	Protection control	Activating condition	Remarks
P01	Pressure ratio control	Compression ratio ε ≥ 7.5 => frequency decrease Compression ratio ε ≤ 1.6 => frequency increase	ε = (Pd+0.1)/(Ps+0.1)
P02	High-pressure increase protection	High Pressure Switch for Control is activated => Frequency Decrease	
P03	Inverter current protection	If Inverter PCB secondary current > (*1)A => frequency decrease	
P04	Inverter fin temperature increase prevention	Inverter fin temperature RAS-4HRNS3E ≥ 70 ºC RAS-4HVRNS3E ≥ 87 ºC => frequency decrease	
P05	Discharge gas temperature increase protection	Temperature at the top of compressor is high => frequency decrease (Maximum temperature is different depending on the frequency) Temperature at the top of compressor > 107 ºC => Indicate P5	
P09	High-pressure decrease protection	Discharge pressure of compressor decrease under 10MPa => Frequency increase	Cooling operation and lowest step fan or heating operation
P0A	Demand current control (running current limit control)	Compressor run current ≥ demand setting value => frequency decrease	Demand setting value: upper limit of total running current is set to 100%, 80%, 70%, 60% at normal operation using input on PCB1

Ps: Suction pressure of compressor (MPa)

Pd: Discharge pressure of compressor (MPa)

(1)*

Connection	380-415V	220-240V
HP	4	4
Current (A)	12.0	16.0

NOTE

- *During protection control (except during alarm stoppage), the protection control code is indicated.*
- *The protection control code is indicated during protection control and turns off when cancelling the protection control.*
- *After retry control, the condition of monitoring is continued for 30 minutes.*

11.3.5 Troubleshooting using the 7-segment display for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

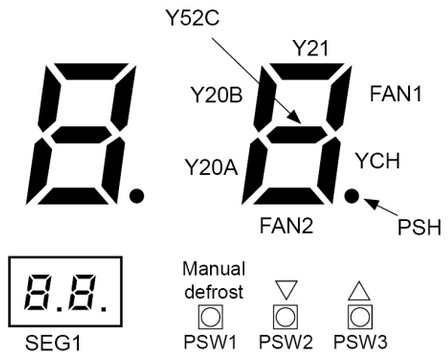
Simple checking by 7-segment display

- During auto-addressing, the following items can be checked using the outdoor unit's on-board 7-segment LED display:
  3. Disconnection of power supply to the indoor unit.
  4. Reverse connection of the operating line between the outdoor and indoor units.
  5. Duplication of indoor unit number.
- Outdoor Unit, Circuit Board, PCB1
  1. Turn ON all Indoor Units connected to the Outdoor Unit
  2. Turn ON the Outdoor Unit
  3. Auto-addressing starts

Checking method by 7-segment display

Operating conditions and each part of refrigeration cycle can be checked by 7-segment and push switches (PSW) on the PCB in the outdoor unit. During checking data, do not touch the electric parts except for the indicated switches because 220-240 V (400 V in case of RAS-(4-6)HRN(M/S)2E, RAS-(8-12)HRNM and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE) is applied to them. Pay attention not to contact the tools with electrical parts. If contacted, electrical parts will be damaged.

- To start checking, press PSW2 switch for more than three seconds.
- To proceed checking, press the PSW2 switch.
- To back to the previous item, press the PSW3 switch.
- To cancel this checking, press the PSW2 switch for more than 3 seconds



Item	Item		Indication data		
	Check No.	Inidic.	Indic	Contents	
Total capacity of indoor unit connected	01	CP	22	00~96 (00~80 in case of ≤6 HP)	
Input / output state of outdoor micro-computer	02	SC	--	Indicates only for the segments corresponding to the equipment in the figure. (See figure above)	
Alarm code for abnormal stoppage of compressor	03	AC	02	Alarm Code on Compressor	
Inverter order frequency to compressor	04	H1	90	0~115 (Hz) In case that frequency is higher than 100 Hz, the last two digits flicker	
Indoor order frequency to compressor	05	H2	90	0~115 (Hz) In case that Frequency is higher than 100 Hz, last two digits flicker	
Air flow ratio	06	Fo	80	00~100 (%) In case that air flow ratio is 100%, “00” flashes	
Outdoor unit expansion valve opening	07	Eo	50	00~100 (%) In case that Expansion Valve Opening is 100%, “00” flashes	
Temperature at the top of compressor	08	Td	82	00~142 (ºC) In case that temperature is higher than 100 ºC, the last two digits flash	
Evaporating temperature at heating	09	TE	-3	-19~80 ºC	
Ambient air temperature	10	To	-12	-19~80 ºC	
Cause of stoppage at inverter	11	iF	9	(See table at the next page)	
Inverter fin temperature	12	TF	82	-10~100 ºC	
Inverter fin temperature	13	A1	10	0~199 ºC	
Inverter secondary current	14	A2	10	00~199 (A)	
Outdoor unit address	15	nA	00	00~64	In case of twin/triple/quad-type unit, the information of 2nd to the 4th indoor units is indicated repeatedly. The right character of the indication represents the indoor unit setting no. Single: A Twin: A, b Triple: A, b, c Quad: A, b, c, d
Indoor unit expansion valve opening	16	EA	20	00~100 (%) In case that opening is 100%. “00” flashes	
Liquid pipe temperature of indoor unit (freeze protection)	17	LA	05	-19~127 (ºC)	
Indoor unit intake air temperature	18	iA	28	-19~127 (ºC)	
Indoor unit discharge air temperature	19	oA	20	-19~127 (ºC)	
Cause of indoor unit stoppage	20	dA	05	00~24 ºC	

Cause of inverter stoppage (11)

Indication	Contents
1	IPM, ISPM, DIP-IPM error
2	Instantaneous Over Current
3	Inverter Fin Thermistor Protection Activation
4	Electronic Thermal Activation
5	Inverter Voltage Decrease
6	Over Voltage
7	Abnormal Transmission
8	Abnormal Current Detection
9	Instantaneous Power Failure Detection
11	Reset of Micro-Computer for Inverter
12	Earth Fault Detection from Compressor
13	Open Phase Detection
14	Inverter Malfunction
15	Inverter Malfunction
16	Inverter Malfunction
17	Transmission Error
18	Abnormal Current Detection
19	Abnormal Protective Device

NOTE

- *To finish checking: Press the PSW2 switch for more than 3 seconds.*

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 358 04/06/2013 18:14:55

Cause of Indoor Unit stoppage (20)

Indication	Contents
00	Operation OFF, Power OFF
01	Thermo-OFF
02	Alarm
03	Freeze Protection Overheating Protection
05	Instantaneous Power Failure at Outdoor Unit
06	Instantaneous Power Failure at Indoor Unit
07	Stoppage of Cooling Operation due to Low Outdoor Air Temperature Stoppage of Heating Operation due to High Outdoor Air Temperature
10	Demand thermo OFF
13	Retry for Pd Increase Prevention
15	Vacuum / Discharge Gas Temperature Increase Retry
16	Retry Due to Discharge Gas SUPERHEAT Decrease
17	IPM Error Retry, Instantaneous Over Current of Inverter Retry, Electronic Thermal Activation of Inverter Retry, Abnormal Current Sensor of Inverter Retry
18	Retry due to Inverter Voltage Decrease Retry due to Inverter Overvoltage
19	Other Retry
20	Different Operation Mode between Indoor / Outdoor Units (Only for Individual Twin / Triple / Quad Types)
21	Forced Thermo-OFF (Only for Simultaneous Twin / Triple / Quad Types)
22	Forced Thermo-OFF (During Compressor Pre-heating)
24	Thermo-OFF during Energy Saving Operation Mode

Cancellation of Forced Thermo OFF

Turn ON the power source and wait for more than 30 seconds. Then press PSW1 and PSW3 simultaneously for more than 3 seconds.

Forced Thermo-OFF (Indoor Unit Error Code 22) will be cancelled.

However, this function may damage the compressor, use only on inevitable occasion.

- In case of using the remote control switch (PC-ART), the cancellation is also available with it.
- When “Operation Lock” indication flashes on the remote control LCD, press FAN SPEED and LOUVER switches simultaneously for more than 3 seconds.
- “Operation Lock” Indication is disappeared and operation is available.

11.3.6 Troubleshooting by means of the flashing alarm LEDs for RPK-FSN2M (only for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

The red LED located on the panel indicates the following alarms:

Code	Cause	Indication
Alarm 02	Unit protection	This alarm is activated when the blinks sequence is two times ON / two seconds OFF
Alarm 03	Transmission error	This alarm is activated when the blinks sequence is three times ON / two seconds OFF
Alarm 04	Inverter outdoor unit error	This alarm is activated when the blinks sequence is four times ON / two seconds OFF

For the rest of the alarms, the blink sequence is one second ON / one second OFF.

11.3.7 Cause of inverter stoppage for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

Code	Cause	Cause of Stoppage for Corresponding Unit	Remark	
			Indication during Retry	Alarm Code
1	Automatic Stoppage of Transistor Module (DIP-IPM Error) (Overcurrent, Undercurrent, Temperature increase)	17	P7	53
2	Instantaneous Over Current	17	P7	48
3	Abnormal Inverter Fin Thermistor	17	P7	54
4	Electronic Thermal Activation (Inverter overcurrent)	17	P7	48
5	Inverter Voltage Decrease (Undervoltage)	18	P8	06
6	Over Voltage	18	P8	06
7	Abnormal Inverter Transmission	18	-	-
8	Abnormal Current Detection	17	P7	51
9	Instantaneous Power Failure Detection	18	-	-
11	Reset of Micro-Computer for Inverter	18	-	-
12	Earth Fault Detection from Compressor (Only Starting)	17	P7	53
13	Phase detection abnormality	18	-	-
14	Inverter Non-Operation	18	-	55
15	Inverter Non-Operation	18	-	55
16	Inverter Non-Operation	18	P8	55
17	Communication Abnormality	18	P8	55
18	Protection Device Activation (63H1)	-	-	02
19	Protection Detection Device Abnormality	-	-	38

Protection control code on 7-segment display

1 Protection control code is displayed on 7-segment when a protection control is activated.
2 Protection control code is displayed while function is working, and goes out when released.
3 When several protection control are activated, code number with higher priority will be indicated (see below for the priority order).

a. Higher priority is given to protection control related to frequency control than the other.
- Priority order
  - High-Pressure Increase Protection
  - Over Current Protection
  - Cold Draft Protection
  - Low-Pressure Ratio Control at Cooling Operation

b. In relation to retry control, the latest retrial will be indicated unless a protection control related to frequency control is indicated.

Code		Protection Control
P	0	Low-Pressure Ratio Control at Cooling Operation
P	1	High-Pressure Ratio Control at Heating Operation
P	2	High-Pressure Increase Protection
P	3	Over Current Protection
P	4	IPM Fin Temperature Increase Protection
P	5	Discharge Gas Temperature Increase Protection

Code		Protection Control
P	7	Inverter-Trip Retry Control
P	8	Voltage Drop (or Overvoltage) Retry Control
P	9	Protection Control for Power Source Voltage Unbalance Detection
P	A	Current Demand Control
P	b	Suction Pressure Decrease Prevention Control

- Retry indication continues for 30 minutes unless a protection control is indicated.
- Retry indication disappears if the stop signal comes from all rooms.

Code		Protection control
P	7	Inverter Retry
P	8	

NOTE

- *The protection control code being indicated on 7.segment display is changed to an alarm code when the abnormal operation occurs. Also, the same alarm code is indicated on the remote control switch.*

Activating condition of protection control code

For following the conditions as the temperature change, etc., the control of frequency, etc. is performed to prevent the abnormal conditions by the protection control.

The activating conditions of protection control are shown in the table below

Code	Protection Control	Activating Condition	Remarks
P0	Low-Pressure Ratio Control at Cooling Operation	Compression Ratio ε < 2.2 => Frequency Increase	ε = (Pd+0.1)/(Ps+0.1)
P1	High-Pressure Ratio Control at Heating Operation	Compression Ratio ε > 7.5 => Frequency Decrease	ε = (Pd+0.1)/(Ps+0.1)
P2	High-Pressure Increase Protection	High Pressure Switch for Control is activated => Frequency Decrease	—
P3	Over Current Protection	Inverter Output Current > (*1)A => Frequency Decrease	—
P4	DIP-IPM, ISPM or IPM Temperature Increase Protection	Inverter Fin Temperature RAS-(8/10)HRNSE > 100 ºC RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2(E) > 80 ºC => Frequency Decrease	—
P5	Discharge Gas Temperature Increase Protection	Temperature at the top of compressor is high => Frequency Decrease Temperature at the top of compressor > 107 ºC => Indicate P5	—
P6	Frost Formation Protection	TL ≤ 2 °C Over 3 minutes => Frequency Decrease	TL: Liquid Piping, Temperature of Indoor Unit
P9	Unbalance Power Source Detecting	Inverter Output Current > (*3)A => Frequency Decrease	—
PA	Current Demand Control	Inverter Output Current > (*2)A => Frequency Decrease	In case of Demand Control Setting
Pb	Low-Pressure Decrease Protection	Low Pressure Switch for Control is activated. => Frequency Decrease	—
PC	Cold Draft Protection	TO ≤ 10 ºC and ε ≥ 2.6 => Frequency Decrease	ε = (Pd+0.1)/(Ps+0.1) TO: Outlet Temperature of Indoor Unit
P7	Inverter Retry	Automatic Stoppage of Transistor Module, Activation of Electronic Thermal or Abnormal Current Sensor	When activating 3 times in 30 minutes, “48”, “51”, “53” or “54” alarm is indicated.
P8	Inverter Retry	Insufficient/Excessive Voltage at Inverter Circuit or PCB Connector Part	When activating 3 times in 30 minutes, “06” or “55” alarm is indicated.

NOTE

- *During protection control (except during alarm stoppage), the protection control code is indicated.*
- *The protection control code is indicated during protection control and turns off when cancelling the protection control.*
- *After retry control, the condition of monitoring is continued for 30 minutes.*
- *The Maximum value are as follows:*

(1)*

HP	230V		400V	
	5	6	8	10
Current (A)	24.0	24.0	17.5	20.0

(2)*

	HP	230V		400V	
Demand setting		5	6	8	10
Current (A)	100%	17.0	20.0	8.5	11.0
	75%	13.0	15.0	6.0	8.0
	50%	8.5	10.0	4.0	5.0

(3)*

HP	230V		400V	
	5	6	8	10
Current (A)	15.0	18.5	13.0	13.0

11.4 Checking procedure for main parts for RAS-3HVRNS3 and RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

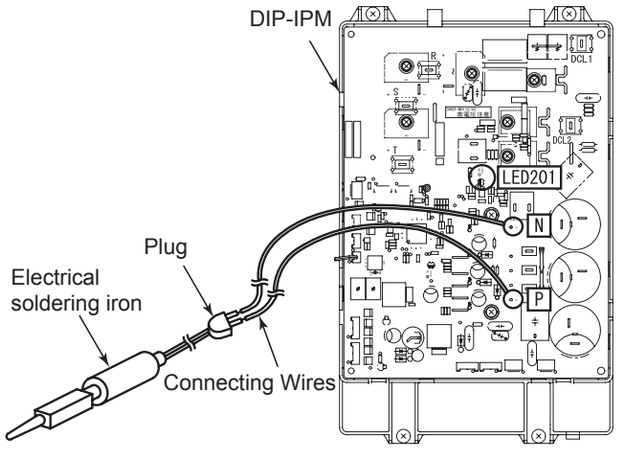
11.4.1 Procedure for checking the DIP-IPM inverter for indoor and outdoor units

High voltage discharge work for replacing parts

⚠ *CAUTION*

Electrical hazard. Risk of electrical shock. Perform this high voltage discharge work to avoid an electric shock.

1. Turn OFF the main switches and wait for three minutes. Make sure that no high voltage exists. If LED201 is ON after start-up and LED201 is OFF after turning OFF power source, the voltage will decrease lower than DC50V.
2. Connect connecting wires to an electrical soldering iron
3. Connect the wires to terminals, P and N on DIP-IPM. (The discharge voltage can perform even when connecting the wires to terminals #1(P) and #3(N) of connector "PCN201") => Discharging is started, resulting in hot soldering iron. Pay attention not to short-circuit between terminal P(+) and N(-)
4. Wait for 2 or 3 minutes and measure the voltage once again. Check to ensure that no voltage is charged.



Inverter module checking procedure

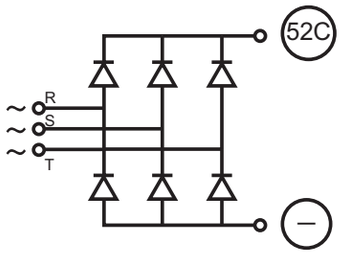
- Rectifier circuit of inverter PCB

Internal circuit of rectified part of DIP-IPM

Remove all the terminals of the inverter PCB before checking.

Non-faulty if [1] – [8] are checked and satisfied.

Measure with 1 kΩ range of a tester.

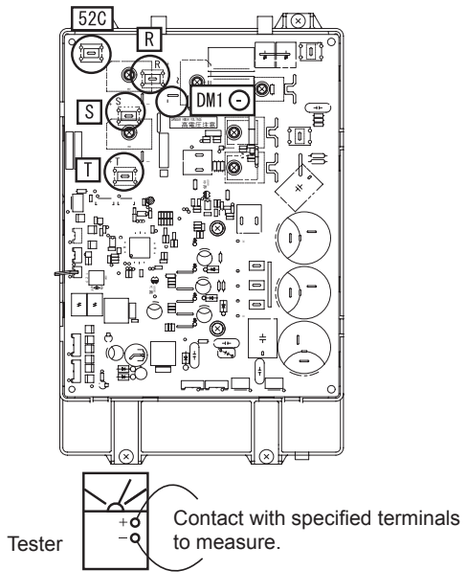


NOTE

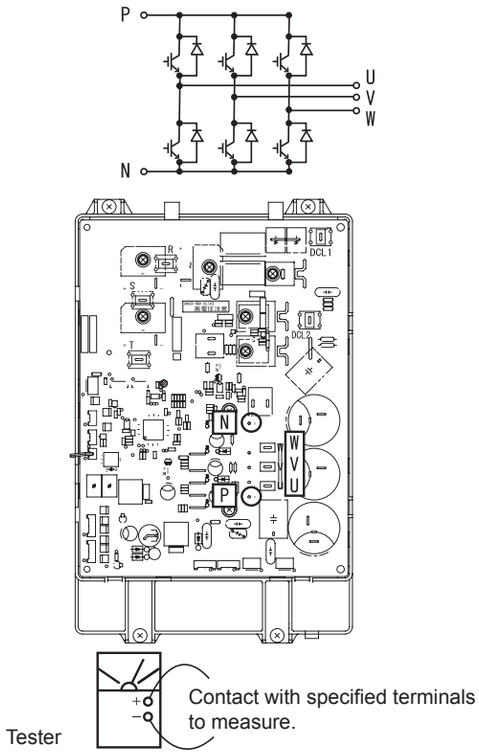
DO NOT use a digital tester.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 365 04/06/2013 18:14:56

1 Touch [+] side of the tester to DIP-IPM 52C terminal, and [-] side to DIP-IPM R, S and T terminals to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 1 kΩ or greater.
2 Contrary to [1], touch [-] side of the tester to DIP-IPM 52C terminal, and [+] side to DIP-IPM R, S terminals to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 100 kΩ or greater.
3 Touch [-] side of the tester to [-] side of DIP-IPM DMI (soldered part), and [+] side of the tester to DIP-IPM R, S terminals to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 1 kΩ or greater
4 Contrary to [3], touch [+] side of the tester to [-] side of DIP-IPM DMI, and [-] side of the tester to DIP-IPM R, S terminals to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 100 kΩ or greater.



5 Touch [+] side of the tester to [P] of DIP-IPM (soldered part), and [-] side to DIP-IPM U, V, W terminals to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 1 kΩ or greater.
6 Contrary to [5], touch [-] side of the tester to [P] of DIP-IPM (soldered part), and [+] side to DIP-IPM U, V, W terminals to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 30 kΩ or greater. (Resistance gradually increases during measurement.)
7 Touch [-] side of the tester to [N] of ISPM (soldered part), and [+] side to ISPM U, V, W terminals to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 1 kΩ or greater.
8 Contrary to [7], touch [+] side of the tester to [N] of-DIP-IPM (soldered part), and [-] side to DIP-IPM U, V, W terminals to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 30 kΩ or greater. (Resistance gradually increases during measurement.)



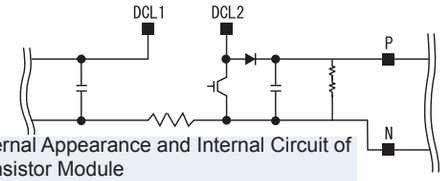
SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 366 04/06/2013 18:14:56

- ACT circuit of inverter PCB

Internal circuit of ACT part of inverter module

Non-faulty if [9] – [13] are checked and satisfied.

(Measure with 1 kΩ range of a tester.)



External Appearance and Internal Circuit of Transistor Module

NOTE

DO NOT use a digital tester.

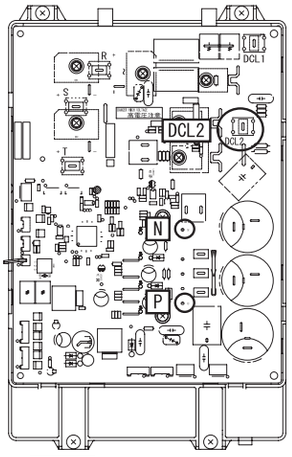
9 Check items [1] – [8].

10 Touch [+] side of the tester to DIP-IPM DCL2 terminal, and [-] side to [P] of ISPM/DIP-IPM (soldered part) to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 100 kΩ or greater

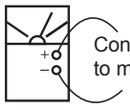
11 Contrary to [10], touch [-] side of the tester to DIP-IPM DCL2 terminal, and [+] side to [P] of DIP-IPM (soldered part) to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 1 kΩ or greater.

12 Touch [+] side of the tester to DIP-IPM DCL2 terminal, and [-] side to [N] of DIP-IPM (soldered part) to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 100 kΩ or greater.

13 Contrary to [12], touch [-] side of the tester to DIP-IPM DCL2 terminal, and [+] side to [N] of DIP-IPM (soldered part) to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 10 kΩ or greater. (Resistance gradually increases during measurement.)



Tester



Contact with specified terminals to measure.

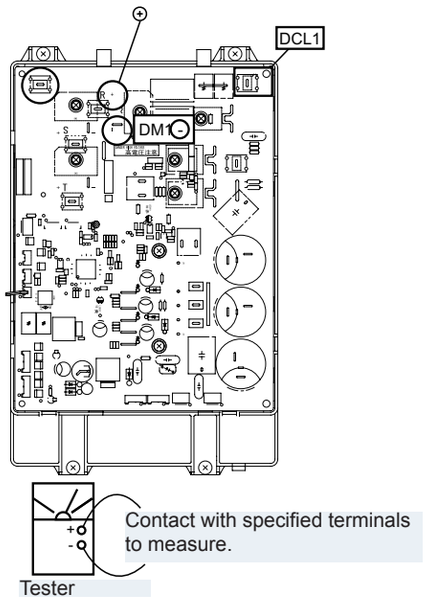
- Checking Method of Resistance for Inrush Current Prevention (Built-in Thermal Fuse)

(Measure the resistance under 1 kΩ range of a circuit tester.)

NOTE

DO NOT use a digital tester.

By placing the ⊕ side of tester to the ⊕ side of DM1 (soldering portion) on inverter PCB and the ⊖ side of tester to DCL1 on inverter PCB, measure the resistance. If the resistance is around 500Ω, it is normal. If the resistance is 0Ω or infinity Ω, it is abnormal.



- Checking Method of Fuse for fan motor protection (EF1)

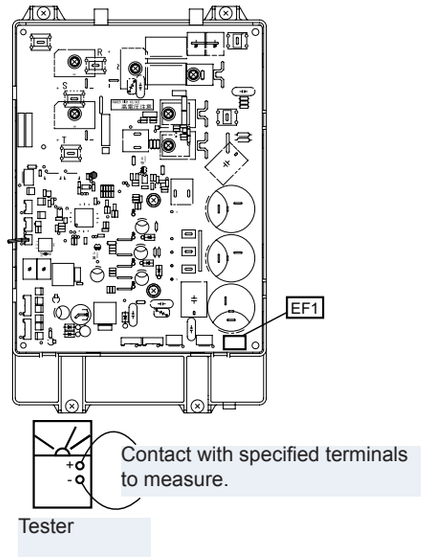
(Measure the resistance under 1 kΩ range of a circuit tester.)

NOTE

DO NOT use a digital tester.

By placing the ⊕ and ⊖ side of tester to EF1 on inverter PCB, measure the resistance.

If the resistance is 0Ω, it is normal.



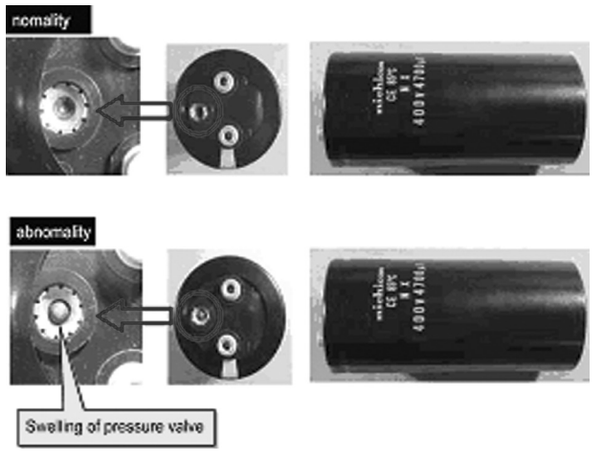
11.4.2 Checking capacitors CB1 & CB2.

DANGER:

- *Electrical hazard. Risk of serious injuries or death.*
- *Before installing the electrical wiring or before performing a periodical check, turn OFF the main switch of the unit. For safety reasons, be sure that the fan is stopped.*
- *Prevent from touching the capacitors' terminals. High voltage should be present before discharging them.*
- *Turn off the unit and wait for the LED 201 to be off before touching the components.*

If it's possible, check the capacitance of each capacitor : 4700µF ± 20% (between 3760µF to 5640µF).

A visual check of the pressure valve of capacitors must be done to ensure it's integrity



NOTE

It is not recommended to check tension.

PN = Power source x √2, PC=CN is nearly equal to PN/2.

R1 & R2:

1 If the value is different:
- Capacitor could be damaged by overload.
- 04 alarm could be displayed if low supply voltage (CN) for ISPM control part is present.

2 R1 = 9.5Ω & R2 = 14.0Ω. If these values are different, the capacitors will be not properly charged.

Resistance between P1 & TB3 = 2kΩ (white resistance in the ISPM).

In case that Mg. SW 52C (CMC1) is not ON, the compressor current will travel through these resistances, and they will be broken. Mg. SW 52C (CMC1) should be checked. Check the resistance between the primary and secondary terminal where the contact point is melted for Mg. SW 42C. If there is continuity, the contact is melted and 52C is broken (NG).

Reactor resistance can be messured between TB3 and RB = 0,2Ω. Checking this component is not necessary.

NOTE

- *Noise filter does not affect ISPM directly, so is not necessary to check it when ISPM fails.*
- *Both digital or analog testers are valid to check the values.*

11.4.3 Fault diagnosis of DC fan motor.

When ISPM/DIP-IPM is faulty and Alarm 03, 04 or 53 appears, the fan motor may also be damaged. To prevent ISPM/DIP-IPM damage which may result from operation combined with a faulty fan motor, check also if the fan motor is not damaged when ISPM/DIP-IPM is replaced

CAUTION

- *Turn OFF main power before start working.*
- *Working and checking with the power ON may disturb correct diagnosis and may result in failure.*

Models with DC motor(s)	Nº of motors
RAS-3HVRNS3 RAS-4H(V)RNS3E	1 Pieces

Procedure in case of error diagnosis

1 Remove fan motor connectors for DC fan motor from the control PCB, ISPM or DIP-IPM and turn the fan motor shaft by hand.

Normal	Fan motor shaft turns smoothly
Normal	The fan motor shaft turns smoothly.
Faulty	No continuous rotary torque movement felt when turning the motor by hand. This occurs because the internal magnet of the fan motor breaks the movement when the internal electronic circuit of the fan motor has a short-circuit fault.

2 Measure the fan motor resistance:

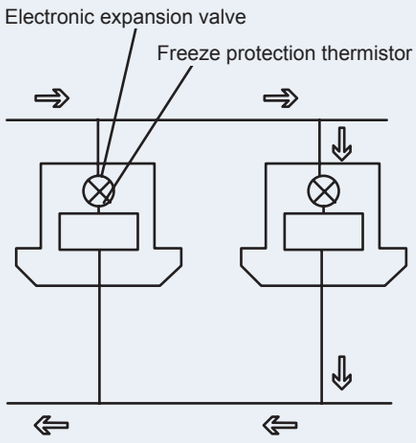
Measurement procedure	
1	Remove the fan motor connector from the control PCB, ISPM or DIP-IPM.
2	Connect the black test lead of the tester to the black wire pin of the fan motor connector.
3	Connect the red test lead to the wire connector pin to be checked.
Results	
Normal	Observed values will be close to the normal values in the table below.
Faulty	Obbserved values will be deviated from the normal values in the table below. (Generally, an open-circuit fault shows ∞, and a short-circuit fault shows several Ω - kΩ). Internal electronic circuit fault of the fan motor including short-circuit and breakage can be checked.

Model	Motor model	Wire color for checking (Normal value)			
		Red-black	White-black	Yellow-black	Blue-black
RAS-3HVRNS3	FPD10U40S-902		1MΩ or greater		1MΩ or greater
RAS-4H(V)RNS3E	EQDW04AHT	∞		∞	

NOTE

Values are shown for referential purpose. While actual values may vary depending on the type of the tester, any tester can be used to determine any short-circuit or breakage based on ∞ or several Ω or 0 Ω or ∞.

11.4.4 Checking procedure for the electronic expansion valve for indoor and outdoor units

	Indoor unit electronic expansion valve	Outdoor unit electronic expansion valve
Locked with fully closed	Check the liquid pipe temperature during the heating process. It is abnormal if the temperature does not increase.	It is abnormal if the liquid pipe pressure does not increase during the pump down process.
Locked with slightly open	It is abnormal under the following condition: The temperature of the freeze protection thermistor becomes lower than the suction air temperature when the unit which is under chechink stops and the other units are under the pump down process.	It is abnormal if the liquid pipe pressure does not increase and the outlet temperature of the expansion valve decreases after the pump down process starts.
Locked with fully open		It is abnormal under the following conditions: after the heating process for more than 30 minutes, the discharge gas temperature of the compressor is not 10°C higher than the condensing temperature and there is no other faults, such as an excessive charge of refrigerant and others.

11.4.5 Checking procedure for other parts

Part name	Model code	Resistance (Ω)	Unit models
Solenoid Valve Coil	SR10D	1250 (at 20°C)	RAS-4H(V)RNS3E
Reversing Valve Coil	STF-G01AG579A1	950 (at 75°C)	RAS-3HVRNS3 RAS-4H(V)RNS3E
Compressor	EU180XA1	1.138 (at 75°C)	RAS-3HVRNS3
	2YC63FXD	0.310 (at 75°C)	RAS-4H(V)RNS3E

◆ Checking procedure for the compressor

CHECK LIST ON COMPRESSOR

Client:	Model:	Date:
Serie No.	Production Date:	Checker:

No.	Check item	Check method	Result	Remarks
1	Is THM9 correctly connected? THM9: Discharge Gas Thermistor	1. Is wire of thermistor correctly connected by viewing? 2. Check to ensure the 7-segment indication of Td when comp. is operating. Td: Temperature of THM9		
2	Is thermistor THM9 disconnected?	1. Check to ensure that thermistor on the top of comp. is correctly mounted by viewing? 2. Check to ensure that actually measured temp. is the same as the indication during check mode.		
3	Is current sensor faulty?	1. Check to ensure that indication A1 and A2 are 0 during compressor stopping. 2. Check to ensure that indication A1 and A2 are not 0 during compressor running.		
4	Is current sensing part on PCB2 faulty?			
5	Is the direction of current sensor CTU, CTV) reverse?	Check the direction => by viewing.		
6	Are power source wires, U and V inserted correctly into current sensor? .	Check to ensure that wires are correctly inserted		
7	Is exp. valve (MV1) correctly connected?	Check to ensure that MV1 to CN5A is correctly connected		
8	Is exp. valve coil (MV1) correctly connected?	Check to ensure that each coil is correctly mounted on the valve.		
9	Are the refrigeration cycle and electrical wiring system incorrectly connected?	Check to ensure that refrigerant is flowing into indoor units by operating one refrigerating cycle only from the outdoor unit.		
10	Is opening of exp. valve completely closed (locked)?	Check the following by the check mode of outdoor units. 1. Liquid Pipe Temp. (TL) < Air Intake Temp. (Ti) during Cooling Operation 2. Liquid Pipe Temp. (TL) > Air Intake Temp. (Ti) during Heating Operation		
11	Is opening of exp. valve fully opened locked)?	Check to ensure that liquid pipe temp. is lower than air intake temp. of stopping indoor unit when other indoor units are operating under cooling operation.		
12	Are the contacts for comp. magnetic switch CMC1 faulty?	Check the surface of each contact (L1, L2 and L3) by viewing.		
13	Is there any voltage abnormality among L1-L2, L2-L3 and L3-L1?	Check to ensure that voltage imbalance is smaller than 3%. Please note that power source voltage must be within 380V or 220V+10%.		
14	Is the comp. oil acidified during compressor motor burning?	Check to ensure that the oil color is not black.		

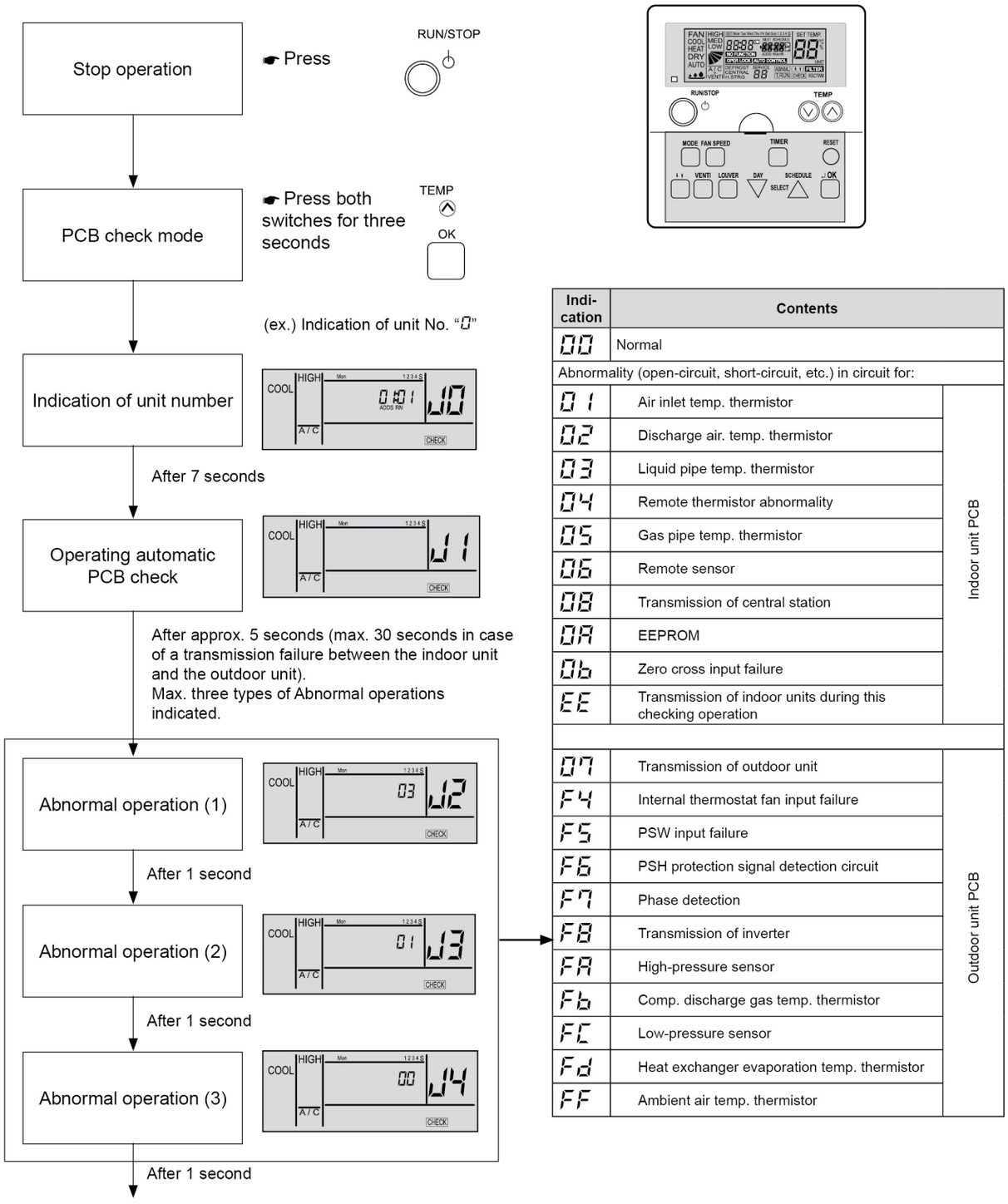
Additional Information for "CHECK LIST ON COMPRESSOR"

Check item	Additional information (mechanism of the compressor failure)
1 & 2	The liquid refrigerant return volume to the compressor is controlled by the discharge gas temperature Td when compressor is operating. If Td thermistor is disconnected, the liquid refrigerant return volume will become small by detecting the temperature even if the actual discharge gas temperature is high. Therefore, this abnormal overheating by detecting the temperature operation will result in insulation failure of the motor winding.
3 & 4	Overcurrent control (operating frequency control) is performed by detecting current by the PCB2. In this case, winding insulation failure will occur, since control is not available in spite of actually high current.
5 & 6	The current sensor checks phase and adjusts output electrical wave in addition to the above mentioned items. If fault occurs, the output electrical wave becomes unstable giving stress to the motor winding, resulting in winding insulation failure.
7 &8	During a cooling operation, SH is controlled by MV of each indoor units. During a heating operation, Td is controlled by MV1. If expansion valves are incorrectly connected, correct control is not available, resulting in compressor seizure depending on liquid refrigerant returning conditions or motor winding insulation failure depending on overheating conditions.
9	If the refrigeration cycle and electrical system are incorrectly connected, abnormally low suction pressure operation is maintained or abnormally high discharge pressure operation is maintained, resulting in giving stress to the compressor, since their correct control is not available.
10	ditto
11	The compressor may be locked due to the liquid return operation during the cooling operation.
12	In the case that the contacting resistance becomes big, voltage imbalance among each phase will cause abnormal overcurrent.
13	In this case, overcurrent will occur, efficiency will decrease or the motor winding will be excessively heated.
14	In the case, it will result in motor burning or compressor seizure.

11.5 Checking procedure for main parts for RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E and RAS-(8/10)HRNSE

11.5.1 Self-checking procedure of PCB by means of the Remote Control Switch

Use the following troubleshooting procedure for testing the PCB in the indoor unit and outdoor unit:



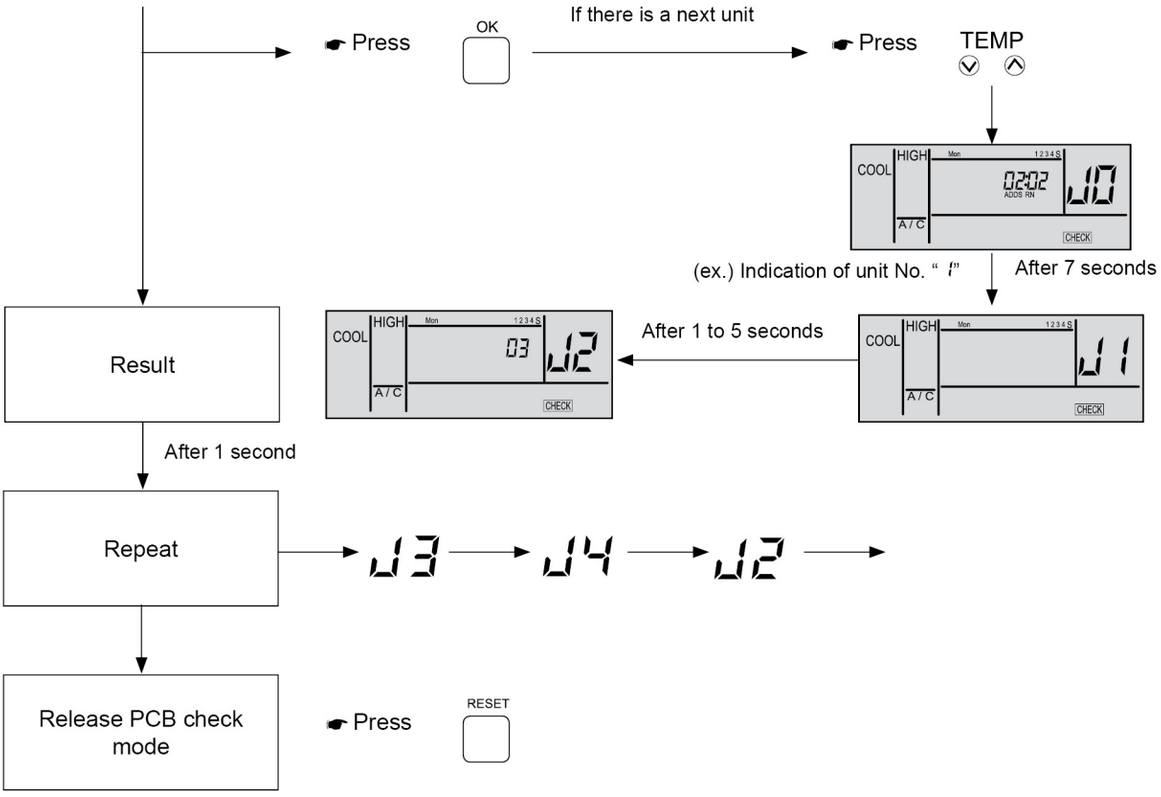
Indication	Contents	
00	Normal	
Abnormality (open-circuit, short-circuit, etc.) in circuit for:		
01	Air inlet temp. thermistor	Indoor unit PCB
02	Discharge air. temp. thermistor	
03	Liquid pipe temp. thermistor	
04	Remote thermistor abnormality	
05	Gas pipe temp. thermistor	
06	Remote sensor	
08	Transmission of central station	
0A	EEPROM	
0b	Zero cross input failure	
EE	Transmission of indoor units during this checking operation	
07	Transmission of outdoor unit	Outdoor unit PCB
F4	Internal thermostat fan input failure	
F5	PSW input failure	
F6	PSH protection signal detection circuit	
F7	Phase detection	
F8	Transmission of inverter	
FA	High-pressure sensor	
Fb	Comp. discharge gas temp. thermistor	
FC	Low-pressure sensor	
Fd	Heat exchanger evaporation temp. thermistor	
FF	Ambient air temp. thermistor	

If you are using a wireless remote control switch with the built-in receiver part of the wall-type indoor unit and you need to perform the above checking, perform the following procedure:

1 Turn OFF the power supply.
2 Disconnect the connector (CN25) on PWB(M).

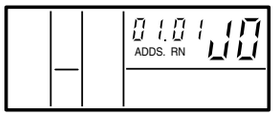
3 Connect the PC-ART.
4 Turn ON the power supply.

After finishing the checking, turn OFF the power supply again and reconnect the connectors according to the previous situation before the checking.



NOTE

- *If this indication continues and the alarm code J 1 is not displayed, this means that each one of indoor unit is not connected to the remote control switch.*
- *Check the wiring between the remote control switch and the indoor unit.*

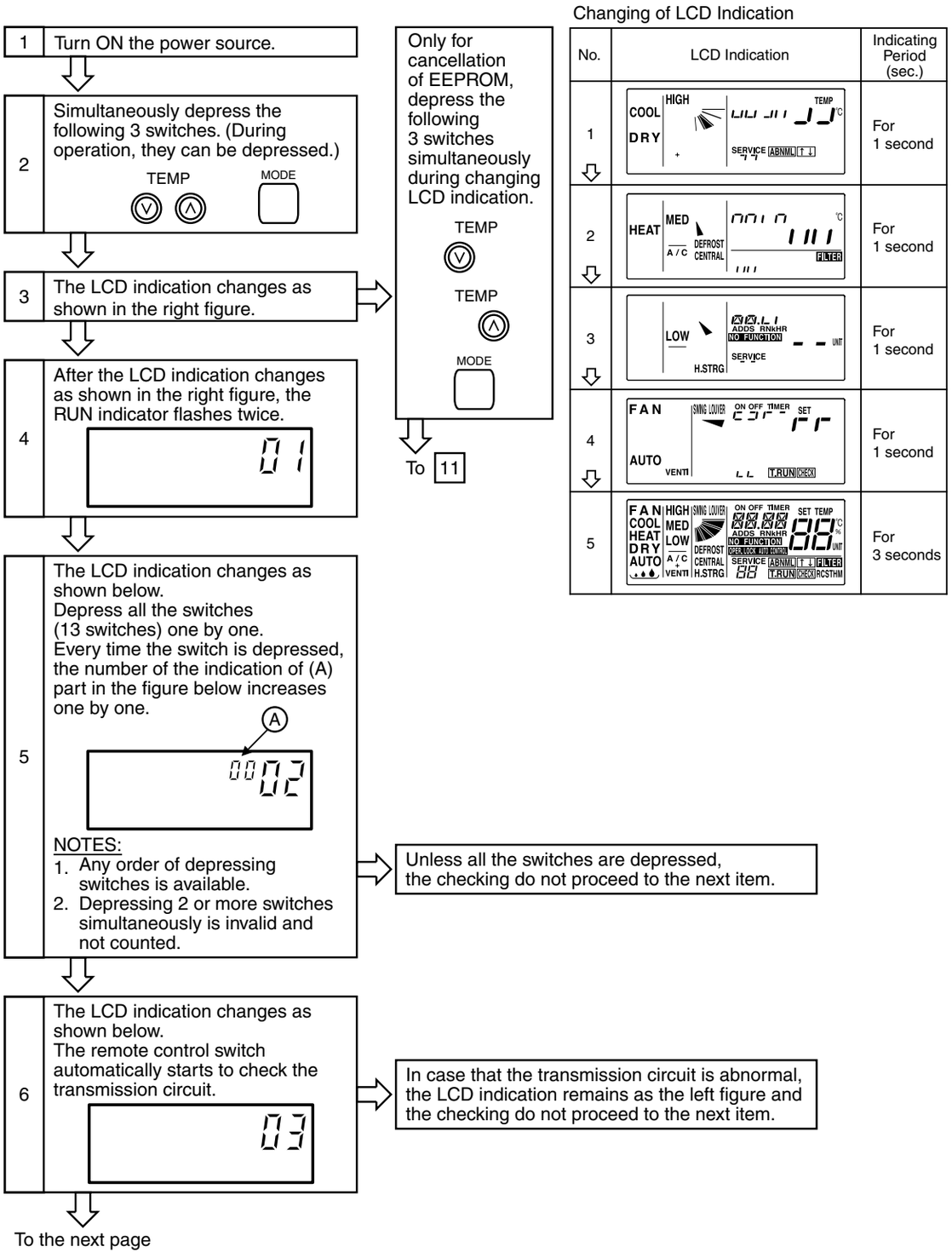


- *In this troubleshooting procedure, checking of the following parts of the PCB is not available.*
  - *PCB in Indoor Unit: Relay circuit, DIP switch, option circuit, fan circuit, protection circuit.*
  - *PCB in Outdoor Unit: Relay circuit, DIP switch, option circuit.*
- *If this troubleshooting is performed in the system by means of the central station, the indication of the central station may change during this procedure. However, this is not abnormal.*
- *After this troubleshooting, the memory of the abnormal operation occurrence counter, which was described before, will be deleted.*

11.5.2 Self-checking of the remote control switch

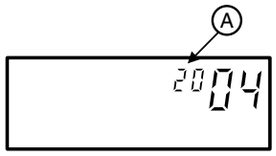
Cases where the CHECK switch is used:

1 If the remote control switch displays a malfunction.
2 For the regular maintenance check.



SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 376 04/06/2013 18:14:58

7 The LCD indication changes as shown below.
The detected temperature of remote control thermostat is indicated at the part (A) in the figure below.



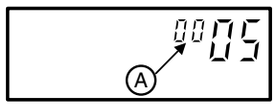
If the number "- -" or "FF" is indicated at the (A) part, the remote control thermostat is abnormal.

8 The LCD indication changes as shown below.



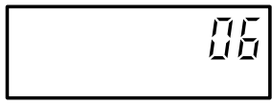
In case that EEPROM is not canceled, depress the CHECK switch.

In case of depressing the RESET switch or leaving the switches for 15 seconds, the data of EEPROM (storage cell inside of the remote control switch) is cleared.
At this time, the number is indicated at the (A) part shown in the figure below. When the number "99" is indicated, EEPROM is abnormal.



The number indicated at the (A) part is "99", the checking do not proceed to the next item.

9 The LCD indication changes as shown below.



After several seconds are passed, the remote control switch is automatically activated again.

10 When the remote control switch is activated again, the RUN indicator is ON and the operation is started. Therefore, depress switch and stop operation.

RUN/STOP



NOTES:
1. In case that the operation is not automatically started when the remote control switch is activated again, the detection circuit for momentary stoppage may be abnormal.
   However, it would not interfere the normal operation.
2. There is a case that the operation is automatically stopped after the automatic operation when the remote control switch is activated again.

Cancellation of EEPROM

3

11 The LCD indication changes as shown below and the EEPROM is automatically canceled by the remote control switch.



12 The LCD indication changes as shown below.



After several seconds are passed, the remote control switch is automatically activated again.
In this case, the operation is not started automatically.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 377 04/06/2013 18:14:58

11.5.3 Self-Checking procedure of the Indoor Unit PCB (only for RPK)

Self-checking procedure by means of the relays on the indoor unit PCB

- To check the abnormal operation on the indoor unit PCB due to a malfunction.
- To check the abnormal operation on the indoor unit PCB according to the results of the checking procedure by means of the CHECK switch on the remote control switch and the self-checking function.

Procedure

1 Turn OFF the main power switch.
2 Disconnect the connectors CN7 and CN8.
3 Set the DIP switch DSW2 as shown below.

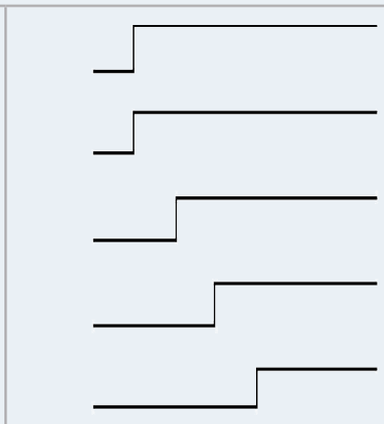
Set the #1 switch to ON and #2 switch to OFF



4 Turn ON the main power switch. Check Mode starts. (Refer to the next page.)
a. Analog Test
b. Relay Test

5 After finishing the self-checking procedure, turn OFF the power and reset the DIP switch as before.

Self-checking procedures in the check mode for RPK-FSN2M

Check item	State of mode		Confirmation method
(A) Initialize Exp. valve and auto-louver	Exp. Valve fully open → fully closed Auto-louver is horizontally stopped.		—
(B) Analog test	If the thermistors for the inlet air temperature, for the discharge air temperature and for the freeze protection are normal, proceed to the next step.		—
(C) Each relay test Perform repeatedly	52H1, 2, 3 Fan (Low) Wireless receiver part (Red) Wireless receiver part (Green) Wireless receiver part (Yellow)		Check the ON/OFF sound of the relays and the LED.
Termination	Turn OFF and reset all the DIP switches as before.		—

◆ Procedure of checking other main parts

Procedure of checking other main parts for ES Series

1. High voltage discharge work for replacing parts

DANGER

- ***Perform this high voltage discharge work to avoid an electric shock***

- **DIP-IPM**

Procedure:

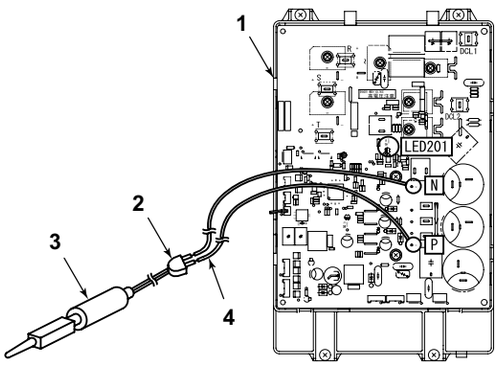
a. Turn OFF the main switches and wait for three minutes. Check to ensure that no high voltage exists. If LED201 is ON after start-up and LED201 is OFF after turning OFF power source, the voltage will decrease lower than DC50V.

b. Connect connecting wires to an electrical soldering iron.

c. Connect the wires to terminals, P and N on DIP-IPM. => Discharging is started, resulting in hot soldering iron. Pay attention not to short-circuit between terminal P(+) and N(-).

d. Wait for 2 or 3 minutes and measure the voltage once again. Check to ensure that no voltage is charged.

1. DIP-IPM.
2. Plug.
3. Electrical soldering iron.
4. Connecting Wires.

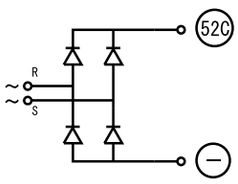


2. Inverter module checking procedure

- **Internal Circuit of Rectified Part of DIP-IPM**

Non-faulty if [1] – [8] are checked and satisfied. (Measure with 1 kΩ range of a tester.)

NOTE
DO NOT use a digital tester



1. Touch [+] of the tester to DIP-IPM 52C terminal, and [-] to DIP-IPM R, S terminals to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 1 kΩ or greater.

2. Contrary to [1], touch [-] of the tester to DIP-IPM 52C terminal, and [+] to DIP-IPM R, S terminals to measure the resistance.

Normal if all three terminals have 100 kΩ or greater.

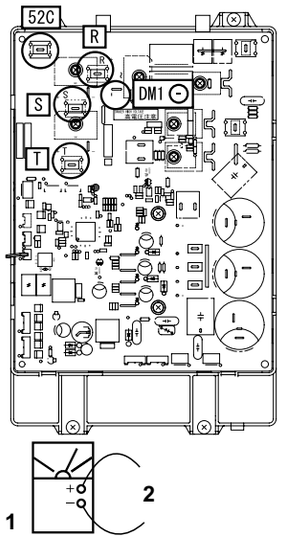
3. Touch [-] of the tester to [-] of DIP-IPM DMI (soldered part), and [+] of the tester to DIP-IPM R, S terminals to measure the resistance.

Normal if all three terminals have 1 kΩ or greater

4. Contrary to [3], touch [+] of the tester to [-] of DIP-IPM DMI, and [-] of the tester to DIP-IPM R, S terminals to measure the resistance.

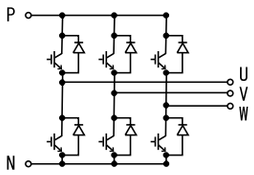
Normal if all three terminals have 100 kΩ or greater

1. Tester.
2. Contact with specified terminals to measure.



11

- **Internal Circuit of Rectified Part of Inverter Module (Cont.)**



5. Touch [+] of the tester to [P] of DIP-IPM (soldered part), and [-] to DIP-IPM U, V, W terminals to measure the resistance.

Normal if all three terminals have 1 kΩ or greater.

6. Contrary to [5], touch [-] of the tester to [P] of DIP-IPM (soldered part), and [+] to DIP-IPM U, V, W terminals to measure the resistance

. Normal if all three terminals have 30 kΩ or greater. (Resistance gradually increases during measurement.)

7. Touch [-] of the tester to [N] of ISPM (soldered part), and [+] to ISPM U, V, W terminals to measure the resistance.

Normal if all three terminals have 1 kΩ or greater.

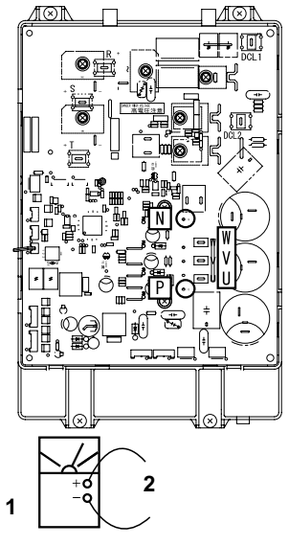
8. Contrary to [7], touch [+] of the tester to [N] of DIP-IPM (soldered part), and [-] to DIP-IPM U, V, W terminals to measure the resistance.

Normal if all three terminals have 30 kΩ or greater.

(Resistance gradually increases during measurement.)

1. Tester.

2. Contact with specified terminals to measure.



Non-faulty if [9] – [13] are checked and satisfied.

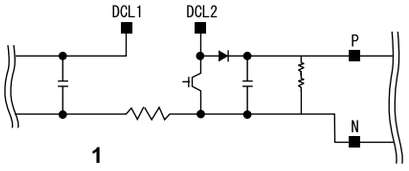
(Measure with 1 kΩ range of a tester.)

- **Internal Circuit of ACT Part of Inverter Module**

1. External Appearance and Internal Circuit of Transistor Module .

NOTE

DO NOT use a digital tester



9. Check items [1] – [8].

10. Touch [+] of the tester to DIP-IPM DCL2 terminal, and [-] to [P] of ISPM/DIP-IPM (soldered part) to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 100 kΩ or greater

11. Contrary to [10], touch [-] of the tester to DIP-IPM DCL2 terminal, and [+] to [P] of DIP-IPM (soldered part) to measure the resistance.

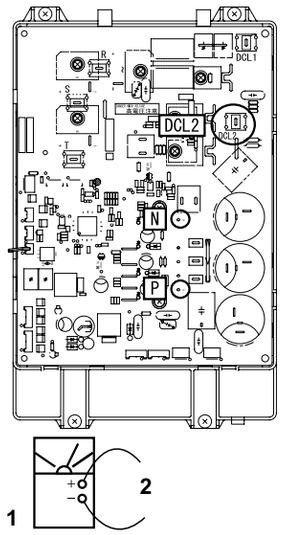
Normal if all three terminals have 1 kΩ or greater.

12. Touch [+] of the tester to DIP-IPM DCL2 terminal, and [-] to [N] of DIP-IPM (soldered part) to measure the resistance. Normal if all three terminals have 100 kΩ or greater.

13. Contrary to [12], touch [-] of the tester to DIP-IPM DCL2 terminal, and [+] to [N] of DIP-IPM (soldered part) to measure the resistance.

Normal if all three terminals have 10 kΩ or greater.

(Resistance gradually increases during measurement.)



1. Tester.
2. Contact with specified terminals to measure.

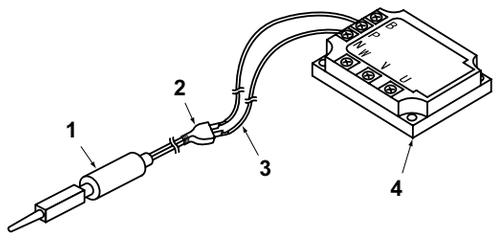
- **DIP-IPM**

a. Turn OFF the main switches and wait for three minutes. Check to ensure that no high voltage exists. If LED201 is ON after start-up and LED201 is OFF after turning OFF power source, the voltage will decrease lower than DC50V.

b. Connect connecting wires to an electrical solder bit.

c. Connect the wires to terminals, P and N on IPM. => Discharging is started, resulting in hot solder bit. Pay attention not to short-circuit between terminal P and N.

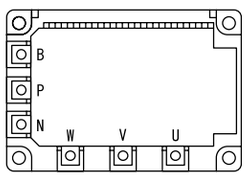
d. Wait for 2 or 3 minutes and measure the voltage once again. Check to ensure that no voltage is charged.

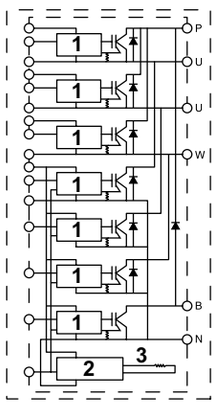


1. Solder bit.
2. Plug.
3. Connecting wires.
4. Transistor module (IPM).

1. Drive circuit.
2. Overheating protection circuit.
3. Sensor.

1. Checking Method of Transistor Module Outer Appearance and Internal Circuit of Transistor Module

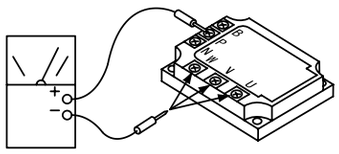




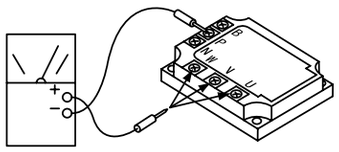
Procedure:

Remove all the terminals of the transistor module before check. If items (a) to (d) are performing and the results are satisfactory, the transistor module is normal. Measure it under 1kΩ range of a tester. Do NOT use a digital tester.

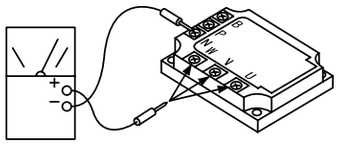
a. By touching the + side of the tester to the P terminal of transistor module and the - side of tester to U, V and W of transistor module, measure the resistance. If all the resistances are from 1 to 5kΩ, it is normal.



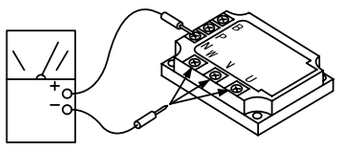
b. By touching the - side of the tester to the P terminal of transistor module and the + side of tester to U, V and W of transistor module, measure the resistance. If all the resistances are greater than 100kΩ, it is normal.



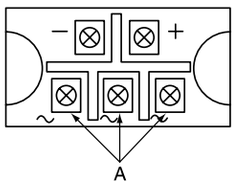
c. By touching the - side of the tester to the N terminal of transistor module and the + side of tester to U, V and W of transistor module, measure the resistance. If all the resistances are from 1 to 5kΩ, it is normal.

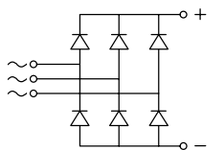


d. By touching the + side of the tester to the N terminal of transistor module and the - side of tester to U, V and W of transistor module, measure the resistance. If all the resistances are greater than 100kΩ, it is normal.



3. Checking method of diode module





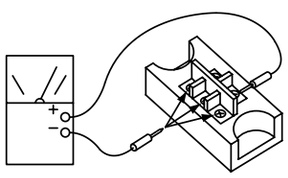
Outer appearance and internal circuit of diode module

If items (a) to (d) are performing and the results are satisfactory, the diode module is normal.

Measure it under 1kΩ range of a tester. Do NOT use a digital tester.

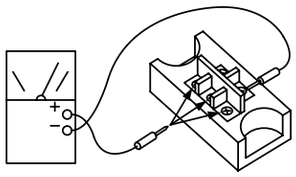
a. By touching the + side of the tester to the + terminal of diode module and the - side of tester to the ~ terminals (3 NOs.) of the diode module, measure the resistance.

If all the resistances are from 5 to 50kΩ, it is normal.



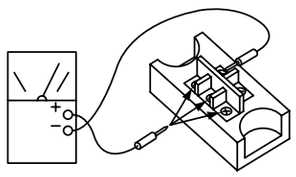
b. By touching the - side of the tester to the + terminal of diode module and the + side of tester to the ~ terminals (3 NOs.) of the diode module, measure the resistance.

If all the resistances are greater than 500kΩ, it is normal.



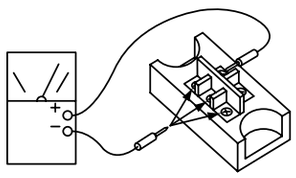
c. By touching the - side of the tester to the - terminal of diode module and the + side of tester to the ~ terminals (3 NOs.) of the diode module, measure the resistance.

If all the resistances are from 5 to 50kΩ, it is normal.



d. By touching the + side of the tester to the - terminal of diode module and the - side of tester to the ~ terminals (3 NOs.) of the diode module, measure the resistance.

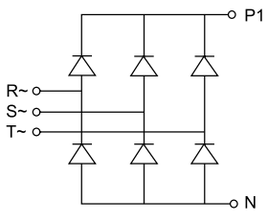
If all the resistances are greater than 500kΩ, it is normal.



- **Checking procedure for the ISPM**

Rectification parts of internal circuit of ISPM (Common)

Remove all the terminals of the ISPM before check. If items (a) to (h) are performed and the results are satisfactory, ISPM is normal. Measure it under 1 kΩ range of a tester.

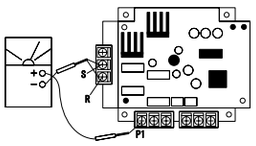


CAUTION

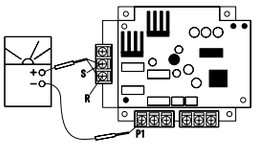
- *Perform the high voltage discharge procedure as described*
- *Do not use a digital tester.*

11

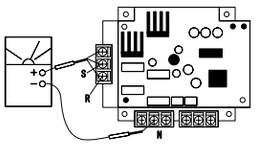
a. By touching the + side of the tester to the P1 terminal of ISPM and the - side of the tester to R and S of ISPM, measure the resistance. If all the resistances are more than 1 kΩ, it is normal.



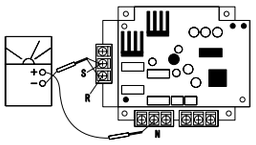
b. By touching the - side of the tester to the P1 terminal of ISPM and the + side of the tester to R and S of ISPM, measure the resistance. If all the resistances are more than 100 kΩ, it is normal.



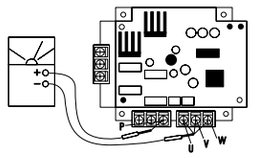
c. By touching the - side of the tester to the N terminal of ISPM and the + side of the tester to R and S of ISPM, measure the resistance. If all the resistances are more than 1 kΩ, it is normal.



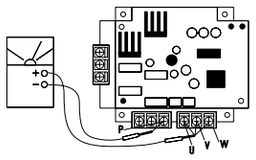
d. By touching the + side of the tester to the N terminal of ISPM and the - side of the tester to R and S of ISPM, measure the resistance. If all the resistances are more than 100 kΩ, it is normal.



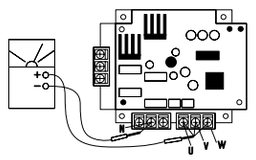
e. By touching the + side of the tester to the P terminal of ISPM and the - side of the tester to U, V and W of ISPM, measure the resistance. If all the resistances are more than 1 kΩ, it is normal.



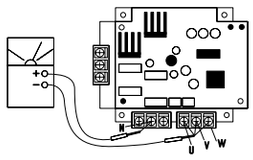
f. By touching the - side of the tester to the P terminal of ISPM and the + side of the tester to U, V and W of ISPM, measure the resistance. If all the resistances are more than 100 kΩ, it is normal.



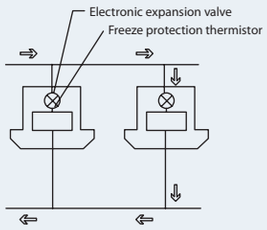
g. By touching the - side of the tester to the N terminal of ISPM and the + side of the tester to U, V and W of ISPM, measure the resistance. If all the resistances are more than 100 kΩ, it is normal.



h. By touching the + side of the tester to the N terminal of ISPM and the - side of the tester to U, V and W of ISPM, measure the resistance. If all the resistances are more than 1 kΩ, it is normal.



- **Checking procedure for the electronic expansion valve**

Valve position	Electronic expansion valve	Outdoor unit electronic expansion valve
Locked fully closed	Check the temperature of the piping in the heating process. Failure of the temperature to rise indicates a fault.	It is abnormal if the liquid pipe pressure does not increase during the cooling process.
Locked slightly open	The following conditions indicate a fault: - Where the freeze protection thermistor temperature is lower than the intake air temperature. - Where the unit being inspected stops and other units continue operating in cooling mode.	It is abnormal if the liquid pipe pressure does not increase and the outlet temperature of the expansion valve decreases after the cooling process starts.
Locked fully open		It is abnormal under the following conditions: after the heating process for more than 30 minutes, the discharge gas temperature of the compressor is not 10°C higher than the condensing temperature and there is no other faults, such as an excessive charge of refrigerant and others.}

- **Fault diagnosis of DC fan motor**

  About fan motor fault diagnosis.

  When ISPM/DIP-IPM is faulty and Alarm 53 appears, the fan motor may also be damaged. To prevent ISPM/DIP-IPM damage which may result from operation combined with a faulty fan motor, check also if the fan motor is not damaged when ISPM/DIP-IPM is replaced.

CAUTION

- ***For the shake of safety, turn OFF the power before start working.***
- ***Working/checking with the power ON may disturb correct diagnosis and may result in failure.***

Models for ES:
DC motor(s) included in different models:

Model	Pieces
RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E	1
RAS-(8/10)HRNSE	1

Fault diagnosis procedure

1. Remove fan motor connectors from the control PCB ISPM or DIP-IPM and turn the fan motor shaft by hand.

Normal:	Fan motor shaft turns smoothly.
Faulty:	No continuous rotary torque movement felt when turning the motor by hand. This occurs because the internal magnet of the fan motor breaks the movement when the internal electronic circuit of the fan motor has a short-circuit fault

2. Measure the fan motor resistance using a tester.

Measurement procedure:	
1.	Remove the fan motor connector from the control PCB, ISPM or DIP-IPM.
2.	Connect the black test lead of the tester to the black wire pin of the fan motor connector
3.	Connect the red test lead to the wire connector pin to be checked

Results	
Normal:	Observed values will be close to the normal values in the table below
Faulty:	Observed values will be deviated from the normal values in the table below. Generally an open-circuit fault shows ∞, and a short-circuit fault shows several Ω-kΩ.) Internal electronic circuit fault of the fan motor including short-circuit and breakage can be checked

Model	Motor model	Wire color for checking (normal value)			
		Red-Black	White-Black	Yellow-Black	Blue-Black
RAS-(5/6)H(V)RNS2E	SIC-81FV-D8138-1	1 MΩ or greater	42 ~ 78 kΩ	166 ~ 312 kΩ	1 MΩ or greater
RAS-(8/10)HRNSE	SIC-81FW-D81382	1 MΩ or greater	42 ~ 78 kΩ	168 ~ 312 kΩ	1 MΩ or greater

NOTE

- ***(*) Values are shown for referential purpose. While actual values may vary depending on the type of the tester; any tester can be used to determine any short-circuit or breakage based on ∞ or several Ω/several kΩ or 0Ω***

- **Other parts**

Part name	Unit models	Model code	Resistance (Ω)
Drain up motor	RCI-1.0-FSN3E RCIM-1.5-.5FSN2 RPI-2.0-6.0FSN3E	ADP-1403	139.00 at 21 ºC
	RCD.1.0~6.0FSN2	KJV-1004	347.00 at 20 ºC
Solenoid gas for gas bypass	RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E RAS-(8/10)HRNSE	105-52-52 (50Hz)	1540.00 at 20 ºC
		105-52-51 (60Hz)	1250.00 at 20 ºC
Reversing valve		STF-01AJ502D1 (50Hz)	1435.00 at 20 ºC
		STF-01AI511A1 (60Hz)	1358.00 at 20 ºC
Expansion valve		UKV-U029E	46.00 at 20 ºC
Compressor motor	RAS-(5/6)HVRNS2E	E306A4D-27A2	0.295 at 75 ºC
	RAS-(8/10)HRNSE	E655DHD-65D2	0.839 at 20 ºC

- **Checking procedure for the compressor**

CHECK LIST ON COMPRESSOR

Client:	Model:	Date:
Serie No.	Production Date:	Checker:

No.	Check item	Check method	Result	Remarks
1	Is THM9 correctly connected? THM9: Discharge Gas Thermistor	1. Is wire of thermistor correctly connected by viewing? 2. Check to ensure the 7-segment indication of Td when comp. is operating. Td: Temperature of THM9		
2	Is thermistor THM9 disconnected?	1. Check to ensure that thermistor on the top of comp. is correctly mounted by viewing? 2. Check to ensure that actually measured temp. is the same as the indication during check mode.		
3	Is current sensor faulty?	1. Check to ensure that indication A1 and A2 are 0 during compressor stopping. 2. Check to ensure that indication A1 and A2 are not 0 during compressor running.		
4	Is current sensing part on PCB2 faulty?			
5	Is the direction of current sensor CTU, CTV) reverse?	Check the direction => by viewing.		
6	Are power source wires, U and V inserted correctly into current sensor? .	Check to ensure that wires are correctly inserted		
7	Is exp. valve (MV1) correctly connected?	Check to ensure that MV1 to CN5A is correctly connected		
8	Is exp. valve coil (MV1) correctly connected?	Check to ensure that each coil is correctly mounted on the valve.		
9	Are the refrigeration cycle and electrical wiring system incorrectly connected?	Check to ensure that refrigerant is flowing into indoor units by operating one refrigerating cycle only from the outdoor unit.		
10	Is opening of exp. valve completely closed (locked)?	Check the following by the check mode of outdoor units. 1. Liquid Pipe Temp. (TL) < Air Intake Temp. (Ti) during Cooling Operation 2. Liquid Pipe Temp. (TL) > Air Intake Temp. (Ti) during Heating Operation		
11	Is opening of exp. valve fully opened locked)?	Check to ensure that liquid pipe temp. is lower than air intake temp. of stopping indoor unit when other indoor units are operating under cooling operation.		
12	Are the contacts for comp. magnetic switch CMC1 faulty?	Check the surface of each contact (L1, L2 and L3) by viewing.		
13	Is there any voltage abnormality among L1-L2, L2-L3 and L3-L1?	Check to ensure that voltage imbalance is smaller than 3%. Please note that power source voltage must be within 380V or 220V+10%.		
14	Is the comp. oil acidified during compressor motor burning?	Check to ensure that the oil color is not black.		

Additional Information for "CHECK LIST ON COMPRESSOR"

Check item	Additional information (mechanism of the compressor failure)
1 & 2	The liquid refrigerant return volume to the compressor is controlled by the discharge gas temperature Td when compressor is operating. If Td thermistor is disconnected, the liquid refrigerant return volume will become small by detecting the temperature even if the actual discharge gas temperature is high. Therefore, this abnormal overheating by detecting the temperature operation will result in insulation failure of the motor winding.
3 & 4	Overcurrent control (operating frequency control) is performed by detecting current by the PCB2. In this case, winding insulation failure will occur, since control is not available in spite of actually high current.
5 & 6	The current sensor checks phase and adjusts output electrical wave in addition to the above mentioned items. If fault occurs, the output electrical wave becomes unstable giving stress to the motor winding, resulting in winding insulation failure.
7 &8	During a cooling operation, SH is controlled by MV of each indoor units. During a heating operation, Td is controlled by MV1. If expansion valves are incorrectly connected, correct control is not available, resulting in compressor seizure depending on liquid refrigerant returning conditions or motor winding insulation failure depending on overheating conditions.
9	If the refrigeration cycle and electrical system are incorrectly connected, abnormally low suction pressure operation is maintained or abnormally high discharge pressure operation is maintained, resulting in giving stress to the compressor, since their correct control is not available.
10	ditto
11	The compressor may be locked due to the liquid return operation during the cooling operation.
12	In the case that the contacting resistance becomes big, voltage imbalance among each phase will cause abnormal overcurrent.
13	In this case, overcurrent will occur, efficiency will decrease or the motor winding will be excessively heated.
14	In the case, it will result in motor burning or compressor seizure.

12. Maintenance notes

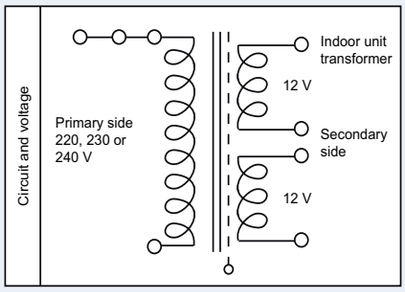
Index

12.1. General notes 390
12.1.1. Checking the power source and the wiring connection 390
12.1.2. Burnt-out compressor due to an insufficient refrigerant charge 390
12.1.3. Abnormally high operation sound (in the ceiling type indoor unit). 391
12.1.4. Alarm code “31” 391
12.1.5. Not cooling well due to insufficient installation space for the outdoor unit 392
12.2. Maintenance work 393
12.3. Service and maintenance record 394
12.4. Service and maintenance record using the 7-segment display 396
12.5. Service and maintenance record by remote control switch 398
12.6. Check list on compressor 399
12.6.1. Additional information for “Check list on compressor” 400
12.7. Pump-down method for replacing the compressor 401

12.1 General notes

12.1.1 Checking the power source and the wiring connection

Check the following items in the case of abnormal operation:

No.	Check item	Procedure
1	Is the breaker of the fuse cut out?	Check the secondary voltage of the breaker and the fuse by means of a tester.
2	Is the secondary power source on the transformer correct?	Disconnect the secondary side of the transformer and check the voltage by means of a tester. 
3	Is the wiring loosened or incorrectly connected?	Check the wiring connection on the PCB. • Thermistor connectors • Connector of the remote control cable • Connector of the transformer Each connector in a high-voltage circuitCheck the connectors according to the electrical wiring diagram.

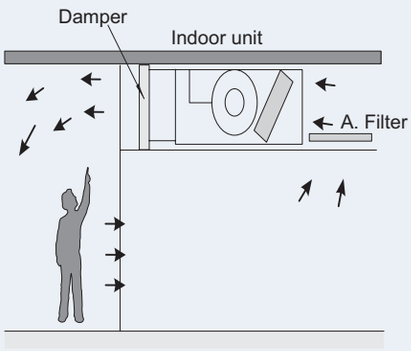
12.1.2 Burnt-out compressor due to an insufficient refrigerant charge

Question and answer for the field work

Example 1: Burnt-out compressor due to an insufficient refrigerant charge	
Phenomenon	After commissioning the alarm code “08” sometimes occurred and the compressors were burnt out after operating for two months.
Cause	The refrigerant piping work was performed during the summer season. The additional refrigerant was not sufficiently charged from the discharge gas side. This insufficient refrigerant charge resulted in the overheating of the discharge gas and the oil deterioration which was finally due to the separated operation despite the alarm code “08”.
Countermeasure	1. The compressor was replaced with a new compressor. 2. The correct refrigerant amount was charged according to the refrigerant piping length and the connected indoor units.
Remarks	Additional refrigerant charge: Open the liquid stop valves slightly when you charge the additional refrigerant from the check joint of the liquid stop valves (the discharge gas side) during the cooling process. If the liquid stop valve is fully open it is difficult to charge the additional refrigerant. Do not charge the refrigerant from the gas stop valve.

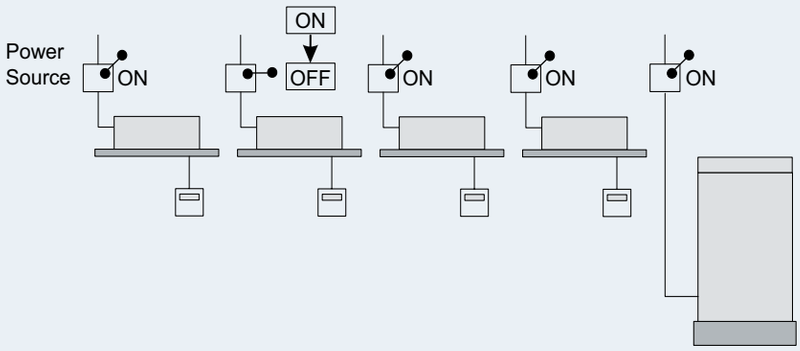
12.1.3 Abnormally high operation sound (in the ceiling type indoor unit).

Question and answer for the field work

Example 3: Abnormally high operation sound (in-the-ceiling type indoor unit)	
Phenomenon	The operation sound at the “HIGH” speed was abnormally high.
Cause	The indoor units were installed without the ducts. Since there scarcely was any external static pressure an abnormally big air volume was supplied. This resulted in a higher air speed through the heat exchanger. 
Countermeasure	In order to reduce the airflow rate a plate that is used as a damper at the discharge gas side was added.
Remarks	Note that the running current is increased when no external pressure is given to the indoor unit. This results in an overheating.

12.1.4 Alarm code “31”

Question and answer for the field work

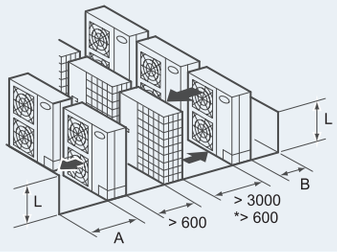
Example 4: Alarm code “31”	
Phenomenon	Alarm code “31” sometimes occurred and the system stopped.
Cause	The combination of the indoor units and the outdoor unit was the following.  This system was used in a tenant building. One of tenant’s customers turned off the main switch for the indoor unit while other indoor units are running. This results in a different setting of the total indoor unit capacity in the same refrigerant cycle.
Countermeasure	All the main switches for the indoor units were always ON.

12.1.5 Not cooling well due to insufficient installation space for the outdoor unit

Question and answer for the field work

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">Example 5: Not cooling well due to insufficient installation space for outdoor unit</th></tr>
<tr><td>Phenomenon</td><td colspan="2">Cooling operation was well performed through the intermediate season. However the cooling operation was not well available when the outdoor temperature was higher than 35 °C.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cause</td><td colspan="2">As the outdoor units were installed without a sufficient installation space the hot discharge air from other outdoor units was circulated.

In this case though the outdoor temperature was 35 °C the actual suction air temperature was nearly 50 °C and protection system from excessively high suction pressure was activated the frequency of the compressor was decreased and the cooling capacity was also decreased accordingly.

As the outdoor units in-line were installed back to back with a certain distance between each outdoor unit's back the hot discharged air from other outdoor units was circulated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Countermeasure</td><td colspan="2">Ensure that sufficient space should be secured for multi-row and multiple-installation.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Example
of 8/10 HP</td><td> 
</td><td>Keep a distance of more than 15 mm between other units and do not put obstacles on the right and left sides. Dimension B is as shown below.
For detailed information please refer to Unit Installation chapter.

<table><tr><th>L</th><th>A</th><th>B</th></tr><tr><td>0 < L < 1/2H</td><td>600 or more</td><td>300 or more</td></tr><tr><td>1/2H < L < H</td><td>1400 or more</td><td>350 or more</td></tr></table></td></tr>
</table>

NOTE

- *If L is larger than H mount the units on a base so that H is greater or equal to L.*
- *In this situation ensure that the base is closed and does not allow the airflow to short circuit.*
- *When the mark * dimension is secured be sure to mount the airflow guide.*

12.2 Maintenance work

CAUTION

- *All inspections and checks of the outdoor unit have to be carried out by a licensed technician and never by the user itself.*
- *Before any inspection and check the unit main power supply has to be switched OFF.*
- *Wait minimum 10 minutes or more from all power supply have been turned OFF.*
- *Take care with the crankcase heater. It could operate even when compressor is OFF.*
- *Take care with the electrical box components. Some of them could remain hot after switch OFF the unit.*

NOTE

All these maintenance operations must be done with appropriate materials and following this manual.

For the indoor unit and the outdoor unit

1 Fan and fan motor
- Lubrication: All the fan motors are pre-lubricated and sealed at the factory. Therefore no lubrication maintenance is required.
- Sound and vibration: Check for abnormal sounds and vibrations.
- Rotation: Check the clockwise rotation and the rotating speed.
- Insulation: Check the electrical insulation resistance.

2 Heat exchanger
- Clog: Inspect the heat exchanger at regular intervals and remove any accumulated dirt and any accumulated dust from the heat exchanger. You should also remove from the outdoor units other obstacles such as the growing grass and the pieces of paper which might restrict the airflow.

3 Piping connection
- Leakage: Check for the refrigerant leakage at the piping connection between the outdoor and the indoor unit.

4 Cabinet
- Stain: Check for any stain and remove it cleaning if it is the case.
- Fixing screw: Check for any loosened screw or any lost screw. Fix the loosened screws and the lost screws.
- Insulation material: Check for any peeled thermal insulator on the cabinet. Repair the thermal insulator.

5 Electrical equipment
- Activation: Check for an abnormal activation of the magnetic contactor relay the PCB and others.
- Line condition: Pay attention to the working voltage the working amperage and the working phase balance. Check for any faulty contact that is caused by the loosened terminal connections the oxidized contacts the foreign matter and other items. Check the electrical insulation resistance.

6 Control device and protection device
- Setting: Do not readjust the setting in the field unless the setting is maintained at a point that is different from the point listed in the section “Protection and safety control” on chapter “Control system”.

For the outdoor unit

1 Compressor
- Sound and vibration: Check for abnormal sounds and vibrations.
- Activation: Check that the voltage drop of the power supply line is within 15 at the start and within 2 during the operation.

2 Reverse valve
- Activation: Check for any abnormal activation sound.

3 Strainer
- Clog: Check that there is no temperature difference between both ends.

4 Ground wire
- Ground line: Check for the continuity to earth.

5 Oil heater (crankcase heater)
- Activation: You should activate the oil heater at least twelve hours before the start-up by turning ON the main switch.

12.3 Service and maintenance record

No.	Check item	Action	Judgement	
1	Is the service area sufficient?	—	Yes	No
2	Is there a short circuit of the discharged air?	—	Yes	No
3	Any heat influence?	—	Yes	No
4	Is the ground wire connected?	—	Yes	No
5	Refrigerant piping.	—	Good	Not Good
6	Fixing the units.	—	Good	Not Good
7	Is there any damage on the outer surface or the internal surface?	—	Yes	No
8	Checking the screw and the bolts.	Tighten if loosened.	Tightened	Not Tightened
9	Tightening the terminal screws.	Tighten all the terminal screws with a Phillips screwdriver.	Tightened	Not Tightened
10	Are the compressor terminals tightly fixed?	Push all the terminals.	Pushed	Not Pushed
11	Insulation resistance.	Measure the insulation resistance with an insulation resistance meter. Comp. and fan. Motor: greater than 3MΩ. Others: greater than 3MΩ.	Good	Not Good
12	Does the drain water flow smoothly?	Check the smooth flow by pouring some water.	Good	Not Good
13	Check for a leakage in the compressor.	Check for any leakage.	Good	Not Good
14	Check for a leakage in the outdoor heat exchanger.	ditto	Good	Not Good
15	Check for a leakage in the indoor heat exchanger.	ditto	Good	Not Good
16	Check for a leakage in the 4-way valve.	ditto	Good	Not Good
17	Check for a leakage in the check valve.	ditto	Good	No Good
18	Check for a leakage in the accumulator.	ditto	Good	Not Good
19	Check for a leakage in the strainer.	ditto	Good	Not Good
20	Check for a leakage in the electronic expansion valve	ditto	Good	Not Good
21	Check for a leakage in the piping.	ditto	Good	Not Good
22	Check the direction of the fans.	By viewing the airflow volume.	Good	Not Good
23	Voltage among each phase.	Higher than AC220V.	Good	Not Good
24	Vibration and sound.	Check the fan the compressor the piping and others.	Good	Not Good
25	Activation of each operation mode.	Check the activation of the COOL switch the HEAT switch the STOP switch and the TEMP switch.	Good	Not Good
26	High-pressure cut-out switch.	Check the actual activation value.	Good	Not Good
27	Check the activation of the drain-up mechanism.	Check the activation during the cooling process.	Good	Not Good
28	Air inlet temperature of the indoor unit DB/WB.	—	(°C)DB	(°C)WB
29	Air outlet temperature of the indoor unit DB/WB.	—	(°C)DB	(°C)WB
30	Air inlet temperature of the outdoor unit DB/WB.	—	(°C)DB	(°C)WB
31	Air outlet temperature of the outdoor unit DB/WB.	—	(°C)DB	(°C)WB
32	High-pressure switch.	—	kg/cm^2G	
33	Low-pressure switch.	—	kg/cm^2G	

No.	Check item	Action	Judgement	
34	Operating voltage.	—	V	
35	Operating current.	—	A	
36	Instructions to the client for cleaning the air filter.	—	Done	Not yet
37	Instructions to the client about the cleaning method.	—	Done	Not yet
38	Instructions to the client about the operation.	—	Done	Not yet

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 395 04/06/2013 18:15:01

12.4 Service and maintenance record using the 7-segment display

Customer's name:_____						Date:_____			
Outdoor unit model (serial No.)		RAS- (Serial No.)				RAS- (Serial No.)			
1. Operation mode									
2. Test run start time									
3. Data collect start time									
4. Read out data from 7-segment in outdoor unit									
4.1 Protection control code									
4.2 Total capacity of I.U connected	CP								
4.3 Input/output state of outdoor micro-computer	SC	52C	FAN1	FAN2	20A	52C	FAN1	FAN2	20A
		20F	21	CH	PSH	20F	21	CH	PSH
4.4 Alarm code for abnormal stoppage of compressor	AC								
4.5 Inverter order frequency to compressor	H1								
4.6 Indoor order frequency to compressor	H2								
4.7 Air flow ratio	Fo								
4.8 O.U. expansion valve opening	Eo								
4.9 Temp. at the top of compressor	Td								
4.10 Evaporating temp. at heating	TE								
4.11 Ambient air temp.	To								
4.12 Cause of stoppage at inverter	iT								
4.13 Inverter secondary current	A2								
4.14 Inverter fin temperature	TF								
4.15 O.U. address	nA								
5. Indoor unit (unit No. 1)									
5.1 I.U. expansion valve opening	EA								
5.2 Liquid pipe temp. of I.U. (Freeze protection)	LA								
5.3 I.U. intake air temp.	iA								
5.4 I.U. discharge air temp.	oA								
5.5 Cause of I.U. stoppage	dA								
6. Indoor unit (unit No. 2)									
6.1 I.U. expansion valve opening	EA								
6.2 Liquid pipe temp of I.U. (Freeze protection)	LA								
6.3 I.U. intake air temp.	iA								
6.4 I.U. discharge air temp.	oA								
6.5 Cause of I.U. stoppage	dA								
7. Indoor unit (unit No. 3)									
7.1 I.U. expansion valve opening	EA								

Customer's name:_____			Date:_____
Outdoor unit model (serial No.)		RAS- (Serial No.)	RAS- (Serial No.)
7.2 Liquid pipe temp. of I.U. (Freeze protection)	LA		
7.3 I.U. intake air temp.	iA		
7.4 I.U. discharge air temp.	oA		
7.5 Cause of I.U. stoppage	dA		
8. Indoor unit (unit No. 4)			
8.1 I.U. expansion valve opening	EA		
8.2 Liquid pipe temp. of I.U. (Freeze protection)	LA		
8.3 I.U. intake air temp.	iA		
8.4 I.U. discharge air temp.	oA		
8.5 Cause of I.U. stoppage	dA		

NOTE

- *O.U.: Outdoor Unit.*
- *I.U.: Indoor unit.*
- *FAN1 FAN2: Constant speed fan.*
- *52C: CMC.*
- *PSH: High pressure switch.*
- *20A: Solenoid valve (SVA).*
- *20F: Solenoid valve (SFV).*
- *21: Reversing valve (RVR).*
- *CH: Oil heater.*
- **: Multiply 1/8 by the code on the 7-segment.*

12.5 Service and maintenance record by remote control switch

Data sheet for checking by remote control switch

Time			:	:	:	:	:
I.U. modelo							
I.U. serial No.							
I.U. No. / alarm code							
	Check mode 1	Check mode 2	1·2	1·2	1·2	1·2	1·2
B Temp. indication							
Set temp.	b1	--					
Inlet air temp.	b2	91					
Discharge air temp.	b3	92					
Liquid pipe temp.	b4	93					
Remote thermistor temp.	b5	--					
Outdoor air temp.	b6	94					
Gas pipe temp.	b7	95					
Evaporating temp. at heating	b8	96					
Control information	b9	97					
Comp. top temp.	bA	98					
Thermo temp. of remote control switch	bb	--					
C Micro-computer state indication							
I.U. micro-computer	C1	--					
O.U. micro-computer	C2	--					
D Stopping cause state indication							
Stopping cause state indication	d1	--					
E Alarm occurrence							
Times of abnormality	E1	--					
Times of power failure	E2	--					
Times of abnormal transmitting	E3	--					
Times of inverter tripping	E4	--					
F Automatic louver state							
Louver sensor state	F1	--					
H Pressure frequency state indication							
Discharge pressure	H1	99					
Suction pressure	H2	9A					
Control information	H3	9b					
Operating frequency	H4	9C					
J I.U. capacity Indication							
I.U. capacity (1.5-10HP)	J1	--					
O.U. code	J2	--					
Refrigerant cycle number	J3	--					
Refrigerant cycle number	J4	--					
L Opening of ex. valve							
I.U. ex. valve	L1	9d					
O.U. ex. valve 1	L2	9E					
O.U. ex. valve 2	L3	--					
O.U. ex. valve B	L4	--					
P Running current indication (reference)							
Comp. current	P1	9F					

12.6 Check list on compressor

CLIENT:	MODEL:	DATE:
Serial N°:	Production date:	Checker:

N°	Check item	Check method	Result	Remarks
1	Is THM9 correctly connected? THM9: Discharge gas thermistor	(1) Is wire of thermistor correctly connected by viewing? (2) Check to ensure the 7-segment indication of Td when comp. is operating. Td: Temperature of THM9		
2	Is thermistor THM9 disconnected?	(1) Check to ensure that thermistor on the top of comp. is correctly mounted by viewing? (2) Check to ensure that actually measured temp. is the same as the indication during check mode.		
3	Is current sensor faulty?	(1) Check to ensure that indication A1 and A2 are 0 during compressor stopping. (2) Check to ensure that indication A1 and A2 are not 0 during compressor running.		
4	Is current sensing part on PCB2 faulty?			
5	Is the direction of current sensor (CTU, CTV) reverse?	Check the direction => by viewing.		
6	Are power source wires, U and V inserted correctly into current sensor?	Check to ensure that wires are correctly inserted.		
7	Is exp. valve (MV1) correctly connected?	Check to ensure that MV1 to CN5A is correctly connected.		
8	Is exp. valve (MV1) coil correctly connected?	Check to ensure that each coil is correctly mounted on the valve.		
9	Are the refrigeration cycle and electrical wiring system incorrectly connected?	Check to ensure that refrigerant is flowing into indoor units by operating one refrigerating cycle only from the outdoor unit.		
10	Is opening of exp. valve completely closed (locked)?	Check the following by the check mode of outdoor units. (1) Liquid pipe temp. (TL) < air intake temp. (Ti) during cooling operation (2) Liquid pipe temp. (TL) > air intake temp. (Ti) during heating operation		
11	Is opening of exp. valve fully opened (locked)?	Check to ensure that liquid pipe temp. is lower than air intake temp. of stopping indoor unit when other indoor units are operating under cooling operation		
12	Are the contacts for comp. magnetic switch CMC1 faulty?	Check the surface of each contact (L1, L2 and L3) by viewing.		
13	Is there any voltage abnormality among L1-L2, L2-L3 and L3- L1?	Check to ensure that voltage imbalance is smaller than 3%. Please note that power source voltage must be within 380V or 220V+10%.		
14	Is the comp. oil acidified during compressor motor burning?	Check to ensure that the oil color is not black.		

12.6.1 Additional information for “Check list on compressor”

Check item	Additional information (mechanism of compressor failure)
1 & 2	The liquid refrigerant return volume to the compressor is controlled by the discharge gas temperature Td when compressor is operating. If Td thermistor is disconnected, the liquid refrigerant return volume will become small by detecting the temperature even if the actual discharge gas temperature is high. Therefore, this abnormal overheating by detecting the temperature operation will result in insulation failure of the motor winding.
3 & 4	Overcurrent control (operating frequency control) is performed by detecting current by the PCB2. In this case, winding insulation failure will occur, since control is not available in spite of actually high current.
5 & 6	The current sensor checks phase and adjusts output electrical wave in addition to the above mentioned items. If fault occurs, the output electrical wave becomes unstable giving stress to the motor winding, resulting in winding insulation failure.
7 & 8	During a cooling operation, SH is controlled by MV of each indoor units. During a heating operation, Td is controlled by MV1. If expansion valves are incorrectly connected, correct control is not available, resulting in compressor seizure depending on liquid refrigerant returning conditions or motor winding insulation failure depending on overheating conditions.
9	If the refrigeration cycle and electrical system are incorrectly connected, abnormally low suction pressure operation is maintained or abnormally high discharge pressure operation is maintained, resulting in giving stress to the compressor, since their correct control is not available.
10	If the expansion valve and electrical system are incorrectly connected, abnormally low suction pressure operation is maintained or abnormally high discharge pressure operation is maintained, resulting in giving stress to the compressor, since their correct control is not available.
11	The compressor may be locked due to the liquid return operation during the cooling operation .
12	In the case that the contacting resistance becomes big, voltage imbalance among each phase will cause abnormal overcurrent.
13	In this case, overcurrent will occur, efficiency will decrease or the motor winding will be excessively heated.
14	In the case, it will result in motor burning or compressor failure

12.7 Pump-down method for replacing the compressor

No.	Procedure	Remarks
1	Turn off the main switch of the outdoor unit.	—
2	Remove the covers the thermistor the crankcase heater the power wirings and other items according to the chapter 10.	Make sure that the terminal part of the detached power supply wires is not exposed by the winding insulation tape and other items.
3	Attach the manifold to the check joint of the high pressure side and the low-pressure side of the outdoor unit.	—
4	Turn on the main switch of the outdoor unit.	—
5	Set the exclusion of the compressor by setting the DSW so that a broken compressor will not work. You can set the exclusion of the compressor by setting the DSW1-4 in ON position.	—
6	The compressor replacing mode is performed: • The DSW1-1 on the outdoor unit PCB→ON (The test run cooling is running).	• This operation is performed for up to a maximum of ten minutes. • If the inverter compressor is excluded the operation starts after three minutes.
7	The operation finishes when one of the following conditions occurs: 1. Ten minutes have passed and STP is displayed in seven segments. 2. “08” is displayed in seven segments. 3. When Ps< 0.1 MPa is continued for one minute in ten minutes STP is displayed in seven seconds and the operation finishes.	• The operation may finished when any of the conditions 1) to 3) occurs.
8	Close the liquid stop valve completely.	To avoid the spillage of all the refrigerant if the check valve is broken.
9	Check for a leakage of the check valve on the discharge gas side: • DSW4-4 (enforced stoppage of the compressor) → ON so that the compressor will not run although the running command is sent from the remote control switch. • Check that variation of Ps on the outdoor unit PCB is 17 seconds. Make sure that the Ps increase is within 0.03 Mpa in two minutes after the Ps increase at the stoppage (during approximately five minutes). Also make sure that Pd > Ps.	• When you stop the compressor for replacing: • You can check the leakage of the check valve by means of the Ps variation because the SVA opens so that the discharge gas side of the inverter compressor can connect to the low-pressure side. • 0.03 MPa/2 minutes is within the permissible limits for the check valve on the discharge gas side. • The leakage of the check valve may cause an incorrect brazing due to the gas pressure at the brazing of the discharge piping. • If the compressor-replacing mode is performed again set the DSW4-4 to OFF and keep the DSW4-4 at the OFF side during ten minutes. Then start according to the procedure No. 6.
10	Collect the refrigerant by means of the refrigerant collection: • Perform either A or B depending on the process 9. A. The leak rate at the process 9 is within the specification →Collect the refrigerant only at the low-pressure side. B. The leak rate at the process 9 is greater than the specification → Collect all the refrigerant of the outdoor unit side by means of the machine.	• The discharge of the refrigerant in the atmosphere is strictly forbidden. Make sure that the refrigerant is collected by the collector. • Keep a note of the quantity of the collected refrigerant.
11	After collecting the refrigerant remove the change hose (collector side) of the low-pressure side so that the low-pressure side of the refrigerant cycle will be the atmosphere pressure.	• Make sure that there is no pressure increase of the low-pressure sides after collecting the refrigerant. • Make sure that the refrigerant cycle is the atmosphere pressure. Otherwise problems such as the blowing of gas and the suction of the cutting material) may occur when you are removing the compressors.
12	Turn OFF the main switch of the outdoor unit.	—
13	Perform the replacement of the compressor and the change of the refrigerant oil according to the section “replacing the compressor”.	Make sure that you follow the instructions.

No.	Procedure	Remarks
14	Perform the vacuum from the check joint of the low-pressure side.	If you collect the refrigerant only on the low-pressure side (A in 10). You cannot perform the vacuum of the refrigerant from the check joint of the high-pressure side.
15	Open the liquid stop valve and the gas stop valve completely when you finish the vacuum.	—
16	Make sure that the power is turned OFF and attach the following items: the power supply wire the thermistor the crankcase heater the 63H wiring the panel and the nut).	—
17	Set the DSW back to the original setting. Make sure that all the wirings to the compressor are connected correctly.	—
18	Recharge the refrigerant that is collected in the process by the stop valve of the liquid side during the cooling at the TEST RUN mode.	If the replacement of the compressor takes more than two hours an additional change of the refrigerant is necessary. Additional change = (replacing time – 2 hours) x 0.5 kg.

SMGB0086_rev0_05_2013.indb 403 04/06/2013 18:15:02

HITACHI
Inspire the Next

Hitachi Air Conditioning Products Europe, S.A.U.
Ronda Shimizu, 1 - Polig. Ind. Can Torrella
08233 Vacarisses (Barcelona) Spain

CE

Hitachi certifies that our products have met EU consumer safety, health and environmental requirements.

Hitachi Air Conditioning Products Europe, S.A.U. is certified with:
ISO 9001 of AENOR, Spain for its Quality Management accordance with the standard
ISO 14001 of AENOR Spain for its Environmental Management systems accordance with the standard

Hitachi air conditioning products are manufactured according to:
ISO 9001 of JQA, Japan for its Quality Management accordance with the standard
ISO 14001 of JACO, Japan for its Environmental Management accordance with the standard

SMGB0086 rev.0 - 05/2013

Printed in Spain